

# **DocuCentre-III 3007/2007**

## **Administrator Guide**

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and Windows Server, Windows Vista, and Microsoft Network are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

NetWare is a registered trademark of Novell, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

Adobe, Acrobat, PostScript, and Adobe PostScript 3 are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

EtherTalk, Macintosh, and Mac OS are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

PCL, HP-GL, and HP-GL/2 are registered trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Corporation.

RSA, BSAFE are either registered trademarks or trademarks of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

RSA Security Inc. All right reserved.

All product/brand names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective holders.

Permission has been obtained from Microsoft Corporation for use of software screen shots.

For information on license, refer to About License in the User Guide.

The data saved in the hard disk of the machine may be lost if there is any problem in the hard disk. Fuji Xerox is not responsible for any direct and indirect damages arising from or caused by such data loss.

Fuji Xerox is not responsible for any breakdown of machines due to infection of computer virus or computer hacking.

**Important**

1. This manual is copyrighted with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied or modified in whole or part, without the written consent of the publisher.
2. Parts of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
3. We welcome any comments on ambiguities, errors, omissions, or missing pages.
4. Never attempt any procedure on the machine that is not specifically described in this manual. Unauthorized operation can cause faults or accidents. Fuji Xerox is not liable for any problems resulting from unauthorized operation of the equipment.

An export of this product is strictly controlled in accordance with Laws concerning Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade of Japan and/or the export control regulations of the United States.

XEROX, THE DOCUMENT COMPANY, Ethernet, CentreWare, and the stylized X are registered trademarks of Xerox Corporation. DocuWorks is a trademark of Xerox Corporation and Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd. All Xerox and Fuji Xerox product names are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Xerox Corporation and Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

# Table of Contents

---

Table of Contents .....	1
<b>1 Before Using the Machine .....</b>	<b>11</b>
Preface .....	12
Types of Manuals .....	13
Using This Guide .....	14
Organization of This Guide .....	14
Conventions .....	15
Interface Cables .....	17
Using the USB Interface .....	17
Using the Ethernet Interface .....	17
Energy Saver Mode .....	18
Changing the Energy Saver Mode Change Interval .....	18
Customizing the Control Panel .....	20
Entering Text .....	24
<b>2 Paper and Other Media .....</b>	<b>25</b>
Paper Types .....	26
Supported Paper Types .....	26
Loading Paper .....	29
Loading Paper in the Trays 1 to 4 .....	29
Loading Paper in the Tray 5 (Bypass) .....	30
Changing the Paper Size for the Trays .....	32
Changing the Paper Settings .....	34
<b>3 Maintenance .....</b>	<b>37</b>
Replacing Consumables .....	38
Replacing the Toner Cartridges .....	39
Replacing the Drum Cartridge (for customers having a spot maintenance contract) .....	41
Replacing the Staple Cartridge (for Finisher-A1) .....	44
Replacing the Staple Cartridge (for Finisher-B1) .....	45
Replacing the Staple Cartridge (for Booklet Maker Unit for Finisher-B1) .....	47
Emptying the Punch Waste Container (for Finisher-B1) .....	47
Replacing the Stamp Cartridge .....	49
Cleaning the Machine .....	50
Cleaning the Exterior .....	50
Cleaning the Document Cover and Document Glass .....	50
Cleaning the Film and Constant Velocity Transport Glass .....	51
Cleaning the Document Feeder Rollers .....	52
Printing a Report/List .....	53
Deleting the Private Print Job with an Invalid User ID .....	54

---

<b>4</b>	<b>Machine Status .....</b>	<b>55</b>
	Overview of Machine Status.....	56
	Machine Information.....	57
	General Information .....	57
	Paper Tray Status.....	58
	Print Reports.....	59
	Automatically Printed Reports/Lists .....	66
	Overwrite Hard Disk.....	67
	Print Mode .....	68
	Fax Receiving Mode .....	70
	Faults.....	71
	Supplies.....	72
	Billing Information.....	73
	Billing Information .....	73
	User Account Billing Information.....	73
<b>5</b>	<b>Tools.....</b>	<b>75</b>
	System Settings Procedure .....	76
	Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode .....	76
	Step 2 Entering the System Administrator User ID and Passcode.....	76
	Step 3 Selecting [Tools].....	77
	Step 4 Selecting an Item on the [Tools] Screen .....	77
	Step 5 Setting a Feature.....	78
	Step 6 Exiting the System Administration Mode.....	78
	Tools Menu List.....	79
	Common Service Settings.....	89
	Machine Clock/Timers .....	89
	Audio Tones.....	91
	Screen/Button Settings .....	92
	Paper Tray Settings .....	94
	Image Quality.....	95
	Reports .....	96
	Maintenance .....	98
	Watermark .....	98
	Other Settings.....	100
	Copy Service Settings .....	106
	Copy Tab - Features Allocation .....	106
	Number of Display Buttons .....	107
	Copy Defaults .....	107
	Copy Control.....	110
	Original Size Defaults .....	111
	Reduce/Enlarge Presets.....	111
	Annotations Create Comments.....	111
	Connectivity & Network Setup.....	112

Port Settings .....	112
Protocol Settings.....	115
Machine's E-mail Address/Host Name .....	118
Proxy Server Settings .....	118
Outgoing/Incoming E-mail Settings.....	119
Remote Authentication/Directory Service Settings .....	121
Security Settings .....	125
Other Settings .....	128
Print Service Settings .....	129
Allocate Memory .....	129
Delete Form .....	131
Other Settings .....	131
Scan Service Settings .....	135
First Tab .....	135
Scan Defaults.....	135
Scan to PC Defaults.....	137
Original Size Defaults .....	137
Output Size Defaults .....	138
Reduce/Enlarge Presets .....	138
Other Settings .....	138
Fax Service Settings.....	140
Screen Defaults .....	140
Fax Defaults.....	141
Fax Control .....	142
Fax Received Options.....	145
Reduce/Enlarge Presets .....	146
Original Size Defaults .....	146
Local Terminal Information .....	146
Internet Fax Control .....	147
E-mail/Internet Fax Service Settings .....	150
E-mail Control .....	150
Mailbox/Stored Document Settings .....	153
Mailbox Service Settings.....	153
Stored Document Settings .....	153
Job Flow Service Settings .....	155
Setup .....	156
Create Mailbox.....	156
Stored Programming.....	158
Create Job Flow Sheet .....	158
Create Job Flow Sheet Keyword .....	165
Add Address Book Entry.....	165
Create Fax Group Recipients .....	171
Add Fax Comment.....	172
Paper Tray Attributes .....	172

---

Accounting.....	173
Create/View User Accounts.....	173
View Accounts .....	175
Reset User Accounts .....	176
System Administrator's Meter (Copy Jobs).....	177
Accounting Type .....	177
Accounting Login Screen Settings.....	178
Fax Billing Data.....	179
Authentication/Security Settings.....	180
System Administrator Settings.....	180
Authentication .....	181
Allow User to Disable Active Settings.....	189
Job Status Default .....	189
Overwrite Hard Disk.....	190
<b>6 CentreWare Internet Services Settings .....</b>	<b>193</b>
Installation of CentreWare Internet Services.....	194
Preparations .....	194
Configuration on the Machine.....	194
Starting CentreWare Internet Services.....	196
Setting Items Using CentreWare Internet Services.....	197
<b>7 Printer Environment Settings.....</b>	<b>201</b>
Print Features Overview .....	202
Installation When Using USB Port.....	205
Step 1 Preparations .....	205
Step 2 Configuration on the Machine .....	205
Step 3 Configuration on the Computer .....	206
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items .....	206
Installation When Using TCP/IP (LPD/Port 9100) .....	207
Step 1 Preparations .....	207
Step 2 Configuration on the Machine .....	207
Step 3 Configuration on the Computer .....	208
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items .....	208
Installation When Using NetWare .....	210
Step 1 Preparations .....	210
Step 2 Configuration on the Machine .....	210
Step 3 Configuration on the Computer .....	211
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items .....	212
Installation When Using Microsoft Network (SMB).....	213
Step 1 Preparations .....	213
Step 2 Configuration on the Machine .....	213
Step 3 Configuration on the Computer .....	214
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items .....	214
Installation When Using Internet Printing Protocol (IPP).....	215

Step 1 Preparations .....	215
Step 2 Configuration on the Machine.....	215
Step 3 Configuration on the Computer .....	216
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items.....	216
Installation When Using EtherTalk .....	217
Step 1 Preparations .....	217
Step 2 Configuration on the Machine.....	217
Step 3 Configuration on the Computer .....	218
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items.....	218
<b>8 E-mail Environment Settings.....</b>	<b>219</b>
E-mail Overview .....	220
Preparations .....	221
Installation Procedure.....	223
Step 1 Enabling Port and Setting TCP/IP .....	223
Step 2 Configuring E-mail Environment.....	224
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items.....	225
<b>9 Scanner Environment Settings .....</b>	<b>227</b>
Scan Service Overview .....	228
Configuration of Scan to Mailbox.....	229
Step 1 Enabling Port and Setting TCP/IP .....	229
Step 2 Registering a Mailbox .....	230
Step 3 Configuring a Computer .....	230
Configuration of Scan to PC .....	231
Step 1 Preparations .....	231
Step 2 Enabling Port and Setting TCP/IP .....	231
Step 3 Configuration on a Computer .....	232
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items.....	233
Configuration of Network Scanning (Job Template Scanning).....	234
Step 1 Preparations .....	234
Step 2 Enabling Ports and Setting TCP/IP .....	234
Step 3 Configuring the SNMP Port .....	235
Step 4 Configuration on a Computer .....	235
Configuration of Job Flow Sheets.....	236
Step 1 Enabling Ports and Setting TCP/IP .....	236
Step 2 Configuring the SNMP Port .....	237
Step 3 Configuration on the Computer .....	237
<b>10 Using the Internet Fax Service .....</b>	<b>239</b>
Internet Fax Overview .....	240
Preparations .....	240
System Requirements for the Machine.....	240
E-Mail Environment.....	240
Installation Procedure.....	242

---

Installation Overview .....	242
Step 1 Enabling the Port and Setting TCP/IP .....	242
Step 2 Configuring the E-mail Environment.....	243
Step 3 Testing Internet Fax .....	247
<b>11 Using the Server Fax Service .....</b>	<b>249</b>
Server Fax Overview .....	250
Preparations .....	250
System Requirements for the Machine.....	250
Installation Procedure.....	251
Installation Overview.....	251
Step 1 Fax Settings .....	251
Step 2 Setting the Server Fax Feature .....	252
<b>12 Encryption and Digital Signature Settings .....</b>	<b>255</b>
Encryption and Digital Signature Overview .....	256
Encryption Features for Communication .....	256
Encryption and Digital-Signature Features for Scan Files .....	257
Configuration of HTTP Communication Encryption.....	258
Installation Overview.....	258
Step1 Configuration on the Machine .....	258
Step2 Configuration on a Computer .....	259
Configuration of Encryption using IPSec.....	260
Installation Overview.....	260
Step1 Import and Configuration of a Certificate.....	260
Step2 Configuration on the Machine (Configuration of IPSec) .....	261
Step3 Configuration on a Computer .....	262
Configuration of E-mail Encryption/Digital Signature .....	263
Installation Overview.....	263
Step1 Configuration on the Machine .....	263
Step2 Configuration on a Computer .....	265
Configuration of PDF/DocuWorks/XPS Signature.....	267
Installation Overview.....	267
Step1 Configuration on the Machine .....	267
Step2 Configuration on a Computer .....	269
<b>13 Authentication and Account Administration .....</b>	<b>271</b>
Overview of Authentication and Account Administration .....	272
Overview of Authentication .....	272
Overview of Account Administration .....	273
Authentication.....	274
Users Controlled by Authentication .....	274
User Role and Authorization Groups .....	274
Types of Authentication .....	275
Types of Account Administration .....	276



---

Relationships Between the Authentication and Accounting Modes .....	277
Services Controlled by Authentication .....	278
Overview .....	278
Services Controlled by Authentication and Account Administration .....	278
Authentication for Job Flow Sheets and Mailboxes .....	281
Overview .....	281
When the Authentication Feature is not Enabled .....	283
When the Authentication Feature is Enabled .....	286
Jobs Manageable by Account Administration .....	289
Configuration for Authentication .....	292
Installation Overview .....	292
Step 1 Enabling Authentication .....	292
Step 2 Changing the Default Authorization Group Settings .....	294
Step 3 Creating an Authorization Group .....	295
Configuration for Account Administration .....	296
Step 1 Selecting an Accounting Type .....	296
Step 2 Registering User Information .....	296
<b>14 Problem Solving .....</b>	<b>299</b>
Troubleshooting .....	300
Machine Trouble .....	301
Image Quality Trouble .....	305
Trouble during Copying .....	310
Unable to Copy .....	310
The Copy Result is Not What was Expected .....	311
Trouble during Printing .....	313
Unable to Print .....	313
The Print Result is Not What was Expected .....	314
Trouble during Faxing .....	315
Sending Problems .....	315
Receiving Problems .....	316
Trouble during Scanning .....	319
Unable to Scan with the Machine .....	319
Unable to Import Scanned Documents to the Computer .....	320
Unable to Send a Scanned Document over the Network (FTP/SMB) .....	320
Unable to Send E-mail .....	322
The Image is not What was Expected .....	322
Network-related Problems .....	324
When using SMB .....	324
When using NetWare .....	325
When using TCP/IP .....	329
When using EtherTalk .....	331
CentreWare Internet Services Problems .....	331
E-Mail Features Problems .....	332

---

---

Internet/Intranet Connection Problems .....	333
IPv4 and IPv6 Connection Problems .....	335
Error Code .....	338
Other Errors .....	405
Paper Jams .....	406
Paper Jams in the Top Left Cover [A] .....	407
Paper Jams in the Bottom Left Cover [B] .....	409
Paper Jams in the Bottom Left Cover [C] .....	410
Paper Jams in the Top Cover [E] .....	411
Paper Jams in the Trays 1 to 4 .....	412
Paper Jams in the Tandem Tray Module .....	412
Paper Jams in the Tray 5 (Bypass) .....	413
Paper Jams in the Duplex Kit .....	414
Paper Jams in the Finisher-A1 .....	415
Paper Jams in the Finisher-B1 .....	415
Document Jams .....	417
Stapler Faults .....	419
Staple Jams in the Staple Cartridge (For Finisher-A1) .....	420
Staple Jams in the Staple Cartridge (For Finisher-B1) .....	421
<b>15 Appendix .....</b>	<b>423</b>
Specifications .....	424
Printable Area .....	433
Standard Printable Area .....	433
Extended Printable Area .....	433
Internal Fonts .....	434
Optional Components .....	436
ESC/P-K Emulation .....	438
Emulation .....	438
Fonts .....	439
Output Feature .....	439
ESC/P-K Emulation Print Features .....	439
ESC/P-K Emulation Settings .....	440
Magnification Table .....	446
Paper Size and Number of Printable Characters .....	450
PDF Direct Print .....	452
PDF Direct Print Settings .....	452
PCL Emulation .....	454
HP-GL2 Emulation .....	457
Hard Clip Area .....	461
Printable Area .....	462
Auto Layout .....	463
Using the Telephone .....	470
Placing a Call .....	470

Activity Report .....	472
Notes and Restrictions .....	474
Notes and Restrictions on the Use of the Machine.....	474
Notes and Restrictions in the Interrupt Mode.....	475
Notes and Restrictions on the Use of the Internet Fax Feature .....	477
Notes and Restrictions when Connecting with Internet Service Provider .....	479
Notes and Restrictions for Using SMB.....	481
Notes and Restrictions for Using TCP/IP .....	482
Notes and Restrictions for Using EtherTalk .....	484
Notes and Restrictions for Using Bonjour .....	485
Notes and Restrictions for Using Scanner Features .....	485
Notes and Restrictions when Connecting to Internet or Intranet .....	486
Notes and Restrictions for IPv6 Connection .....	486
Removing the Finisher-A1 .....	488
Glossary .....	489
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>491</b>



# 1 Before Using the Machine

This chapter describes organization of this guide and conventions.

• Preface .....	12
• Types of Manuals .....	13
• Using This Guide .....	14
• Interface Cables.....	17
• Energy Saver Mode .....	18
• Customizing the Control Panel .....	20
• Entering Text .....	24

## Preface

---

Thank you for selecting DocuCentre-III 3007/2007 (hereafter referred to as “the machine”).


This guide explains how to operate the machine and the precautions that must be followed during operation. To get the most out of the machine and to use it effectively, be sure to read this guide before use.

This guide is intended for machine administrators and provides maintenance information such as how to replace consumables, how to configure network, and troubleshooting procedures.

This guide assumes that an operator has a basic knowledge of the operating environment of the personal computer in use, networking environments, and how to operate a personal computer. For information on the environment of the personal computer in use, basic knowledge of networking environments, and how to operate a personal computer, refer to the manuals provided with the personal computer, operating system, and network system.

After reading this guide, be sure to keep it handy for quick reference. It will be useful in case you forget how to perform operations or if a problem occurs with the machine.

Refer to the User Guide for copy/print/scan/fax operating procedures. For information about optional accessories for the printer functionality, also refer to the guide provided with each optional accessory.

<p>In this manual, safety instructions are preceded by the symbol . Always read and follow the instructions before performing the required procedures.</p>
---

---

## Types of Manuals

---

We provide the following guides for optimum usage of the machine.

### Accompanying Manuals

The machine comes with the following documentation, which is referred to as accompanying manuals.

The accompanying manuals include the descriptions of how to configure and use the machine.

#### ■ User Guide

Describes all the necessary steps for copy/print/scan/fax.

#### ■ Administrator Guide (this guide)

Aimed toward machine administrators, as a guide to loading paper, configuring the system settings, setting up the network environment, and solving problems that may occur with the machine.

#### ■ Quick Reference Guide

Introduces the basic operations of the machine, as well as daily management and maintenance.

#### ■ Manual (HTML)

A guide for installing print drivers, configuring the printer environment, etc. This manual is included in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

### Guides for Optional Accessories

Optional accessories are available for this machine. Some of them come with user guides. The user guides, provided as printed or online documentation, are referred to as guides for optional accessories.

The guides for optional accessories describe all the necessary steps for using the optional accessories and installing the software.

## Using This Guide

---

This guide is intended for machine administrators and provides maintenance information such as how to replace consumables, how to configure network, and troubleshooting procedures.

### Organization of This Guide

---

This guide consists of the following chapters.

■ **1 Before Using the Machine**

Describes organization of this guide and conventions.

■ **2 Paper and Other Media**

Describes the types of paper that can be used on the machine and how to load paper in trays.

■ **3 Maintenance**

Describes how to replace consumables and to clean the machine.

■ **4 Machine Status**

Describes how to check the faults that occurred on the machine and to print various reports/lists.

■ **5 Tools**

Describes how to configure the system settings.

■ **6 CentreWare Internet Services Settings**

Describes how to use CentreWare Internet Services.

■ **7 Printer Environment Settings**

Describes the configuration to use the Printer features on the machine.

■ **8 E-mail Environment Settings**

Describes the configuration to use the E-mail features on the machine.

■ **9 Scanner Environment Settings**

Describes the configuration to use the Scan services on the machine.

■ **10 Using the Internet Fax Service**

Describes the configuration to use the Internet Fax service on the machine.

■ **11 Using the Server Fax Service**

Describes the configuration to use the Server Fax service on the machine.

■ **12 Encryption and Digital Signature Settings**

Describes the configuration to utilize the encryption and digital signature on the machine.



**■13 Authentication and Account Administration**

Describes the authorization feature for restricting use of the machine, as well as the administration feature for monitoring usage statuses for each feature using the authorization feature.

**■14 Problem Solving**

Describes troubles that may occur with the machine and their solutions.

**■15 Appendix**

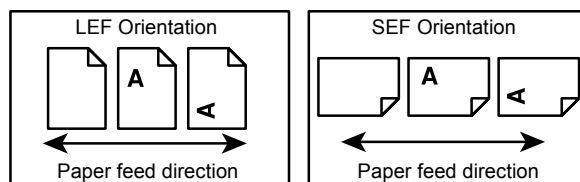
Describes the machine specifications, optional accessories, and cautions/restrictions.

**Conventions**

- The screen images and illustrations that are used in this guide are based on the machine configuration with the various options. Some of the items in the screen images may not be displayed or there may be features that cannot be used depending on the machine configuration.
- In this document, "Computer" refers to a personal computer or workstation.
- The following terms are used in this guide:
  - Important : Indicates important information that you should read.
  - Note : Indicates additional information on operations or features.
- The following symbols are used in this guide:
  - " " :
    - A cross-reference included in this guide.
    - Refers to names of CD-ROM, features, and touch screen messages and input text.
  - [ ] :
    - Refers to folders, files, applications, button or menu names displayed in the touch screen.
    - The names of menus, commands, windows, or dialog boxes displayed on the computer screen and their buttons and menu names.
  - < > button : Indicates a hardware button on the computer.
  - < > key : Indicates a key on the keyboard of the computer.
  - > :
    - Indicates a path to a certain item within a procedure on the control panel.  
Example: When you see the procedure "select [Tools] > [Setup] > [Create Mailbox]", this means that you need to select [Tools], select [Setup], and then select [Create Mailbox].
    - Indicates a path to a certain item within a procedure on a computer.  
Example: When you see the procedure "to search for files and folders, click [Start] > [Search] > [For Files or Folders]", this means that you need to click [Start], click [Search], and then click [For Files or Folders] in order to search for files and folders.
    - The reference is indicated in the following manner:  
"Refer to "4 Fax" > "Receiving Faxes" in the User Guide."  
The sentence above means that you need to refer to the

section "Receiving Faxes" in chapter 4 "Fax" of the User Guide.

- Orientation of documents or paper is described in this guide as follows:  
☐, ☐, Long Edge Feed (LEF): Loading with one of the long edges of the document or paper.  
☐, ☐, Short Edge Feed (SEF): Loading with one of the short edges of the document or paper.



## Interface Cables

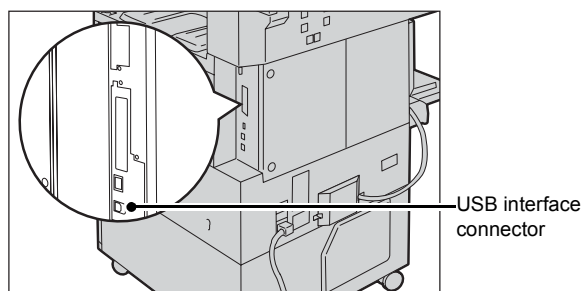
When connecting the machine directly to a computer, use USB interface. When connecting to a network, use the Ethernet interface.

### Using the USB Interface

The USB interface supports USB 2.0.

This section describes the installation procedure for the USB interface.

- 1** Ensure that the machine is off.
- 2** Connect the USB interface cable to the USB 2.0 interface connector on the side of the machine.
- 3** Connect the other end of the USB interface cable to a computer.
- 4** Switch on the machine.
- 5** Restart the computer.



For details of setting items, refer to "Installation When Using USB Port" (P.205)

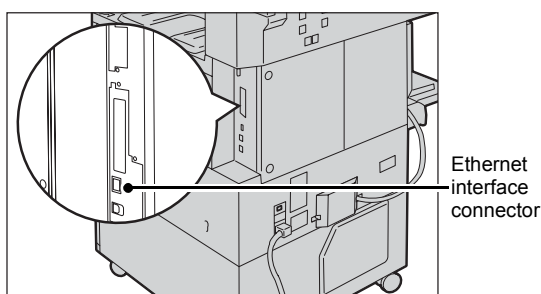
### Using the Ethernet Interface

The Ethernet interface supports the following 2 types.

- 100BASE-TX
- 10BASE-T

This section describes the installation procedure for the Ethernet interface.

- 1** Ensure that the machine is off.
- 2** Connect the network cable to the Ethernet interface connector.  
**Note**
  - Prepare a network cable suitable for your network connection. When changing the network cable, consult our customer engineers.
- 3** Switch on the machine.



## Energy Saver Mode

The machine is installed with a Energy Saver feature that will automatically cut off the electricity to the machine if no copy or print data is received for a certain duration.

The Energy Saver feature has two modes: [Low Power mode] and [Sleep mode].

The machine enters the Low Power mode after the preset time has elapsed if the machine is left unused for a fixed period of time.

The machine then enters the Sleep mode if a further preset time elapses.

### ■ Low Power Mode

In this mode, the power to the control panel and fuser unit is lowered to save power.

The touch screen goes out, and the <Energy Saver> button on the control panel lights. To use the machine, press the <Energy Saver> button. The <Energy Saver> button goes out to indicate that the Energy Saver feature is cancelled.

### ■ Sleep Mode

In this mode, the power is lowered more than in the Low Power mode.

The touch screen goes out, and the <Energy Saver> button on the control panel lights. To use the machine, press the <Energy Saver> button. The <Energy Saver> button goes out to indicate that the Energy Saver feature is cancelled.

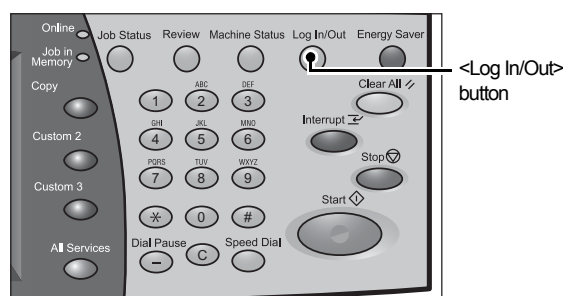
## Changing the Energy Saver Mode Change Interval

The procedure for setting the Energy Saver feature is as follows.

To activate the Energy Saver feature, set both the times until the activation of Low Power Mode and Sleep Mode.

**Note** • The time to activation of Low Power Mode and Sleep Mode can each be specified in 1 minute increments, from 2 to 60 minutes.

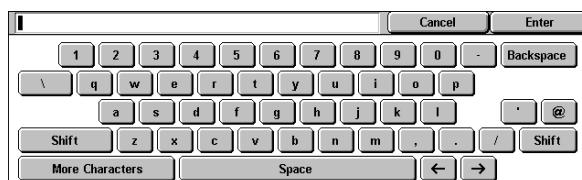
**1** Press the <Log In/Out> button.



**2** Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

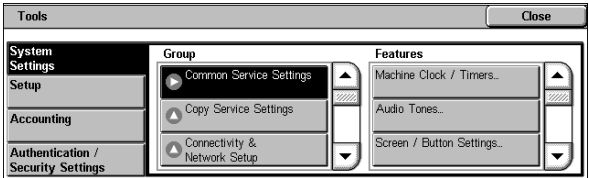
**Note** • The default user ID is "11111".  
• The default passcode is "x-admin".



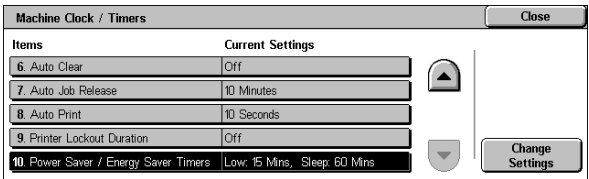
3 Select [Tools].



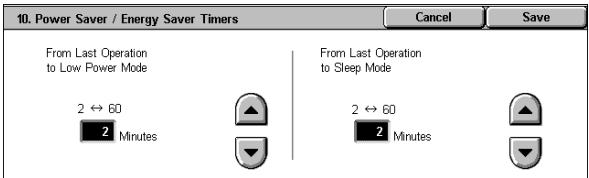
4 Select [Machine Clock/Timers].



5 Select [Power Saver/Energy Saver Timers], and select [Change Settings].



6 Using [▲] and [▼], configure an energy saver mode migration time, in 1 minute increments.



■From Last Operation to Low Power Mode

Set the time to move to the [Low Power Mode] after the last operation.

**Note** • The default for [From Last Operation to Low Power Mode] is [2] minutes. The Low Power Mode cannot be disabled.

■From Last Operation to Sleep Mode

Set the time to move to the [Sleep Mode] after the last operation.

**Note** • The default for [From Last Operation to Sleep Mode] is [2] minutes. Configure the [From Last Operation to Sleep Mode] time to be longer than the [From Last Operation to Low Power Mode] time.

7 Select [Save].

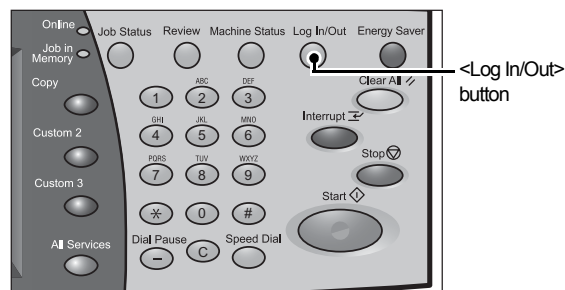
8 Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

9 Select [Close] to display the [All Services] screen.

## Customizing the Control Panel

Use the following procedure to select the screen to be displayed when the machine is turned on or exited from the Energy Saver mode, to select the screen to be displayed after Auto Clear, to assign features to <Custom> buttons, and to select the features to be displayed on the [All Services] screen.

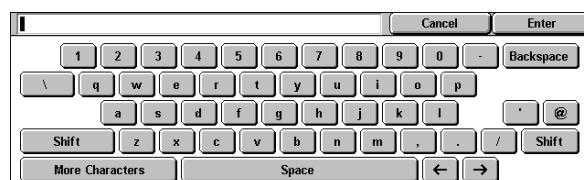
- 1 Press the <Log In/Out> button.



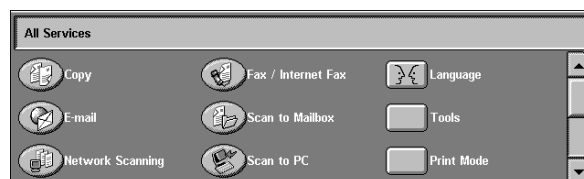
- 2 Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

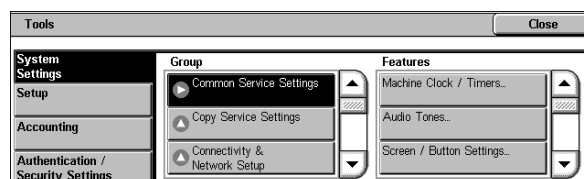
- Note**
- The default user ID is "11111".
  - The default passcode is "x-admin".



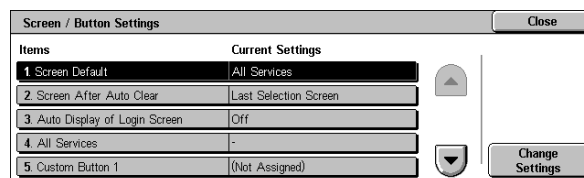
- 3 Select [Tools].



- 4 Select [Screen/Button Settings].



- 5 Select the item to be set or changed.



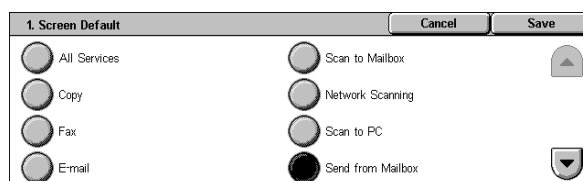
### Setting the Initial Screen

Set the screen to be displayed after turning the machine on or exiting the Energy Saver mode. This section describes how to set the [Send from Mailbox] screen as the initial screen, as an example.

- 1 Select [Screen Default], and select [Change Settings].

- 2 Select [Send from Mailbox].

**Note** • Select [▲] to return to the previous screen or [▼] to move to the next screen.



## Setting the Screen to be displayed after Auto Clear

Set the screen to be displayed after Auto Clear. You can select from [Last Selection Screen] and [All Services].

- 1 Select [Screen After Auto Clear], and select [Change Settings].

- 2 Select [Last Selection Screen] or [All Services].

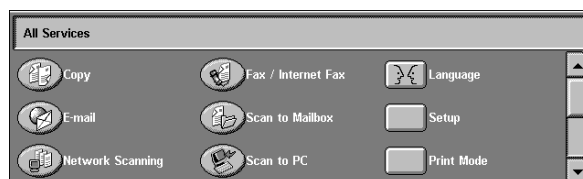


## Customizing the [All Services] Screen

By selecting features and their positions, you can customize the [All Services] screen that is displayed when you press the <All Services> button on the control panel. The following are the factory default features displayed on the [All Services] screen.

**Note** • Unsupported features will not be displayed on the screen. Abnormal features will be grayed out on the screen.

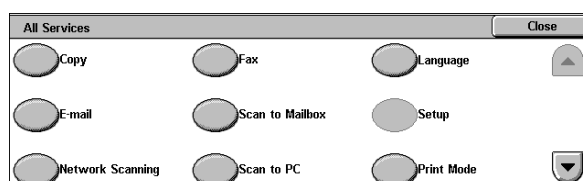
- Copy
- Fax/Internet Fax
- E-mail
- Scan to Mailbox
- Network Scanning
- Scan to PC
- Send from Mailbox
- Stored Programming
- Job Flow Sheets
- Language
- Setup
- Calibration
- Activity Report
- Fax Receiving Mode
- Print Mode



- 1 Select [All Services], and select [Change Settings].

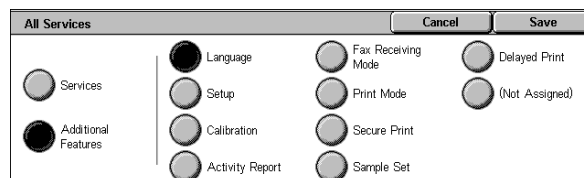
- 2 Select [Language].

**Note** • Select [▲] to return to the previous screen or [▼] to move to the next screen.



**3** Select [Services].**4** Select [Stored Programming].**Note**

- The layout of buttons in this screen is corresponding to the layout of those on the [All Services] screen when pressing the <All Services> button.
- You cannot assign the same feature to more than one button.

**■Services**

You can select a feature button. The feature buttons are the oval buttons in the [All Services] screen.

If you select [Not Assigned], the selected button position will remain empty.

**■Additional Features**

You can select an additional feature button. The auxiliary features appear in the [All Services] screen as rectangular buttons.

If you select [Not Assigned], the selected button position will remain empty.

**Assigning Features to <Custom> Buttons**

Assign features to the <Custom> buttons on the control panel: Custom 1 to Custom 3.

By assigning features to the <Custom> buttons, you can switch to the features without returning to the [All Services] screen. If you do not want to assign any feature to a button, select [Not Assigned].

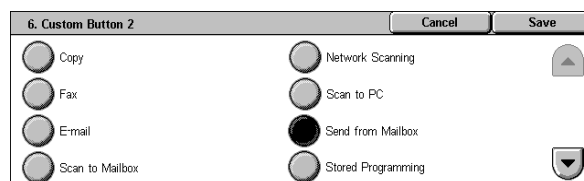
By factory defaults, [Copy] is assigned to the <Copy> button and no feature is assigned to the <Custom 2> or <Custom 3> button. The features assigned to the buttons are selected from the features displayed on the [All Services] screen and [Language].

Attach the labels included in this product when you have changed the assignment. If you have used a feature for which no label is provided, use a blank label and write down the feature using a permanent marker, and then attach the label to the appropriate button.

The following is the procedure to assign [Send from Mailbox] to the <Custom 2> button, as an example. The same procedure can be used for the <Custom 3> button.

**1** Select [Custom Button 2], and select [Change Settings].**2** Select [Send from Mailbox].**Note**

- Select [▲] to return to the previous screen or [▼] to move to the next screen.

**Changing the Feature Screen**

You can customize the screen layouts for the following features listed on the [All Services] screen.

- Copy
- Fax/Internet Fax
- E-mail
- Scan to Mailbox

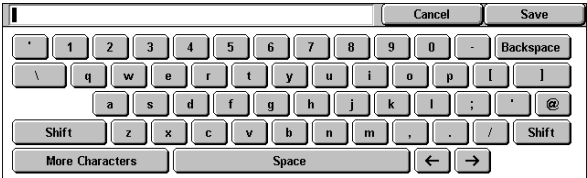


- Network Scanning
- Scan to PC

For information on how to change the settings, refer to "Copy Tab - Features Allocation" (P.106), "First Tab" (P.135), and "Screen Defaults" (P.140).

# Entering Text

During operations, a screen for entering text sometimes appears. This section describes how to enter text.



You can enter the following characters: numerals, letters, and symbols.

Item	Description
Entering letters and numerals	If you select [Shift], uppercase letters appear. To return to the lowercase letters, select [Shift] again.
Entering symbols	Select [Symbol]. <b>Note</b> • Depending on the keyboard, the [Symbol] button may be displayed as [More Characters].
Entering a space	Select [Space].
Deleting characters	Select [Backspace]. You can delete one character at a time.

## 2 Paper and Other Media

This chapter describes the types of paper that can be used on the machine, precautions when handling paper, and how to load paper in trays.

- Paper Types .....26
- Loading Paper .....29
- Changing the Paper Size for the Trays.....32
- Changing the Paper Settings.....34

## Paper Types

This section describes the kinds of paper available for this machine.

Use of inappropriate paper may result in paper jams, or may cause reduced print quality, malfunctions, and other troubles. To make full and effect use of the machine's performance, we recommend using only paper recommended by Fuji Xerox.

If you want to use paper not recommended by Fuji Xerox, contact our Customer Support Center.

### **WARNING**

Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.

**Important** • The printed image may fade due to moisture such as water, rain or vapor. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

## Supported Paper Types

When using commonly used paper (known as printable paper) for copying or printing, make sure that it complies with the following specifications.

Paper Tray	Weight	Loadable Quantity
Tray 1	60 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> Ream Weight: 48 - 90 kgs	500 sheets*
Tray 2 to 4	60 - 216 g/m <sup>2</sup> Ream Weight: 48 - 185 kgs	500 sheets*
Trays 3 and 4 (Tandem Tray)	60 - 215 g/m <sup>2</sup> Ream Weight: 48 - 185 kgs	Tray 3: 800 sheets* Tray 4: 1,200 sheets*
Tray 5 (bypass)	60 - 215 g/m <sup>2</sup> Ream Weight: 52 - 185 kgs	Up to 10 mm, 95 sheets*

\*: When using 80 g/m<sup>2</sup> paper.

The following table lists the paper types supported for each paper tray, duplex module, and the finisher.

Paper Type	Weight (g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Tray 1	Tray 2, 3-4 (Two Tray Module/ Tandem Tray Module)	Tray 5 (Bypass)	Duplex Module	A1-Finisher	B1-Finisher
Plain	60 - 105	O	O	O	O	O	O
Recycled		O	O	O	O	O	O
Plain Reloaded <sup>*1</sup>		O	O	O	X	O	O
Hole Punched	-	O	O	O	X	X	X
Letterhead	-	O	O	O	X	X	X
Bond	-	O	O	O	X	X	X
Transparency	-	O	O	O	X	X	X
Lightweight	-	O	O	O	X	X	X
Heavyweight	106 - 169	X	O	O	X	X	X
Extra Heavyweight	170 - 216	X	O	O	X	X	X
Labels	60 - 105	O	O	O	X	X	X
Pre-Printed <sup>*2</sup>	60 - 105	O	O	O	X	O	O
Envelope	-	X	X	O	X	X	X

\*1: Plain Reloaded means the paper already printed on the one side (i.e., scrap paper).





\*2: Pre-Printed means the paper already printed with other printer or copier.

O: Available

X: Not available

**Important** • Printing with paper whose type or size differs from the paper specified by the print driver, or printing from a tray not supporting the loaded paper can result in paper jams. To ensure correct printing, select the correct paper size, paper type, and paper tray.

**Note**

- Basic weight means a weight of 1 m<sup>2</sup> of a paper sheet.
- Ream weight means weight of 1,000 sheets of paper in duodecimo size (788 x 1,091 mm).
- When copying with a non-standard size paper from the Tray 5 (bypass), you must manually enter the paper size. If you use non-standard size paper often, you can preset the size on the machine. Then the preset size appears under [Standard Sizes] in the [Tray 5 (Bypass)] screen. For more information, refer to "Tray 5 - Paper Size Defaults" (P.95).
- When sheets such as postcards, which are B5 in size or narrower are printed continuously, the non-paper passage side on the fuser unit heats up. For this reason, the message "Please wait" is sometimes displayed and output is discontinued. Printing resumes after one to two minutes. The message "Please wait" is also sometimes displayed and printing is discontinued for 30 seconds or more when one sheet of paper A5 in size or smaller has been printed.
- When [Labels], [Heavyweight], or [Extra Heavyweight] is selected for the paper type, load the paper as . If the paper is loaded as , image quality may deteriorate.
- Depending on the type of the heavyweight paper, paper loaded as  may not be fed to the machine. If it happens, load the paper as .
- Depending on the type of the paper, paper may not be fed to the machine or image quality may deteriorate. In such cases, select [Heavyweight 1] or [Extra Heavyweight].
- If [Lightweight] is selected as the paper type, the temperature of the fuser unit automatically decreases. When the paper is curled or problems occur due to the high temperature of the fuser unit, select [Lightweight].
- Depending on the paper type and conditions, fan the stack of paper before loading it into a paper tray.

## Unusable Paper

Using paper that is not recommended by Fuji Xerox may cause a paper jam or a machine malfunction.

Use paper and OHP films recommended by Fuji Xerox.

- Damp or wet paper
- Paper pre-printed with other printer or copier
- Wrinkled, creased, or ripped paper
- Envelopes that are not flat, or that have clasps
- Color paper with surface treatments
- Paper with rough surface, such as pulp paper or fibrous paper

## Storing and Handling Paper

### ■ Please keep the following points in mind when storing paper

- Store paper inside a cabinet or in other dry place. Paper that has absorbed moisture can cause paper jams and image quality defects.
- After opening a package of paper, wrap up the remaining paper to store it. It is recommended that you include moisture prevention packets.
- Store paper on a flat surface to prevent bends or warping.

### ■ Please adhere to the following when setting paper into the tray

- Align the stack of paper neatly before setting it in the tray.
- Do not use paper that is folded, creased, or heavily warped.
- Do not use waved or curled paper.
- Do not load paper of mixed size together into the tray.
- Transparency paper and label paper can cause paper jams, and multiple sheets can be fed to the printer at once. Be sure to carefully fan these types of paper.
- When continuously outputting onto transparencies, transparency sheets may sometimes stick to each other. Remove transparencies from the output tray every 20 or so sheets, and fan them to cool them down.

## Loading Paper

This section describes how to load paper.

### ■Types of paper loaded in trays

The machine automatically detects the size and orientation of loaded paper in trays. You need to set a paper type, however. Normally, each of the trays is set to plain paper. When loading paper other than plain paper in trays, change the paper type settings. Paper can also be named and set as user-defined paper. Up to five paper types can be set as user-defined paper.

For information on changing the paper type in trays, refer to "Changing the Paper Settings" (P.34).

### ■Automatic Tray Selection

If you set paper source on the [Paper/Output] tab to [Paper Tray] in the PCL print driver's properties screen when making prints, the machine automatically selects the corresponding paper tray according to the size and orientation of the document to print. This is called [Automatic Tray Selection].

When making copies, automatic tray selection is active if [Auto] is selected for [Paper Supply]. If the machine detects two or more corresponding trays in the automatic tray selection, the machine gives higher priority to the tray having the highest [Paper Type Priority] set at [Paper Tray Settings]. During automatic tray selection, trays whose [Paper Type Priority] setting is set to [Auto Paper Off] are not targeted in the automatic tray selection. Also, if the [Paper Type Priority] setting is exactly the same, the tray priority is determined by [Paper Tray Priority].

- Note**
- Depending on the setting of [Auto Paper selects this tray] for paper trays, some trays may not be selected in automatic tray selection. For more information, refer to "Change Settings" (P.94).
  - The Tray 5 (bypass) cannot be selected in the automatic tray selection.
  - When the machine runs out of paper during copying or printing, select the tray containing the paper of the same size and orientation that was being used for copying or printing, and continue copying or printing (Auto Tray Switch feature). During this operation, a tray containing paper of type whose [Paper Type Priority] setting is set to [Auto Paper Off] cannot be switched to.

For information about setting [Paper Type], [Paper Type Priority], [Paper Tray Priority], and setting the paper substitute feature, refer to "Paper Tray Settings" (P.94). The same settings can also be made from CentreWare Internet Services.

### ■Adding paper

When the machine runs out of paper during copying or printing, a message is displayed on the control panel display. Add paper according to the displayed instructions. Copying or printing is automatically resumed when paper is added.

- Note**
- Fan the paper well before loading paper in a tray. It prevents paper from sticking to each other and reduces paper jams.

## Loading Paper in the Trays 1 to 4

The following describes the procedure for loading paper in the Trays 1 to 4.

When the machine runs out of paper during copying or printing, a message is displayed on the touch screen. Add paper according to the displayed instructions. Copying or printing is automatically resumed when paper is supplied.

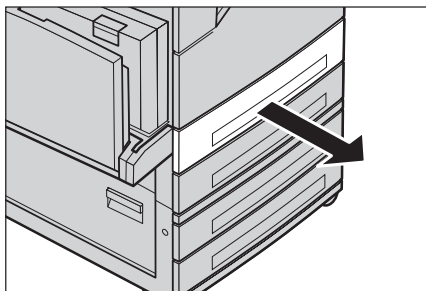
- Note**
- Before loading paper in a tray, fan the paper well. It prevents paper from adhering to each other and reduces paper jams.

For information on changing the paper size and orientation, refer to "Changing the Paper Size for the Trays" (P.32).

- 1 Pull out the tray towards you until it stops.

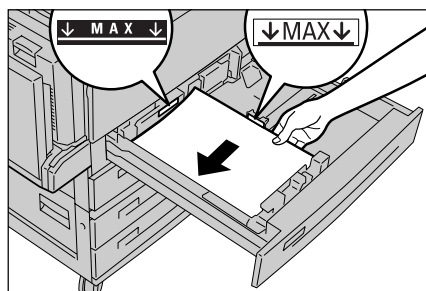
**Important** • While the machine processes a job, do not pull the tray out that the job uses.

- Do not add new paper to the paper on the tray in order to prevent paper jams or making mistakes of paper loading. Remove any paper remaining in the tray and then load the paper on newly loaded paper.



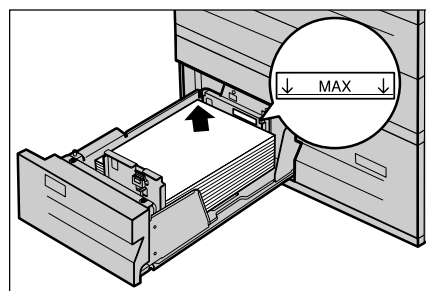
- 2 Load and align the edge of the paper against the left edge of the tray with the side to be copied or printed on face up.

**Important** • Do not load paper exceeding the maximum fill line. It may cause paper jams or machine malfunctions.



When loading paper in the Tandem Tray Module, align the paper against the left back corner of the tray.

**Note** • Non-standard size paper cannot be loaded in the Tandem Tray Module.



- 3 Push the tray in gently until it comes to a stop.

## Loading Paper in the Tray 5 (Bypass)

When printing or copying with paper sizes or types that cannot be set in the Trays 1 to 4, use the Tray 5 (bypass). The following describes how to load paper into Tray 5 (bypass).

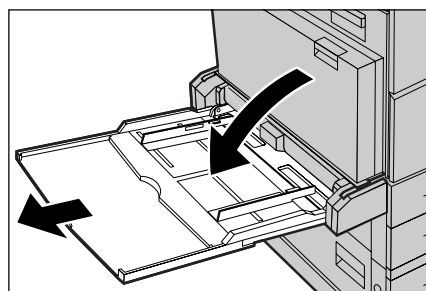
To make detailed instructions during printings, specify the instructions using the [Tray/Output] tab in the print driver. Also specify the type of paper to load here.

**Important** • Do not supply new paper until the loaded paper runs out in order to prevent paper jams or making mistakes of paper loading.

**Note** • Be sure to fan the paper well. Otherwise, paper may cause paper jams, and multiple sheets may be fed into the machine at once.

- 1 Open the Tray 5 (bypass).





**Note** • If necessary, extend the extension flap. The extension flap can be extended in two stages. When pulling out the extension flap, do it gently.

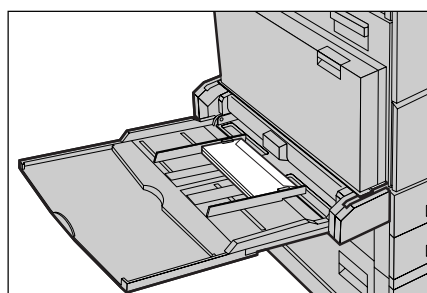
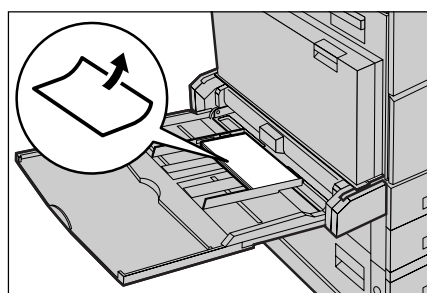
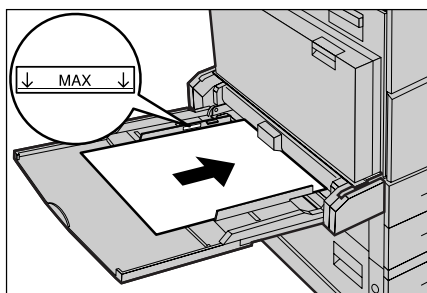




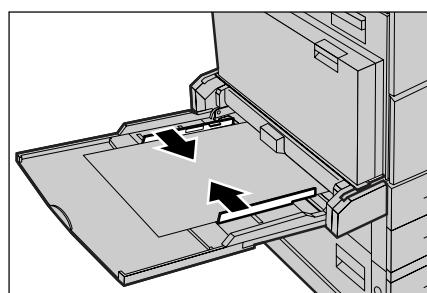
- 2** Load paper with the side to be copied or printed on face down, and insert the paper lightly along the paper guides until it comes to a stop.

**Important** • Do not load mixed paper types into the tray.

- Do not load paper exceeding the maximum fill line. It may cause paper jams or machine malfunctions.
- When [Label], [Heavyweight 1], or [Heavyweight 2] is selected for the paper type, load the paper as . If the paper is loaded as , image quality may deteriorate.
- When making copies or printing on thick-stock paper such as postcards, and the paper is not fed into the machine, apply a curl to the leading edge of the paper as shown in the figure on the right. Note, however, that excessively bending or folding the paper may cause paper jams.
- When loading envelopes, make sure that the flaps are closed, and that the flap side edge feeds first.
- Depending on the type of the heavyweight paper, paper loaded as  may not be fed to the machine. If it happens, load the paper as .
- Depending on the type of the heavyweight paper, paper may not be fed to the machine or image quality may deteriorate.



- 3** Adjust the paper guides to just touch the edges of the paper loaded.



- 4** Select a copy or print job.

## Changing the Paper Size for the Trays

The following describes how to change the paper size for Trays 1 to 4.

**Note** • The paper types for the Trays 1 to 4 are preset. Normally, plain paper is set. When changing the setting to a different paper type, change the paper quality settings to match the type of paper to be loaded to maintain high print quality.

For more information on paper type, refer to "Paper Tray Attributes" (P.94).

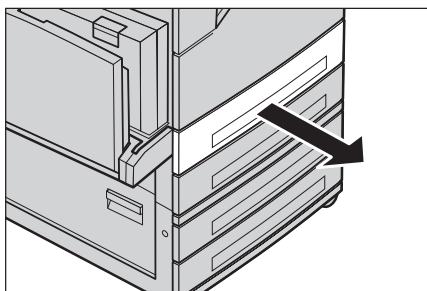
When setting a non-standard size paper, you must register the paper size in advance. For information on registering the paper size, refer to "Paper Size" (P.94).

For information on how to make copies on non-standard size paper, refer to "3 Copy" in the User Guide. For information on how to print on non-standard size paper, refer to the print driver's online help.

- 1** Pull out the tray towards you until it stops.

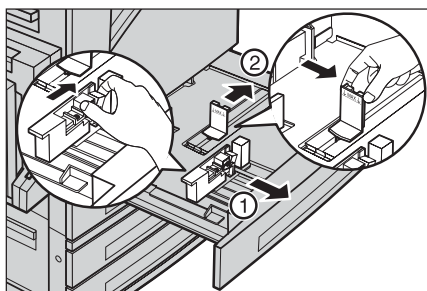
**Important** • While the machine processes a job, do not pull the tray out that the job uses.

- Do not add new paper to the paper on the tray in order to prevent paper jams or making mistakes of paper loading. Remove any paper remaining in the tray and then load the paper on newly loaded paper.



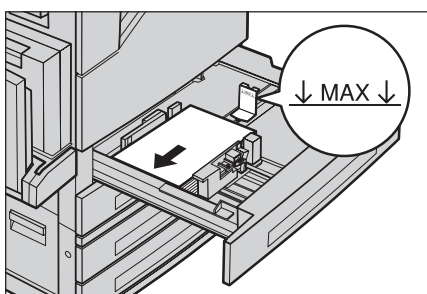
- 2** Remove any paper loaded in the tray.

- 3** Hold the long-side paper guide and slide it towards you (1). Hold the short-side paper guide and slide it rightward (2).



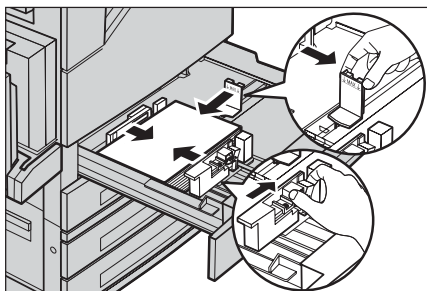
- 4** Load and align the edge of the paper against the left edge of the tray with the side to be copied or printed on face up.

**Important** • Do not load paper exceeding the maximum fill line. It may cause paper jams or machine malfunctions.



- 5** Move the two paper guides while holding their grips so that they lightly contact the edges of the paper.

**Note** • When loading standard size paper in the Tray, move the paper guides to the marks corresponding to the paper size.



**6** Push the tray in gently until it comes to a stop.

**Note** • Affix the paper size label to the front of the paper tray.

**7** When you changed the paper type, set the new paper type for the tray.

For information on setting paper types, refer to "Changing the Paper Settings" (P.34).

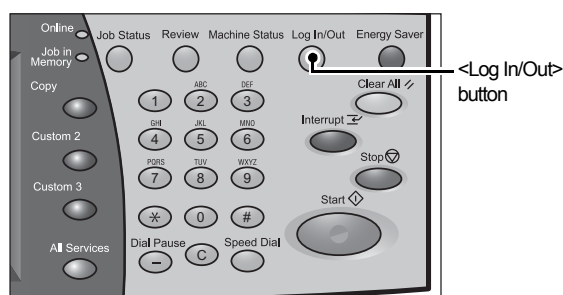
## Changing the Paper Settings

The following describes how to change the paper type for Trays 1 to 4 and how to set image quality processing by individual paper type.

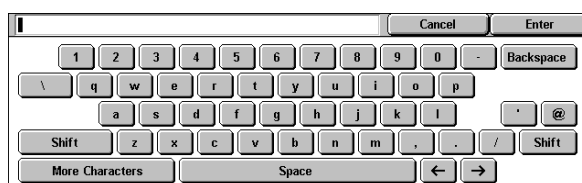
Image quality best suited to the paper type can be obtained by setting the desired image processing to particular paper types.

- Note**
- Users can name Custom 1 to Custom 5 displayed in the paper type. For information on how to set names to Custom 1 to Custom 5, refer to "Custom Paper Name" (P.94).
  - The [Setup] screen, which can be displayed by selecting [Setup] in the [All Services] screen, allows you to change the paper type setting without entering the System Administration mode, if you have configured the settings to do so in advance. For more information, refer to "Paper Tray Attributes on Setup Screen" (P.94)

- 1** Press the <Log In/Out> button.

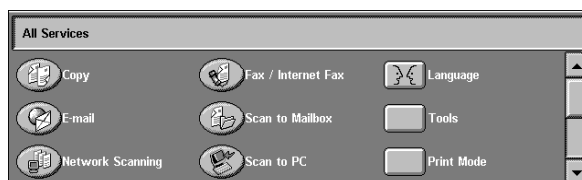


- 2** Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard displayed, and select [Enter].

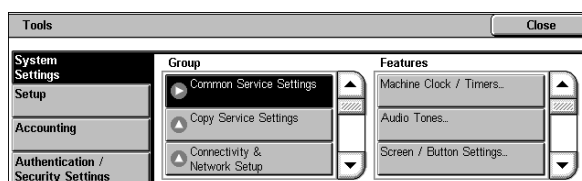


- Note**
- The default user ID is "11111". When using the Authentication feature, a password is required. The default password is "x-admin".

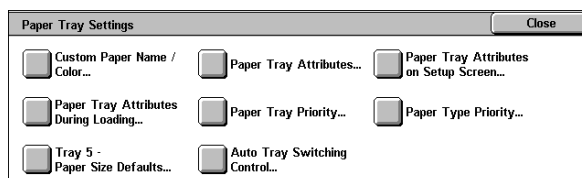
- 3** Select [Tools].



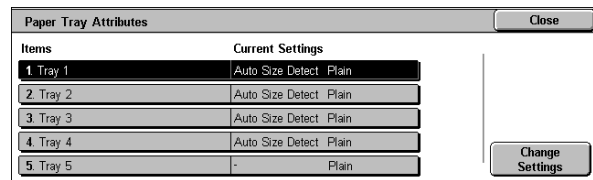
- 4** Select [Paper Tray Settings].



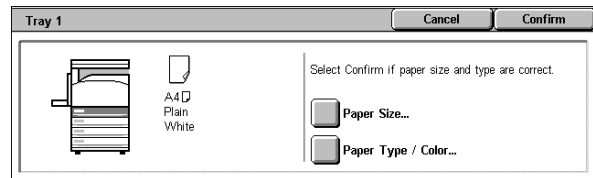
- 5** Select [Paper Tray Attributes].



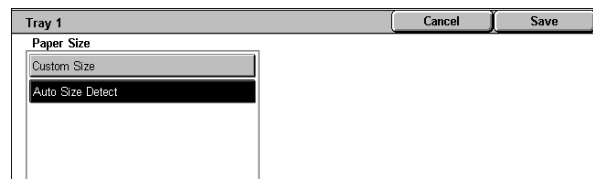
- 6 Select the paper tray whose paper type setting is to be changed at [Items], and select [Change Settings].



- 7 Select the [Paper Size] or [Paper Type/Color].



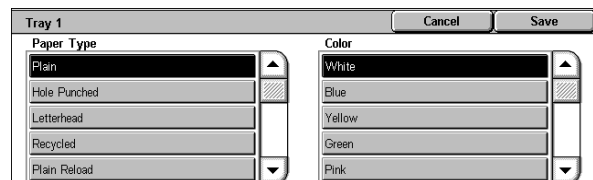
When [Paper Size] is selected



- 8 Select the paper type to be set and then select [Save].

**Note** • Select [▲] to return to the previous screen or [▼] to move to the next screen.

When [Paper Type/Color] is selected



- 9 Make sure on the screen that the paper type you changed is displayed under [Current Settings], and then select [Close].
- 10 Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.
- 11 Select [Close] to return to the [All Services] screen.



# 3 Maintenance

This chapter describes how to replace consumables, clean the machine, print a report/list, and delete the print job with an invalid User ID.

- Replacing Consumables ..... 38
- Cleaning the Machine ..... 50
- Printing a Report/List ..... 53
- Deleting the Private Print Job with an Invalid User ID ..... 54

## Replacing Consumables

The machine is provided with the following consumables and periodical replacement parts. We recommend the use of the following consumables as they have been manufactured to meet the specifications of the machine.

Type of Consumables/ Periodical Replacement Parts	Product Code	Quantity/Box
Toner cartridge (9K)	CT200416	1 unit/box
Toner cartridge (25K)	CT200417	1 unit/box
Drum cartridge (Standard)	CT350769	1 unit/box
Drum cartridge (Long life)	CT350770	1 unit/box
Staple cartridge for A1/B1/C/C1 <sup>*1</sup>	CWAA0540	5,000 staples × 3 sets/box
Staple cartridge for Finisher B1 Booklet <sup>*2</sup>	CWAA0728	2,000 staples × 4 sets/box
Stamp replace kit	F451	-

\*1: For Finisher-A1 and Finisher-B1

\*2: For Finisher-B1 with Booklet Maker

**Note** • We recommend that you always have spare consumables/periodical replacement parts available.

### ■ Handling consumables/periodical replacement parts

- Do not store boxes for consumables/periodical replacement parts upright.
- Do not unpack consumables/periodical replacement parts before use. Avoid storing consumables/periodical replacement parts in the following locations:
  - In extreme temperature and humidity
  - Near heat-generating devices
  - In direct sunlight
  - In dusty locations
- Use consumables/periodical replacement parts only as directed on their packages.
- We recommend always having spare consumables/periodical replacement parts available.
- When calling our Customer Support Center to order consumables/periodical replacement parts, have the product codes ready.
- Use of consumables/periodical replacement parts not recommended by Fuji Xerox can impair machine quality and performance. Use only consumables/periodical replacement parts recommended by Fuji Xerox.

### ■ Checking the status of consumables

The status of consumables can be checked on the [Supplies] screen.

For information about consumables, refer to "Supplies" (P.72).



The following shows the reference section for each item.

Replacing the Toner Cartridges.....	39
Replacing the Drum Cartridge (for customers having a spot maintenance contract) .....	41
Replacing the Staple Cartridge (for Finisher-A1) .....	44
Replacing the Staple Cartridge (for Finisher-B1) .....	45
Replacing the Staple Cartridge (for Booklet Maker Unit for Finisher-B1) .....	47
Emptying the Punch Waste Container (for Finisher-B1) .....	47
Replacing the Stamp Cartridge .....	49

## Replacing the Toner Cartridges

The machine will display the following messages when the toner cartridge is empty. Follow the messages and replace the toner cartridge as necessary.

Message	Page yield after the message is displayed*1	Solution
Please order a new Toner Cartridge.	Approx. 1,000 pages	You do not need to replace the Toner Cartridge now. Order the Toner Cartridge displayed on the screen.
Toner Cartridge needs to be replaced.	-	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.

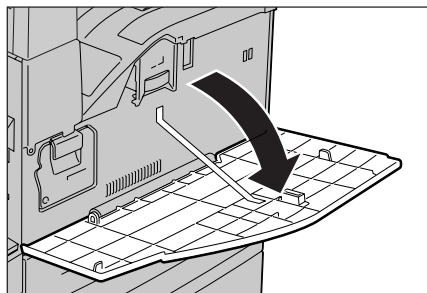
\*1 The page yield after each message is displayed is for when A4 LEF (□) paper is used. The number of pages that you can copy or print is an estimate and varies depending on the conditions such as the print content, dot coverage (area coverage), paper size, paper type, copy/print density, output image type, and the machine usage environment.

### CAUTION

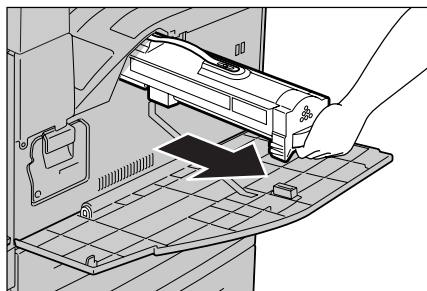
- Keep the drum cartridges and toner cartridges out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows toner, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.
- When replacing drum cartridges and toner cartridges, be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.
- If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water. If you get toner particles in your eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary. If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water. If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.

- Important**
- When replacing the toner cartridge, toner may spill and soil the floor. We recommend laying paper on the floor beforehand.
  - The use of toner cartridges not recommended by Fuji Xerox may impair quality and performance. Use only toner cartridges recommended by Fuji Xerox.
  - When the remaining amount of toner becomes small, the machine may stop during printing and display a message. If this happens, replace the toner cartridge to continue copying or printing.
  - Replace toner cartridges while the machine is on.

- 1 Make sure that the machine is not in operation before opening the front cover.



- 2 Hold the bottom of the toner cartridge and slide it out of the machine.

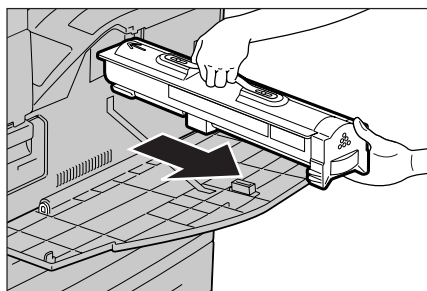


- 3 Hold the toner cartridge by its handle and pull it out slowly.

**⚠ WARNING**

Never throw a toner cartridge into an open flame. Remaining toner in the cartridge may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion.

If you have a used toner cartridge no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.



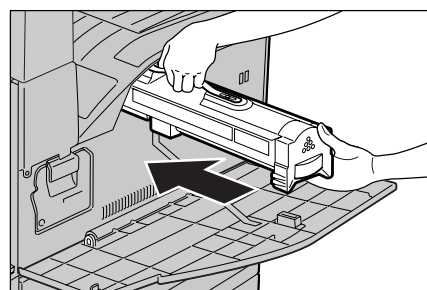
**Important**

- Pull out the toner cartridge gently. Otherwise, toner may fly out of the cartridge.
- Return used toner cartridges to our Customer Support Center.

- 4 Remove the new toner cartridge out of the box and shake it from side to side before removing it out of the bag.
- 5 Hold the toner cartridge by its handle and slide it into the machine until it comes to a stop.

**Note**

- Be sure to insert the toner cartridge into the machine until it clicks into place.



- 6 Close the front cover.

**Note**

- A message will be displayed and the machine will not operate if the front cover is not completely closed.

## Replacing the Drum Cartridge (for customers having a spot maintenance contract)

The drum cartridge is a customer replaceable unit. The machine will display a warning message before the drum reaches the end of life. Order a replacement cartridge now to insure continuous operation.

Message	Number of Pages <sup>*1</sup>	Solution
Please order a Drum Cartridge.	DocuCentre-III 3007: 4,500 pages DocuCentre-III 2007: 4,000 pages	The drum cartridge does not need to be replaced yet. Get a spare of the displayed drum cartridge.
Drum Cartridge needs to be replaced soon.	DocuCentre-III 3007: 1,350 pages DocuCentre-III 2007: 1,200 pages	
Drum Cartridge needs to be replaced.	-	Replace the drum cartridge with a new one.

\*1 Based on the following conditions: (1) 1-sided copying (not printing), (2) average number of pages copied at one time: 3 pages, (3) paper size: A4 LEF (□), (4) paper tray: Tray 1, (5) output tray: Center Output Tray. The values are for reference only and will be affected also by other machine-usage conditions, such as how often the machine is turned on and off. Note that the page yield may be half or less of these values under some conditions.

### CAUTION

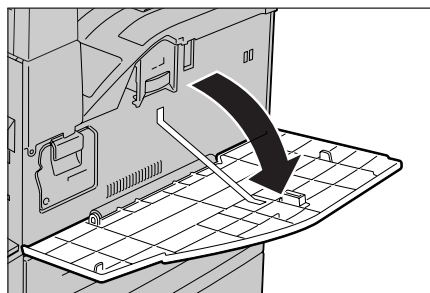
- Keep the drum cartridges and toner cartridges out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows toner, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.
- When replacing drum cartridges and toner cartridges, be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.
- If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water. If you get toner particles in your eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary. If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water. If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.

**Important** • The use of drum cartridges not recommended by Fuji Xerox may impair quality and performance. Use only drum cartridges recommended by Fuji Xerox.

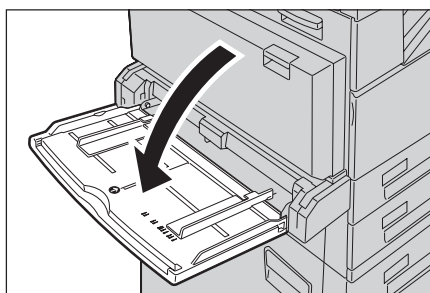
**Note**

- Do not expose drum cartridges to direct sunlight or strong light from indoor fluorescent lighting. Do not touch or scratch the surface of the drum cartridge. Doing so may result in unsatisfactory printing.
- Used drum cartridges require proper disposal. Return all used toner cartridges to our Customer Support Center.
- Replace the drum cartridge while the machine is switched on. If the power is turned off, all information stored to the machine's memory will be erased.

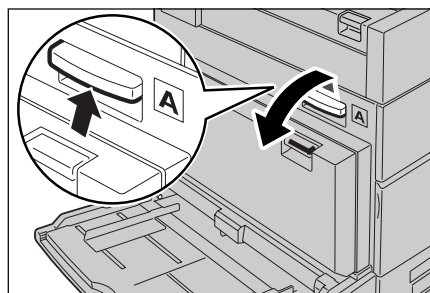
- 1** Make sure that the machine is not in operation, and open the front cover.



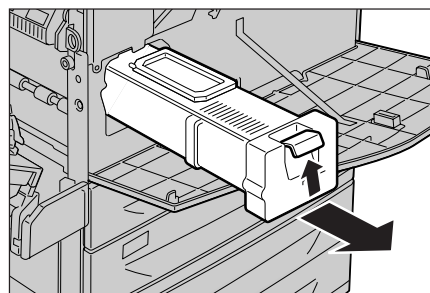
- 2** Open the Tray 5 (bypass).



- 3** Unlock the Cover A by lifting up the release lever on the upper right of the Cover A, and then open the Cover A.

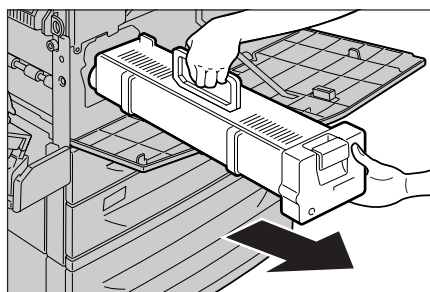


- 4** Lift up the release lever of the drum cartridge, and slide the drum cartridge out until you can lift the handle on top of the drum cartridge.



- 5** Hold the handle and remove the cartridge from the machine.

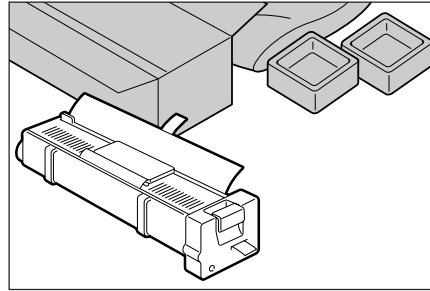
**Important** • Be sure to hold the drum cartridge by its handle when removing it out of the machine. If you do not hold it by its handle, it might fall out of the machine and soil the floor.



- 6** Remove the new drum cartridge from the box.

**Important**

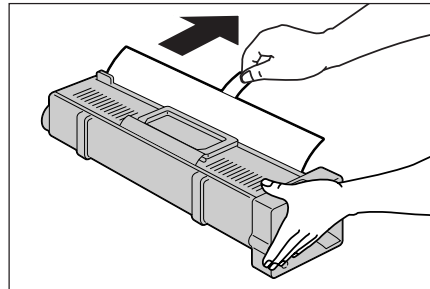
- Do not place the new drum cartridge in an upright position.
- Return used drum cartridges to our Customer Support Center.



- 7** Place the drum cartridge on a flat surface. Undo the sealing tape as shown, and carefully pull it out to remove the protective sheet out of the cartridge.

**Important**

- Be sure to pull the protective sheet out straight and horizontally. If it is pulled out obliquely, it may tear before it is completely out of the cartridge.

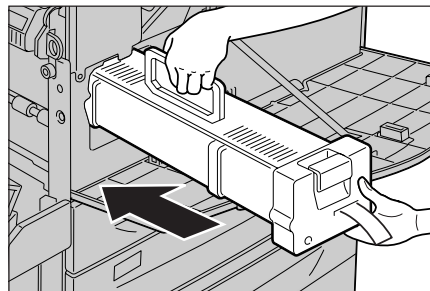


- After pulling out the protective sheet, do not shake the drum cartridge or handle it roughly.

- 8** Hold the drum cartridge by its handle and slide it into the machine until it comes to a stop.

**Note**

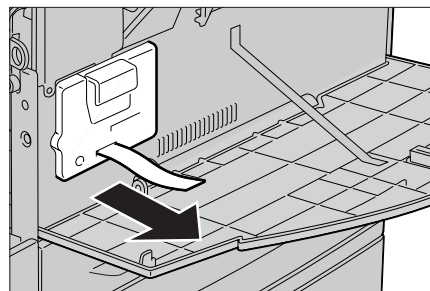
- Be sure it is slid all the way into the machine.



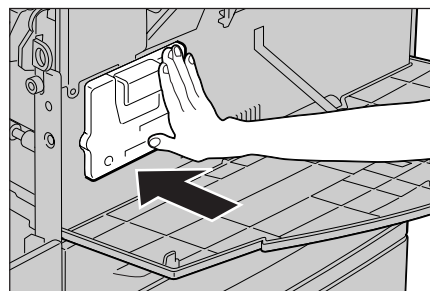
- 9** Pull out the cartridge tape straight toward you and horizontally without tearing.

**Important**

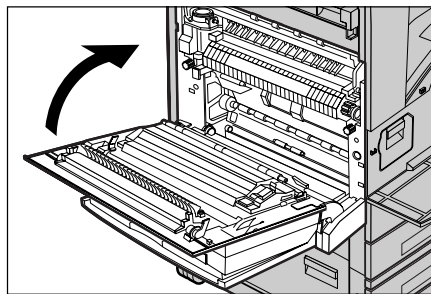
- Be sure to pull the tape out straight and horizontally. If the tape is pulled out obliquely, it may tear before it is completely out of the cartridge.



- 10** Push the drum cartridge again so that it is correctly placed.



- 11** Close the Cover A tightly.



- 12** Close the Tray 5 (bypass).

- 13** Close the front cover.

**Note** • A message will be displayed and the machine will not operate if the front cover is not completely closed.

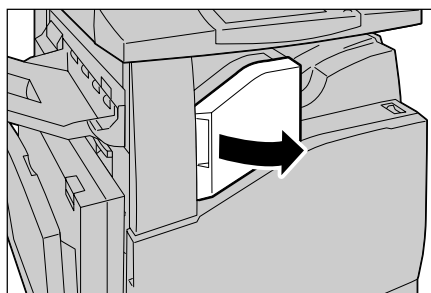
## Replacing the Staple Cartridge (for Finisher-A1)

When the Finisher-A1 (optional) is installed and it is time to replace the staple cartridge, a message appears on the touch screen. When this message appears, load a new staple case into the staple cartridge.

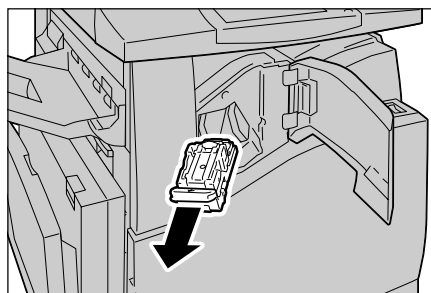
**Important** • The use of staple cartridges not recommended by Fuji Xerox may impair quality and performance. Use only staple cartridges recommended by Fuji Xerox for the machine.

**Note** • To order a staple cartridge, contact our Customer Support Center.

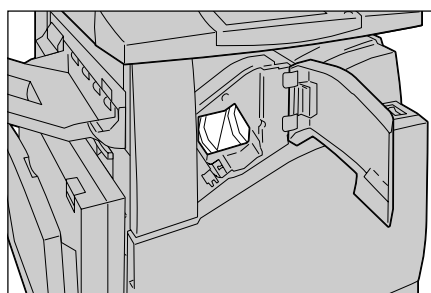
- 1** Make sure that the machine is not operating, and open the front cover of the finisher.



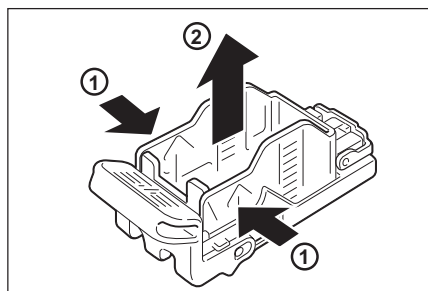
- 2** Take the staple cartridge out of the finisher.



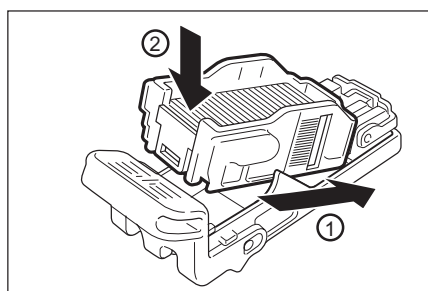
- 3** After removing the staple cartridge, check the inside of the finisher for any remaining staples.



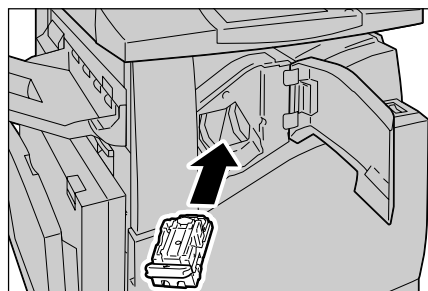
- 4** Pinch both sides of the empty staple case with your fingers (1), and remove the staple case from the cartridge (2).



- 5** Insert the front side of the new staple case into the staple cartridge (1), and then push the rear side into the cartridge (2).



- 6** Return the staple cartridge to its original position.



- 7** Close the front cover of the finisher.

**Note** • If the front cover of the finisher is not completely closed, a message will appear and the machine will not operate.

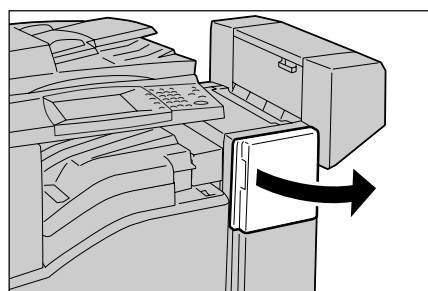
## Replacing the Staple Cartridge (for Finisher-B1)

When the Finisher-B1 (optional) is installed and it is time to replace the staple cartridge, a message appears on the touch screen. When this message appears, load a new staple case into the staple cartridge.

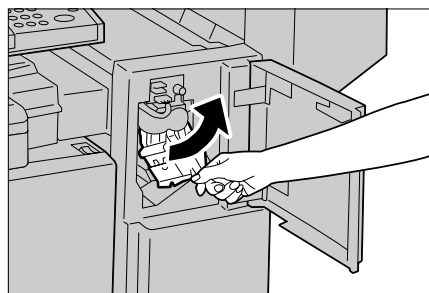
**Important** • The use of staple cartridges not recommended by Fuji Xerox may impair quality and performance. Use only staple cartridges recommended by Fuji Xerox for the machine.

**Note** • To order a staple cartridge, contact our Customer Support Center.

- 1** Make sure that the machine is not operating, and open the front cover of the finisher.



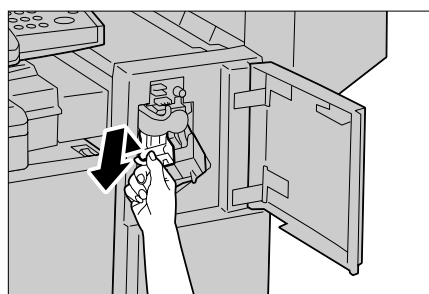
- 2** Hold the staple cartridge by Lever R1 and pull the staple cartridge holder to the right.



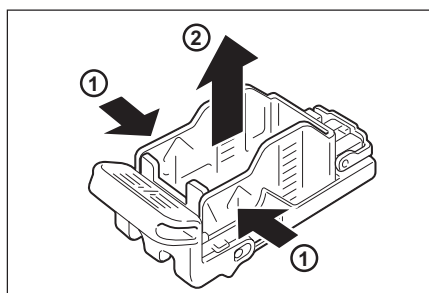
- 3** Hold the staple cartridge holder by the orange lever and remove it from the finisher.

**Note**

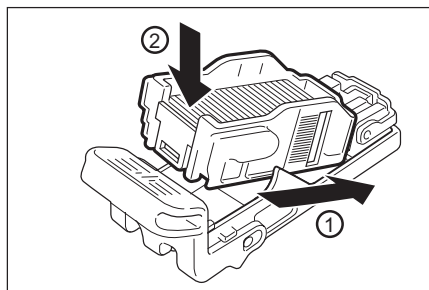
- The staple cartridge is firmly inserted. A slight force is required to pull the cartridge out of the finisher.



- 4** Pinch both sides of the empty staple case with your fingers (1), and remove the staple case from the cartridge (2).



- 5** Insert the front side of the new staple case into the staple cartridge (1), and then push the rear side into the cartridge (2).



- 6** Hold the staple cartridge by the orange lever, and insert it into the finisher until it clicks.



- 7** Close the front cover of the finisher.

**Note**

- If the front cover of the finisher is not completely closed, a message will appear and the machine will not operate.



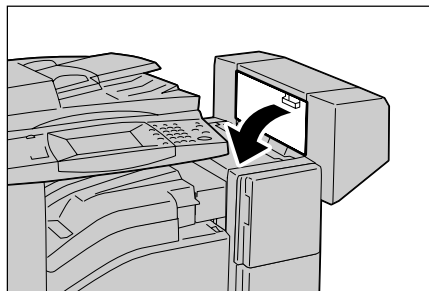
## Replacing the Staple Cartridge (for Booklet Maker Unit for Finisher-B1)

When the Booklet Maker Unit for Finisher-B1 (optional) is installed and it is time to replace the staple cartridge, a message appears on the touch screen. When this message appears, load a new staple case into the staple cartridge.

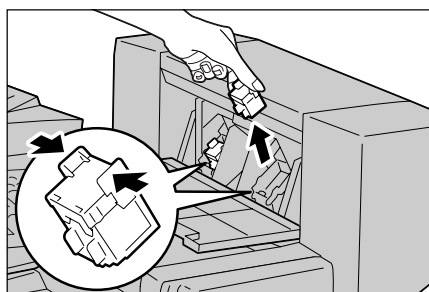
**Important** • The use of staple cartridges not recommended by Fuji Xerox may impair quality and performance. Use only staple cartridges recommended by Fuji Xerox for the machine.

**Note** • To order a staple cartridge, contact our Customer Support Center.

- 1 Make sure that the machine is not operating, and open the side cover of the finisher.

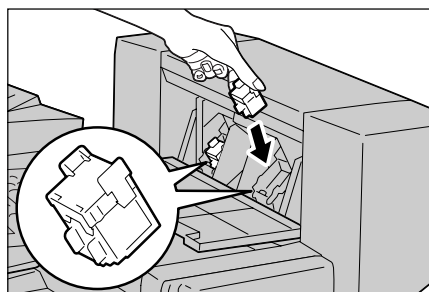


- 2 Hold the tabs on both sides of the staple cartridge and pull the cartridge out of the finisher.



- 3 Hold the tabs on both sides of a new staple cartridge, and insert it into the original position until it clicks.

**Note** • If you have trouble inserting the cartridge, make sure that the staples in the cartridge are properly in place.



- 4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to replace the other staple cartridge.

- 5 Close the side cover of the finisher.

**Note** • If the side cover of the finisher is not completely closed, a message will appear and the machine will not operate.

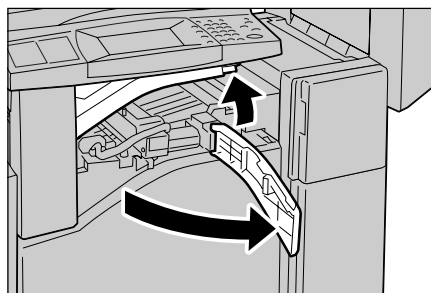
## Emptying the Punch Waste Container (for Finisher-B1)

When the hole punch waste container becomes full, a message appears on the touch screen. When the message is displayed, empty the hole punch waste container as instructed.

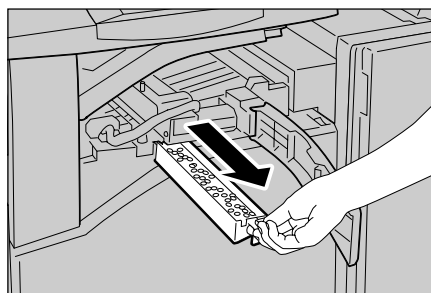
Make sure to discard all paper chads when emptying the hole punch waste container. If you do not empty the container completely, the container becomes full before the message stating to empty the container appears again, and this can cause a breakdown of the machine.

**Important** • Make sure you empty the hole punch waste container when the power is on. If you empty the container when the power is off, the machine will not recognize that the container has been emptied.

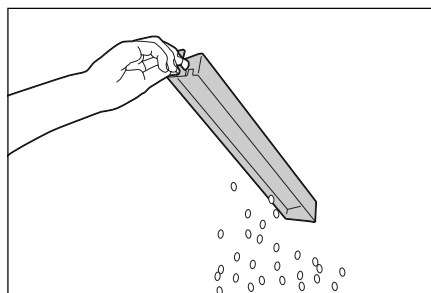
- 1** Make sure that the machine is not operating, and lift the top cover and open the front transport cover of the finisher.



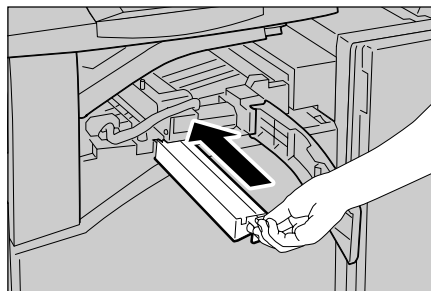
- 2** Pull out the hole punch waste container.



- 3** Empty the container.



- 4** Insert the empty hole punch waste container all the way into the finisher.



- 5** Close the front transport cover and the top cover of the finisher.

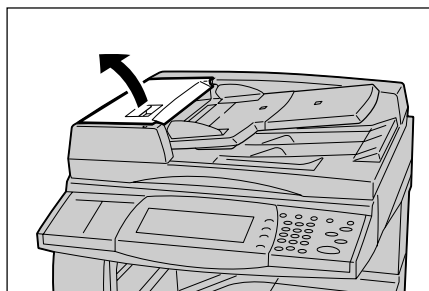
**Note** • If the front cover of the finisher is not completely closed, a message will appear and the machine will not operate.

## Replacing the Stamp Cartridge

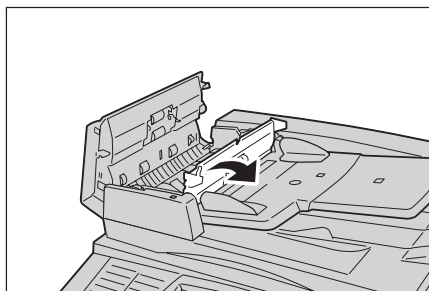
If the machine offers the Fax service, replace the stamp cartridge when stamp impressions start to fade.

- Important**
- Do not touch the ink pad of the stamp cartridge. If it comes into contact with your skin, wash immediately.
  - Problems caused by using consumables not recommended by Fuji Xerox are not covered by the maintenance service contract.
  - Before using consumables, carefully read the instructions and precautions on the packaging.
- Note**
- We recommend having spare consumables ready.
  - To order a stamp cartridge, contact our Customer Support Center.  
(Product name: Stamp Replacement Kit (red), Product code: F451)

- 1** Pull up the knob on the left cover of the document feeder, and open the document feeder cover completely.

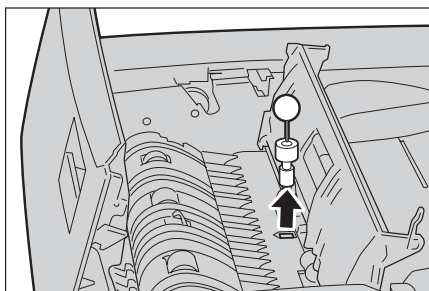


- 2** Pull up the green lever to open the inner cover.

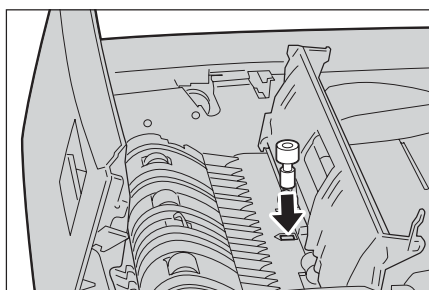


- 3** Stick the supplied pin into the old stamp cartridge, and pull it straight out of the machine.

- Note**
- If only the sponge part of the stamp cartridge is removed, make sure to remove the bottom part of it also.



- 4** Insert the new stamp cartridge in the machine.



- 5** Close the inner cover, and then close the document feeder cover until it clicks into place.

## Cleaning the Machine

The following describes how to clean the machine such as the machine exterior, document cover, document feeder, and document glass.

### **⚠ WARNING**

When cleaning this product, use the designated cleaning materials exclusive to it. Other cleaning materials may result in poor performance of the product. Never use aerosol cleaners, or it may catch fire and cause explosion.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

When cleaning this product, always switch off and unplug it. Access to a live machine interior may cause electric shock.

## Cleaning the Exterior

The following describes how to clean the exterior of the machine.

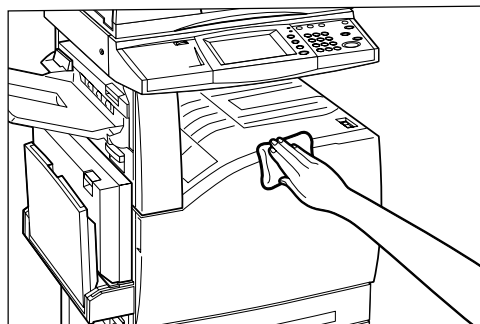
- Important**
- Do not use benzene, paint thinner, or other volatile liquids or spray insect repellent on the machine as they might discolor, deform, or crack covers.
  - Cleaning the machine with an excessive amount of water may cause the machine to malfunction or damage documents during copying.

- 1** Wipe the exterior with a firmly wrung soft cloth moistened with water.

- Important**
- Do not use cleaning agents other than water or neutral detergent.

- Note**
- If dirt does not come off easily, gently wipe it with a soft cloth moistened with a small amount of neutral detergent.

- 2** Wipe off any excess water with a soft cloth.



## Cleaning the Document Cover and Document Glass

If the document cover and document glass are dirty, streaks or smears may appear on copies and the machine may not properly detect document sizes.

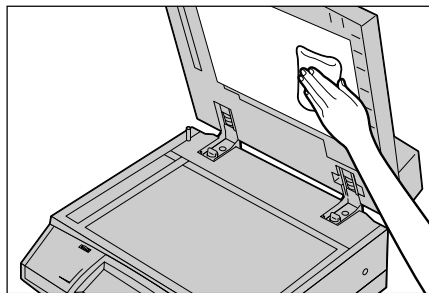
To ensure clean copies at all times, clean the document cover and the document roller about once a month.

- Important**
- Do not use benzene, paint thinner, or other organic solvents. Doing so might damage paint or coating on plastic parts.
  - Cleaning the machine with an excessive amount of water may cause the machine to malfunction or damage documents during copying.

- 1 Wipe the document cover with a soft cloth moistened with water to remove any dirt and then wipe it with a soft, dry cloth.

**Important** • Do not use cleaning agents other than water or neutral detergent.

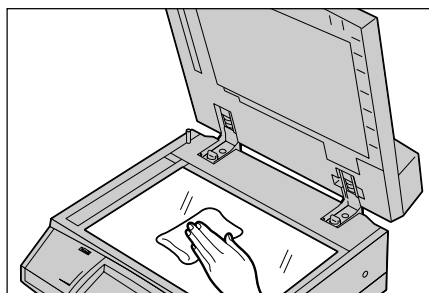
**Note** • If dirt does not come off easily, gently wipe it with a soft cloth moistened with a small amount of neutral detergent.



- 2 Wipe the document glass with a soft cloth moistened with water to remove any dirt, and then wipe it with a soft, dry cloth.

**Important** • Do not use cleaning agents other than water or neutral detergent.

**Note** • If dirt does not come off easily, gently wipe it with a soft cloth moistened with a small amount of neutral detergent.



## Cleaning the Film and Constant Velocity Transport Glass

Dirt or smudges on the film or constant velocity transport glass can cause streaks or smears on outputs.

To ensure clean copies at all times, clean the machine about once a month.

**Important** • Do not use benzene, paint thinner, or other organic solvents. Doing so might damage paint or coating on plastic parts.

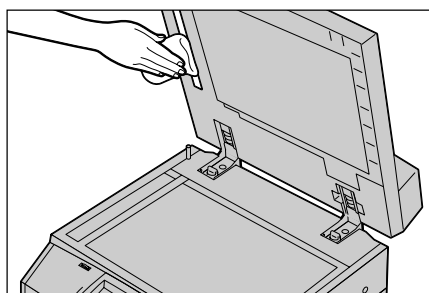
• Cleaning the machine with an excessive amount of water may cause the machine to malfunction or damage documents during copying.

- 1 With a soft cloth moistened with water, wipe the film, constant velocity transport glass, and guide, and then wipe off the excess water with a soft dry cloth.

**Important** • Do not press the film with an excessive force as it can be easily damaged.

• Do not use cleaning agents other than water or neutral detergent.

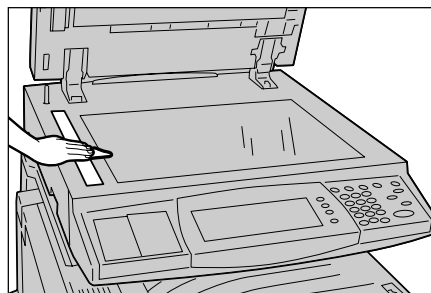
**Note** • If dirt does not come off easily, gently wipe it with a soft cloth moistened with a small amount of neutral detergent.



- 2** Wipe the constant velocity transport glass with a soft cloth moistened with water to remove any dirt, and then wipe it with a soft dry cloth.

**Important** • Do not use cleaning agents other than water or neutral detergent.

**Note** • If dirt does not come off easily, gently wipe it with a soft cloth moistened with a small amount of neutral detergent.



## Cleaning the Document Feeder Rollers

Dirt or smudges on the document feeder rollers can cause paper jams, or streaks or smears on outputs.

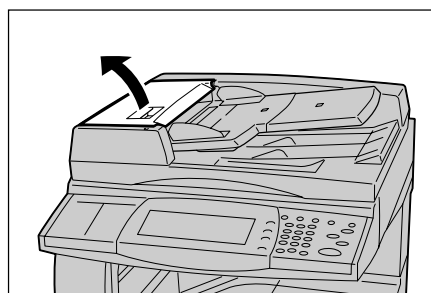
To ensure clean copies at all times, clean the document feeder roller about once a month.

**Important** • Do not use benzene, paint thinner, or other organic solvents. Doing so might damage paint or coating on plastic parts.

• Cleaning the machine with an excessive amount of water may cause the machine to malfunction or damage documents during copying or printing.

- 1** Pull up the knob on the left cover of the document feeder, and open the document feeder cover completely.

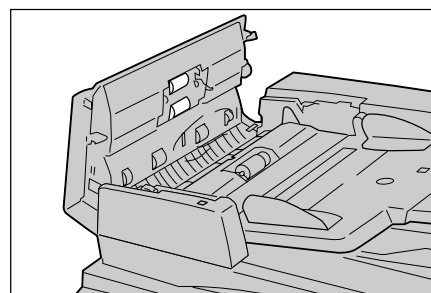
**Note** • When you fully open the cover, it enters a fixed position. Open the cover gently.



- 2** While turning the rollers, wipe them with a soft cloth moistened with water.

**Important** • Do not use cleaning agents other than water or neutral detergent.

• Use a cloth firmly wrung to prevent water drops from falling into the machine. If water gets into the machine, it may cause machine malfunction.



**Note** • If dirt does not come off easily, gently wipe it with a soft cloth moistened with a small amount of neutral detergent.

- 3** Close the left cover of the document feeder until it clicks into place.

## Printing a Report/List

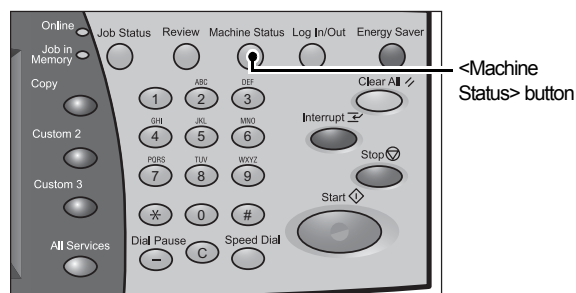
You can print a report/list to check the settings and communication status.

This section describes how to print a report/ list.

For information about report/list types, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

**Note** • When the <Job in Memory> indicator is lit, you can confirm the documents stored to memory in the [Stored Documents List].

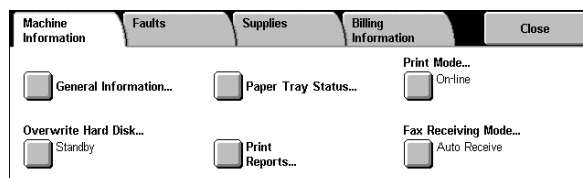
- 1 Press the <Machine Status> button.



- 2 Select [Print Reports].

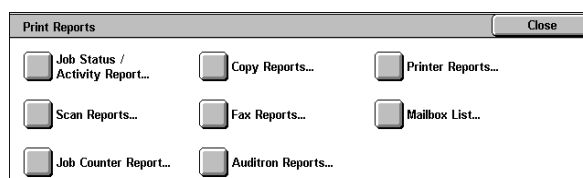
**Note** • If [Print Reports Button] under [Reports] is set to [Disabled], the [Print Reports] button appears only in [User Mode] of the System Administration mode. For information on [Reports], refer to "Reports" (P.96).

• If printing [Billing Data List] or [Fax Auditron Administration Report], insert a card to the machine before instructing to print.



- 3 Select a report or list you want to print and press the <Start> button.

**Note** • The items displayed vary depending on the optional features installed.



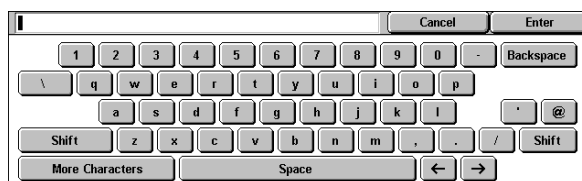
## Deleting the Private Print Job with an Invalid User ID

When the Private Charge Print feature is used, all the print jobs that have a User ID regardless whether it is valid User ID or not are stored with the Private Charge Print feature. To minimize the unnecessary print jobs, specify how long print jobs can be saved for, so that they can be automatically deleted after a specified period of time. Or the system administrator can manually delete them.

The following describes how to delete documents that have an invalid User ID stored with the Private Charge Print feature.

For details on how to specify a duration of how long the print jobs are kept, refer to "Stored Document Settings" (P.153).

- 1 Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2 Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed, and select [Enter].

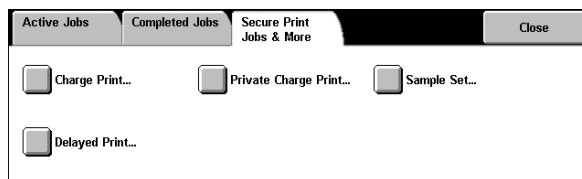


When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note**

- The default user ID is "11111".
- The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3 Press the <Job Status> button.
- 4 Select the [Secure Print Jobs & More] tab.
- 5 Select [Private Charge Print].
- 6 Select the User ID to be deleted, and then select [Document List].
- 7 Select the document to be deleted, and then select [Delete].





# 4 Machine Status

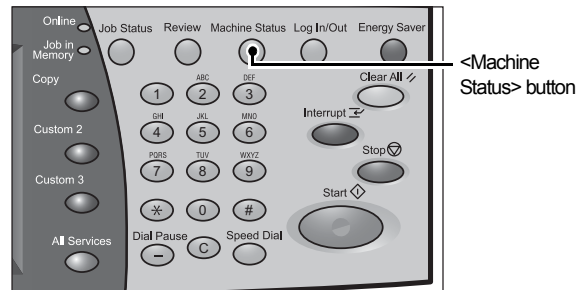
This chapter describes the features for checking the machine status.

• Overview of Machine Status .....	56
• Machine Information .....	57
• Faults .....	71
• Supplies .....	72
• Billing Information .....	73

## Overview of Machine Status

You can check machine status and the number of printed pages on the screen. You can also print various reports/lists to check the job history, settings and registered information.

- 1 Press the <Machine Status> button.



The [Machine Status] screen offers the following features.

### ■ Machine Information

You can check the machine configuration, paper tray status, and hard disk overwriting status. You can check or set print modes. You can also print various reports/lists to check the job history, settings and registered information.

For more information, refer to "Machine Information" (P.57).

### ■ Faults

You can check the faults that occurred on the machine.

For more information, refer to "Faults" (P.71).

### ■ Supplies

You can check the status of consumables.

For more information, refer to "Supplies" (P.72).

### ■ Billing Information

You can check the number of pages printed by meter (meters 1 to 4).

For more information, refer to "Billing Information" (P.73).

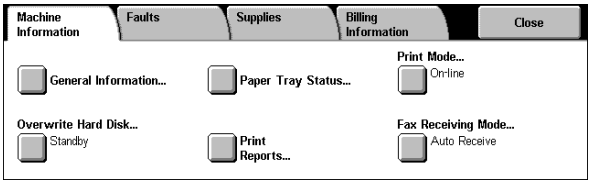
# Machine Information

On the [Machine Information] screen, you can check the machine configuration and paper tray status. You can change settings for the print mode. You can also print various reports/lists to check the job history, settings and registered information.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

General Information .....	57
Paper Tray Status .....	58
Print Reports.....	59
Automatically Printed Reports/Lists .....	66
Overwrite Hard Disk .....	67
Print Mode.....	68
Fax Receiving Mode .....	70

- 1 Press the <Machine Status> button.
- 2 On the [Machine Information] screen displayed, you can check the machine status.



## General Information

On the [General Information] screen, you can check the serial number of the machine, machine configuration, and software version.

- 1 Check the machine information in a screen displayed.
  - For inquiry on maintenance and operation  
Indicates how to make maintenance and operating inquiries.
  - Machine Serial Number  
Indicates the serial number of the machine.
  - IP Address  
Indicates the IP address of the machine.
  - Machine Configuration  
Displays the [Machine Configuration] screen.  
For more information, refer to "[Machine Configuration] Screen" (P.57).
  - Software Version  
Displays the [Software Version] screen.  
For more information, refer to "[Software Version] Screen" (P.58).

### [Machine Configuration] Screen

You can check the machine configuration.

- 1 Select [Machine Configuration].
- 2 Check the machine configuration in a screen displayed.

**Note** • Select [▲] to return to the previous screen or [▼] to move to the next screen.

Machine Configuration		Close
Items	Status	
1. Configuration Code	HB	▲
2. Document Feeder	Installed	
3. Paper Tray	4 Tray Configuration	
4. Left Top Tray	Installed	
5. Center Tray	Extra Tray for Standard Output	▼

On the [Machine Configuration] screen, you can check the following items.

- Configuration Code
- Document Feeder
- Paper Tray
- Offset stacking module
- Left Top Tray
- Output Device
- Booklet Maker
- Stamp
- PCL
- Duplex Module
- Hard Disk
- Page Memory Size
- System Memory Size
- PostScript
- Side Output Tray
- ESC/P
- HP-GL/2
- PDF
- XPS
- KS5843
- KSSM
- KS5895
- USB
- Fax Main Board
- Fax Extended Board 1

**Note** • [Output Device] indicates whether or not a finisher (optional) is installed. If Finisher is installed, it is displayed as "Finisher".

## [Software Version] Screen

You can check the software version.

- 1 Select [Software Version].
- 2 Check the software version in a screen displayed.

Software Version		Close
Items	Status	
1. Controller ROM	2100.0.0	▲
2. IOT ROM	35450.0.0	
3. Finisher B ROM	2324.250.0.0	
4. IIT ROM	1000.255.0.0	
5. IIT Option ROM	255.0.100.0.0	▼

On the [Software Version] screen, you can check the following items.

- Controller ROM
- IOT ROM
- Finisher A ROM
- Finisher B ROM
- IIT ROM
- IIT Option ROM
- ADF ROM
- SJFI
- SSMI

## Paper Tray Status

You can check the paper trays set on the machine. On the screen, you can check the following items.

- Status
- % Full
- Paper Size

- Paper Type

- 1 Select [Paper Tray Status].
- 2 Check the paper trays in a screen displayed.

Paper Tray Status					Close
Tray	Status	% Full	Paper Size	Paper Type	
Tray 1	Ready	100%	A4	Plain	
Tray 2	Ready	25%	A3	Plain	
Tray 3	Ready	75%	8.5 x 11	Plain	
Tray 4	Ready	50%	A4	Plain	
Tray 5	-	-	Auto Size Detect	Plain	

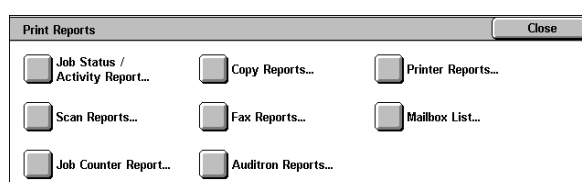
## Print Reports

This section describes how to print a report/list.

**Note** • The items displayed vary depending on the optional features installed.

- 1 Select [Print Reports].
- 2 Select the report/list to be output.

**Note** • The image shown right appears when the System Administration mode is selected.

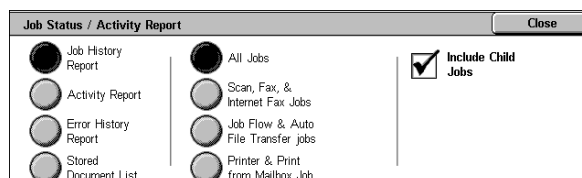


## Job Status/Activity Report

- 1 Select [Job Status/Activity Report].

**Note** • To display the [Job Status/Activity Report] screen, select the <Machine Status> button, and then select [Machine Information] > [Print Reports] > [Job Status/Activity Report].

- 2 Select the report/list to be output.
- 3 Press the <Start> button.



### ■ Job History Report

You can check job results. The data for the latest 200 jobs is printed. Select the option for the report to print from [All Jobs], [Scan, Fax, & Internet Fax Jobs], [Job Flow & Auto File Transfer Jobs], or [Printer & Print from Mailbox Job].

Clearing the [Include Child Jobs] check box prints the related jobs (such as job flow jobs) on one line. Selecting this check box prints each related job on each line.

You can also automatically print a [Job History Report] every 50 jobs.

For information about the Auto Print setting, refer to "Reports" (P.96). The Auto Print feature prints the results of all jobs.

### ■ Activity Report

You can check whether transmissions completed successfully or not. The activity results are organized by remote terminal names or by whether they are transmissions or receptions.

The following activities are not included in [Activity Report].

- Redialed transmissions and pollings.
- When a document is deleted while it is waiting to be transmitted or to be redialed.
- When the power is shut off, or when a system error occurs during an activity.

You can also have the [Activity Report] printed automatically for every 100 activities.  
For how to configure, refer to "Reports" (P.96).  
For more information about the Activity Report, refer to "Activity Report" (P.472).

### ■Error History Report

You can print error information about the machine. The latest 50 errors are printed.

### ■Stored Document List

A list of the uncompleted jobs (documents of which transmissions/receptions are incomplete, or those that are stored for polling) stored in mailboxes are printed.

## Copy Reports

### 1 Select [Copy Reports].

**Note** • To display the [Copy Settings] screen, select the <Machine Status> button, and then select [Machine Information] > [Print Reports] > [Copy Reports].

### 2 Select [Configuration Report].

### 3 Press the <Start> button.



### ■Configuration Report

You can check the hardware configuration, network information, and print and copy settings of the machine.

**Note** • The content of [Configuration Report] is identical whether it is printed from [Copy Reports], [Printer Reports], [Scan Reports], or [Fax Reports].

## Printer Reports

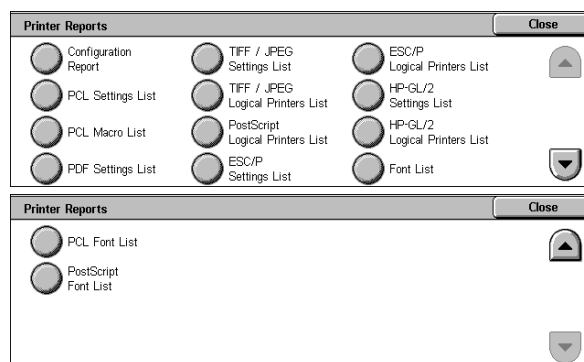
### 1 Select [Printer Reports].

**Note** • To display the [Printer Reports] screen, select the <Machine Status> button, and then select [Machine Information] > [Print Reports] > [Printer Reports].

### 2 Select the list to be printed.

### 3 Press the <Start> button.

**Note** • The items displayed vary depending on the options installed.



### ■Configuration Report

Allows you to check the hardware configuration, network information, and print and copy settings of the machine.

**Note** • The content of [Configuration Report] is identical whether it is printed from [Copy Reports], [Printer Reports], [Scan Reports], or [Fax Reports].

### ■PCL Settings List

Prints the settings for the PCL virtual printer.

**■PCL Macro List**

Prints the list of forms registered for PCL.

**■PDF Settings List**

Prints the settings configured in the PDF printer mode.

**■TIFF / JPEG Settings List**

Prints the settings configured in the TIFF and JPEG printer mode.

**■TIFF/JPEG Logical Printers List**

Prints the list of logical printers created in the TIFF and JPEG printer mode.

TIFF and JPEG logical printers are configured on CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the online help of CentreWare Internet Services.

**■PostScript Logical Printers List**

Prints the list of logical printers created in PostScript.

PostScript logical printers are configured on CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the online help of CentreWare Internet Services.

**■ESC/P Settings List**

Prints the settings configured in the ESC/P-K emulation mode.

**■ESC/P Logical Printers List**

Prints the stored programming settings configured in the ESC/P-K emulation mode.

**■HP-GL/2 Settings List**

Prints the settings for the HP-GL, HP-GL/2 and HP-RTL emulation modes.

**■HP-GL/2 Logical Printers List**

Prints the stored programming settings for the HP-GL, HP-GL/2, and HP-RTL emulation modes.

**■KS5843 Settings List**

Prints the settings configured in the KS5843 emulation mode.

**■KSSM Settings List**

Prints the settings configured in the KSSM emulation mode.

**■KS5895 Settings List**

Prints the settings configured in the KS5895 emulation mode.

**■Font List**

Prints the list of fonts available on the machine.

**Note** • Printed information depends on the installed options.

To print the following lists, the PostScript 3 Kit (optional) needs to be installed.

- PostScript Logical Printers List
- PostScript Font List

**■PCL Font List**

Prints the fonts available in PCL.

### ■PostScript Font List

Prints the fonts available in PostScript.

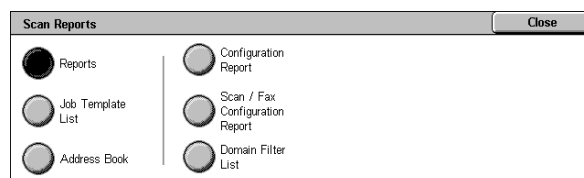
## Scan Reports

### 1 Select [Scan Reports].

**Note** • To display the [Scan Reports] screen, select the <Machine Status> button, and then select [Machine Information] > [Print Reports] > [Scan Reports].

### 2 Select the list to be printed.

### 3 Press the <Start> button.



### ■Reports

You can print the [Configuration Report], [Scan/Fax Configuration Report], and [Domain Filter List]. Select the list to be printed, then press the <Start> button.

#### • Configuration Report

You can check the hardware configuration, network information, and print and copy settings of the machine.

**Note** • The content of [Configuration Report] is identical whether it is printed from [Copy Reports], [Printer Reports], [Scan Reports], or [Fax Reports].

#### • Scan/Fax Configuration Report

You can check the settings configured for the scan features.

#### • Domain Filter List

You can check the permitted domains registered for domain filtering.

### ■Job Template List

You can print the settings for the server where the job templates, which are created using scan service setting tools, are stored.

### ■Address Book

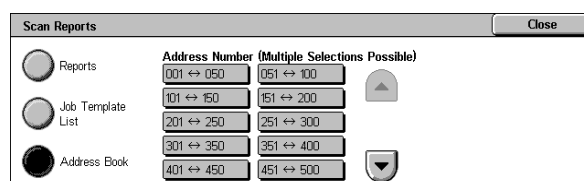
You can check the settings for the address numbers.

When you specify a range of address numbers, the list of settings for the specified address numbers will be printed. Each page contains the settings information on 50 address numbers.

### 1 Select [Address Book].

### 2 Specify a range of address numbers to be printed.

### 3 Press the <Start> button.



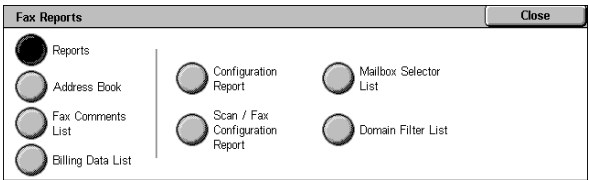
## Fax Reports

### 1 Select [Fax Reports]

**Note** • To display the [Fax Reports] screen, select the <Machine Status> button, and then select [Machine Information] > [Print Report] > [Fax Report].



- 1 Select the list to be printed.
- 2 Press the <Start> button.



■Reports

You can print the [Configuration Report], [Scan/Fax Configuration Report], [Mailbox Selector List], and [Domain Filter List]. Select the list to be printed, then press the <Start> button.

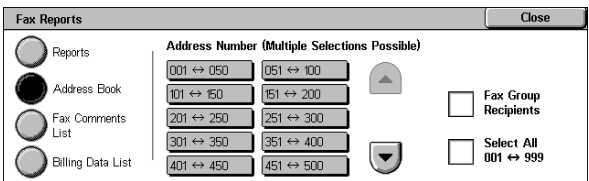
- Configuration Report  
You can check the hardware configuration, network information, print settings, and copy settings of the machine.  
**Note** • The content of [Configuration Report] is identical whether it is printed from [Copy Reports], [Printer Reports], [Scan Reports], or [Fax Reports].
- Scan/Fax Configuration Report  
You can check the settings configured for the fax and scan features.  
**Note** • The content of [Scan/Fax Configuration Report] is identical whether it is printed from [Scan Reports], or [Fax Reports].
- Mailbox Selector List  
You can check the settings for the mailbox sorting feature.
- Domain Filter List  
You can check the permitted domains registered for domain filtering.

■Address Book

You can check the settings for the address numbers, fax group recipients, and relay stations.

When you specify a range of address numbers, the list of settings for the specified address numbers (3 pages) and relay stations (1 page) will be printed. Each page contains the settings information on 50 address numbers.

If you select [Address Book], the screen for specifying a range of address numbers is displayed. Select a range of numbers, and press the <Start> button.



- Fax Group Recipients  
You can print the list of settings for Fax Group Recipients only.
- Select All  
You can print the list of settings for all address numbers, fax group recipients, and relay stations.

■Fax Comments List

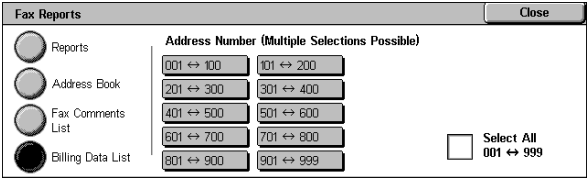
You can check the registered comments to be used on cover notes.

■Billing Data List

You can check the status of the billing data.

**Note** • [Billing Data List] appears when the auditoron mode for the fax service is enabled.

If you select [Billing Data List], the following screen for specifying a range of address numbers is displayed. Select a range of numbers, and press the <Start> button.



- Select All
- You can print the list of all billing data.

**Mailbox List**

Prints the list of mailbox settings and the procedure for saving documents to mailboxes.

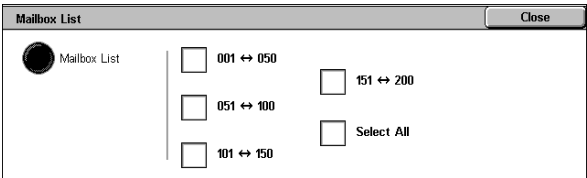
**Note** • [Mailbox List] appears when the System Administration mode is selected.

**1** Select [Mailbox List].

**Note** • To display the [Mailbox List] screen, select the <Machine Status> button, and then select [Machine Information] > [Print Reports] > [Mailbox List].

**2** Select a range of mailbox numbers to be printed.

**3** Press the <Start> button.



**Job Counter Report**

Prints the counter report for each feature.

**Note** • [Job Counter Report] appears only when the System Administration mode is selected.

**1** Select [Job Counter Report].

**Note** • To display the [Job Counter Report] screen, select the <Machine Status> button, and then select [Machine Information] > [Print Reports] > [Job Counter Report].

**2** Select [Job Counter Report].

**3** Press the <Start> button.



**Auditron Reports**

You can print an auditoron report by user. Note that the content on the screen differs depending on whether the Account Administration feature is enabled.

**Note** • [Auditron Reports] appears when the System Administration mode is selected.

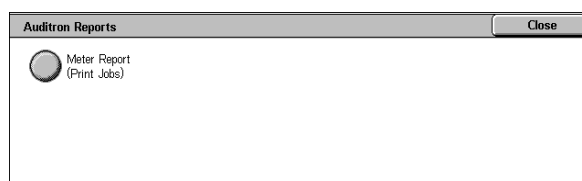
**When the Account Administration feature of each service is disabled**

When the Account Administration feature of each service is disabled, the following screen appears, allowing you to print a printer meter report.

**1** Select [Auditron Reports].

**Note** • To display the [Auditron Reports] screen, select the <Machine Status> button, and then select [Machine Information] > [Print Reports] > [Auditron Reports].

- 2 Select [Meter Report (Print Jobs)].
- 3 Press the <Start> button.



### ■Meter Report (Print Jobs)

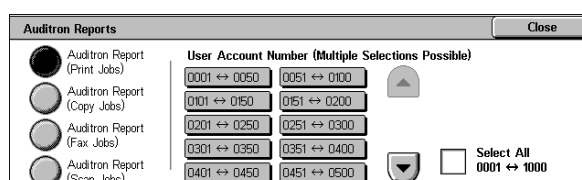
You can check the total printed pages and the total sheets used for each client (job owner). [Meter Report (Print Jobs)] counts pages from the time at which the data has been initialized.

### When the Account Administration feature is enabled

When the Account Administration feature is enabled, the following screen appears. The auditor report for each user organized by each service can be printed for the services of which the Account Administration feature is enabled.

For information on enabling the Account Administration feature for each service, refer to "Accounting" (P.173).

- 1 Select [Auditor Reports].
- Note**
- To display the [Auditor Reports] screen, select the <Machine Status> button, and then select [Machine Information] > [Print Reports] > [Auditor Reports].
- 2 Select the auditor report to be printed.
  - 3 Select a range of user account numbers to be printed.
- Note**
- Selecting [Select All] selects all users.
- 4 Press the <Start> button.



### ■Auditor Report (Print Jobs)

You can check the total printed pages and the total sheets used for each client (job owner). [Auditor Report (Print Jobs)] counts pages from the time at which the data has been initialized.

- Note**
- [No.] displayed on the report is the No. (User Administration Number) registered for the Authentication and Account Administration feature.

### ■Auditor Report (Copy Jobs)

You can check the total number of pages copied on the machine. If the maximum limit is set for the number of pages that can be scanned, you can also view the limit value. [Auditor Report (Copy Jobs)] counts pages from the time at which the data has been initialized.

- Note**
- [No.] displayed on the report is the No. (User Administration Number) registered for the Authentication and Account Administration feature.

### ■Auditor Report (Fax Jobs)

You can check the number of fax transmissions/receptions and the number of pages transmitted for each user. For Account Administration settings, refer to "Accounting" (P.173).

- Note**
- [No.] displayed on the report is the No. (User Administration Number) registered for the Authentication and Account Administration feature.

### ■Auditron Report (Scan Jobs)

You can check the total number of pages scanned on the machine. If the maximum limit is set for the number of pages that can be scanned, you can also view the limit value. [Auditron Report (Scan Jobs)] counts pages from the time at which the data has been initialized.

**Note** • [No.] displayed on the report is the No. (User Administration Number) registered for the Authentication and Account Administration feature.

## Automatically Printed Reports/Lists

Some reports/lists relating to the fax and scan services can only be printed automatically. This section describes reports/lists that can be printed automatically.

### Transmission Report - Job Undelivered

Printed when a transmission of transferring the scanned data to the computer on the network, or sending the scanned data by e-mail has failed. When a fax or the Internet Fax transmission has failed, this report will also be printed. You can check a reduced image of the scanned data and its transmission result.

Set whether to print out the Transmission Report - Job Undelivered automatically from the system administrator mode.

For information on specifying whether or not to have the report printed automatically, refer to "Transmission Report - Job Undelivered" (P.96).

### Scan File Transfer Report

Printed when a transmission of transferring the scanned data to the computer on the network, or sending the scanned data by e-mail has succeeded. When a fax or the Internet Fax transmission succeeded, this report will also be printed. You can check a reduced image of the scanned data and its transmission result.

Set whether to print out the Scan File Transfer Report automatically from the system administrator mode.

For information on how to automatically print out the transmission report, refer to "Scan File Transfer Report" (P.97).

### Mailbox Report

You can confirm that a document is stored in a mailbox.

For information on specifying whether or not to have the report printed automatically, refer to "Mailbox Report" (P.96).

### Broadcast Report

You can check the result of a broadcast transmission. The recipients and transmission result/status are recorded.

If this report is set to be printed automatically, it is printed each time when a broadcast transmission is complete.

For information on specifying whether or not to have the report printed automatically, refer to "Broadcast/Multi-Poll Report" (P.96).

### Multi-poll Report

You can check the result of a multi-poll communication (polling from multiple recipients). The remote terminal name and transmission result/status are recorded.

If this report is set to be printed automatically, it is printed each time when a multi-poll transmission is complete.

For information on specifying whether or not to have the report printed automatically, refer to "Broadcast/Multi-Poll Report" (P.96).

## Relay Broadcast Report

You can check the result of a relay broadcast transmission.

If this report is set to be printed automatically, it is printed each time when a relay broadcast transmission is complete.

For information on specifying whether or not to have the report printed automatically, refer to "Relay Broadcast Report" (P.97).

## Power Off Report

You can check the stored documents that are accidentally deleted because of the power being switched off, such as when an electrical power failure occurs. This report is printed automatically when the machine is turned back on.

All the documents that are listed on this report are the received documents (including polling documents) that are not yet printed, and the stored documents in the mailbox (including polling documents that are set to be distributed to the designated mailboxes).

## File Transfer Report - Fax Server

This report is output after image data scanned by the machine is sent to a Server Fax server via a network. It contains the scanned document image and the transmission result. To have the report printed, enter the System Administration mode.

For information on specifying whether or not to have the report printed automatically, refer to "File Transfer Report - Fax Server" (P.97)

## Job Flow Error Report

You can check the errors caused in the job flow. The date and time when the error occurred and the error codes are recorded.

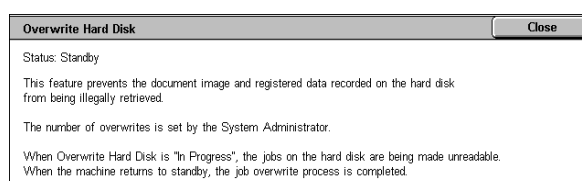
For information on specifying whether or not to have the report printed automatically, refer to "Job Flow Error Report" (P.98).

## Overwrite Hard Disk

You can check the overwriting status of the hard disk. The indication "Overwriting" shows that the overwriting is in progress. "Standby" shows the completion of the overwriting process.

- Note**
- This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.
  - [Overwrite Hard Disk] appears only when [Overwrite Hard Disk] is enabled in [System Settings]. For more information, refer to "Overwrite Hard Disk" (P.190).

- 1 Select [Overwrite Hard Disk].
- 2 Check the overwriting status of the hard disk.

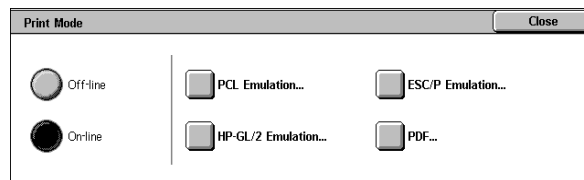


## Print Mode

You can change and register each setting in the print mode.

**Note** • The items displayed vary depending on the options installed.

- 1 Select [Print Mode].
- 2 Select [Off-line] or [On-line].



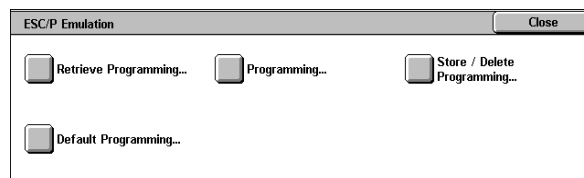
### ■Off-line

The printer does not accept data. Any data being sent is cancelled and not printed.

### ■On-line

The printer accepts data.

- 3 Select a printer language.
- 4 Select the item to be set.



## Retrieve Programming

You can retrieve and use settings registered in the memory.

- 1 Select [Retrieve Programming].
- 2 Select the memory number to be used.



### ■Factory Defaults

You can use the factory default settings.

### ■Custom Settings

The numbers stored in the memory appear.

## Programming

You can check or change the values set for the print mode item numbers.

For the items that can be configured in the ESC/P-K and PDF mode menus, refer to "ESC/P-K Emulation" (P.438) and "PDF Direct Print Settings" (P.452).

For information on KS/KSSM emulation mode, refer to the User Guide for the Korean model. For information on the ESC/P-K emulation mode, refer to the User Guide for the Simplified Chinese model.

- 1 Select [Programming].

- 2 Enter the feature number to be set in [Item Number] using the numeric keypad.
- 3 Select [Confirm] as necessary.
- 4 Select [Change Value].
- 5 Enter [New Value] using the numeric keypad.
- 6 Select [Save].

#### ■Item number

Enter the item number of the feature to be set.

#### ■Current Value

When you enter [Item Number], the currently set value appears.

#### ■New Value

Enter a new value.

## Store/Delete Programming

For ESC/P-K and HP-GL/2 emulations, you can register settings in the memory. You can register up to 20 print modes for ESC/P-K and HP-GL/2 emulations.

- 1 Select [Store/Delete Programming].
- 2 Select [Store Current Selections] or [Delete].
- 3 Select the memory number to be stored or to be deleted.

#### ■Store Current Selections

Stores the current selections. If you select a number already stored, its settings will be overwritten with the new settings. The overwritten settings cannot be restored.

#### ■Delete

When you select [Delete] and then select the number to be deleted, the number will be deleted.

**Important** • The deleted numbers cannot be restored.

## Default Programming

You can start the printer using the settings stored in the memory as default settings.

- 1 Select [Default Programming].
- 2 Select [Factory Defaults] or [Custom Settings].
- 3 When you select [Custom Settings], select the memory number to be used.

**■Factory Defaults**

You can use the factory default settings.

**■Custom Settings**

The numbers stored in the memory appear.

**Password**

For PDF emulation, if a password is set for PDF files, set the password here in advance. PDF files can be printed only when their password matches the password set here.

You can use up to 32 characters for the password.

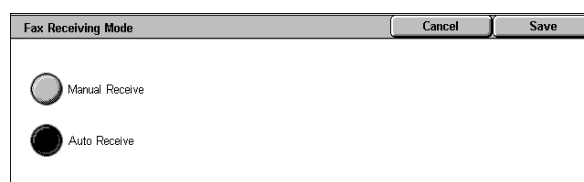
- 1** Press [Password].
- 2** Enter a password of up to 32 characters, and select [Save].

**Fax Receiving Mode**

You can set a fax receiving mode.

For information on automatic and manual fax receiving modes, refer to "4 Fax" > "Receiving Faxes" in the User Guide.

- 1** Select [Fax Receiving Mode].
- 2** Select a fax receiving mode.

**■Manual Receive**

Allows you to manually receive a fax from a remote machine. This mode is convenient when you want to confirm the sender or use an external telephone for a telephone call before fax reception.

**■Auto Receive**

Automatically starts receiving a fax from a remote machine.



## Faults

This section describes how to check the information of errors that occurred on the machine.

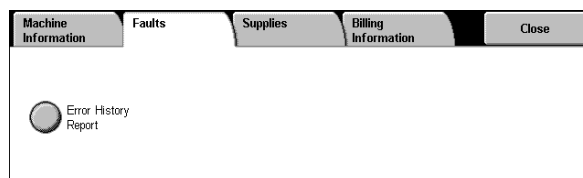
The error history report shows the latest 50 errors. The items displayed include the date and time, error code, and error category.

The following describes how to print the error history report.

- 1** Press the <Machine Status> button.
- 2** Select the [Faults] tab.
- 3** Select [Error History Report].
- 4** Press the <Start> button.

**Note**

- You can also access the [Error History Report] from the [Print Reports] on the [Machine Information] screen.
- If [Print Report Button] under [Reports] is set to [Disabled], the [Error History Report] button does not appear on the screen. For information on [Reports], refer to "Reports" (P.96).



# Supplies

You can check the status of consumables on the [Supplies] screen. The status of consumables is shown as "OK", "100% Full", "Replace Soon", or "Replace Now".

The following describes the procedure for checking the status of consumables.

For information on replacing consumables, refer to "Maintenance" (P.37).

1 Press the <Machine Status> button.

2 Select the [Supplies] tab.

**Note** • Select [▲] to return to the previous screen or [▼] to move to the next screen.

Machine Information	Faults	Supplies	Billing Information	Close
Consumables		Status		
1. Toner Cartridge		100% Full		
2. Drum Cartridge		OK		
3. Staple Cartridge [R1]		OK		
4. Booklet Staple Cartridge [R2]		OK		
5. Booklet Staple Cartridge [R3]		OK		

On the [Supplies] screen, you can check the following items.

**Note** • The items displayed vary depending on the options installed.

- Toner Cartridge
  - Drum Cartridge
  - Staple Cartridge [R1]
- Booklet Staple Cartridge [R2]
  - Booklet Staple Cartridge [R3]
  - Hole Punch Waste Container [R4]

**Important** • If using a partly consumed toner cartridge (such as a toner cartridge removed from another DocuCentre-III 3007/2007 unit), the status shown may not match the actual remaining amount. When replacing toner cartridges, we recommend you use new ones.

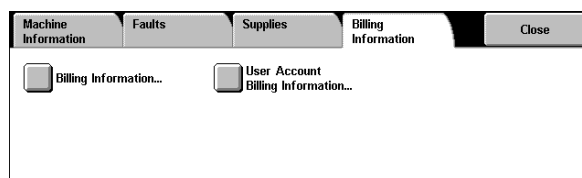
## Billing Information

On the [Billing Information] screen, you can check the number of printed pages for each meter or user.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Billing Information.....	73
User Account Billing Information.....	73

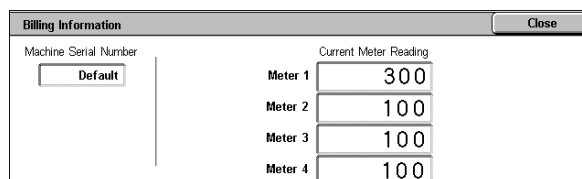
- 1 Press the <Machine Status> button.
- 2 Select the [Billing Information] tab.



## Billing Information

You can confirm the total number of copies and printed pages by individual meters.

- 1 Select [Billing Information].
- 2 Confirm the total number of copies and printed pages in a screen displayed.



### ■Machine Serial Number

Displays the serial number of the machine.

### ■Meter 1

Displays the total number of pages processed by all the services.

### ■Meter 2

Displays the total number of pages processed by the Copy service.

### ■Meter 3

Displays the total number of pages processed by the Print service.

### ■Meter 4

Displays the total number of pages processed by the Fax service.

## User Account Billing Information

You can check the number of pages printed for each user.

When the Account Administration feature is enabled, you can check the billing meters for the currently authenticated user IDs.

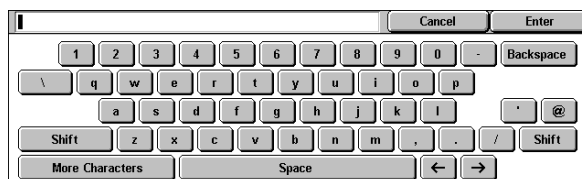
**Note** • [User Account Billing Information] is displayed only when the [Accounting Type] is set to [Local Accounting].

For information on the Account Administration feature, refer to "Accounting" (P.173).

**1** Press the <Log In/Out> button.

■ **To check the billing meter of a currently authenticated user ID**

- 1) Using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed, enter the user ID of a user whose billing meter needs to be checked, and select [Enter].



**Note** • When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the user's passcode, then select [Enter].

- 2) Press the <Machine Status> button.
- 3) Proceed to Step 2.

■ **To check the system administrator meter**

- 1) Using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed, enter the user ID to enter the System Administration mode, and select [Enter].

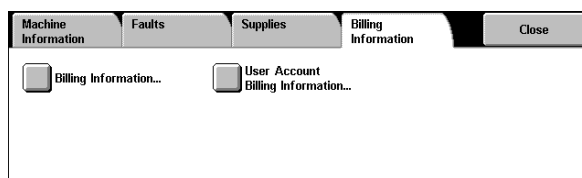
When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111".  
• The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 2) Press the <Machine Status> button.
- 3) Proceed to Step 2.

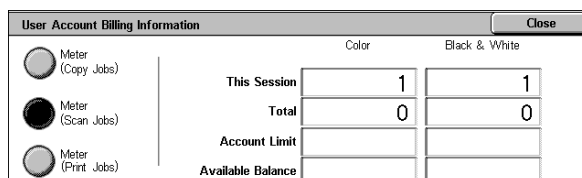
**2** Select the [Billing Information] tab.

**3** Select [User Account Billing Information].



**4** Select the meter to be checked.

**Note** • Meters appear when the auditron mode for the service is enabled.



■ **Meter (Copy Jobs)**

Displays the number of pages copied.

■ **Meter (Scan Jobs)**

Displays the number of pages scanned.

■ **Meter (Print Jobs)**

Displays the number of pages printed.

# 5 Tools

Each feature of the machine is set to the factory default (initial) settings, but you can customize these settings. To change the settings, enter the System Administration mode, and use the [Tools] screen.

This chapter explains the features that can be changed, and the procedures to change the settings.

• System Settings Procedure .....	76
• Tools Menu List .....	79
• Common Service Settings .....	89
• Copy Service Settings .....	106
• Connectivity & Network Setup .....	112
• Print Service Settings .....	129
• Scan Service Settings.....	135
• Fax Service Settings.....	140
• E-mail/Internet Fax Service Settings .....	150
• Mailbox/Stored Document Settings .....	153
• Job Flow Service Settings .....	155
• Setup .....	156
• Accounting .....	173
• Authentication/Security Settings .....	180

# System Settings Procedure

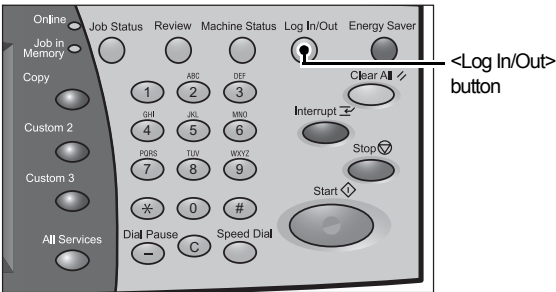
To make or change the system settings, it is necessary to enter the System Administration mode.

This section describes the basic procedures for system settings. The following shows the reference section for each procedure.

- Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode .....76
- Step 2 Entering the System Administrator User ID and Passcode .....76
- Step 3 Selecting [Tools].....77
- Step 4 Selecting an Item on the [Tools] Screen.....77
- Step 5 Setting a Feature .....78
- Step 6 Exiting the System Administration Mode.....78

## Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode

1 Press the <Log In/Out> button.

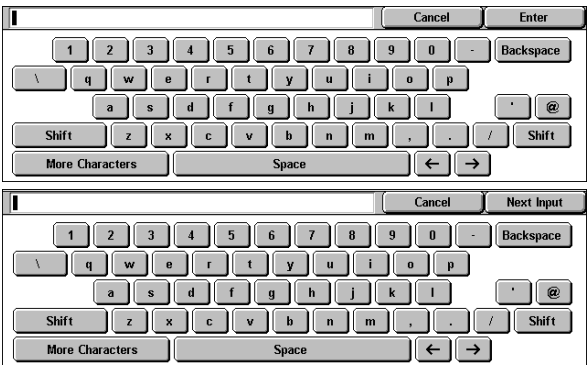


## Step 2 Entering the System Administrator User ID and Passcode

To enter System Administration mode, enter the system administrator's User ID. If [Passcode Entry from Control Panel] in [Authentication/Security Settings] is set to [On], the passcode needs to be entered.

It is recommended to change the system administrator's user ID and passcode immediately after installing the machine. For more information, refer to "System Administrator Settings" (P.180).

1 Enter the system administrator's ID with the numeric keypad or the keyboard, and select [Enter].

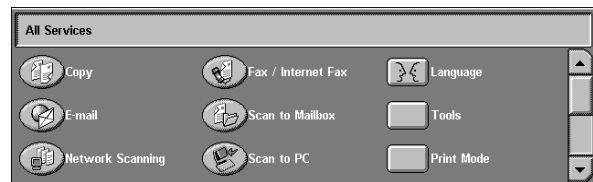


When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

- Note**
- The default user ID is "11111".
  - The default passcode is "x-admin".
  - The machine displays the following message if the system administration login failed: "Login failed. Enter the System Administrator's Login ID."
  - The machine displays the following message if the authentication failed more than the specified number of times: "You have made the maximum number of attempts to access the system. Access denied."

## Step 3 Selecting [Tools]

- 1 Select [Tools].

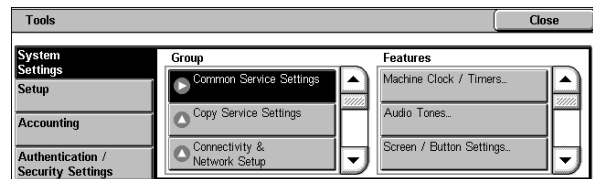


## Step 4 Selecting an Item on the [Tools] Screen

On the [Tools] screen, select an item to be set.

For the items that can be selected on the [Tools] screen, refer to "Tools Menu List" (P.79).

- 1 Select the item to be set.



## System Settings

You can set or change the default values.

- Note**
- When [Fax Server] is selected in the System Settings, [Scan Service Settings] is replaced with [Scan/Fax Service Settings].

### ■Common Service Settings

Allows you to configure the settings relating to the machine itself.

For more information, refer to "Common Service Settings" (P.89).

### ■Copy Service Settings

Allows you to configure the copy feature defaults, copy operation control, button indications, and so on.

For more information, refer to "Copy Service Settings" (P.106).

### ■Connectivity & Network Setup

Allows you to configure the ports, protocols, and so on.

For more information, refer to "Connectivity & Network Setup" (P.112).

### ■Print Service Settings

Allows you to configure the memory settings, print operation control, and so on.

For more information, refer to "Print Service Settings" (P.129).

### ■Scan Service Settings

Allows you to configure the scanner feature defaults, button indications, and so on.

For more information, refer to "Scan Service Settings" (P.135).

### ■Fax Service Settings

Allows you to configure the fax settings such as setting defaults, fax control and button settings.

For more information, refer to "Fax Service Settings" (P.140).

**■E-mail/Internet Fax Service Settings**

Allows you to configure the e-mail and Internet Fax transmission specifications.

For more information, refer to "E-mail/Internet Fax Service Settings" (P.150).

**■Mailbox/Stored Document Settings**

Allows you to set how to delete documents stored in mailboxes.

For more information, refer to "Mailbox/Stored Document Settings" (P.153).

**■Job Flow Service Settings**

Allows you to configure the settings relating to job flows.

For more information, refer to "Job Flow Service Settings" (P.155).

**Setup**

You can create mailboxes and job flow sheets, and can create and change an address book (address numbers).

For more information, refer to "Setup" (P.156).

**Accounting**

You can register machine users and configure the settings for account administration.

For more information, refer to "Accounting" (P.173).

**Authentication/Security Settings**

You can configure the authentication and security settings.

For more information, refer to "Authentication/Security Settings" (P.180).

---

**Step 5 Setting a Feature**

---

**1** Select any feature.

- Note**
- Select a submenu from the [Group] list, and then select a feature from the [Features] list.
  - Select [▲] or [▼] as required.

**2** Set the feature.**3** After setting the feature, select [Save].

---

**Step 6 Exiting the System Administration Mode**

---

**1** Select [Close], and [Tools] screen exits.**2** Select [Reboot Now] when a message prompts user to reboot the machine appears.



## Tools Menu List

The following table shows a list of the items that can be set. Note that the items appearing depend on the configuration of the machine.

### System Settings

#### ■Common Service Settings

Machine Clock/Timers (P.89)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Date (P.89)</li> <li>• Time (P.89)</li> <li>• Time Zone (P.90)</li> <li>• Daylight Savings (P.90)</li> <li>• NTP Time Synchronization (P.90)</li> <li>• Connection Interval (P.90)</li> <li>• Time Server Address (P.90)</li> <li>• Auto Clear (P.90)</li> <li>• Auto Job Release (P.90)</li> <li>• Auto Print (P.90)</li> <li>• Printer Lockout Duration (P.90)</li> <li>• Power Saver/Energy Saver Timers (P.91)</li> </ul>
Audio Tones (P.91)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Control Panel Select Tone (P.91)</li> <li>• Control Panel Alert Tone (P.91)</li> <li>• Machine Ready Tone (P.91)</li> <li>• Job Complete Tone 1, 2 (P.91)</li> <li>• Fault Tone (P.91)</li> <li>• Alert Tone (P.92)</li> <li>• Out of Paper Warning Tone (P.92)</li> <li>• Low Toner Alert Tone (P.92)</li> <li>• Line Monitor Volume (P.92)</li> <li>• Ringing Volume (P.92)</li> <li>• Stored Programming Tone (P.92)</li> <li>• Auto Clear Alert Tone (P.92)</li> <li>• Base Tone (P.92)</li> </ul>
Screen/Button Settings (P.92)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Screen Default (P.92)</li> <li>• Screen After Auto Clear (P.93)</li> <li>• Auto Display of Login Screen (P.93)</li> <li>• All Services (P.93)</li> <li>• Custom Buttons 1 to 3 (P.93)</li> <li>• Job Type on Job Status Screen (P.93)</li> <li>• Default Language (P.93)</li> <li>• Reconfirm E-mail Recipient (P.93)</li> <li>• Reconfirm Fax/Internet Fax Recipient (P.93)</li> </ul>
Paper Tray Settings (P.94)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Custom Paper Name (P.94)</li> <li>• Paper Tray Attributes (P.94)</li> <li>• Paper Tray Attributes on Setup Screen (P.94)</li> <li>• Paper Tray Attributes During Loading (P.94)</li> <li>• Paper Tray Priority (P.94)</li> <li>• Paper Type Priority (P.94)</li> <li>• Tray 5 - Paper Size Defaults (P.95)</li> <li>• Auto Tray Switching Control (P.95)</li> </ul>
Image Quality (P.95)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Photo &amp; Text Recognition (P.95)</li> <li>• Background Suppression (B/W Copy) (P.96)</li> <li>• Image Enhancement (P.96)</li> </ul>

Reports (P.96)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Print Reports Button (P.96)</li> <li>• Job History Report (P.96)</li> <li>• Activity Report (P.96)</li> <li>• Transmission Report - Job Undelivered (P.96)</li> <li>• Transmission Report - Job Deleted (P.96)</li> <li>• Mailbox Report (P.96)</li> <li>• Broadcast/Multi-Poll Report (P.96)</li> <li>• Relay Broadcast Report (P.97)</li> <li>• Scan File Transfer Report (P.97)</li> <li>• File Transfer Report - Fax Server (P.97)</li> <li>• 2 Sided Report (P.97)</li> <li>• Recipient on Activity Report (P.97)</li> <li>• Job Flow Error Report (P.98)</li> </ul>
Maintenance (P.98)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Initialize Hard Disk (P.98)</li> <li>• Delete All Data (P.98)</li> <li>• Software Options (P.98)</li> <li>• Document Feeder Scanning Position (P.98)</li> <li>• Finisher Adjustment (P.98)</li> <li>• Delete All Certificates/Initialize Settings (P.98)</li> </ul>
Watermark (P.98)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Date Format (P.98)</li> <li>• Default Watermark Effect (P.98)</li> <li>• Default Watermark (P.99)</li> <li>• Font Size (P.99)</li> <li>• Background Pattern (P.99)</li> <li>• Density (P.99)</li> <li>• Watermark/Background Contrast (P.99)</li> <li>• Force Watermark - Copy Job (P.99)</li> <li>• Force Watermark - Client Print (P.99)</li> <li>• Force Watermark - Mailbox Print (P.99)</li> <li>• Custom Watermark 1 to 3 (P.99)</li> </ul>
Other Settings (P.100)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fax Service (P.100)</li> <li>• Offset (Center Tray) (P.100)</li> <li>• Offset (Right Middle Tray) (P.100)</li> <li>• Booklet Offset (P.100)</li> <li>• Auto Job Promotion (P.100)</li> <li>• Default Print Paper Size (P.101)</li> <li>• Odd Page 2 Sided (P.101)</li> <li>• Paper Size Settings (P.101)</li> <li>• Millimeters/Inches (P.103)</li> <li>• Keyboard Input Restriction (P.103)</li> <li>• Operation of Up/Down Buttons (P.103)</li> <li>• Display Consumables Screen (P.103)</li> <li>• Data Encryption (P.104)</li> <li>• Encryption Key for Confidential Data (P.105)</li> <li>• Service Rep. Restricted Operation (P.105)</li> <li>• Software Download (P.105)</li> <li>• Restrict Recipient Selection Method (P.105)</li> <li>• Restrict User to Edit Address Book (P.105)</li> </ul>

### ■ Copy Service Settings

Copy Tab - Features Allocation (P.106)	-
Number of Display Buttons (P.107)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Paper Supply - Button 2 - 4 (P.107)</li> <li>• Reduce/Enlarge - Button 3 - 4 (P.107)</li> </ul>

Copy Defaults (P.107)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Paper Supply (P.107)</li> <li>• Reduce/Enlarge (P.107)</li> <li>• Original Type (P.107)</li> <li>• Lighten/Darken (P.107)</li> <li>• Sharpness (P.107)</li> <li>• Background Suppression (P.107)</li> <li>• 2 Sided Copying (P.107)</li> <li>• Mixed Sized Originals (P.107)</li> <li>• Edge Erase - Top &amp; Bottom Edge (P.108)</li> <li>• Edge Erase - Left &amp; Right Edge (P.108)</li> <li>• Center Erase/Binding Erase (P.108)</li> <li>• Image Shift - Side 1 (P.108)</li> <li>• Image Shift - Side 2 (P.108)</li> <li>• Image Rotation (P.108)</li> <li>• Image Rotation Direction (P.108)</li> <li>• Original Orientation (P.108)</li> <li>• Multiple-Up (P.108)</li> <li>• Copy Output (P.108)</li> <li>• Copy Output - Separators Tray (P.108)</li> <li>• Output Destination (P.108)</li> <li>• Annotations - Stored Comment (P.108)</li> <li>• Annotations - Comment - Position (P.109)</li> <li>• Annotations - Comment - Font Size (P.109)</li> <li>• Annotations - Date Stamp - Position (P.109)</li> <li>• Annotations - Date Size (P.109)</li> <li>• Annotations - Page Number Style (P.109)</li> <li>• Annotations - Page Numbers - Position (P.109)</li> <li>• Annotations - Page Numbers - Font Size (P.109)</li> <li>• Bates Stamp - Number of Digits (P.109)</li> <li>• Bates Stamp - Position (P.109)</li> <li>• Bates Stamp - Font Size (P.109)</li> <li>• Sample Job (P.109)</li> <li>• Booklet Creation - Cover Tray (P.109)</li> <li>• Covers - Cover Tray (P.109)</li> <li>• Build Job - Segment Separator Tray (P.109)</li> </ul>
Copy Control (P.110)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Memory Full Procedure (P.110)</li> <li>• Maximum Stored Pages (P.110)</li> <li>• Auto Paper Off (P.110)</li> <li>• Mixed Sized Originals - 2 Sided Copy (P.110)</li> <li>• Fine-tune 100% (P.110)</li> <li>• Pseudo-Photo Gradation Mode (P.110)</li> <li>• Original Type - See-Through Paper (P.110)</li> <li>• Annotations - Comment Density (P.111)</li> <li>• Annotations - Comment on Side 2 (P.111)</li> <li>• Date Stamp - Position on Side 2 (P.111)</li> <li>• Page Numbers - Position on Side 2 (P.111)</li> <li>• Bates Stamp - Position on Side 2 (P.111)</li> <li>• Maximum Number of Sets (P.111)</li> </ul>
Original Size Defaults (P.111)	-
Reduce/Enlarge Presets (P.111)	-
Annotations Create Comments (P.111)	-

## ■Connectivity & Network Setup

Port Settings (P.112)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USB (P.112)</li> <li>• LPD (P.113)</li> <li>• NetWare (P.113)</li> <li>• SMB (P.113)</li> <li>• IPP (P.113)</li> <li>• EtherTalk (P.114)</li> <li>• Bonjour (P.114)</li> <li>• Port9100 (P.114)</li> <li>• SNMP (P.114)</li> <li>• FTP Client (P.114)</li> <li>• Receive E-mail (P.114)</li> <li>• Send E-mail (P.114)</li> <li>• E-mail Notification Service (P.114)</li> <li>• UPnP Discovery (P.114)</li> <li>• Internet Services (P.115)</li> <li>• SOAP (P.115)</li> <li>• WebDAV (P.115)</li> </ul>
Protocol Settings (P.115)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ethernet Rated Speed (P.115)</li> <li>• TCP/IP - IP Mode (P.116)</li> <li>• IPv4 - IP Address Resolution (P.116)</li> <li>• IPv4 - IP Address (P.116)</li> <li>• IPv4 - Subnet Mask (P.117)</li> <li>• IPv4 - Gateway Address (P.117)</li> <li>• IPv4 - IP Filter (P.117)</li> <li>• IPv6 Address Manual Configuration (P.117)</li> <li>• Manually Configured IPv6 Address (P.117)</li> <li>• Manually Configured IPv6 Prefix (P.117)</li> <li>• Manually Configured IPv6 Gateway (P.117)</li> <li>• Auto Configured IPv6 Address (P.117)</li> <li>• IPv6 - IP Filter (P.118)</li> </ul>
Machine's E-mail Address/Host Name (P.118)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• E-mail Address (P.118)</li> <li>• Machine Name (P.118)</li> <li>• Host Name (P.118)</li> <li>• Domain Name (P.118)</li> </ul>
Proxy Server Settings (P.118)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use Proxy Server (P.118)</li> <li>• Proxy Server Setup (P.119)</li> <li>• Addresses to Bypass Proxy Server (P.119)</li> <li>• HTTP Proxy Server Name (P.119)</li> <li>• HTTP Proxy Server Port Number (P.119)</li> <li>• HTTP Proxy Server Authentication (P.119)</li> <li>• HTTP Proxy Server Login Name (P.119)</li> <li>• HTTP Proxy Server Password (P.119)</li> <li>• HTTPS Proxy Server Name (P.119)</li> <li>• HTTPS Proxy Server Port Number (P.119)</li> <li>• HTTPS Proxy Server Authentication (P.119)</li> <li>• HTTPS Proxy Server Login Name (P.119)</li> <li>• HTTPS Proxy Server Password (P.119)</li> </ul>
Outgoing/Incoming E-mail Settings (P.119)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• POP3 Server Settings (P.119)</li> <li>• SMTP Server Settings (P.120)</li> <li>• Domain Filtering (P.121)</li> </ul>
Remote Authentication/Directory Service Settings (P.121)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Authentication System Setup (P.121)</li> <li>• Kerberos Server Settings (P.121)</li> <li>• LDAP Server/Directory Service (P.122)</li> <li>• SMB Server Settings (P.124)</li> </ul>

Security Settings (P.125)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SSL/TLS Settings (P.125)</li> <li>• S/MIME Settings (P.125)</li> <li>• PDF/DocuWorks/XPS Signature Settings (P.126)</li> <li>• IPSec Settings (P.126)</li> <li>• IEEE 802.1x Settings (P.127)</li> <li>• Certificate Revocation Retrieval Settings (P.127)</li> </ul>
---------------------------	--

Other Settings (P.128)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• E-mail Receive Protocol (P.128)</li> <li>• Output Destination for E-mail (P.128)</li> </ul>
------------------------	--

## ■Print Service Settings

Allocate Memory (P.129)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PostScript Memory (P.129)</li> <li>• ESC/P-K Form Memory (P.129)</li> <li>• HP-GL/2 Auto Layout Memory (P.130)</li> <li>• Job Ticket Memory (P.130)</li> <li>• Receiving Buffer - USB (P.130)</li> <li>• Receiving Buffer - LPD (P.130)</li> <li>• Receiving Buffer - NetWare (P.130)</li> <li>• Receiving Buffer - SMB (P.130)</li> <li>• Receiving Buffer - IPP (P.131)</li> <li>• Receiving Buffer - EtherTalk (P.131)</li> <li>• Receiving Buffer - Port 9100 (P.131)</li> </ul>
-------------------------	---

Delete Form (P.131)	-
---------------------	---

Other Settings (P.131)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Print Area (P.131)</li> <li>• Substitute Tray (P.132)</li> <li>• Paper Type Mismatch (P.132)</li> <li>• Unregistered Forms (P.132)</li> <li>• Print User ID (P.132)</li> <li>• Banner Sheet (P.133)</li> <li>• Banner Sheet Tray (P.133)</li> <li>• PostScript Paper Supply (P.133)</li> <li>• PostScript Font Absence (P.133)</li> <li>• PostScript Font Substitution (P.133)</li> <li>• XPS Print Ticket Processing (P.133)</li> <li>• LPD Print Queue (P.134)</li> </ul>
------------------------	--

## ■Scan Service Settings

First Tab (P.135)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Feature in 2nd Column (P.135)</li> <li>• Reduce/Enlarge - Buttons 2 - 4 (P.135)</li> </ul>
-------------------	---

Scan Defaults (P.135)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Color Scanning (P.136)</li> <li>• Original Type (P.136)</li> <li>• File Format (P.136)</li> <li>• Optimize PDF For Web View (P.136)</li> <li>• Lighten/Darken (P.136)</li> <li>• Contrast (P.136)</li> <li>• Sharpness (P.136)</li> <li>• Background Suppression (P.136)</li> <li>• Shadow Suppression (P.136)</li> <li>• Color Space (P.136)</li> <li>• Original Orientation (P.136)</li> <li>• Resolution (P.136)</li> <li>• Mixed Sized Originals (P.136)</li> <li>• Edge Erase (P.136)</li> <li>• Edge Erase - Top &amp; Bottom Edges (P.137)</li> <li>• Edge Erase - Left &amp; Right Edges (P.137)</li> <li>• Center Erase/Binding Edge Erase (P.137)</li> <li>• Quality/File Size (P.137)</li> <li>• E-mail Subject (P.137)</li> <li>• Searchable Text (P.137)</li> <li>• Language To Identify (P.137)</li> <li>• Searchable - Text Compression (P.137)</li> </ul>
-----------------------	--

Scan to PC Defaults (P.137)	• Transfer Protocol
-----------------------------	---------------------

Original Size Defaults (P.137)	-
--------------------------------	---

Output Size Defaults (P.138)	-
------------------------------	---

Reduce/Enlarge Presets (P.138)	-
--------------------------------	---

Other Settings (P.138)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Memory Full Procedure (P.138)</li> <li>• Maximum Stored Pages (P.139)</li> <li>• Saturation (P.139)</li> <li>• Background Suppression Level (P.139)</li> <li>• Shadow Suppression Level (P.139)</li> <li>• Color Space (P.139)</li> <li>• TIFF Format (P.139)</li> <li>• Image Transfer Screen (P.139)</li> <li>• Searchable - Page Orientation (P.139)</li> </ul>
------------------------	---

## ■Fax Service Settings

Screen Defaults (P.140)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fax Screen Default (P.140)</li> <li>• General Settings - 2nd Column (P.140)</li> <li>• Address Book Speed Dial Default (P.140)</li> <li>• Transmission Screen (P.140)</li> </ul>
-------------------------	---

Fax Defaults (P.141)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lighten/Darken (P.141)</li> <li>• Original Type (P.141)</li> <li>• Resolution (P.141)</li> <li>• Mixed Sized Originals (P.141)</li> <li>• Confirmation Options (P.141)</li> <li>• Delivery Receipts/Read Receipts (P.141)</li> <li>• Starting Rate (P.141)</li> <li>• Delay Start - Specific Time (P.141)</li> <li>• Transmission Header Text (P.141)</li> <li>• Internet Fax Profile (P.141)</li> <li>• Internet Fax Subject (P.141)</li> </ul>
----------------------	---

Fax Control (P.142)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Re-enter Recipients (P.142)</li> <li>• Re-enter Broadcast Recipients (P.142)</li> <li>• Re-enter Speed Dial Recipients (P.142)</li> <li>• Re-enter Group Recipients (P.142)</li> <li>• Broadcast Checkbox on 1st Tab (P.142)</li> <li>• Manual Redial List - Saved Entries (P.142)</li> <li>• Manual Redial List - Dial Mode (P.142)</li> <li>• Transmission Header Text - Polling (P.142)</li> <li>• Polled Documents - Auto Delete (P.142)</li> <li>• Rotate 90 degrees (P.143)</li> <li>• Sender ID (P.143)</li> <li>• Save Undelivered Faxes (P.143)</li> <li>• Save Deleted Faxes (P.143)</li> <li>• Saved Faxes - Auto Delete (P.143)</li> <li>• Transmission Interval (P.143)</li> <li>• Batch Send (P.143)</li> <li>• Manual Send/Receive Default (P.143)</li> <li>• Fax Receiving Mode (P.143)</li> <li>• Border Limit (P.143)</li> <li>• Auto Reduce On Receipt (P.144)</li> <li>• Receiving Paper Size (P.144)</li> <li>• 2 Pages Up On Receipt (P.144)</li> <li>• 2 Sided Printing (P.144)</li> <li>• Edge Erase - Top &amp; Bottom Edges (P.144)</li> <li>• Edge Erase - Left &amp; Right Edges (P.144)</li> <li>• Reduce 8.5x11" Original to A4 (P.144)</li> <li>• Pseudo-Photo Gradation Mode (P.144)</li> <li>• Mailbox Selector Setup (P.145)</li> <li>• Memory Full Procedure (P.145)</li> <li>• Maximum Stored Pages (P.145)</li> <li>• Mailbox Receive Display Priority 1 to 3 (P.145)</li> <li>• Direct Fax (P.145)</li> </ul>
Fax Received Options (P.145)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mailbox Selector Setup (P.145)</li> <li>• Output Destination Setup (P.146)</li> </ul>
Reduce/Enlarge Presets (P.146)	-
Original Size Defaults (P.146)	-
Local Terminal Information (P.146)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Local Name (P.147)</li> <li>• Company Logo (P.147)</li> <li>• Machine Password (P.147)</li> <li>• G3 Line - Fax ID (P.147)</li> <li>• G3 Line - Dial Type (P.147)</li> <li>• G3 Line - Line Type (P.147)</li> </ul>
Internet Fax Control (P.147)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Internet Fax Path (P.147)</li> <li>• Broadcast Internet Fax Profile (P.148)</li> <li>• Broadcast Starting Rate (P.148)</li> <li>• Delivery Confirmation Method (P.148)</li> <li>• Incoming Internet Fax Print Options (P.148)</li> <li>• Internet Fax Output Destination (P.148)</li> <li>• Fax Transfer from Address Book (P.149)</li> <li>• Transmission Header - Fax Transfer (P.149)</li> <li>• Fax Transfer Maximum Data Size (P.149)</li> </ul>

## ■E-mail/Internet Fax Service Settings

E-mail Control (P.150)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maximum Address Entries (P.150)</li> <li>• Incoming E-mail Print Options (P.150)</li> <li>• Print Error Notification E-mail (P.150)</li> <li>• Response to Read Receipts (P.150)</li> <li>• Read Receipts (P.151)</li> <li>• Print Delivery Confirmation E-mail (P.151)</li> <li>• Split Send Method (P.151)</li> <li>• Maximum Data Size per E-mail (P.151)</li> <li>• Maximum Total Data Size (P.151)</li> <li>• Maximum Split Count (P.151)</li> <li>• Allow Casual Users to Edit From (P.151)</li> <li>• Allow Guest Users to Edit From (P.151)</li> <li>• Allow to edit From if Search found (P.152)</li> <li>• Allow to edit From if Search failed (P.152)</li> <li>• E-mail Sending When Search Failed (P.152)</li> <li>• Add Me to "To" Field (P.152)</li> <li>• Add Me to "CC" Field (P.152)</li> <li>• Edit E-mail Recipients (P.152)</li> </ul>
------------------------	---

## ■Mailbox/Stored Document Service Settings

Mailbox Service Settings (P.153)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Documents Retrieved By Client (P.153)</li> <li>• Print &amp; Delete Confirmation Screen (P.153)</li> <li>• Convert Custom to Standard Size (P.153)</li> <li>• Standard Size Threshold Value (P.153)</li> <li>• Internet Fax to Internet Fax (P.153)</li> <li>• Internet Fax to E-mail (P.153)</li> </ul>
Stored Document Settings (P.153)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mailbox Document Expiration Date (P.153)</li> <li>• Stored Document Expiration Date (P.154)</li> <li>• Print Job Confirmation Screen (P.154)</li> <li>• Min. Passcode Length for Stored Job (P.154)</li> </ul>

## Setup

### ■Setup

Create Mailbox (P.156)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mailbox Name (P.156)</li> <li>• Check Mailbox Passcode (P.156)</li> <li>• Delete Documents After Retrieval (P.157)</li> <li>• Delete Expired Documents (P.157)</li> <li>• Link Job Flow Sheet to Mailbox (P.157)</li> <li>• When the [Delete Mailbox] Button is Selected (P.158)</li> </ul>
Stored Programming (P.158)	-
Create Job Flow Sheet (P.158)	-
Create Job Flow Sheet Keyword (P.165)	-



Add Address Book Entry (P.165)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Address Type (P.166)</li> <li>• Fax Number (P.166)</li> <li>• E-mail Address (P.166)</li> <li>• Name (P.167)</li> <li>• Index (P.167)</li> <li>• Relay Station Setup (P.167)</li> <li>• Starting Rate (P.167)</li> <li>• Resolution (P.167)</li> <li>• Cover Page (P.167)</li> <li>• Maximum Image Size (P.167)</li> <li>• Delay Start (P.168)</li> <li>• Remote Mailbox (P.168)</li> <li>• F Code (P.168)</li> <li>• Relay Broadcast (P.168)</li> <li>• Billing - Day Time, Billing - Night Time, Billing - Midnight (P.169)</li> <li>• Internet Fax Profile (P.169)</li> <li>• Surname (P.170)</li> <li>• Given Name (P.170)</li> <li>• S/MIME Certificate (P.170)</li> <li>• Custom Item 1 (P.170)</li> <li>• Custom Item 2 (P.170)</li> <li>• Custom Item 3 (P.170)</li> <li>• Transfer Protocol (P.170)</li> <li>• Server Name/IP address (P.170)</li> <li>• Shared Name (SMB Only) (P.170)</li> <li>• Save In (P.171)</li> <li>• User Name (P.171)</li> <li>• Password (P.171)</li> <li>• Port Number (P.171)</li> <li>• When the [Delete Entry] Button is Selected (P.171)</li> </ul>
Create Fax Group Recipients (P.171)	-
Add Fax Comment (P.172)	-
Paper Tray Attributes (P.172)	-

## Accounting

Create/View User Accounts (P.173)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• User ID (P.173)</li> <li>• User Name (P.174)</li> <li>• Passcode (P.174)</li> <li>• E-mail Address (P.174)</li> <li>• Account Limit (P.174)</li> <li>• User Role (P.175)</li> <li>• Reset Total Impressions (P.175)</li> <li>• Reset Account (P.175)</li> </ul>
View Accounts (P.175)	-
Reset User Accounts (P.176)	-
System Administrator's Meter (Copy Jobs) (P.177)	-
Accounting Type (P.177)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accounting Disabled (P.177)</li> <li>• Local Accounting (P.177)</li> <li>• Network Accounting (P.177)</li> <li>• Xerox Standard Accounting (P.177)</li> <li>• Auditron Mode (P.177)</li> <li>• Verify User Details (P.177)</li> <li>• Customize User Prompts (P.177)</li> </ul>

Accounting Login Screen Settings (P.178)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alternative Name for User ID (P.178)</li> <li>• Mask User ID (***) (P.178)</li> <li>• Alternative Name for Account Name ID (P.178)</li> <li>• Mask Account ID (***) (P.178)</li> <li>• Store User Details (P.178)</li> </ul>
Fax Billing Data (P.179)	-

## Authentication/Security Settings

System Administrator Settings (P.180)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System Administrator's Login ID (P.180)</li> <li>• System Administrator's Passcode (P.180)</li> </ul>
Authentication (P.181)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Login Type (P.181)</li> <li>• Access Control (P.181)</li> <li>• Create/View User Accounts (P.182)</li> <li>• Reset User Accounts (P.184)</li> <li>• Create Authorization Groups (P.185)</li> <li>• User Details Setup (P.186)</li> <li>• System Administrator Maximum Login Attempts (P.186)</li> <li>• Passcode Policy (P.187)</li> <li>• Charge/Private Print Settings (P.187)</li> </ul>
Allow User to Disable Active Settings (P.189)	-
Job Status Default (P.189)	-
Overwrite Hard Disk (P.190)	-

## Common Service Settings

In [Common Service Settings], you can make settings relating to the machine's common features. The following shows the reference section for each item.

Machine Clock/Timers.....	89
Audio Tones .....	91
Screen/Button Settings .....	92
Paper Tray Settings .....	94
Image Quality .....	95
Reports .....	96
Maintenance .....	98
Watermark.....	98
Other Settings.....	100

- 1 On the [Tools] screen, select [System Settings].

For the method of displaying the [Tools] screen, refer to "System Settings Procedure" (P.76).

- 2 Select [Common Service Settings].
- 3 Select the item to be set or changed.

### Machine Clock/Timers

You can set the clock time, or the time intervals until the energy saver or reset features take effect.

#### Date

Set the date in the system clock of the machine. The date set here is printed on lists and reports.

- 1 Select [Date], and select [Change Settings].
- 2 Select the date format.
- 3 Specify Year/Month/Day.

#### Time

Set the time in the system clock of the machine, using 12-hour or 24-hour format. The time set here is printed on lists and reports.

- 1 Select [Time], and select [Change Settings].
- 2 Select the display format.
- 3 When [12 Hour Clock] is selected, select [AM] or [PM].
- 4 Set the hours and minutes.

## Time Zone

Specifies the time different from Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).

## Daylight Savings

Select [Adjust Off], [Adjust by Day, Month & Time], or [Adjust by Month, Week, Day of Week & Time].

If [Adjust by Day, Month & Time] is selected, you can specify and set the month, day, and time for [Start Date] and [End Date].

If [Adjust by Month, Week, Day of Week & Time] is selected, you can specify and set the month, week, day of week, and time for [Start Date] and [End Date].

## NTP Time Synchronization

You can obtain the time from a time server (NTP: Network Time Protocol), to synchronize the machine time to the server time.

If you connect to a time server, select [On] for [Connection to Time Server], and set the IP address of the time server in [Time Server Address].

## Connection Interval

Select the time interval at which a connection is made to the time server.

Select an interval from 1 to 500 hours in 1 hour increments.

## Time Server Address

Set the IP address of the time server from which the time is obtained, using values 0 to 255.

- Note**
- For IPv4, enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.
  - For IPv6, enter the address in the format "xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx", where "xxxx" is a hexadecimal value.

## Auto Clear

Specify how many seconds should elapse with no operation before automatic reset occurs. When [On] is selected, specify a value between 30 and 900 seconds, in 1 second increments. In order not to set this feature, select [Off].

- Note**
- Even if [Off] is selected, when there is no operation for 1 minute on the screen waiting for a job command after scanning, the machine cancels the waiting condition and starts to process the scanned documents.

## Auto Job Release

If an error occurs (document or paper jams, running out of paper, etc.) during copying or scanning, the machine cancels the active job and starts the next job after a given period of time. In that case, jobs that can be activated are limited to those that only use parts of the machine not affected by the error.

When [On] is selected, specify a value between 4 and 99 minutes, in 1 minute increments. In order not to set this feature, select [Off].

## Auto Print

Set the time period to start the next print job after finishing a copy operation.

When [On] is selected, specify a value between 1 and 240 seconds, in 1 second increments. If you select [Off], printing starts immediately after the machine is ready.

## Printer Lockout Duration

The machine disables to print during a given period of time.

If you selected [On], specify a starting time and an ending time to disable printing, in one minute increments.

- Note**
- A job which has already been activated before the starting time will be printed continuously even after the starting time elapses.

- The print-disabled condition is cancelled when you operate using the control panel after the ending time.
- To enable printing during the printer lockout duration, select a job under [Active Jobs] on the [Job Status] screen, and then select [Promote Job].

## Power Saver/Energy Saver Timers

The machine is provided with the Low Power and Sleep modes as the power saving mode. When a specified period of time has elapsed, the machine switches to these modes in the following order to reduce power consumption.

Last operation on the machine → Low Power mode → Sleep mode

For more information, refer to "Energy Saver Mode" (P.18).

**Note** • There is no setting to disable switching to the Low Power mode or the Sleep mode.

### ■ From Last Operation to Low Power Mode

Specify a time period between the last operation and entering the Low Power mode in the range from 2 to 60 minutes, in 1 minute increments.

### ■ From Last Operation to Sleep Mode

Specify a time period between the last operation and entering the Sleep mode from 2 to 60 minutes, in 1 minute increments.

**Note** • Configure the [From Last Operation to Sleep Mode] time to be longer than the [From Last Operation to Low Power Mode] time.

## Audio Tones

Select whether or not to sound an alarm, for example when a job ends or a fault occurs.

### Control Panel Select Tone

Select the sound to be made when a button displayed on the screen is correctly selected. You can select the volume from [Soft], [Normal], and [Loud]. To disable the sound, select [Off].

### Control Panel Alert Tone

Select the sound to be made when a button that cannot be selected is selected, or an error occurs.

You can select the volume from [Soft], [Normal], and [Loud]. To disable the sound, select [Off].

### Machine Ready Tone

Set the sound for when the machine is ready to copy or print, after powering on, for example. You can select the volume from [Soft], [Normal], and [Loud]. To disable the sound, select [Off].

### Job Complete Tone 1, 2

Select the sound to be made when a job is completed normally.

You can select the volume from [Soft], [Normal], and [Loud]. To disable the sound, select [Off].

You can select the target jobs.

### Fault Tone

Select the sound to be made when an error termination occurs.

You can select the volume from [Soft], [Normal], and [Loud]. To disable the sound, select [Off].

**Alert Tone**

Select the sound to be made when a fault such as a paper jam occurs, and the fault is left unattended to.

You can select the volume from [Soft], [Normal], and [Loud]. To disable the sound, select [Off].

**Out of Paper Warning Tone**

Select the sound to be made when a job is suspended due to running out of paper in a tray.

You can select the volume from [Soft], [Normal], and [Loud]. To disable the sound, select [Off].

**Low Toner Alert Tone**

Select the sound to be made when the toner cartridge needs to be replaced.

You can select the volume from [Soft], [Normal], and [Loud]. To disable the sound, select [Off].

**Line Monitor Volume**

You can relay the sound on the telephone circuit in the interval from dialing until the connection is made through the speakers on the machine. This is convenient for using Fax Information Services without using the telephone.

You can select the volume from [Soft], [Normal], and [Loud]. To disable the sound, select [Off].

**Ringing Volume**

Select the sound to be made when an incoming call arrives at the machine.

You can select the volume from [Soft], [Normal], and [Loud]. To disable the sound, select [Off].

**Stored Programming Tone**

Select the sound to be made while a stored program is registered.

You can select the volume from [Soft], [Normal], and [Loud].

It is not possible to disable this sound.

**Auto Clear Alert Tone**

Select the sound to be made at 5 seconds before automatically returning to the initial screen, when the auto clear feature is enabled.

You can select the volume from [Soft], [Normal], and [Loud]. To disable the sound, select [Off].

**Base Tone**

For a button that toggles (changes setting each time it is pressed), set the sound to be made when in the home position. The machine makes this sound when it exits the Interrupt mode.

You can select the volume from [Soft], [Normal], and [Loud]. To disable the sound, select [Off].

---

**Screen/Button Settings**

---

Set screens and buttons.

**Screen Default**

Set the features displayed on the screen that appears after turning the machine on or canceling the Energy Saver mode.

For more information, refer to "Customizing the Control Panel" (P.20).

## Screen After Auto Clear

Set the screen displayed after Auto Clear.

For more information, refer to "Customizing the Control Panel" (P.20).

## Auto Display of Login Screen

When the authentication feature is used, set whether or not to automatically display the login screen after turning the machine on or canceling the Energy Saver mode.

## All Services

Set the layout of service buttons that appear on the [All Services] screen when pressing the <All Services> button on the control panel.

## Custom Buttons 1 to 3

You can assign features such as Copy and E-mail to the custom buttons on the control panel: Custom Button 1 to Custom Button 3.

To leave a feature unassigned, select [Not Assigned].

For more information, refer to "Customizing the Control Panel" (P.20).

- Note**
- The operation settings can be registered in the [Stored Programming] screen. For information on Stored Programming, refer to "8 Stored Programming" in the User Guide.
  - The default setting of [Custom Button 1] is [Copy].

## Job Type on Job Status Screen

Select the job types to be shown on the [Completed Jobs] screen of the [Job Status] screen that is displayed when the <Job Status> button on the control panel is pressed.

Select from [All Jobs], [Printer & Print from Mailbox Jobs], [Scan, Fax, & Internet Fax Jobs], and [Job Flow & Auto File Transfer Jobs].

## Default Language

You can select the language displayed on the machine.

There are two ways of selecting the language: set in the System Administration mode, and set by ordinary users.

- Setting in the System Administration mode  
The language set here is the standard language that is retained even when the machine is powered off and on.
- Setting by ordinary users  
The language setting in [Language] in the [All Services] screen is lost when the machine is powered off.

**Note** • When [English] is selected, use ASCII characters only.

## Reconfirm E-mail Recipient

You can reconfirm e-mail recipients when sending e-mails.

Select from [Confirmation Not Required], [Always Reconfirm Recipient], and [Reconfirm If Multiple Recipients].

## Reconfirm Fax/Internet Fax Recipient

You can reconfirm fax/Internet Fax recipients when sending faxes/Internet Faxes.

Select from [Confirmation Not Required], [Always Reconfirm Recipient], and [Reconfirm If Multiple Recipients].

## Paper Tray Settings

Set the items relating to the paper and trays, including the types and precedence of paper loaded in the trays.

### Custom Paper Name

Assign custom names to User 1 to User 5. The following paper types are available as the custom paper: plain paper, bond paper, and recycled paper. You can use letters, numerals, and symbols of up to 24 characters for each name.

For example, you can use a name showing its usage, such as "Color" for colored paper and "Covers" for bond paper.

For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

### Paper Tray Attributes

You can set Paper Type and Size for paper loaded in trays.

For more information, refer to "Changing the Paper Settings" (P.34).

#### ■Change Settings

Press this button, if you change the paper size, paper color, and paper type for the tray.

When you load non-standard size paper in the tray, select [Custom Size], and specify the width and height.

When you load standard size paper in the tray, select [Auto Size Detect].

**Important** • Adjust the paper guides to the paper size to prevent paper jams or errors. If the machine does not detect trays, use the Tray 5 (Bypass).

#### • Paper Size

When using Trays 1, 2, 3, and 4, you can load both standard size paper and non-standard size paper.

When you load non-standard size paper, select [Custom Size] then set the size in the X (width) direction within the range 182 to 432 mm and in the Y (height) direction within the range 140 to 297 mm in 1 mm increments.

#### • Paper Type

You can select the paper type for trays.

For information about paper types available on the machine, refer to "Supported Paper Types" (P.26).

#### • Color

The paper color can be set.

### Paper Tray Attributes on Setup Screen

Select whether [Paper Tray Attributes] is displayed in the [Setup] screen or not.

This setting allows you to select paper size and type on the paper tray without entering the System Administration mode.

### Paper Tray Attributes During Loading

Select whether the [Change Settings] screen ([Paper Tray Attributes] screen) for the target tray is displayed or not when pulling out or inserting the tray.

This setting does not apply to Tray 5 (Bypass).

### Paper Tray Priority

Set the paper tray priority sequence for automatic tray selection.

Automatic tray selection means that a tray containing the appropriate paper is automatically selected by the machine for copying or printing.

You can select the Trays 1 to 4. This setting does not apply to Tray 5 (Bypass).

### Paper Type Priority

Set the paper type priority sequence for automatic tray selection.



Automatic tray selection means that a tray containing the appropriate paper is automatically selected by the machine for copying or printing.

You can set plain paper, recycled paper, plain reload paper, and custom paper 1 to 5.

The paper type priority setting takes precedence over the paper tray priority settings.

If different paper types appear in the same priority sequence, the paper selection is determined by paper tray priority sequence. Selecting [Auto Paper Off] for a paper type prevents its paper tray from being used by automatic tray selection.

For information about the tray priority sequence, refer to "Paper Tray Priority" (P.94).

## Tray 5 - Paper Size Defaults

Set the paper sizes shown in the [Tray 5] screen for [Paper Supply] when copying with the Tray 5 (Bypass).

You can assign the paper size set here to the Tray 5 standard size button.

If you frequently use non-standard size paper for copying, assigning the paper size to a button will save your time to specify the size each time. It is also convenient to set the commonly used paper sizes toward the top.

### ■A/B Series Size

You can select from sizes of A and B series.

### ■Inch Size

You can select from sizes of inch series.

### ■Others

You can select from other sizes.

### ■Custom Size

You can enter any size. Set the width (X) within the range 99 to 432 mm, and the height (Y) within the range 89 to 297 mm in 1 mm increments.

## Auto Tray Switching Control

Set the method of auto tray switching when running out of paper loaded in the tray selected.

### ■Auto Tray Switching

You can select from [Always Enable], [Enable during Auto Paper Select], or [Enable for Same Paper Type/Color].

### ■Targeted Paper Type (Copy Jobs)

You can select paper types.

When [According to Priority Assigned] is selected, the paper type is determined according to the settings in [Paper Tray Priority] under the [Paper Tray Settings].

### ■Targeted Paper Color (Copy Jobs)

You can target all paper colors or only one paper color.

#### Note

- The machine does not switch the tray automatically in the following cases:
  - The Tray 5 is selected.
  - The tray containing paper other than plain paper, recycled paper, reload paper, or Custom1 to Custom 5 paper is selected.
  - The tray containing paper that is set as [Auto Paper Off] in [Paper Type Priority] is selected.

## Image Quality

You can select the image quality processing method when the machine is scanning an original.

### Photo & Text Recognition

Select a level which is used for the machine to determine text or photos. This setting is used when you select [Photo & Text] for [Original Type] on the [Image Quality] screen.

Selecting [More Text] makes it easier for very fine print to be recognized as text.  
Selecting [More Photo] makes it easier for newspaper and advertisement halftone images to be recognized as photos.

### **Background Suppression (B/W Copy)**

Set the method of background suppression to be used when making monochrome copies.  
Set how the machine detects the density of and deletes the background color.  
Select [High Speed] to sample a section of the original and detect the background color.  
Select [High Quality] to conduct a pre-scan, and sample the whole document to detect the background color.

**Important** • When you select [High Quality], and if [Corner Shift] is selected in [Image Shift] and a ratio not greater than 60% in [Reduce/Enlarge] is set, a part of an image may not be printed or blank paper may be output.

### **Image Enhancement**

Select whether or not to carry out image enhancement. If you select [On], copy data is smoothed, to give a smoother appearance.

---

## **Reports**

These settings relate to printing reports.

### **Print Reports Button**

Select whether or not to permit printing reports only in the System Administration mode.  
Selecting [Disabled] displays the [Print Reports] under [Machine Status] > [Machine Information] and [Error History Report] buttons under [Faults] only in the System Administration mode.

For information on [Print Reports] and [Error History Report], refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

### **Job History Report**

You can select whether or not to automatically print a [Job History Report] when a total of 50 jobs have been processed. All jobs are automatically listed on the printed report.

### **Activity Report**

Select whether or not to automatically print an [Activity Report] when a total of 100 communication results have been obtained.

For information on [Activity Report], refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

### **Transmission Report - Job Undelivered**

Select whether or not to automatically print a [Transmission report - Job Undelivered].

### **Transmission Report - Job Deleted**

Select whether or not to automatically print a [Transmission report - Job Deleted] for a cancelled document.

### **Mailbox Report**

Select whether or not to automatically print a [Mailbox Report].

### **Broadcast/Multi-Poll Report**

Select whether or not to automatically print a [Broadcast/Multi-Poll Report].

## Relay Broadcast Report

Select whether or not to automatically print a [Relay Broadcast Report], and a location where the report is printed.

- **Off**  
Does not print a report automatically.
- **Send to Relay Station**  
Sends a report to the relay station specified by the machine.
- **Print at Local Station**  
Prints a report on the machine.
- **Send to Relay, Print at Local**  
Sends a report to the relay station specified by the machine, and also prints on the machine.

## Scan File Transfer Report

Select whether or not to print the report for scanned data transmission results when the data is transferred to the computer on the network or is sent via e-mail.

- **No Report**  
Does not print the report regardless of the data transmission result.
- **Print Report**  
Automatically prints the transmission report when the data transmission is successful, and automatically prints the transmission report (undelivered) when the data transmission fails.
- **Print when delivery fails**  
Prints the transmission report (undelivered) when the data transmission fails.

## File Transfer Report - Fax Server

Set whether to print a transmission report after scanned data is sent using the Server Fax feature.

- Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.
- **No Report**  
Does not print a report regardless of whether data transmission is successfully completed or not.
  - **Print Report**  
Automatically prints a transmission report for a successful transmission and a transmission report (undelivered) for a transmission failure.
  - **Print when delivery fails**  
Prints a transmission report (undelivered) for a transmission failure.

## 2 Sided Report

When printing a report/list, select whether to print 1-sided or 2-sided.

- Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

## Recipient on Activity Report

Specify how the information on recipients is shown when printing an [Activity Report].

- **First 40 characters**  
Shows the first 40 characters.
- **Last 40 characters**  
Shows the last 40 characters.

## Job Flow Error Report

Select whether or not to automatically print a [Job Flow Error Report].

## Maintenance

---

You can initialize the hard disk or delete data recorded in the machine.

### Initialize Hard Disk

Initializes the hard disk.

Data deleted by initialization includes supplementary fonts, ESC/P, and HP-GL/2 (option) forms.

**Note** • The secure print documents and logs are not erased.

### Delete All Data

This feature is used to prevent the leakage of customer's confidential information when the machine is returned to Fuji Xerox. By clicking [Start], all data registered in the machine is deleted.

Do not use this function.

### Software Options

This feature is for customer engineer use. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

### Document Feeder Scanning Position

Allows you to adjust scanning position for the Document Feeder. To reset the scanning positions using the factory-default position, use the [Factory Settings] button.

### Finisher Adjustment

Appears when the Finisher-B1 (option) is attached.

■Hole Punch Tool

Specifies either 2/4 hole punch kit or US 2/3 hole punch kit.

■Adjust Punch Position/Booklet Fold Position

Specifies punching position and folding position for a paper size less than B4 and greater than or equal to B4.

### Delete All Certificates/Initialize Settings

All certificates stored in the machine will be deleted, and security settings associated with certificates will be initialized.

## Watermark

---

You can make settings relating to Watermark.

### Date Format

Set the format for printing dates in annotations and Watermark. This setting is common to Annotation and Watermark.

Three format types are available: 20yy/mm/dd, dd/mm/20yy, and mm/dd/20yy.

### Default Watermark Effect

Set the type of text effect for Watermark.

## ■Off

A text effect is not applied.

## ■Embossed

The text hidden in the background is embossed. The text part is printed with the pattern specified in [Background Pattern].

## ■Outline

The text hidden in the background is printed as white cutout. In the background other than the text printed as white cutout, the pattern set is [Background Pattern] is printed.

## Default Watermark

Set text to be printed with Watermark.

You can select text from [Copy Prohibited], [Copy], [Duplicate], and the strings registered on Custom Text 1 to 3.

For more information about Custom Text, refer to "Custom Watermark 1 to 3" (P.99).

## Font Size

Set the size of the text printed with Watermark.

You can set the value from 24 to 80 points in 1 point increments.

## Background Pattern

Set the background pattern to be used for the Watermark text effect.

You can select from eight patterns: wave, circle, stripe, chain, beam, rhombic, sunflower, and fan.

## Density

Set the density for printing the text in Watermark.

You can select from three levels from lighter to darker.

## Watermark/Background Contrast

Set the text/background contrast for Watermark printing.

You can select from contrast levels 1 to 9. Set the text/background contrast after checking the samples by selecting [Sample List].

## Force Watermark - Copy Job

Set whether to force Watermark printing for copying.

**Note** • You can authorize a user to temporarily cancel force watermark. For information, refer to "User Role and Authorization Groups" (P.274).

## Force Watermark - Client Print

Set whether to force Watermark printing for printing from a client computer.

## Force Watermark - Mailbox Print

Set whether to force Watermark printing for printing from the mailbox.

**Note** • You can authorize a user to temporarily cancel force watermark. For information, refer to "User Role and Authorization Groups" (P.274).

## Custom Watermark 1 to 3

Register text to be printed with Watermark. You can enter up to 32 characters. The registered text is displayed at "Default Watermark" (P.99).

For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

## Other Settings

You can make other settings relating to the machine itself.

### Fax Service

Switches between the Fax and Server Fax features.

- Note**
- This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.
  - The Fax and Server Fax features cannot be enabled at the same time.

#### ■ Scan to Fax

Allows you to use the Fax feature on the machine.

#### ■ Scan to Fax Server

Allows you to use the Server Fax feature on the machine.

### Offset (Center Tray)

Offsetting means that each set (copies) or each job is delivered at a slightly shifted output position from the output position of the previously output set or job. If the previous copy set is output to a front position on the tray, the next copy set is output to a back position on the tray. Set the operation of the offset feature for the center tray.

### Offset (Right Middle Tray)

Offsetting means that each set (copies) or each job is delivered at a slightly shifted output position from the output position of the previously output set or job. If the previous copy set is output to a front position on the tray, the next copy set is output to a back position on the tray. Set the operation of the offset feature for the finisher tray.

- Note**
- This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

#### ■ No Offset

No offset output.

#### ■ Offset per Set

Offsets the output position for each set of copies.

#### ■ Offset per Job

Offsets the output position for each job being specified.

### Booklet Offset

This setting offsets subsets of a booklet. Only folded subsets can be offset. To create folded subsets, select [Fold Only] in [Fold & Staple] option and [Divide Option] in [Booklet Creation]. This setting is only effective when [Offset per Set] is selected for [Offset (Right Middle Tray)].

### Auto Job Promotion

You can select whether to allow other jobs that can be started to automatically bypass the job, if the machine is unable to start an operation for any reason, (for example, running out of paper in a tray when starting copying or printing).

- Note**
- Stored documents such as Secure Print and Sample Set documents are excluded from Auto Job Promotion.

## Default Print Paper Size

Set the paper size used when printing reports or lists.  
You can select from two sizes: A4 or 8.5 × 11".

## Odd Page 2 Sided

























Specifies whether to add a blank page to a document that contains an odd number of pages, so that the document prints as an even number of pages.







## Paper Size Settings






















Specifies the paper size table used when the machine is set to detect standard sizes of documents.

You can select from the following tables: [A/B Series (8×13")], [A/B Series], [A/B Series (8K/16K)], [A/B Series (8×13"/8×14")], and [Inch Series].










Refer to the following tables for the combinations of sizes that can be detected automatically.

Paper Size Group  Original Position  Size/Orientation	AB Series (8.5 x 13")					AB Series				
	Document Glass	Document Feeder	Tray 1-4 (except for TTM)	Tray 3, 4 (TTM)	Tray 5 (Bypass)	Document Glass	Document Feeder	Tray 1-4 (except for TTM)	Tray 3, 4 (TTM)	Tray 5 (Bypass)
A6 	O	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X
A5 	O	O	O	X	O	O	O	O	X	O
A5 	O	X	X	X	X	O	O	X	X	O
A4 	O	O	O	X	X	O	O	O	X	O
A4 	O	O	O	O	X	O	O	O	O	O
A3 	O	O	O	X	X	O	O	O	X	O
B6 	O	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X
B6 	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O
B5 	X	X	O	X	O	O	O	O	X	O
B5 	X	O	X	X	X	O	O	O	O	O
B4 	X	O	O	X	O	O	O	O	X	O
5.5 x 8.5" 	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
5.5 x 8.5" 	X	O	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X
7.25 x 10.5" 	O	O	O	O	O	X	X	X	X	X
8.5 x 11" 	O	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	X
8.5 x 11" 	X	O	O	O	O	X	O	O	O	X
8.5 x 13" 	O	O	O	X	O	X	X	O	X	X
8.5 x 14" 	X	X	O	X	O	X	X	O	X	X
11 x 17" 	O	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	X
16K 	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
16K 	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	O	X	X
8K 	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	O	X	X
100 x 148 mm 	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O
4 x 6" 	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X

Paper Size Group	AB Series (8.5 x 13")					AB Series				
Original Position Size/Orientation	Document Glass	Document Feeder	Tray 1-4 (except for TTM)	Tray 3, 4 (TTM)	Tray 5 (Bypass)	Document Glass	Document Feeder	Tray 1-4 (except for TTM)	Tray 3, 4 (TTM)	Tray 5 (Bypass)
4 x 6" 	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
5 x 7" 	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Envelope 120 x 235 mm 	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O
Envelope (104.8 x 241.3 mm) 	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X
Envelope (98.4 x 190.5 mm) 	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X
Envelope (162 x 229 mm) 	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X

Paper Size Group	AB Series (8 K/16 K)					AB Series (8.5 x 13"/8.5 x 14")					Inch Series				
Original Position Size/Orientation	Document Glass	Document Feeder	Tray 1-4 (except for TTM)	Tray 3, 4 (TTM)	Tray 5 (Bypass)	Document Glass	Document Feeder	Tray 1-4 (except for TTM)	Tray 3, 4 (TTM)	Tray 5 (Bypass)	Document Glass	Document Feeder	Tray 1-4 (except for TTM)	Tray 3, 4 (TTM)	Tray 5 (Bypass)
A6 	O	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
A5 	O	O	O	X	O	O	O	O	X	O	X	X	X	X	X
A5 	O	O	X	X	O	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
A4 	O	O	O	X	O	O	O	O	X	X	X	O	O	X	X
A4 	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	X	O	O	O	O	X
A3 	O	O	O	X	O	O	O	O	X	X	O	O	O	X	X
B6 	O	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X
B6 	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
B5 	O	O	O	X	O	O	X	O	X	O	X	X	O	X	O
B5 	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X
B4 	O	O	O	X	O	O	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	O
5.5 x 8.5" 	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	O	O	X	O
5.5 x 8.5" 	X	X	X	X	X	O	O	X	X	O	O	O	X	X	O
7.25 x 10.5" 	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
8.5 x 11" 	X	O	O	X	X	O	O	O	X	O	O	O	O	X	O
8.5 x 11" 	O	O	O	O	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
8.5 x 13" 	X	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	X	O	X	X	O	X	O
8.5 x 14" 	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	O	X	O	O	O	O	X	O
11 x 17" 	O	O	O	X	X	O	O	O	X	O	O	O	O	X	O
16K 	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
16K 	O	O	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X



Paper Size Group	AB Series (8 K/16 K)					AB Series (8.5 x 13"/8.5 x 14")					Inch Series				
Original Position Size/Orientation	Document Glass	Document Feeder	Tray 1-4 (except for TTM)	Tray 3, 4 (TTM)	Tray 5 (Bypass)	Document Glass	Document Feeder	Tray 1-4 (except for TTM)	Tray 3, 4 (TTM)	Tray 5 (Bypass)	Document Glass	Document Feeder	Tray 1-4 (except for TTM)	Tray 3, 4 (TTM)	Tray 5 (Bypass)
8K 	O	O	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
100 x 148 mm 	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
4 x 6" 	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	O	X	X	X	X
4 x 6" 	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O
5 x 7" 	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X
Envelope 120 x 235 mm 	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Envelope (104.8 x 241.3 mm) 	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	O
Envelope (98.4 x 190.5 mm) 	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	O
Envelope (162 x 229 mm) 	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	O

O: Available  
X: Not available

## Millimeters/Inches

Select whether the unit of measure displayed on the screen is millimeters or inches.

## Keyboard Input Restriction

Select whether to restrict the display of the virtual keyboard on the machine. To prevent characters being garbled when switched from one character set to another, you can restrict the input to ASCII characters only. If you select [On (Standard ASCII only)], the displayed keyboard shows ASCII characters only.

## Operation of Up/Down Buttons

Select whether or not there is a continuous scrolling effect when the scroll buttons are held down.

- Disable Fast Scrolling  
Holding down the scroll buttons does not scroll.
- Enable Fast Scrolling  
Holding down the scroll buttons causes continuous scrolling.

## Display Consumables Screen

Set whether the machine displays the parts status when parts need to be replaced.

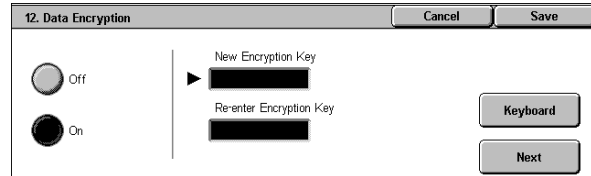
- Off  
Does not display the consumable status screen.
- When power is switched on  
Status is displayed at startup.
- When Auto Clear is activated  
Status is displayed when Auto Clear is executed.

## Data Encryption

Select whether to encrypt the data recorded on the hard disk of the machine. By setting data encryption, copy, scan, or print data is automatically encrypted when written to the hard disk. The encryption prevents unauthorized access to the stored data. In order to activate this feature, set an encryption key.

**Note** • An optional package is required to use this feature. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

- 1 Select [Data Encryption].
- 2 Select [On].
- 3 Select [Keyboard], and enter an encryption key of up to 12 characters.
- 4 Select [Save].
- 5 Repeat Steps 3 and 4 to reenter the same encryption key.



## Data Restoration

The encrypted data cannot be restored at the following.

- When a trouble occurs in the hard disk.
- When you have forgotten the encryption key.
- When you have forgotten the system administrator's user ID and a passcode when [On] is selected in [Service Rep. Restricted Operation].

## Starting the use of the data encryption feature and changing the settings

When data encryption is started or ended, or when the encryption key is changed, the machine must be restarted. The corresponding recording area (the hard disk) is reformatted when restarting. In this case, the previous data is not guaranteed.

The recording area stores the following data.

- Spooled print data
- Print data including Secure Print and Sample Set
- Forms for the form overlay feature
- Mailbox and job flow sheet settings (box name, passcode, etc.)
- Documents in mailboxes
- Address book data

- Important** • Be sure to save all necessary settings and documents before starting to use the data encryption feature or changing the settings.
- An error occurs if the connected hard disk does not match the encryption settings. For information on error messages and their remedies, refer to "Other Errors" (P.405).
  - The following procedure is recommended for changing the settings of the encryption while a large amount of data (100 jobs or more) is stored in a mailbox, and [Overwrite Hard Disk] is specified to [1 Overwrite] or [3 Overwrites].
    1. Select [Tools] > [Setup] > [Create Mailbox] to display the [Create Mailbox] screen.
    2. Select the mailbox, then select [Create / Delete] > [Delete Mailbox].
    3. Select [Close] until the [All Services] screen is displayed.
    4. Press the <Machine Status> button, then make sure that [Standby] in [Overwrite Hard Disk] is displayed.
    5. Enter the System Administration mode, and change the data encryption settings. For information on how to enter the System Administration mode, refer to "System Settings Procedure" (P.76).
  - Our customer engineer cannot restore the encryption key.
  - Replacing the electrical component board by our customer engineer initializes the encryption key. Do not lose the encrypted information.

## Encryption Key for Confidential Data

Setting an encryption key allows you to encrypt confidential information such as the passcodes of the system administrator and mailboxes. This prevents interceptions and unauthorized access to the information during transmission across networks. Select [Keyboard], and then enter an encryption key of 4 to 12 digits using the keyboard on the screen.

**Important** • If you change the existing encryption key, confidential information may not be able to be restored from a backup.

**Note** • The factory default encryption key is "x-admin".

- 1** Select [Encryption Key for Confidential Data] and then [Change Settings].
- 2** Select [Keyboard], and enter an encryption key of 4 to 12 digits.
- 3** Select [Save].
- 4** Repeat steps 2 and 3 to re-enter the same encryption key.
- 5** Select [Save] to display a confirmation screen. Select [Yes] on the screen to save the setting.

## Service Rep. Restricted Operation

This feature protects the Security Kit settings from being altered by an outsider pretending to be our customer engineer. Select whether to permit our customer engineer to perform [Overwrite Hard Disk] and [Data Encryption] operations, and to change the [HTTP - SSL/TLS Settings], [System Administrator's Login ID], [System Administrator's Passcode], and [System Administrator Maximum Login Attempts] settings.

When [On] is set, you can set the [Maintenance Passcode].

Make sure not to lose the system administrator's user ID and passcode. Otherwise, the various settings that are only available in system administrator mode cannot be changed. If the system administrator's user ID and passcode are lost when [Service Rep. Restricted Operation] is set to [On], not only you but also we are no longer able to change any setting in system administrator mode. If you lose the system administrator's user ID and passcode when the Security Kit is installed, the electric component board of the machine must be replaced in order to change any setting in system administrator mode. In that case, you will be charged for the electrical component board and handling cost.

**Note** • An optional package is required to use this feature. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

## Software Download

This feature is for customer engineer use. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

## Restrict Recipient Selection Method

Set whether to place restrictions on e-mail transmissions to addresses unregistered on Address Book.

Selecting [Only From Address Book] disables address entry on the [E-mail] screen using the keyboard or numeric keypad, and permits only transmissions to addresses registered on Address Book.

## Restrict User to Edit Address Book

Specifies whether or not to permit users to add and edit recipients on Address Book.

# Copy Service Settings

In [Copy Service Settings], you can make settings relating to the copy feature. The following shows the reference section for each item.

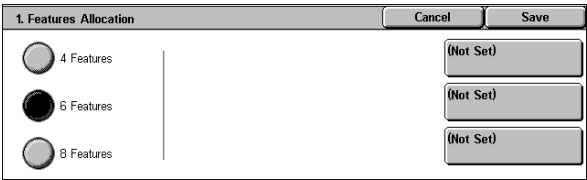
Copy Tab - Features Allocation.....	106
Number of Display Buttons .....	107
Copy Defaults .....	107
Copy Control.....	110
Original Size Defaults.....	111
Reduce/Enlarge Presets.....	111
Annotations Create Comments .....	111

- 1 Select [Tools].  
For the method of displaying the [Tools] screen, refer to "System Settings Procedure" (P.76).
- 2 Select [Copy Service Settings].
- 3 Select the item to be set or changed.

## Copy Tab - Features Allocation

You can change the paper tray buttons and copy magnification buttons shown on the [Copy] screen. This setting allows you to easily select the paper trays and copy magnification you frequently use. You can change the features shown on the [Copy] screen. By setting the most commonly used features, you can avoid extra operations such as selecting tabs.

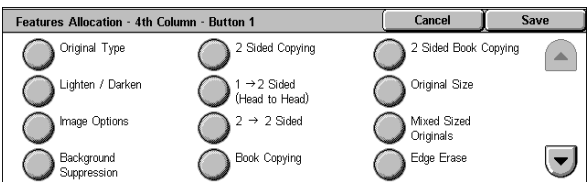
- 1 Select the number of features displayed on the [Copy] screen.
- 2 From the buttons appearing on the right side of the screen, select the position where you want to allocate a feature.



**Note** • The position of each button on the right side corresponds to the position on the [Copy] screen.

- 4 Features  
The [Reduce/Enlarge], [Paper Supply], [2 Sided Copying], and [Copy Output] features are displayed on the [Copy] screen. You cannot change the displayed features and their positions.
- 6 Features  
You can set the features appearing in the fourth column from the left of the [Copy] screen. Up to 3 features can be allocated.[Reduce/Enlarge] and [Paper Supply] cannot be allocated.
- 8 Features  
You can set the features appearing in the third and fourth columns from the left of the [Copy] screen. Up to 6 features can be allocated. [Reduce/Enlarge] and [Paper Supply] cannot be allocated.

- 3 Select the feature to be displayed, and select [Save].  
**Note** • Select [▲] to return to the previous screen or [▼] to move to the next screen.



- 4 Repeat Steps 2 to 3 as required.

## Number of Display Buttons

### Paper Supply - Button 2 - 4

For the feature buttons appearing in [Paper Supply] on the [Copy] screen, you can set the paper tray.

### Reduce/Enlarge - Button 3 - 4

For the feature buttons appearing in [Reduce/Enlarge] on the [Copy] screen, you can set the ratio.  
You can select the ratio from the registered R/E Preset buttons.

## Copy Defaults

This sets the default settings of copy feature settings. When the power is turned on or the machine returns from a Power Save mode, or when the <Clear All> button is pressed, the system returns to the defaults set here. By setting features you often use as defaults, you can avoid extra operations required in use.

### Paper Supply

Set the default value for [Paper Supply] in the [Copy] screen.  
When the default value of [Reduce/Enlarge] is set to [Auto %], [Auto Paper Select] cannot be selected for [Paper Supply].

### Reduce/Enlarge

Set the default value for [Reduce/Enlarge] in the [Copy] screen.  
Select the ratio from [100%], [Auto %], and the buttons registered as R/E Preset buttons.  
When the default setting for [Paper Supply] is [Auto Paper Select], [Auto %] cannot be selected for [Reduce/Enlarge].  
For information about R/E Preset buttons, refer to "Reduce/Enlarge Presets" (P.111).

### Original Type

Set the default value for [Original Type] in the [Image Quality] screen.

### Lighten/Darken

Set the default value for [Lighten/Darken] of [Image Options] in the [Image Quality] screen.

### Sharpness

Set the default value for [Sharpness] of [Image Options] in the [Image Quality] screen.

### Background Suppression

Set the default value for [Background Suppression] of [Image Enhancement] in the [Image Quality] screen.  
[Background Suppression] is valid when [Original Type] is set to [Photo & Text], [Text], [Light Text] or [Text on See-Through Paper].

### 2 Sided Copying

Set the default value for [2 Sided Copying] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen and [Output Format] screen.

### Mixed Sized Originals

Set the default value for [Mixed Sized Originals] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen.

**Edge Erase - Top & Bottom Edge**

Set the default value for the amount of edge erased from the original in the top directions in [Edge Erase] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen. Set the value from 0 to 50 mm in 1 mm increments.

**Edge Erase - Left & Right Edge**

Set the default value for the amount of edge erased from the original in the left directions in [Edge Erase] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen. Set the value from 0 to 50 mm in 1 mm increments.

**Center Erase/Binding Erase**

Set the default value for the binding erase amount of the original in [Edge Erase] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen. Set the value from 0 to 50 mm in 1 mm increments.

**Image Shift - Side 1**

Set the default value for [Side 1] of [Image Shift] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen.

**Image Shift - Side 2**

Set the default value for [Side 2] of [Image Shift] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen.

**Image Rotation**

Set the default value for [Image Rotation] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen.

**Image Rotation Direction**

Set the default value for [Image Rotation - Rotation Direction], if documents are of mixed orientations.

**Original Orientation**

Set the default value for [Original Orientation] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen.

**Multiple-Up**

Set the default value for [Multiple-Up] in the [Output Format] screen.

**Copy Output**

Set the default value for [Copy Output] in the [Output Format] screen.

**Copy Output - Separators Tray**

Set the default value for [Separator Tray] under [Uncollated with Separators] on the [Output Format] screen.

**Output Destination**

Set the default value of the output destination for printing or copying.

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

**Annotations - Stored Comment**

Set the default value for [Stored Comments] displayed when [Comment] is selected for [Annotation] in the [Output Format] screen.

You can select a comment type from eight preset types and custom text.

For information about how to set custom text, refer to "Annotations Create Comments" (P.111).

**Annotations - Comment - Position**

Set the default value for [Position] displayed when [Comment] is selected for [Annotation] in the [Output Format] screen.

**Annotations - Comment - Font Size**

Set the default value for [Format & Style] displayed when [Comment] is selected for [Annotation] in the [Output Format] screen.

**Annotations - Date Stamp - Position**

Set the default value for [Position] displayed when [Date Stamp] is selected for [Annotation] in the [Output Format] screen.

**Annotations - Date Size**

Set the default value for [Font Size] displayed when [Date Stamp] is selected for [Annotation] in the [Output Format] screen.

**Annotations - Page Number Style**

Set the default value for [Style] displayed when [Page Numbers] is selected for [Annotation] on the [Output Format] screen.

**Annotations - Page Numbers - Position**

Set the default value for [Position] displayed when [Page Numbers] is selected for [Annotation] in the [Output Format] screen.

**Annotations - Page Numbers - Font Size**

Set the default value for [Font Size] displayed when [Page Numbers] is selected for [Annotation] in the [Output Format] screen.

**Bates Stamp - Number of Digits**

Set the default value for [Number of Digits] displayed when [Bates Stamp] is selected for [Annotation] on the [Output Format] tab.

**Bates Stamp - Position**

Set the default value for [Position] displayed when [Bates Stamp] is selected for [Annotation] on the [Output Format] tab.

**Bates Stamp - Font Size**

Set the default value for [Font Size] displayed when [Bates Stamp] is selected for [Annotation] on the [Output Format] tab.

**Sample Job**

Set the default value for [Sample Job] in the [Job Assembly] screen.

**Booklet Creation - Cover Tray**

Set the default value for [Covers Tray] in the [Booklet Creation] screen.

**Covers - Cover Tray**

Set the default value for [Main Body Tray] and [Cover Tray] in the [Covers] screen.

**Build Job - Segment Separator Tray**

Set the default value for [Separator Tray] in the [Transparency Options] screen.

## Copy Control

These settings relate to copy operation control.

### Memory Full Procedure

When the space of the hard disk runs out during scanning originals, a screen appears asking how the partly stored data should be handled.

Once a certain time has elapsed with the confirmation screen displayed, the subsequent processing is determined by these settings.

You can set the time until the memory full procedure is carried out. For more information, refer to "Auto Job Release" (P.90).

■Delete Job

The stored data is discarded.

■Run Job

The read-in data is treated as valid, and the part of the original read in is copied.

### Maximum Stored Pages

Set the maximum number of stored pages of a copy original. You can set a number from 1 to 999 pages.

### Auto Paper Off

Select the tray used when [Auto] of [Paper Supply] in the [Copy] screen is cancelled (the tray used when [Auto] of [Paper Supply] is selected in the [Copy] screen, and [Auto %] or [Independent X-Y %] is selected for [Reduce/Enlarge]).

### Mixed Sized Originals - 2 Sided Copy

Specify paper to copy side 2 of the original if different size of originals for side 1 and side 2 are selected by automatic paper supply when the size of the side 1 differs from that of the side 2 in 2-sided copy.

**Important** • When the side 1 and side 2 are different sizes and if the side 2 is copied on the sheet on which the side 1 has already been printed, an image may be missing.

■Copy to new sheet

Side 2 is copied on the front of a new sheet.

■Copy to Side 2

Side 2 is copied on the opposite side of Side 1 without changing the paper size.

### Fine-tune 100%

You can fine-tune the magnification when copying at 100% (actual size). The set value is applied when [Reduce/Enlarge] or [Preset %] in the [Copy] screen is set to 100%. Set the value in the X/Y direction within the range 98 to 102% in 0.1% increments.

**Important** • This feature is applied only when a copy is made with the document glass. This setting is not reflected in the magnification (100%) under [Proportional %], [Independent X-Y %] or [Calculator %].

**Note** • A magnification displays [100%] even if [Fine-tune 100%] is set.

### Pseudo-Photo Gradation Mode

Set the gradation mode for photo originals. Select [Error Diffusion] or [Dither] depending on the halftone processing to be used for reproducing photo images.

### Original Type - See-Through Paper

When [Text] is selected for [Original Type] in the [Image Quality] screen, set whether to display a special original ([See-Through Paper]).



## Annotations - Comment Density

Set the translucency of the comment printed as annotation.  
You can select from three translucency values: [Darken], [Normal], and [Lighten]. Darken represents no translucency.

**Note** • If the stamp with [Darken] density is printed over text, the text may be unreadable.

## Annotations - Comment on Side 2

You can tune the position to print a comment finely.

## Date Stamp - Position on Side 2

You can tune the position to print a date stamp finely.

## Page Numbers - Position on Side 2

You can tune the position to print a page number finely.

## Bates Stamp - Position on Side 2

You can tune the position to print a bates stamp finely.

## Maximum Number of Sets

Set the maximum number of allowed copy sets between 1 and 999. Users will not be able to specify the number of copy sets larger than the value set here.

## Original Size Defaults

Set the original sizes that appear in [Original Size] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen.  
Original sizes can be assigned to the buttons other than [Auto Detect].

When frequently making copies of non-standard size originals, by presetting the non-standard size, you can save time to enter the original size each time a copy is made.

### ■A/B Series Size

You can select from sizes of A and B series.

### ■Inch Size

You can select from sizes of inch series.

### ■Others

You can select from other sizes.

### ■Custom Size

You can enter any size. Set the width (X) from 15 to 432 mm, and the height (Y) from 15 to 297 mm in 1 mm increments.

## Reduce/Enlarge Presets

Set the magnifications shown in [Preset %] in [Reduce/Enlarge] in the [Copy] screen.  
You can assign any magnification to the R/E Preset buttons.

## Annotations Create Comments

Register text to be printed with [Comment] under [Annotation]. You can enter up to 64 characters.

For information about how to enter characters, "Entering Text" (P.24).

# Connectivity & Network Setup

In [Connectivity & Network Setup], set the type of interface through which the machine is connected to the client in [Port Settings], and the parameters required for communications in [Protocol Settings].

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

For information on Network Settings, refer to "Printer Environment Settings" (P.201) or "E-mail Environment Settings" (P.219).

When using CentreWare Internet Services, more detailed settings are possible. For more details, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Settings" (P.193).

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Port Settings .....	112
Protocol Settings .....	115
Machine's E-mail Address/Host Name.....	118
Proxy Server Settings.....	118
Outgoing/Incoming E-mail Settings .....	119
Remote Authentication/Directory Service Settings .....	121
Security Settings .....	125
Other Settings.....	128

- 1 Select [Tools].  
For the method of displaying the [Tools] screen, refer to "System Settings Procedure" (P.76).
- 2 Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
- 3 Select the item to be set or changed.

## Port Settings

Set the interface by which the machine is connected to a client. In [Port Settings], you can set the following items.

**Important** • For LPD, Port9100, and HTTP-SSL/TLS, do not use a number that is the same as a port number of another port.  
For a port that uses HTTP (IPP, Internet Service (HTTP), UPnP Discovery, SOAP, and WebDAV), do not use a number that is the same as a port number of LPD, Port9100, and HTTP-SSL/TLS.  
Furthermore, if any of the above are set to one of the port numbers indicated below, operation may no longer be performed properly depending on the setting conditions of the port.  
25, 139, 427, 445, 631, 15000

For information on HTTP-SSL/TLS port, refer to "HTTP - SSL/TLS Port Number" (P.125).

### USB

- Port Status  
Select [Enabled] to use a USB interface.
- Print Mode  
Configure the print language on the machine to match the received data.  
Select [Auto] to set the device so that it will automatically determine and use the most suitable language to print data received from the host device.
- PJL  
Enable when receiving a job using PJL commands.

### ■Auto Eject Time

Configure the time that the data so far received by the machine will automatically be printed since data is no longer sent to the printer.

You can enter a time between 5 and 1275 seconds in 5 seconds increments.

### ■Adobe Communication Protocol

- Standard

Select this when the communication protocol is in the ASCII format.

- Binary

Select this when the communication protocol is in the binary format. Depending on the data, the print job may be completed faster than when Normal is selected.

- TBCP

Select this to switch between the specific control codes when the communication protocols involve both ASCII and binary formats.

- RAW

Select this when the communication protocol is in the RAW format.

If you cannot correctly print EPS files from a Macintosh computer via USB, select this option.

## LPD

### ■Port Status

Select [Enabled] to use LPD.

### ■LPD Port Number

Select [Standard (515)] or [Enter Number].

Enter a port number in the range from 1 to 65535 when selecting [Enter Number].

The default value is 515.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

### ■LPD Maximum Number of Sessions

Enter the maximum number of sessions. You can enter a number between 1 and 10 in 1 session increments.

The default value is 5.

## NetWare

### ■Port Status

Select [Enabled] to use NetWare.

## SMB

### ■Port Status

Select [Enabled] to use SMB when using Scan to PC (SMB) service or sharing the machine on the network.

## IPP

### ■Port Status

Select [Enabled] to use IPP.

Set this when you want to use IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) to print via the Internet.

### ■IPP - Added Port Number

Enter the port number for IPP except the standard port number in the range from 1 to 65535.

To disable this option, select [Disabled].

The default value is 80.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

**Note**

- You cannot select [IPP - Added Port Number], if IPP port is disabled.

Enable IPP port first and reboot the machine, and then configure [IPP - Added Port Number].

## EtherTalk

- Port Status  
Select [Enabled] to use EtherTalk.

## Bonjour

- Port Status  
Select [Enabled] to use Bonjour.
- Note**
  - Bonjour can be set only when optional Adobe PostScript 3 Kit is installed.
  - In order to print from a printer detected by [Bonjour], the LPD port must be activated in advance.

## Port9100

- Port Status  
Select [Enabled] to use Port9100.  
Select this option when the communication protocol is in RAW format for Windows Standard TCP/IP port monitor.
- Port9100 - Port Number  
Select [Standard (9100)] or [Enter Number].  
Enter a port number in the range from 1 to 65535 when selecting [Enter Number].  
The default value is 9100.
- Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

## SNMP

- Port Status  
Select [Enabled] to use SNMP, when you use any Fuji Xerox manufactured web applications to control the machine remotely.

## FTP Client

- Port Status  
Select [Enabled] when you use Scan to PC feature with FTP transmission.

## Receive E-mail

- Port Status  
Select [Enabled] when you use E-mail Printing.

## Send E-mail

- Port Status  
Select [Enabled] when you use E-mail feature.

## E-mail Notification Service

- Port Status  
Select [Enabled] when you use the mail notice or job completion notice feature.
- Note**
  - [Consumables Status], [Parts Status], [Paper Tray Status], [Output Tray Status], [Jam Status], [Interlock Status], and [Fault Status] are notified.
  - You can configure the notification service in CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the help of CentreWare Internet Services.

## UPnP Discovery

- Port Status  
Select [Enabled] to use UPnP.

#### ■UPnP Discovery - Port Number

Select [Standard (80)] or [Enter Number].

Enter a port number in the range from 1 to 65535 when selecting [Enter Number].

The default value is 80.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

### Internet Services

#### ■Port Status

Select [Enabled] to use CentreWare Internet Services.

For more information about CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Settings" (P.193).

#### ■Internet Services Port Number

Select [Standard (80)] or [Enter Number].

Enter a port number in the range from 1 to 65535 when selecting [Enter Number].

The default value is 80.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

**Note** • [Port Number] cannot be configured if [Port Status] is set to [Disabled]. To configure [Port Number], enable [Port Status], select [Save], and then reboot the machine.

### SOAP

#### ■Port Status

Select [Enabled] when you are using an application program, such as the EasyOperator.

#### ■SOAP - Port Number

Select [Standard (80)] or [Enter Number].

Enter a port number in the range from 1 to 65535 when selecting [Enter Number].

The default value is 80.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

### WebDAV

#### ■Port Status

Select [Enabled] when you are using an application program for accessing the Mailbox in the machine, such as the EasyOperator.

**Note** • You can not configure [WebDAV - Port Number] and [WebDAV - Operation Time-Out], if WebDAV port is disabled.  
Enable WebDAV port first and select [Close] and [Reboot Now] to reboot the machine, and then configure [WebDAV - Port Number] and [WebDAV - Operation Time-Out].

#### ■WebDAV - Port Number

Select [Default Port (80)] or [Enter Number].

Enter a port number in the range from 1 to 65535 when selecting [Enter Number].

The default value is 80.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

#### ■WebDAV - Operation Time Limit

You can enter an operation time-out period between 1 and 65535 seconds in 1 second increments.

## Protocol Settings

Set the parameters required for communications. In [Protocol Settings], you can set the following items.

### Ethernet Rated Speed

Set the communication speed for the Ethernet interface.

- **Auto**  
Select this to detect the Ethernet transmission rate automatically.
- **100 Mbps Full-Duplex**  
Select this to set 100BASE-TX (Full Duplex) as the default value.
- **100 Mbps Half-Duplex**  
Select this to set 100BASE-TX (Half Duplex) as the default value.
- **10 Mbps Full-Duplex**  
Select this to set 10BASE-T (Full Duplex) as the default value.
- **10 Mbps Half-Duplex**  
Select this to set 10BASE-T (Half Duplex) as the default value.

## TCP/IP - IP Mode

Allows you to select an IP operation mode. Selecting [Dual Stack] enables both IPv4 and IPv6 communications.

- **IPv4 Mode**  
Select this option for IPv4 environment.
- **IPv6 Mode**  
Select this option for IPv6 environment.
- **Dual Stack**  
Select this option for IPv4, IPv6, or mixed IPv4/IPv6 environment.

## IPv4 - IP Address Resolution

Allows you to set the method for obtaining the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address.

- **DHCP**  
The address, subnet mask, and gateway address will automatically be set via DHCP.
- **BOOTP**  
The address, subnet mask, and gateway address will automatically be set via BOOTP.
- **RARP**  
The address, subnet mask, and gateway address will automatically be set via RARP.
- **DHCP/Autonet**  
The address, subnet mask, and gateway address will automatically be set via DHCP/Autonet. If the machine fails to communicate with the DHCP server, the Auto IP function is automatically enabled and the machine is assigned an IP address (169.254.xxx.xxx). When communication between the machine and the DHCP server is recovered, the machine is re-assigned an IP address, a subnet mask, and a gateway address by the DHCP server.
- **STATIC**  
Allows you to manually specify an IP address, a subnet mask, and a gateway address.
  - Note**
    - [IPv4 - Subnet Mask] and [IPv4 - Gateway Address] are configurable when [IPv4 - IP Address] is set.

## IPv4 - IP Address

Enter the IP address using the numeric keypad when selecting [STATIC] at [IPv4 - IP Address Resolution].

- Note**
  - Enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.
  - Specify an IP address using numbers (0 to 9) and periods (.). If you mistyped a character on the screen, select [Backspace] to delete the character.

## IPv4 - Subnet Mask

Enter the subnet mask using the numeric keypad when selecting [STATIC] at [IPv4 - IP Address Resolution].

- Note**
- Enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.
  - Specify a subnet mask using numbers (0 to 9) and periods (.). If you mistyped a character on the screen, select [Backspace] to delete the character.

## IPv4 - Gateway Address

Enter the gateway address using the numeric keypad when selecting [STATIC] at [IPv4 - IP Address Resolution].

- Note**
- Enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.
  - Specify a gateway address using numbers (0 to 9) and periods (.). If you mistyped a character on the screen, select [Backspace] to delete the character.

## IPv4 - IP Filter

Select whether to limit IP addresses that can access the machine.

- Note**
- To set the IP addresses that the machine accepts connection from, use CentreWare Internet Services. For details, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Settings" (P.193).

## IPv6 Address Manual Configuration

Allows you to select whether or not to configure the IPv6-address settings manually.

### Manually Configured IPv6 Address

This setting is configurable when [IPv6 Address Manual Configuration] is set to [Enabled]. Specify an IPv6 address.

- Note**
- Enter the address in the format "xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx", where "xxxx" is a hexadecimal value.
  - Specify an address using alphanumeric characters (0 to 9, and A to F) and colons (:). If you mistyped a character on the screen, select [Backspace] to delete the character.

### Manually Configured IPv6 Prefix

This setting is configurable when [Manually Configured IPv6 Address] is set. Specify a prefix in the range of 0 to 128.

### Manually Configured IPv6 Gateway

This setting is configurable when [Manually Configured IPv6 Address] is set. Specify a gateway address.

- Note**
- Enter the address in the format "xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx", where "xxxx" is a hexadecimal value.

### Auto Configured IPv6 Address

Displays the following addresses automatically assigned.

- Link-local address
- Auto stateless address 1 and prefix
- Auto stateless address 2 and prefix
- Auto stateless address 3 and prefix
- Auto gateway address

## IPv6 - IP Filter

Select whether or not to filter IP addresses.

- Note**
- To set the IP addresses that the machine accepts connection from, use CentreWare Internet Services. For details, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Settings" (P.193).

## Machine's E-mail Address/Host Name

---

Set the e-mail address and host name for the machine. In [Machine's E-mail Address/Host Name], you can set the following items.

### E-mail Address

Enter the E-mail address for the machine with the numeric keypad displayed by pressing [Change Settings]. Up to 128 single-byte characters are allowed.

■When receiving E-mail via SMTP

You can set any name for the account (on the left side of @). Set the address section (on the right side of @), with the combination of the host name and domain name. An alias cannot be set.

Example: mymail@myhost.example.com

- Account name: mymail
- Host name: myhost
- Domain Name: example.com

■When receiving E-mails via POP3

Enter the POP user name (on the left side of @) and incoming POP3 mail server name in the address section (on the right side of @). You can set an alias, such as mymail@example.com.

Example: mymail@myhost.example.com

- Account name: mymail

### Machine Name

Enter the machine name with the numeric keypad displayed by pressing [Change Settings]. Up to 32 single-byte characters are allowed.

### Host Name

Enter the host name with the numeric keypad displayed by pressing [Change Settings]. Up to 32 single-byte characters are allowed.

### Domain Name

Enter the domain name with the numeric keypad displayed by pressing [Change Settings]. Up to 64 single-byte characters are allowed.

## Proxy Server Settings

---

Configure the settings for a proxy server.

Configure a proxy server when inbound/outbound access is used.

**Important** • Do not set this item unless you use services requiring proxy settings.

### Use Proxy Server

Select whether to use a proxy server.



## Proxy Server Setup

Select the proxy server specification from [Same Proxy for All Protocols] and [Different Proxy for Each Protocol].

## Addresses to Bypass Proxy Server

Enter addresses not using the proxy server. You can use wildcards “\*” for specifying the addresses.

## HTTP Proxy Server Name

Enter the HTTP server name. Up to 255 characters are allowed.

## HTTP Proxy Server Port Number

Set the HTTP server port number in the range from 1 to 65535.  
The default value is 8080.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

## HTTP Proxy Server Authentication

Select whether to enable the authentication feature of the HTTP server.

## HTTP Proxy Server Login Name

Enter a login name of the HTTP server. Up to 31 characters are allowed.

## HTTP Proxy Server Password

Enter a password of the HTTP server. Up to 31 characters are allowed.

## HTTPS Proxy Server Name

Enter the HTTPS server name. Up to 255 characters are allowed.

## HTTPS Proxy Server Port Number

Set the HTTPS server port number in the range from 1 to 65535.  
The default value is 8080.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

## HTTPS Proxy Server Authentication

Select whether to enable the authentication feature of the HTTPS server.

## HTTPS Proxy Server Login Name

Enter a login name of the HTTPS server. Up to 31 characters are allowed.

## HTTPS Proxy Server Password

Enter a password of the HTTPS server. Up to 31 characters are allowed.

## Outgoing/Incoming E-mail Settings

Set e-mail transmission and reception.

## POP3 Server Settings

Set the POP3 server. In [POP3 Server Settings], you can set the following items.

### ■POP3 Server Name/IP Address

Enter a server name or IP address. Up to 128 characters are allowed.

For IPv4, enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.

For IPv6, enter the address in the format "xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx", where "xxxx" is a hexadecimal value.

#### ■POP3 Port Number

Select [Standard (110)] or [Enter Number].

Enter a port number in the range from 1 to 65535 when selecting [Enter Number].

The default value is 110.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

#### ■POP3 Polling Interval

Set the interval for checking the e-mail on the POP3 server in the range from 1 to 120 minutes, in 1 minute increments.

#### ■POP3 Login Name

Enter the name to login to the POP3 server. Up to 64 single-byte characters are allowed.

#### ■POP3 Password

Enter a password of the POP3 server. Up to 64 single-byte characters are allowed.

Using the numeric keypad displayed by pressing [Keyboard], enter the same password in [New Password/Passcode] and [Retype Password/Passcode]. If you do not set the password, leave the text boxes blank and select [Save].

#### ■POP Password Encryption

Select [On (APOP)] to encrypt the password.

- Note**
- When you make an entry mistake, press the <C> (Clear) button and enter again.
  - When moving to the next value without entering all 3 digits, select [Next].

## SMTP Server Settings

Set the SMTP server. In [SMTP Server Settings], you can set the following items.

- Note**
- For IPv4, enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.
  - For IPv6, enter the address in the format "xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx", where "xxxx" is a hexadecimal value.
  - When you make an entry mistake, press the <C> (Clear) button and enter again.
  - When moving to the next value without entering all 3 digits, select [Next].

#### ■SMTP Server Name/IP Address

Enter a server name or IP address. Up to 128 characters are allowed.

For IPv4, enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.

For IPv6, enter the address in the format "xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx", where "xxxx" is a hexadecimal value.

#### ■SMTP Server Port Number

Select [Standard (25)] or [Enter Number].

Enter a port number in the range from 1 to 65535 when selecting [Enter Number].

The default value is 25.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

#### ■E-mail Send Authentication

Select one from [Off], [POP before SMTP], or [SMTP AUTH].

- Note**
- If [POP before SMTP] is selected, the POP3 settings must be set.
  - AUTH PLAIN, AUTH-LOGIN, or AUTH CRAM-MD5 can be used as an authentication method.

#### ■SMTP AUTH Login Name

Enter the user name for verification purpose at the SMTP server. Up to 64 single-byte characters are allowed.

#### ■SMTP AUTH Password

Enter the password for verification purpose at the SMTP server. Up to 64 single-byte characters are allowed.

Using the numeric keypad displayed by pressing [Keyboard], enter the same password in [New Password/Passcode] and [Retype Password/Passcode]. If you do not set the password, leave the text boxes blank and select [Save].

### Domain Filtering

Set accepted domains. In [Domain Filtering], you can set the following items.

#### ■Domain Filtering

Select one from [Off], [Allow Domains], or [Block Domains].

#### ■Domain 1 - Domain 50

Specify up to 50 domains if either [Allow Domains] or [Block Domains] has been selected for [Domain Filtering].

Using the numeric keypad displayed by pressing [Change Settings], up to 64 single-byte characters are allowed.

## Remote Authentication/Directory Service Settings

You can make the settings for the remote authentication server and Directory Service.

### Authentication System Setup

#### ■Authentication System

Allows you to select the system for authentication from [Kerberos (Windows2000)], [Kerberos (Solaris)], [LDAP], and [SMB].

After the authentication system has been changed, personal mailboxes and personal job flow sheets operated on the previous authentication system are not deleted automatically. If these mailboxes or job flow sheets are no longer needed, delete them from the machine. If the same user IDs are also used on the new authentication system, the personal mailboxes and personal job flow sheets can be used by the same users.

#### ■Server Response Time-Out

Set the time-out value for a response from a server in the range of 1 to 75 seconds in 1 second increments.

#### ■Search Time-Out

Set the time-out value for user search on a server in the range of 1 to 120 seconds in 1 second increments.

### Kerberos Server Settings

Configure the Kerberos Server 1 through 5.

The settings in [Kerberos Server 1] will be the default settings for authentication.

#### ■Primary Server Name/IP Address

Enter the primary server name or IP address.

##### Note

- For IPv4, enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.
- For IPv6, enter the address in the format "xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx", where "xxxx" is a hexadecimal value.

#### ■Primary Server Port Number

Set the Primary server port number in the range from 1 to 65535.  
The default value is 88.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

#### ■Secondary Server Name/IP Address

Enter the secondary server name or IP address.

- Note**
- For IPv4, enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.
  - For IPv6, enter the address in the format "xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx", where "xxxx" is a hexadecimal value.

■ **Secondary Server Port Number**

Set the secondary server port number in the range from 1 to 65535.  
The default value is 88.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

■ **Domain Name**

When using Active Directory of Windows 2000 Server or Windows Server 2003, set the domain name of Active Directory in [Domain Name]. Up to 64 characters are allowed.

**Important** • Enter a realm name with capital letters. Otherwise, an authentication error occurs.

## LDAP Server/Directory Service

Configure the directory server, authentication method, and search attributes and ranges for LDAP authentication and address book search by LDAP.

■ **Primary Server Name/IP Address**

Enter the primary server name or IP address.

- Note**
- For IPv4, enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.
  - For IPv6, enter the address in the format "xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx", where "xxxx" is a hexadecimal value.

■ **Primary Server Port Number**

Set the Primary server port number in the range from 1 to 65535.  
The default value is 389.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

■ **Secondary Server Name/IP Address**

Enter the secondary server name or IP address.

- Note**
- For IPv4, enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.
  - For IPv6, enter the address in the format "xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx", where "xxxx" is a hexadecimal value.

■ **Secondary Server Port Number**

Set the secondary server port number in the range from 1 to 65535.  
The default value is 389.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

■ **Authentication Method**

Select the method for LDAP authentication from [Direct Authentication] and [Authentication of User Attributes].

- **Direct Authentication**  
User ID and password entered by user are used for LDAP authentication.
- **Authentication of User Attributes**  
The entered User ID is used as an attribute value specified in [Attribute of Types User Name] for a search on a LDAP server. [Attribute of Login User Name] of a user that is found through the search is used for LDAP authentication.

■ **Attribute of Typed User Name**

When [Authentication of User Attributes] is used for LDAP authentication, set an attribute of User ID entered by user. Up to 32 characters are allowed.

Set the attribute of the LDAP server that corresponds to the value to be entered as the user name from the control panel. For example, when you want the mail address to be entered, set "Mail."

**■Attribute of Login User Name**

When [Authentication of User Attributes] is used for LDAP authentication, set an attribute of user ID entered by user. Up to 32 characters are allowed.

**■Use Added Text String**

Select whether to use additional text strings for the user ID.

**■Text String Added to User Name**

Enter text strings for [Text String Added to User Name]. You can use up to 64 characters. When [Use Added Text String] is set to [Enabled], enter the corresponding fixed text string.

Example:

When "mail" is set for [Attribute of Typed User Name] and the information registered for that target user was "mail@myhost.example.com," normally "mail@myhost.example.com" needs to be entered.

However, if [Use Added Text String] was set to [Enabled] and "@myhost.example.com" was specified for [Text String Added to User Name], input is simplified because the only data that needs to be entered from the control panel is "mail" as the machine adds "@myhost.example.com" to the end.

**■Login Name**

Set a login name for address book search and access to the directory server by [Authentication of User Attributes] of LDAP authentication. However, set this item only when authentication is required for the directory service. Do not make the setting when authentication is not required.

When setting the login name, you can enter up to 255 characters.

**■Password**

Set a password for address book search and access to the directory server by [User Attribute Authentication] of LDAP authentication. However, set this item only when authentication is required for the directory service. Do not make the setting when authentication is not required.

When setting the password, you can enter up to 32 characters.

**■Search Directory Root**

Enter the search root character string with up to 255 characters.

**■Scope of Search from Root Entry**

Select the search range from the search root.

- Root entry only
  - Searches the root level only.
- One level below root entry only
  - Searches from the root, as far as one level below.
- All levels below root entry
  - Searches from the root, including all levels below.

**■Object Class of Search Target**

Enter the search target object class with up to 32 characters.

**■LDAP Referral**

Specify whether or not to re-establish connection to another LDAP server if a currently connected LDAP server requests to do so.

**■LDAP Referral Hop Limit**

When using the referral feature, specify how many times that a user can be referred to servers within the range of 1 to 5 times.

**■LDAP Server**

Select the software used by the directory server, from [Microsoft Active Directory], [Novell NetWare], [IBM Lotus Domino 6.\*], and [Other Applications].

**■Search Entries by Common Name**

Set whether to use [Attribute Type of Name] when names are used as search keys.

- **Search Entries by Surname**  
Set whether to use [Attribute Type of Surname] when names are used as search keys.
- **Search Entries by Given Name**  
Set whether to use [Attribute Type of Given Name] when names are used as search keys.
- **Attribute Type of Name**  
Set the recipient name attribute type. Up to 32 characters are allowed.
- **Attribute Type of Surname**  
Set the sender's family name attribute type. Up to 32 characters are allowed.
- **Attribute Type of Given Name**  
Set the sender's first name attribute type. Up to 32 characters are allowed.
- **Attribute Type of E-mail Address**  
Set the e-mail address attribute type. Up to 32 characters are allowed.
- **Attribute Type of Custom Item 1, 2, and 3**  
Set the LDAP attribute type of custom items 1 to 3. Up to 32 characters are allowed.
- **Attribute Name of Custom Item 1, 2, and 3**  
Set the attribute names assigned to custom items 1 to 3. You can enter up to 16 characters.
- **Attribute Type of Certificate**  
Set the certificate attribute type. Up to 32 characters are allowed.
- **Maximum Number of Search Results**  
Set the upper limit on the number of searched address results from 5 to 100. If there are more search results than the upper limit, the search operation is stopped at that number.
- **Search Time-Out**  
Select whether or not to set a search time-out. Set the value from 5 to 120 seconds in 1 second increments.
- **Directory Service for Address Book**  
Select whether to use an address book stored on the directory server.  
Even when [Enabled] is selected, unless the following conditions are satisfied, the address book of the directory server will not be started.
  - The IP address of the directory server (primary) of the machine must be set
  - The IP address or Internet address of the directory server (primary) must be set
  - The port numbers used for LDAP communication must be set on the directory server and the machine

## SMB Server Settings

- **SMB Server Setup**  
Select the server specification method from [Domain Name] and [Domain & Server Name/Address].  
According to the option you selected here, set [Domain Name] and [Server Name/IP Address] for each of SMB servers 1 to 5.
- **Domain Name**  
Enter the domain name of the server. Up to 64 characters are allowed.  
This setting is mandatory.  
**Important** • Use the NetBIOS or Active Directory domain name for the domain name.
- **Server Name/IP Address**  
Enter the server name or IP address.  
This setting is effective when [SMB Server Setup] is set to [Domain & Server Name/IP Address].  
**Important** • Use the NetBIOS computer name or full computer name with DNS suffix for the server name.

- For IPv4, enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.

## Security Settings

Set the security settings.

### SSL/TLS Settings

Set the SSL/TLS.

■ **Device Certificate - Server**

You can select a certificate to be linked.

■ **HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication**

Enables or disables the HTTP SSL/TLS communications.

■ **HTTP - SSL/TLS Port Number**

Specifies the port number used for HTTP SSL/TLS communication within the range from 1 to 65535.

The default value is 443.

**Important** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

■ **LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication**

Enables or disables the LDAP SSL/TLS communications for LDAP authentication and address book search by LDAP.

The port number of [Primary server port number] and [Secondary Server Port Number] for LDAP server must be changed, if [LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication] is enabled.

The port number for SSL/TLS communications with LDAP directory server is normally 389.

■ **Device Certificate - Client**

Select a certificate to be linked.

■ **Verify Remote Server Certificate**

When the machine is to be operated as an SSL client, select whether to enable or disable a certificate of a remote server.

### S/MIME Settings

Configure the settings of S/MIME.

■ **Device Certificate - S/MIME**

Select a certificate to be linked.

For information on the certificate, refer to "Encryption and Digital Signature Settings" (P.255).

■ **S/MIME Communication**

Select whether to enable or disable the S/MIME communication.

■ **Receive Untrusted E-mail**

If you select [No], the machine does not receive the following e-mail:

- E-mail other than e-mail sent by S/MIME when [S/MIME Communication] is activated.
- E-mail that fails to attach a signature or verification.
- E-mail that is attached with an expired certificate.

■ **Receive Untrusted Internet Fax**

Set whether to receive untrusted Internet Fax or not.

■ **Message Digest Algorithm**

Select a message digest algorithm. Two algorithms are available: SHA1 and MD5.

#### ■ Message Encryption Method

Set the encryption method for mail contents. Four methods are available: 3DES, RC2-40, RC2-64, and RC2-128.

#### ■ Digital Signature - Outgoing E-mail

Select whether or not to always add a digital signature to e-mail. You can also select the setting in which the machine asks to add a digital signature to the e-mail whenever you send.

#### ■ Signature - Outgoing Internet Fax

Set the certificate to be used for sending Internet faxes.

#### ■ Certificate Auto Store

Select whether or not to automatically store a S/MIME certificate attached with the e-mail when receiving e-mail sent from an address registered in the address book.

### PDF/DocuWorks/XPS Signature Settings

Allows you to make the settings for security and signature of PDF/DocuWorks/XPS documents.

#### ■ Device Certificate

Select a certificate to be linked.

For information on the certificate, refer to "Encryption and Digital Signature Settings" (P.255).

#### ■ PDF Signature

Select the setting for PDF Signature from [Do not add signature], [Always add visible signature], [Always add invisible signature], and [Select during send].

#### ■ DocuWorks Signature

Select the setting for DocuWorks Signature from [Do not add signature], [Always add signature], and [Select during send].

#### ■ XPS Signature

Select the setting for XPS Signature from [Do not add signature], [Always add invisible signature], and [Select during send].

### IPSec Settings

Configure the settings of IPSec.

**Note** • For [IKE Authentication Method], [Preshared Key], [DH Group], and [PFS Settings], consult the network administrator.

#### ■ IKE Authentication Method

Select [Authenticate by Preshared Keys] or [Authenticate by Digital Signature].

#### ■ Preshared Key

Enter a preshared key. This setting is effective when [IKE Authentication Method] is set to [Authenticate by Preshared Key].

#### ■ Device Certificate

Select a certificate. This setting is effective when [IKE Authentication Method] is set to [Authenticate by Digital Signature].

#### ■ IPSec Communication

Select whether or not to enable IPSec communication.

#### ■ IKE SA Life Time

Specify a lifetime in the range of 5 to 28800 minutes in 1 minute increments.

**Note** • The value must be greater than the value set in [IPSec SA Life Time].

#### ■ IPSec SA Life Time

Specify a lifetime in the range of 300 to 172800 seconds in 1 second increments.

**Note** • The value must be smaller than the value set in [IKE SA Life Time].



- **DH Group**  
Select [G1] or [G2].
- **PFS Settings**  
Select [Disabled] or [Enabled].
- **Destination IPv4 Address**  
Enter the destination address or the range of the destination addresses in IPv4 format.  
**Note** • When entering an IP address, enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.
- **Destination IPv6 Address**  
Specify the destination address or the range of the destination addresses in IPv6 format.  
**Note** • When entering an IP address, enter the address in the format "xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx", where "xxxx" is a hexadecimal value.
- **Communicate with Non-IPSec Devices**  
Select [Disabled] or [Enabled].

## IEEE 802.1x Settings

Configure the settings of IEEE 802.1x.

- **IEEE 802.1x**  
Select [Disabled] or [Enabled].
- **Authentication Method**  
Select [EAP-MD5], [EAP-MS-CHAPv2], or [PEAP/MS-CHAPv2].
- **Login User Name**  
Enter the login user name. Up to 128 characters are allowed.
- **Login Password**  
Enter the login password. Up to 128 characters are allowed.
- **Server Certificate Verification**  
Select [Enabled] or [Disabled]. This setting is effective when [PEAP/MS-CHAPv2] is selected in [Authentication Method].

## Certificate Revocation Retrieval Settings

You can configure the settings for certificate revocation retrieval. The following settings are available.

- **Level of Certificate Verification**  
Select a level of certificate verification from [Low], [Medium], and [High].  
Selecting [Low] does not verify the validity of certificates.  
Selecting [Medium] verifies the validity of certificates, and if a certificate cannot be verified due to a network error or any other problems, the certificate is determined as a valid one.  
Selecting [High] verifies the validity of certificates, and determines only the certificates that have not been revoked, as valid ones.
- **Retrieval of Certificate Status**  
Select the method to verify the validity of certificates, from [By Retrieving CRL] and [By OCSP].
- **Auto Retrieval of CRL**  
Select whether or not to automatically retrieve a Certificate Revocation List (CRL).
- **CRL Retrieval Time-Out**  
Specify a time-out value to retrieve a Certificate Revocation List (CRL) in the range of 5 to 60 seconds in 1 second increments.
- **Send Query to OCSP Responder With**  
Select how to access an OCSP responder, from [URL as Specified in Certificate] and [URL as Specified by Administrator].

■URL of OCSP Responder

Enter the URL of an OCSP responder.

■OCSP Communication Time-Out

Specify a time-out value for OCSP communication in the range of 5 to 60 seconds in 1 second increments.

---

## Other Settings

---

In [Other Settings], you can set the following items.

### E-mail Receive Protocol

Select from [SMTP] and [POP3] depending on the usage environment.

### Output Destination for E-mail

Specify an output destination for e-mail printing. Selecting [Auto] sets to the default output destination.

## Print Service Settings

In [Print Service Settings], you make settings relating to the printer feature.

When using CentreWare Internet Services, more detailed settings are possible.

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

For more details, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Settings" (P.193).

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Allocate Memory.....	129
Delete Form.....	131
Other Settings.....	131

### 1 Select [Tools].

For the method of displaying the [Tools] screen, refer to "System Settings Procedure" (P.76).

### 2 Select [Print Service Settings].

### 3 Select the item to be set or changed.

## Allocate Memory

For each interface, set the memory capacity for the receiving buffer (temporary storage for data sent from the client).

You can change the receiving buffer capacity depending on the pattern of use and purpose. Increasing the receiving buffer capacity may allow a client to be released sooner from an interface.

**Important** • If you change the memory capacity settings, the memory is reset, and therefore data stored in all memory areas is lost.

• It is not possible to assign more than the total memory. When the power is turned on, if the settings exceed the available memory capacity, they are automatically adjusted by the system.

**Note** • When a port is set to [Disabled], the corresponding items do not appear.

• Depending on the amount of data sent from the client, increasing the memory capacity may not change the time taken to release the client.

## PostScript Memory

Specify a value for the PostScript memory capacity from 16.00 to 96.00 MB in 0.25 MB increments.

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

• The maximum value that can be set varies according to the available memory capacity.

## ESC/P-K Form Memory

Displays destination to save forms used in ESC/P-K.

If a hard disk is not installed, data can be stored in the ESC/P-K form memory. You can specify the value within the range from 128 to 2048 KB in 32 KB increments.

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

• The maximum value that can be set varies according to the available memory capacity.

## HP-GL/2 Auto Layout Memory

Specify where to save HP-GL/2 auto layout memory.

- Note**
- This feature appears when the Adobe PostScript 3 Kit is installed.
  - The maximum value that can be set varies according to the available memory capacity.

## Job Ticket Memory

Specify the size of memory to use for job tickets from a range of 0.25 to 8.00 MB in increments of 0.25 MB.

- Note**
- The maximum value you can set values depending on the amount of available memory.

## Receiving Buffer - USB

Set the receiving buffer for USB.

You can specify the value within the range from 64 to 1024 KB in 32 KB increments.

- Note**
- This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

## Receiving Buffer - LPD

- Note**
- Depending on the setting in LPD Print Queue (P.134), this setting may be fixed.
  - For more information on [LPD Print Queue], refer to "LPD Print Queue" (P.134).

### ■No Spooling

Does not use spooling. While LPD print processing is being carried out for one client, data cannot be received over the same interface from another client.

Specify a value for the dedicated LPD receiving buffer memory capacity from 1,024 to 2,048 KB, in 32 KB increments.

### ■Spool to Memory

Carries out spooling. The receiving buffer for spooling uses memory. When this setting is selected, specify the memory capacity of a receiving buffer for spooling from 0.50 MB to 32.00 MB, in 0.25 MB increments.

Note that print data exceeding the set memory capacity is not accepted. In such cases, select [Spool to Hard Disk] or [No Spooling].

### ■Spool to Hard Disk

Carries out spooling. The receiving buffer for spooling uses the hard disk.

## Receiving Buffer - NetWare

Set the NetWare receiving buffer.

Specify a value from 64 to 1,024 KB in 32 KB increments.

## Receiving Buffer - SMB

### ■No Spooling

Does not use spooling. While SMB print processing is being carried out for one client, data cannot be received over the same interface from another client.

Specify a value for the dedicated SMB receiving buffer memory capacity from 64 to 1,024 KB in 32 KB increments.

**Important** • If you select [Off], job names are displayed as "unknown document name".

### ■Spool to Memory

Carries out spooling. The receiving buffer for spooling uses memory. When this setting is selected, specify the memory capacity of a receiving buffer for spooling from 0.50 to 32.00 MB, in 0.25 MB increments.

Note that print data exceeding the set memory capacity is not accepted. In such cases, select [Spool to Hard Disk] or [No Spooling].

### ■Spool to Hard Disk

Carries out spooling. The receiving buffer for spooling uses the hard disk.

## Receiving Buffer - IPP

### ■No Spooling

Does not use spooling. While IPP print processing is being carried out for one client, data cannot be received over the same interface from another client.

Set a value for the dedicated IPP receiving buffer memory capacity from 64 to 1,024 KB in 32 KB increments.

### ■Spool to Hard Disk

Carries out spooling. The receiving buffer for spooling uses the hard disk.

## Receiving Buffer - EtherTalk

Set the EtherTalk receiving buffer.

Specify a value within the range from 1,024 to 2,048 KB, in 32 KB increments.

## Receiving Buffer - Port 9100

Set the Port 9100 receiving buffer.

Specify a value within the range from 64 to 1,024 KB in 32 KB increments.

## Delete Form

You can delete registered ESC/P-K forms.

- 1** Select [Delete Form].
- 2** Select the print mode to delete forms.
- 3** Enter the form number with the numeric keypad, and select [Confirm].
- 4** Check the form name, and select [Delete Data].

### ■ESC/P

Delete ESC/P-K emulation forms.

### ■Form Number

When you select an item to be deleted, you can enter the form number. Specify a form number from 1 to 2048.

### ■Form Name

After you enter the form number and select [Confirm], the form name matching the entered number appears.

## Other Settings

You can make other settings relating to the paper used in the printer.

### Print Area

Set whether to expand the print area.

For information about the printable area, refer to "Printable Area" (P.433).

For information on the extended printable area, refer to "Extended Printable Area" (P.433).

## Substitute Tray

When there is no tray containing the paper size selected by the automatic tray selection, select whether or not to print replaced with paper loaded in another paper tray. In the event of using substitute tray, set the size.

**Note** • When documents are printed using emulation such as ESC/P-K and HP-GL/2, this setting is not valid and a message prompting you to load paper appears on the screen.

### ■ Display Message

Does not use a substitute tray, but displays a paper loading message.

### ■ Use Larger Size

Replaces with the next larger paper size than that selected, and prints at the same size.

### ■ Use Closest Size

Replaces with the closest paper size to that selected, and prints. If necessary, the printing is automatically reduced in size.

**Note** • If there is a client specification, the client specification takes precedence.

### ■ Select Tray 5

Replaces with the paper in the Tray 5 (Bypass).

## Paper Type Mismatch

Set the action to be taken when the paper type loaded in the paper tray does not match the paper type specified.

### ■ Print

Prints with the paper loaded in the tray.

### ■ Display Confirmation Screen

A confirmation screen appears to show procedures.

If a paper type mismatch occurs during print job processing, the machine ignores the paper type specified on the print driver and selects another type of paper loaded on the machine.

### ■ Display Paper Supply Screen

The [Paper Supply] screen appears, prompting you to load another type of paper in the selected tray. The print job can be processed if you follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

**Note** • If you load another type of paper in the tray by following the screen instructions, the paper type setting for the tray will also be changed to the setting displayed on the screen automatically.

## Unregistered Forms

Set whether to print a job or not if a form specified for printing in a form data file (overlay printing) is not registered on the machine. If you specify [Print], since the specified form is not present, only the data is printed.

This setting is added to the print settings menu when there is a print specification from the host computer.

## Print User ID

When printing using a print driver, specify whether to print user identification information on paper. The first 64 letters of the user information is printed.

Select a position to print from [Top Left], [Top Right], [Bottom Left], [Bottom Right], and [Off].

**Note** • To use the Print User ID feature, the user ID must be set on the print driver beforehand. For more information, refer to the print driver's online help.  
• When user authentication information is not available, "Unknown User" is printed.

## Banner Sheet

Select whether to output banner sheets to separate different outputs.  
A user name and document name are printed on a banner sheet.

- Note**
- Even if the stapler feature is enabled, banner sheets are not stapled.
  - On a print job from a Macintosh, the document name does not appear on the banner sheet.
  - When printed, banner sheets are counted by meter.

### ■Off

Does not print banner sheets.

### ■Start Sheet

Prints a banner sheet before a print job.

### ■End Sheet

Prints a banner sheet after a print job.

### ■Start Sheet & End Sheet

Prints a banner sheet before and after a print job.

## Banner Sheet Tray

Set the paper tray used for banner sheets.  
Select from Trays 1 to 4.

## PostScript Paper Supply

Select whether the PostScript DMS (Deferred Media Selection) feature is enabled or disabled.

- Note**
- This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

## PostScript Font Absence

Set the action to be taken when a PostScript font specified in a job is not present.

- Note**
- This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

### ■Cancel Printing

Cancels printing.

### ■Substitute Font and Print

Continues printing, using a substitute font. Courier is used as the substitute font.

## PostScript Font Substitution

Set whether to use ATCx as a substitute if a PostScript font specified in a job is not present.

- Note**
- This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

## XPS Print Ticket Processing

Set how the machine processes the print tickets written in XPS documents.

### ■Off

Does not process print tickets.

### ■Standard Mode

Uses the standard mode to process tickets.

### ■Compatible Mode

Uses the Microsoft-compliant mode to process tickets.

## LPD Print Queue

Set the LPD print sequence.

**Note** • If this setting is changed, the setting in Receiving Buffer - LPD (P.130) may automatically be changed.

For information on [Receiving Buffer - LPD Spool], refer to "Receiving Buffer - LPD" (P.130).

### ■Data Processing Order

Prints jobs in order of completion of job processing.

If two or more jobs are continuously submitted, a smaller-size job may be printed first.

### ■Job Submission Order

Prints jobs in order of lpr print submission.

**Important** • This setting is only enabled when the receiving buffer of the LPD is [Spool to Hard Disk].  
When any other setting is set, printing is performed in [Data Processing Order].



## Scan Service Settings

Make settings relating to the scanner feature.

- Note**
- This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.
  - When [Fax Server] is selected in the System Settings, [Scan Service Settings] is replaced with [Scan/Fax Service Settings].

For information on scanner environment settings, refer to "Scanner Environment Settings" (P.227).

The following shows the reference section for each item.

First Tab .....	135
Scan Defaults.....	135
Scan to PC Defaults.....	137
Original Size Defaults .....	137
Output Size Defaults .....	138
Reduce/Enlarge Presets .....	138
Other Settings .....	138

### 1 Select [Tools].

For the method of displaying the [Tools] screen, refer to "System Settings Procedure" (P.76).

### 2 Select [Scan Service Settings].

### 3 Select the item to be set or changed.

## First Tab

You can set items relating to the First ([E-mail]/[Scan to Mailbox]/[Network Scanning]/[Scan to PC]) screen display.

### Feature in 2nd Column

You can set the features that appear in the second column from the left of the [General Settings] screen.

You can select from [2 Sided Scanning], [Resolution], [Lighten/Darken], and [Reduce/Enlarge].

### Reduce/Enlarge - Buttons 2 - 4

This item can be set when [Reduce/Enlarge] is selected in [Feature in 2nd Column].

Select the magnification from the registered R/E Preset buttons.

For information about R/E Preset buttons, refer to "Reduce/Enlarge Presets" (P.138).

## Scan Defaults

Set the default values for the scanner feature. When the power is turned on or the machine returns from a Power Save mode, or when the <Clear All> button is pressed, the system returns to the defaults set here. By setting features you often use as defaults, you can avoid extra operations required in use.

The values set become valid after the power has been turned off and on again.

**Color Scanning**

Set the default value for [Color Scanning] in the First ([E-mail]/[Scan to Mailbox]/[Network Scanning]/[Scan to PC]) screen.

**Original Type**

Set the default value for [Original Type] in the First ([E-mail]/[Scan to Mailbox]/[Network Scanning]/[Scan to PC]) screen.

**File Format**

Set the default value for [File Format] in the First ([E-mail]/[Scan to Mailbox]/[Network Scanning]/[Scan to PC]) screen.

**Optimize PDF For Web View**

Set the default value for [Optimize PDF for Web View] of [File Format] in the First ([E-mail]/[Network Scanning]/[Scan to PC]) screen.

**Lighten/Darken**

Set the default value for [Lighten/Darken] of [Image Options] in the [Advanced Settings] screen.

**Contrast**

Set the default value for [Contrast] of [Image Enhancement] in the [Advanced Settings] screen. The contrast setting is valid when [Color Scanning] is set to [Color] or [Grayscale].

**Sharpness**

Set the default value for [Sharpness] of [Image Options] in the [Advanced Settings] screen.

**Background Suppression**

Set the default value for [Background Suppression] of [Image Enhancement] in the [Advanced Settings] screen.

**Shadow Suppression**

Set the default value for [Shadow Suppression] in the [Advanced Settings] screen.

**Color Space**

Set the default value for [Color Space] in the [Advanced Settings] screen.

**Original Orientation**

Set the default value for [Original Orientation] in the [Layout Adjustment] when scanning.

**Resolution**

Set the default value for [Resolution] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen. You can select from 200 dpi, 300 dpi, 400 dpi, and 600 dpi.

**Mixed Sized Originals**

Set the default value for [Mixed Sized Originals] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen.

**Edge Erase**

Set the default value for [Edge Erase] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen. You can select from [All Edges] or [Parallel Edges].

**Edge Erase - Top & Bottom Edges**

Set the default value for the amount of edges erased from the original in the top and bottom directions in [Edge Erase] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen. Specify a value from 0 to 50 mm in 1 mm increments.

**Edge Erase - Left & Right Edges**

Set the default value for the amount of edges erased from the original in the left and right directions in [Edge Erase] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen. Specify a value from 0 to 50 mm in 1mm increments.

**Center Erase/Binding Edge Erase**

Set the default value for the binding erase amount of the original in [Edge Erase] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen. Specify a value from 0 to 50 mm in 1 mm increments.

**Quality/File Size**

Set the image quality and the file size.

Set [Quality: Normal/File Size: Small], [Quality: Higher +1/File Size: Larger +1], [Quality: Higher +2/File Size: Larger +2], [Quality: Higher +3/File Size: Larger +3], or [Quality: Maximum/File Size: Largest].

**E-mail Subject**

Set the default value for the e-mail subject. Up to 128 characters can be entered for the subject.

**Searchable Text**

Set whether or not to use the OCR feature to generate searchable text.

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

**Language To Identify**

Set the language to identify the text on the original document.

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

**Searchable - Text Compression**

Set whether or not to compress searchable text.

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

**Scan to PC Defaults**

You can select the default protocol (transfer protocol) used for transfer from FTP, SMB, and SMB (UNC Format).

**Original Size Defaults**

Set the original size shown in [Original Size] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen. An original size is assigned to each of the 11 buttons other than [Auto Detect].

When frequently scanning non-standard size originals, by presetting the non-standard size, you can save time to enter the original size each time a document is scanned.

■ **A/B Series Size**

Select from the A and B series, such as A4 and B5.

■ **Inch Size**

Select from the Inch series, such as 8.5 x 11" and 11 x 17".

■ **Others**

Select from the sizes other than the above series, such as photo and postcard sizes.

■ **Custom Size**

You can enter any size. Set the width (X) from 15 to 432 mm, and the height (Y) from 15 to 297 mm in 1 mm increments.

## Output Size Defaults

Set the sizes to be displayed at [Output Size] when selecting [Auto %] for scanning documents at [Reduce/Enlarge] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen.

Any output sizes can be assigned to output size buttons.

By setting the commonly used sizes, you can reduce the number of selection operations for scanning.

■ **A/B Series Size**

Select from 10 sizes of A and B series.

■ **Inch Size**

Select from 11 sizes of inch series.

■ **Others**

Select from other 14 sizes.

## Reduce/Enlarge Presets

Set the magnifications shown in [Preset %] for [Reduce/Enlarge] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen.

■ **Preset %**

Select from standard magnification ratios.

■ **Variable %**

You can specify a magnification within the range from 25 to 400% in 1% increments.

## Other Settings

You can make other settings relating to the scanner feature specification.

### Memory Full Procedure

While scanning an original, if there is insufficient hard disk space for the scanner, a screen appears, asking how the partly stored data should be handled.

Once a certain time has elapsed with the confirmation screen displayed, the subsequent processing is determined by these settings.

You can set the time until the memory full procedure is carried out. For more information, refer to "Auto Job Release" (P.90).

■ **Delete Job**

The stored data is discarded.

■Run Job

The read-in data is treated as valid, and the part of the original read in is treated as a complete stored file.

### Maximum Stored Pages

Set the maximum number of stored pages of a scan original. You can specify a number from 1 to 999 pages.

### Saturation

Set the saturation when scanning a full color original. When carrying out a scan, it is automatically adjusted according to this setting value.

### Background Suppression Level

Set the background suppression level. This is valid when [Background Suppression] is set to [Auto Suppression].

The larger the value, the stronger the effect of removing background noise.

### Shadow Suppression Level

Set the show-through prevention level. This is valid when [Shadow Suppression] is set to [Auto Suppression].

### Color Space

Set whether to display the color space feature.

When set to [Enabled], the [Color Space] button appear on the [Advanced Settings] screen for [E-mail], [Scan to Mailbox], [Scan to PC], and [Network Scanning].

### TIFF Format

Set the TIFF format for scanned data. You can select [TIFF V6] or [TTN2].

### Image Transfer Screen

Select whether to display a message when the scan of an original is completed.

■Disabled

Does not show a scan completion message.

■Display Message Only

Shows a scan completion message.

■Display Scan & Transfer Screens

Shows the transfer screen after showing the scan completion message.

■Display Message At End of Transfer

Shows a transfer completion message.

### Searchable - Page Orientation

Set the page orientation of original documents. Select [Auto Upright Orientation] or [According to Original Orientation].

**Note**

- This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

# Fax Service Settings

In [Fax Service Settings], you can make settings relating to the fax feature.

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Screen Defaults .....	140
Fax Defaults .....	141
Fax Control .....	142
Fax Received Options .....	145
Reduce/Enlarge Presets.....	146
Original Size Defaults.....	146
Local Terminal Information.....	146
Internet Fax Control .....	147

- 1** Select [Tools].  
For the method of displaying the [Tools] screen, refer to "System Settings Procedure" (P.76).
- 2** Select [Fax Service Settings].
- 3** Select the item to be set or changed.

Tools  
5

## Screen Defaults

You can set items relating to the [Fax/Internet Fax] screen.

### Fax Screen Default

Set the default screen that appears when the [Fax/Internet Fax] screen is displayed. Select from the [Fax Tab], [General Settings], and [Address Book] screens.

### General Settings - 2nd Column

You can set the features that appear in the second column from the left of the [General Settings] screen. By setting the most commonly used features, you can avoid extra operations such as selecting tabs.

### Address Book Speed Dial Default

Specifies the default address book entry number to display at the top of the [Address Book] screen. Set the key number within the range of 1 to 500.

**Note** • When the Speed Dial Extension Kit is installed, you can specify a value up to 999.

### Transmission Screen

Set whether to display transmission status during transmission.

## Fax Defaults

This menu allows you to set the default settings of fax features. When the power is turned on or the machine returns from a Power Save mode, or when the <Clear All> button is pressed, the system returns to the defaults specified under this menu. By setting frequently-used features and values as defaults, you can simplify fax operations.

### Lighten/Darken

Set the default value for [Lighten/Darken] in the [General Settings] screen.

### Original Type

Set the default value for [Original Type] in the [General Settings] screen.

### Resolution

Set the default value for [Resolution] in the [General Settings] screen.

### Mixed Sized Originals

Set the default value for [Mixed Sized Originals] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen.

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

### Confirmation Options

Set the default value for [Confirmation Options] of [Acknowledgement Report] in the [Fax/Internet Fax Options] screen.

Set whether to automatically print a report that shows a transmission result.

### Delivery Receipts/Read Receipts

Set the default value for [Read Receipts] of [Acknowledgement Report] in the [Fax/Internet Fax Options] screen.

Set whether to request an Internet Fax recipient to send a confirmation mail indicating the Internet Fax transmission result to the sender.

### Starting Rate

Set the default value for [Starting Rate] in the [Fax/Internet Fax Options] screen.

### Delay Start - Specific Time

Set the default value for [Specific Time] of [Priority Send / Delay Start] in the [Fax/Internet Fax Options] screen.

### Transmission Header Text

Set the default value for [Display Header] of [Transmission Header Text] in the [Fax/Internet Fax Options] screen.

### Internet Fax Profile

Set the default value for [Internet Fax Profile] in the [Fax/Internet Fax Options] screen.

### Internet Fax Subject

Set the default value for the Internet Fax subject. Up to 128 characters can be entered for the subject.

## Fax Control

---

You can set the fax control settings.

### Re-enter Recipients

Set whether to re-enter the recipient after once specifying the recipient, in order to reduce the risk of sending fax or Internet Fax to the wrong address. When Re-enter Recipients is activated, if you specify the recipient by entering the phone number, or by selecting from the Address Book, the screen prompting you to re-enter the recipient appears. If the same recipient has been entered, the transmission process will start.

### Re-enter Broadcast Recipients

This setting is required when you activated [Re-enter Recipients]. Set whether to allow the Broadcast Send.

- Enter Once Only  
Allows the Broadcast Send. No need to re-enter the recipient.
- Enter Twice  
Allows the Broadcast Send. Re-entering the recipient is required.
- Broadcast Disabled  
No Broadcast Send is allowed.

### Re-enter Speed Dial Recipients

This setting is required when you activated [Re-enter Recipients]. Select how to re-enter a recipient after the first entry.

- Enter Once Only  
No need to re-enter the recipient.
- Enter Twice  
Use the speed dial feature to re-enter the recipient.
- Re-enter Fax Number or E-mail  
Specify the recipient by dialing the fax number or entering the e-mail address.

### Re-enter Group Recipients

Specifies whether re-enter of group addresses is required after entering a group address.

### Broadcast Checkbox on 1st Tab

Specifies whether to show a button (checkbox) on the [General Settings] screen to explicitly express broadcast directions.

### Manual Redial List - Saved Entries

Specifies the number of redial destinations to be stored.

### Manual Redial List - Dial Mode

Specifies the destination type to be stored as a redial destination number.  
When all the check marks are cleared, the redial feature becomes disabled.

### Transmission Header Text - Polling

Set whether to attach a send header to a polling document.  
A “polling document” means that an original is stored in the machine's public mailbox for polling, and can then be sent by an operation from the other end.

### Polled Documents - Auto Delete

Set whether to automatically delete a polling document after transmission.



## Rotate 90 degrees

Set whether to automatically rotate a document if its image must be reduced in size unless it is rotated.

**Note** • If an arbitrary magnification is specified in [Reduce/Enlarge], automatic rotation transmission does not function.

## Sender ID

For G3 communications, you can select whether to notify the G3-ID to recipients.

## Save Undelivered Faxes

Set whether to save a fax document if fax transmission failed. When [Yes] is selected, the [Undelivered Faxes] button appears on the [Stored Documents] tab of the [Job Status] screen. Select this button to send the fax document again.

For details on [Undelivered Faxes], refer to "9 Job Status" > "Printing and Deleting Stored Documents" > "Undelivered Faxes" in the User Guide.

## Save Deleted Faxes

When [Yes] is selected for [Save Deleted Faxes], set whether to also save cancelled fax documents.

## Saved Faxes - Auto Delete

When [Yes] is selected for [Saved Faxes - Auto Delete], set whether to automatically delete saved documents in 24 hours.

## Transmission Interval

Specify a value for the interval between the end of one transmission and the beginning of the next, from 3 to 255 seconds in 1 second increments.

A longer transmission interval increases the total time to send a broadcast transmission, for example, but allows calls to be received during the standby time.

## Batch Send

When the machine stores multiple faxes addressed to a destination, enabling the Batch Send feature allows you to send them at a time, as one fax transmission. By using this feature, you can save communication costs.

Select whether or not to enable the Batch Send feature.

Note that a batch send is not possible for manual transmissions, broadcast, relay broadcast, mailbox transmissions, and transmissions with a specified time before the specified time.

When using a redial, resend, or delayed start send transmission job or the authentication feature, to send to the same address from different users, then a batch send is not possible.

## Manual Send/Receive Default

When using on-hook or off-hook, set whether the initial state of the touch screen is [Manual Send] or [Manual Receive].

## Fax Receiving Mode

Set the default value for [Fax Receiving Mode] in the [Machine Status] screen displayed by pressing the <Machine Status> button. Select whether to receive a fax automatically or manually.

## Border Limit

Set the length to make a page break that is applied when the length of a received document is longer than the paper length. You can specify a value within the range from 0 to 127 mm in 1 mm increments.

This setting can conveniently be used together with the following Auto Reduce on Receipt feature.

### Auto Reduce On Receipt

When the length of a received document exceeds the paper length but is within the page break threshold value, select whether to automatically reduce the image to fit the page.

This setting can conveniently be used together with the Border Limit feature. If you select [No], the part of the image beyond the paper length is discarded.

### Receiving Paper Size

Set the method of notifying the paper size on which the received document will be printed, from the receiver to the sender.

#### ■ Tray Mode

Specify the paper tray for printing the received fax document. Only the specified paper tray will be used for printing the received documents. Multiple paper trays can be specified except for Tray 5 (Bypass). If the fax document cannot be printed on the paper loaded on the specified paper trays, automatically it will be printed on the paper loaded on Tray 5 (Bypass).

#### ■ User Mode

Specify the paper sizes to be used for printing received fax documents. Regardless of whether the paper is loaded into trays, only the specified size paper is used for printing. When [User Mode] is selected, select paper sizes from [A3], [A4], [A4], [A5], [B4], [B5], [8.5x11"], and [Select All]. You can select one or more paper sizes.

### 2 Pages Up On Receipt

Set whether or not to print two pages of a fax document on one side of a sheet. This is convenient for saving paper.

For example, when two A5 pages are received, they are printed on a single A4 sheet. However, if paper of the same paper size as the received document is specified in [Receiving Paper Size], it is printed on the specified size of paper. Depending on the sizes of the received document, multiple-up printing may not be possible.

### 2 Sided Printing

Set whether to print received fax documents (including Internet Fax received documents) as 2-sided. This is convenient for saving paper.

- Note**
- This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.
  - Even if you select [On], depending on the data, 2-sided printing may not always be possible.

### Edge Erase - Top & Bottom Edges

Specify an amount of border erased from the original in the top and bottom directions. You can specify a value within the range from 0 to 20 mm in 1 mm increments.

### Edge Erase - Left & Right Edges

Specify an amount of border erased from the original in left and right directions. Specify a value in the range from 0 to 20 mm, in 1 mm increments.

### Reduce 8.5x11" to A4

When [Reduce/Enlarge] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen is set to [Auto %], you can set whether to reduce 8.5 x 11" size to A4, while scanning the original.

### Pseudo-Photo Gradation Mode

You can set the toning method for photo originals. To get closer to photo image quality, select the handling of intermediate tones (gray). You can select from [Error Diffusion] and [Dither].

## Mailbox Selector Setup

Select whether to use the Mailbox Selector - Service Setup feature.

The Mailbox Selector - Service Setup feature allows you to classify received documents by transmitted sender number or received local terminal (dial-in) number and store them in specified mailboxes.

## Memory Full Procedure

When the space of the hard disk runs out during scanning originals, a screen appears asking how the partly stored data should be handled.

Once a certain time has elapsed with the confirmation screen displayed, the subsequent processing is determined by these settings.

You can set the time until the memory full procedure is carried out. For more information, refer to "Auto Job Release" (P.90).

- Delete Job  
The stored data is discarded.
- Run Job  
The stored fax data is printed.

## Maximum Stored Pages

Set the maximum number of fax pages that the machine can store. You can specify a value in the range of 1 to 999.

## Mailbox Receive Display Priority 1 to 3

Set the priority to display the fax document information received using mailboxes. For instance, when using Network Scanner Utility3, the fax information is displayed in the [Recipient] section of the document list screen.

There are the priority levels from 1 to 3. All priority can be set, however, if you want to display only one priority level, make the settings of all priority levels the same.

- Note**
- This feature is not available for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

## Direct Fax

Set whether to allow the use of Direct Fax. When selecting [Disabled], the Direct Fax feature cannot be used.

## Fax Received Options

Fax Received Options allows you to specify a method for classifying received documents into specified mailboxes.

## Mailbox Selector Setup

When the classification by line type is specified, the received documents are classified by line type and stored in the specified mailboxes.

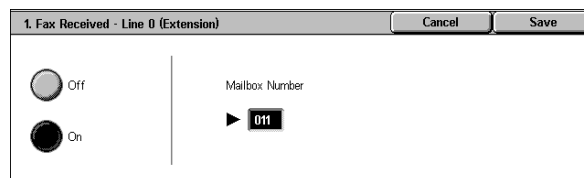
- 1 Select [Mailbox Selector Setup].
- 2 Select the line you want to register, and select [Change Settings].

- Note**
- The displayed items may be different, depending on the options installed.

Items	Current Settings
1 Fax Received - Line 0 (Extension)	(Not Set)
2 Fax Received - Line 1	(Not Set)
3 Fax Received - Line 2	(Not Set)
4 Fax Received - Line 4	(Not Set)

Change Settings

- 3 Select [On].
- 4 Enter the mailbox number (3 digits) where you want to store the documents, with the numeric keypad.
- 5 Select [Save].



### Output Destination Setup

In [Output Destination Setup], you can set the output destination for each receiving line, and the destination for a mailbox print.

- Note**
- This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.
  - The displayed items may be different, depending on the options installed.

- Fax Received - Line 0 to 4  
Specifies output tray for each line.
- Public Mailbox Printed Documents  
Specifies output tray for public mailbox for polling.

### Reduce/Enlarge Presets

You can set the magnifications shown in [Preset %] for [Reduce/Enlarge] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen. You can assign any magnification to the buttons other than [100%] and [Auto %].

- Preset %  
You can select from preset ratios.
- Variable %  
You can specify a magnification from 50 to 400% in 1% increments.

### Original Size Defaults

You can set the original size shown in [Original Size] in the [Layout Adjustment] screen. An original size is assigned to each of the 11 buttons other than [Auto Size Detect]. When frequently scanning non-standard size originals, by presetting the non-standard size, you can save time to enter the original size each time a document is scanned.

- A/B Series Size  
Select from 10 sizes of A and B series.
- Inch Size  
Select from 11 sizes of inch series.
- Others  
Select from other 14 sizes.

### Local Terminal Information

You can set the local terminal information, including a local name and sender name. For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

- Note**
- The displayed items may be different, depending on the options installed.

- There are a maximum of three lines that can be used for G3 communications: line 1, line 2, and line 4.
- For each line, you can set a G3 ID (fax number), G3 dialing type, and G3 line type.
- In accordance with the lines added, either line 2 or line 4, or both lines information can be specified.

### Local Name

Register the name of the local terminal as the local name.

The local name is shown in the recipient's [Activity Report]. However, depending on the recipient's device, it may not be shown.

Enter up to 20 characters using the keyboard displayed or the numeric keypad.

### Company Logo

Register the sender's name (company logo). Enter up to 30 characters using the keyboard displayed or the numeric keypad. The sender name is printed in the Transmission Header Text or Cover Page.

### Machine Password

Set the machine password when you want to limit the other parties that can send faxes.

When the machine password is set, only a party that sends the correct machine password by F code is allowed to send or poll. Note that this means that faxes cannot be accepted from a fax without the F code feature.

### G3 Line - Fax ID

When using G3 communications, register the G3 ID. The G3 ID is normally set to the local terminal fax number.

Using the displayed keyboard and the numeric keypad, specify with not more than 20 digits.

**Note** • A G3 ID (fax number) consists of not more than 20 digits, including 0 to 9, +, and space.

### G3 Line - Dial Type

Set the dial type.

■Tone  
Tone dialing line.

■10pps  
Pulse dialing line.

### G3 Line - Line Type

Set the line type.

■PSTN  
Subscriber telephone line.

■PBX  
Private branch exchange.

## Internet Fax Control

You can make the settings relating to control of Internet fax operation.

### Internet Fax Path

Set the Internet Fax communication path.

■Via E-mail Server  
Sends e-mail through an SMTP server.

#### ■Direct (P2P)

Directly sends to the machine with the Internet Fax feature, without using an SMTP server.

### Broadcast Internet Fax Profile

Set the default value for Internet Fax profile when carrying out an Internet Fax broadcast send.

A profile is specified to restrict attribute information such as image resolution and paper size for transmissions between Internet Fax-compatible machines.

**Important** • The supported TIFF-file profiles depend on the destination Internet Fax-compatible machine. Before specifying a profile, check that it is supported on the destination machine.

#### ■TIFF-S

This profile is the Internet Fax standard. For documents that are larger than A4, the size is reduced automatically to A4 for transmission.

#### ■TIFF-F

Select this profile when you specify super-fine for the resolution or when you send A3 or B4 documents.

#### ■TIFF-J

Select this profile for sending documents in JBIG.

### Broadcast Starting Rate

Set the default value for communications mode of the Internet Fax Broadcast Send feature.

### Delivery Confirmation Method

Set the default value for the method of confirming that a transmitted Internet Fax has arrived at its destination.

**Note** • You can select [Delivery Receipts] when the destination machine supports the DSN feature. You can use [Read Receipts] when the destination machine supports the MDN feature.

#### ■Delivery Receipts

You can confirm whether the Internet Fax you sent was delivered to the destination successfully.

#### ■Read Receipts

You can confirm whether the Internet Fax including attachments you sent was processed properly at the recipient.

### Incoming Internet Fax Print Options

Set the print operation to be enabled when e-mail that is sent to the machine's e-mail address is received from a machine with the Internet Fax feature.

#### ■Attachment

Only prints the attached documents.

#### ■Full Headers and Message

Prints the e-mail header and body of the e-mails.

When you select [Print S/MIME Information], S/MIME Information is also printed.

#### ■Basic Headers and Message

Prints the basic headers (From/To/Subject/Date) and the contents of e-mails.

When you select [Do not print if no message], the machine prints only e-mail that has contents.

### Internet Fax Output Destination

Set the output tray to be used for printed Internet Fax documents.

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

### Fax Transfer from Address Book

Set whether to permit forwarding of Internet Fax data that is received by e-mail via SMTP when the forwarding destination is not registered in Address Book.

■Off

Permits forwarding.

■On

Checks if the forwarding fax number is listed in the address book, and if not, rejects receiving the e-mail and deletes it.

### Transmission Header - Fax Transfer

When forwarding received e-mail from Internet Fax to fax, select whether to add a send header (start time, sender name, recipient name, G3 ID, and number of pages).

### Fax Transfer Maximum Data Size

When sending a received e-mail from Internet Fax to fax, set the maximum data size.

■No Limit

No limit on data size.

■Limit Size

Specify a value within the range from 1 to 65535 KB, in 1 KB increments. If a data size exceeds the specified value, the data is discarded.

## E-mail/Internet Fax Service Settings

In [E-mail/Internet Fax Service Settings], you can make settings relating to the e-mail and the Internet Fax features.

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

E-mail Control.....150

### 1 Select [Tools].

For the method of displaying the [Tools] screen, refer to "System Settings Procedure" (P.76).

### 2 Select [E-mail/Internet Fax Service Settings].

### 3 Select the item to be set or changed.

## E-mail Control

You can set the specifications for e-mail and Internet fax transmissions.

### Maximum Address Entries

Set the maximum number of addresses that can be specified when sending an e-mail.

The number of addresses is the total number of To:/Cc:/Bcc:.

You can set the maximum number of addresses in the range from 1 to 100. If the maximum number of addresses is exceeded, the e-mail transmission is aborted.

**Important** • This option is not applicable to the Internet Fax service.

### Incoming E-mail Print Options

When an e-mail sent to the e-mail address of the machine is received, you can select the print operation.

#### ■ Attachment

Only prints the attached documents.

#### ■ Full Headers and Message

Prints the e-mail headers and body of e-mails.

When you select [Print S/MIME Information], S/MIME Information is also printed.

#### ■ Basic Headers and Message

Prints the basic headers (From/To/Subject/Date) and the contents of e-mails.

When you select [Do not print if no message], the machine prints only e-mail that has contents.

### Print Error Notification E-mail

Select whether the error e-mail resulting from an incorrect address, or transmission error should be automatically printed.

**Note** • The job for printing error e-mail is displayed as error on the [Job Status] screen and a job history report even when the job has been complete successfully.

### Response to Read Receipts

Set whether or not to respond when a read receipt (MDN) is requested.

#### ■ Off

Does not respond.



**■On**

Automatically notifies the sender that the e-mail has been processed.

**Read Receipts**

When an e-mail is sent from the machine, select whether to require the recipient to return the read status.

**■Off**

The read receipts (MDN) feature is disabled.

**■On for All Users**

All users are permitted to use the read receipts (MDN) feature.

**Important** • This option is not applicable to the Internet Fax service.

**Print Delivery Confirmation E-mail**

Select whether to automatically print transmission result e-mails (DSN response/MDN response).

**■Off**

Transmission result e-mails are not printed.

**■On**

Transmission result e-mails are automatically printed regardless of success or failure of the transmission.

**■Print when delivery fails**

Prints only when the transmission failed.

**Split Send Method**

Set the mail split method.

**■Split into Pages**

Split into pages.

**■Split by Data Size**

Split by the data size set in [Maximum Data Size per E-mail].

**Maximum Data Size per E-mail**

Set the upper limit of the data size for splitting mail.

Specify a value in the range of 512 to 20,480 KB in increments of 1 KB.

**Maximum Total Data Size**

Set the upper limit of the data size of mail.

Specify a value in the range of 512 to 200,000 KB in increments of 1 KB.

**Maximum Split Count**

Set the split upper limit for when splitting mail.

Specify not to split mail or a value in the range of 2 to 500.

**Allow Casual Users to Edit From**

Set whether to protect e-mail addresses from being changed by unauthenticated users under [From] on the [E-mail] tab.

**Allow Guest Users to Edit From**

Set whether to protect e-mail addresses from being changed by guest users under [From] on the [E-mail] tab.

**Allow to edit From if Search found**

Set whether to protect e-mail addresses from being changed under [From] on the [E-mail] tab when an authenticated user retrieves an e-mail address from the LDAP server.

**Allow to edit From if Search failed**

Set whether to protect e-mail addresses from being changed under [From] on the [E-mail] tab when an authenticated user fails to retrieve an e-mail address from the LDAP server.

**E-mail Sending When Search Failed**

Set whether to disable [E-mail] when an authenticated user fails to retrieve an e-mail address from the LDAP server.

**Add Me to "To" Field**

Set whether to automatically add the sender's address to the To field.

**Add Me to "CC" Field**

Set whether to automatically add the sender's address to the CC field.

**Edit E-mail Recipients**

Set whether to permit to edit e-mail recipients (To, CC, BCC). Selecting [No] prevents e-mails from being sent to unintended destinations.

**Note** • If you set [Edit E-mail Recipients] to [No], set [Add Me to "To" Field] to [Yes].

## Mailbox/Stored Document Settings

---

You can set for handling documents stored in mailboxes.

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

**1** Select [Tools].

For the method of displaying the [Tools] screen, refer to "System Settings Procedure" (P.76).

**2** Select [Mailbox/Stored Document Settings].

**3** Select the item to be set or changed.

## Mailbox Service Settings

---

### Documents Retrieved By Client

Set whether to delete a document stored in the mailbox when it is retrieved by the client.

■Delete according to Mailbox Settings

Follows the settings for individual mailbox.

For information about setting the mailbox, refer to "Delete Documents After Retrieval" (P.157).

■Force Delete

Ignores the settings for each individual mailbox, and when a document is retrieved by a client, the retrieved document is forcibly deleted.

### Print & Delete Confirmation Screen

Set whether to display a confirmation screen for deleting documents before printing documents that are stored in the mailbox.

### Convert Custom to Standard Size

Set whether to convert fax/Internet Fax documents of non-standard size to the standard size.

### Standard Size Threshold Value

Specify a threshold value for standardizing a document, in the range from 0 to 10 mm in 1 mm increments.

### Internet Fax to Internet Fax

Select whether to permit forwarding of documents received in a mailbox.

### Internet Fax to E-mail

Select whether to permit e-mail forwarding of documents received in a mailbox.

## Stored Document Settings

---

### Mailbox Document Expiration Date

You can set the document expiration date. To delete stored documents automatically, specify a document retention period and deletion time. The settings apply to all stored documents.

**■Off**

Does not automatically delete the print documents stored in the machine.

**■On**

Allows you to set the document expiration date. The stored documents will be deleted at the time specified in [Documents deleted at].

**■Documents kept for**

Set the document retention period in the range 1 to 14 days.

**■Documents deleted at**

Set the time for the document to be deleted after the expiration date, in the range of 0 to 23 hours, and 00 to 59 minutes.

To automatically delete documents at the time specified here, you need to set [Delete Expired Documents] to [Yes]. For more information, refer to "Delete Expired Documents" (P.157).

### Stored Document Expiration Date

You can set the expiration date for print documents stored in the machine.

**■Off**

Does not automatically delete the print documents stored in the machine.

**■On**

Allows you to set the document expiration date within the range of 1 to 23 hours in 1 hour increments. Print documents stored in the machine will be deleted at the time specified for [Documents deleted at].

**■Same Date as Mailbox Documents**

Print documents stored in the machine will be deleted in accordance with the settings in [Mailbox Document Expiration Date].

### Print Job Confirmation Screen

Set whether to display a print confirmation screen, where you can change the number of print sets if the print settings are permitted to be modified.

### Min. Passcode Length for Stored Job

Set the minimum number of allowed passcode digits between 0 and 12 digits. A passcode is required when Secure Print or Private Charge Print documents are to be stored or printed. A passcode must be a string consisting of the number of digits that is equal to or larger than the value specified here.

**Note**

- Specify "0" if you do not set passcodes or the minimum number of digits.

## Job Flow Service Settings

---

[Job Flow Service Settings] allows you to configure a pool server. Leave the default settings unchanged because a pool server is not available for the machine.

# Setup

In [Setup], you can register or update mailboxes, job flows, and Address Book.

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Create Mailbox.....	156
Stored Programming .....	158
Create Job Flow Sheet.....	158
Create Job Flow Sheet Keyword.....	165
Add Address Book Entry .....	165
Create Fax Group Recipients .....	171
Add Fax Comment .....	172
Paper Tray Attributes .....	172

- 1

On the [Tools] screen, select [Setup], and then select [Setup].
- 2

Select any item.

For the method of displaying the [Tools] screen, refer to "System Settings Procedure" (P.76).

## Create Mailbox

Register mailboxes in order to store scanned documents. You can register up to 200 mailboxes.

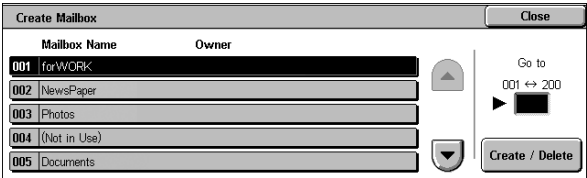
You can check the current mailboxes in the "Mailbox list". For more information, refer to "Mailbox List" (P.64).

- 1

Select [Create Mailbox].
- 2

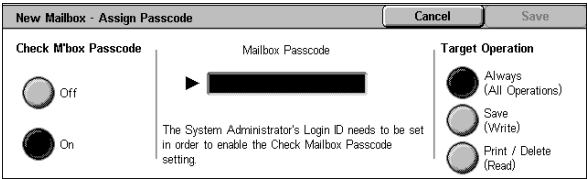
Select the mailbox to be registered, and select [Create/Delete].

**Note** • Select [▲] to return to the previous screen or [▼] to move to the next screen.  
• You can specify the mailbox directly by entering a three-digit number with the numeric keypad.



- 3

When creating a new mailbox, a passcode entry screen appears, allowing you to limit access to the mailbox.



### Mailbox Name

Set a mailbox name.  
Using the displayed keyboard and the numeric keypad, you can enter up to 20 characters.  
For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

### Check Mailbox Passcode

Set an access restriction to permit operations for specified users only.

- Check M'box Passcode  
Set whether to check the passcode.

#### ■Mailbox Passcode

To use the Access Restriction feature, enter a passcode. You can enter a passcode of up to 20 numeric digits (0 to 9).

#### ■Target Operation

Set the operations to be restricted.

- Always (All Operations)

A passcode entry is required when a mailbox is selected or a document in a mailbox is printed or deleted.

- Save (Write)

A passcode entry is required when a mailbox is selected.

- Print/Delete (Read)

A passcode entry is required when printing or deleting the document in the mailbox.

**4** Select [Save] after limiting the access to the mailbox.

**5** Select any item, then select [Change Settings].

**6** Select [Save] after setting the items.

### Delete Documents After Retrieval

When a document stored in a mailbox is printed, or is retrieved by an external action, set whether the document should be deleted.

#### ■No

The document is left stored.

#### ■Yes

After the document is printed, or is retrieved by an external action, it is automatically deleted.

### Delete Expired Documents

Specify whether to enable the feature to delete documents stored in a mailbox at a specified time after a retention period has elapsed.

#### ■No

Even when the set retention period has elapsed, documents are not deleted.

#### ■Yes

Set the document retention period. Documents are deleted at a specified time after the retention period has elapsed. However, if the retention period has not been specified, documents are not deleted even when [Yes] is selected.

For information about setting the document retention period, refer to "Mailbox/Stored Document Settings" (P.153).

### Link Job Flow Sheet to Mailbox

Makes a link with a job flow sheet and a mailbox. You can determine how documents stored in a mailbox are processed by linking the mailbox to a job flow sheet in which a series of operations are registered.

For the method of registering a job flow, refer to "Create Job Flow Sheet" (P.158).

#### ■Cut Link

Cancels the link between a mailbox and its job flow sheet.

#### ■Create/Change Link

A screen for linking a job flow sheet appears. You can select from the existing job flow sheets or create a new job flow sheet.

For information about the operation, refer to "Create Job Flow Sheet" (P.158).

**■Auto Start**

If you select the [Auto Start] check box, when a document is stored in the mailbox, the procedure registered in the job flow is automatically started.

**When the [Delete Mailbox] Button is Selected**

Selecting this button deletes the selected mailbox.

Any documents stored in the mailbox are also deleted.

If [Login Type] is set to [No Login Required], all the job flow sheets created on the [Create Mailbox] screen and then stored in the mailbox are deleted as well.

**Important** • Once documents or job flow sheets are deleted, they cannot be recovered.

---

## Stored Programming

Stored Programming is a feature which registers frequently used settings and records a series of operational steps.

For more information, refer to "8 Stored Programming" > "Registering/Deleting/Renaming Stored Programs" in the User Guide.

---

## Create Job Flow Sheet

Job flow is a feature for executing a series of registered actions.

The target of a job flow is documents stored in a mailbox. A job flow can be executed by using one of the following four methods:

- by automatically starting a job flow when a document is stored in a mailbox
- by selecting a document stored in a mailbox to manually execute the associated job flow
- by selecting a document stored in a mailbox to select a job flow and execute manually
- by selecting a job flow sheet from [Create Job Flow Sheet] screen to manually execute

To start a job flow, you must link the job flow to a mailbox. Documents are automatically processed by the job flow sheet when they stored in the mailbox.

**Note** • To link a mailbox with a job flow sheet created with [Create Job Flow Sheet], start from [Send from Mailbox]. For more information, refer to "6 Send from Mailbox" in the User Guide, and "Create Mailbox" (P.156).

Features that can be registered are listed below.

- Forwarding specification (FTP, SMB, e-mail, fax, and Internet Fax)
- Print



- Depending on the method of storing in the mailbox, there are restrictions on the combination of features.

Input \ Output	Print	Fax	Internet Fax *1	Mail	FTP	SMB
Fax Documents for Private Polling	O	O	O	O	O	O
Scanning	O	O	O	O	O	O
Fax to Mailbox	O	O	O	O	O	O
Internet Fax Received	O	O	△	△	O	O
Print Stored	X	X	X	X	X	X

O: Available

X: Not available

△: Available depending on System Administration mode settings

- \*1 Load an A4 document in landscape orientation when TIFF-S has been selected for Internet Fax forwarding profile. Loading the document in portrait orientation will reduce the size of the Internet Fax image.

- Important** • For Fax Documents for Private Polling and Fax to Mailbox in the above tables, when sending or transferring a monochrome document via e-mail, FTP, or SMB, the transferred document cannot be opened on the destination machine if [JPEG] is set for [File Format] for the job flow.

## Restrictions on Using Job Flow

A job flow can be used by single or multiple users, or can be used by linking to a specific mailbox. The use of job flows is restricted by the authentication feature.

For information about the available job flow features and restrictions on use, refer to "Authentication for Job Flow Sheets and Mailboxes" (P.281).

- 1 Select [Create Job Flow Sheet].
- 2 Carry out the job flow operation.

The first screenshot shows the 'Create Job Flow Sheet' dialog box. It has a 'Name' field with an 'Updated' button, a list of job flow sheets (ftp, work, work, ftp, work), and a 'Sheet Filtering...' button. There are also 'Create', 'Edit / Delete', and 'Select Keyword...' buttons. The second screenshot shows the 'Sheet Filtering' dialog box. It has two sections: 'Owner' with checkboxes for 'Shared' and 'Personal', and 'Target' with checkboxes for 'Mailbox', 'Scan Jobs', and 'External Application'. There are 'Cancel' and 'Save' buttons.

### ■ Sheet Filtering

Filters the job flow sheets displayed. Select the filtering conditions, then select [Save].

- Note**
- The screen display depends on the user authentication feature settings.
  - Owner  
Filters job flow sheets by owner type.
  - Target  
Filters job flow sheets by target, such as scan jobs and mailboxes.

### ■ Create

The [Create Job Flow Sheet] screen appears.

Refer to "Create Job Flow Sheet" (P.160).

### ■ Edit/Delete

The [Details] screen appears.

Refer to "Edit/Delete" (P.164).

- **Search by Name**  
Searches for job flows that partially match the entry. The machine searches through job flow names that were registered upon each job flow creation. The entry can be up to 128 characters long.  
For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).
- **Search by Keyword**  
Searches for job flows that fully match the entry. The machine searches through keywords that were registered upon each job flow creation.  
For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).
- **Select Keyword**  
Displays the [Select Keyword] screen. Select a keyword registered in the system settings to search for job flows. Job flows that fully match the entry are searched. The machine searches through keywords that were registered upon each job flow creation.  
For information on the keyword registry, refer to "Create Job Flow Sheet Keyword" (P.165).

Create Job Flow Sheet

Creates a new job flow.

- 1 Select the item to be set, and then select [Change Settings].

Items	Current Settings
1. Name	(Not in Use)
2. Description	(Not in Use)
3. Keyword	Keyword 1
4. Send as Fax	9 Entries
5. Send as Internet Fax	49 Entries

- **Delete Settings**  
Deletes the setting values of the selected items.
- **Change Settings**  
Confirm or change the settings of the selected items.

Name

Set the name for the job flow sheet, of up to 128 characters.

Description

Set the description of the job flow sheet, of up to 256 characters are allowed.

Keyword

Enter a keyword of up to 12 characters for job flow search. You can also use the keywords that are registered in the job flow search keyword.  
For information on the job flow keyword search, refer to "Create Job Flow Sheet Keyword" (P.165).

Send as Fax

Specify destinations for fax transmission. You can specify a total of 100 destinations, either by selecting from address numbers or by direct input.

**Important** • It is not possible to use wildcard or group dial number specifications.

**Note** • This item is not displayed when the Server Fax feature is enabled.

- **Speed Dial**  
Specify an address with an address number. Enter the address number with the numeric keypad, and select [Save]. The specified address appears in [Name/Fax Number] in the [Send as Fax] screen.
- **New Recipient**  
Specify a new address. Select the item you want to change, and select [Change Settings]. The specified address appears in [Name/Fax Number] in the [Send as Fax] screen.

### ■Delete Recipient

Deletes all information for the selected address.

### ■Change Settings

Confirm or change the selected recipients.

For information about the method for confirm/change, refer to "Add Address Book Entry" (P.165).

## Send as Internet Fax

Specify addresses for Internet Fax transmission.

You can specify a total of 100 addresses, either by selecting from address numbers or by direct input.

**Important** • It is not possible to use wildcard or group dial number specifications.

### ■Speed Dial

Specify an address with an address number. Enter the address number with the numeric keypad, and select [Save]. The specified address appears in [Name/E-mail Address] on the [Send as Internet Fax] screen.

### ■New Recipient

Specify a new address. Select the item you want to change, and select [Change Settings]. The specified address appears in [Name/E-mail Address] on the [Send as Internet Fax] screen.

### ■Detailed Settings

[Detailed Settings] screen appears. Set the following options.

- Internet Fax Message  
Enter a comment by using the keyboard displayed.
- Internet Fax Profile  
Select an Internet Fax profile.  
A profile controls the image resolution, paper size, and other attributes when data is sent or received by Internet Fax-compatible machines.
- Resend Attempts  
Set whether to try again if a transmission fails. If you select [On], also set [Resend Attempts] and [Resend Interval (Seconds)].
- Transmission Header Text
- Encryption
- Digital Signature

### ■Delete

Deletes all information for the selected addresses.

### ■Change Settings

Confirm or change the selected recipients.

For information about the method for confirm/change, refer to "Add Address Book Entry" (P.165).

### ■Resend Attempts

Set whether to try again if a transmission fails. If you select [On], also set [Resend Attempts] and [Resend Interval (Seconds)].

- Resend Attempts  
Set the transmission retry count in the range of 1 to 5.
- Resend Interval (Seconds)  
Set the transmission retry interval in the range of 30 to 300 seconds.

## Send as E-mail

Specify the recipients for e-mail transmission.

You can specify a total of 100 addresses, either by selecting from the address book or by direct input.

If [On] has been selected for [Encryption], you cannot specify a recipient by selecting [New Recipient].

#### ■Address Book

The recipients can be specified from address book. The specified address appears in [Recipient Name/E-mail Address] in the [Send as E-mail] screen.

#### ■New Recipient

Specify a new address. Select the item you want to change, and select [Change Settings] to set. The specified address appears in [Recipient Name/E-mail Address] in the [Send as E-mail] screen.

#### ■Detailed Settings

Set the subject, output file format, encryption, and digital signature. select the item to change, and select [Change Settings].

- Subject  
Enter a subject using the keyboard displayed.
- File Format  
Select an output file format.  
For information on the [File Format] screen, refer to "5 Scan" in the User Guide.
- Encryption  
Set whether to enable or disable the encryption feature.
- Note**
  - To enable encryption, select [On] before specifying an address. [On] will be disabled after an address is specified.
- Digital Signature  
Select whether to enable or disable the digital signature feature.
- Resend Attempts  
Set whether to try again if a transmission fails. If you select [On], also set [Resend Attempts] and [Resend Interval (Seconds)].
  - Resend Attempts  
Set the transmission retry count in the range of 1 to 5.
  - Resend Interval (Seconds)  
Set the transmission retry interval in the range of 30 to 300 seconds.

#### ■Delete

Deletes all information for the selected recipient.

#### ■Change Settings

Displays the [Change Recipient Settings] screen, which allows you to check or change the selected recipient.

For information on the [Change Recipient Settings] screen, refer to "5 Scan" in the User Guide.

### Transfer via FTP (1), Transfer via FTP (2)

Transfer via FTP (2) will appear when Transfer via FTP (1) is configured.  
Specify where FTP forwarding is to be stored.

#### ■Address Book

When the server address is registered in Address Book, you can specify the address from Address Book. The specified address appears in the [Transfer via FTP] screen.

For information on Address Book, refer to "Add Address Book Entry" (P.165).

#### ■Detailed Settings

Set the subject, output file format, encryption, and digital signature. select the item to change, and select [Change Settings].

- File Format  
Specify an output file format.  
For information on file formats, refer to "5 Scan" in the User Guide.

- Resend Attempts  
Set whether to try again if a transmission fails. If you select [On], also set [Resend Attempts] and [Resend Interval (Seconds)].

- Resend Attempts  
Set the transmission retry count in the range of 1 to 5.
- Resend Interval (Seconds)  
Set the transmission retry interval in the range of 30 to 300 seconds.

■Clear  
Deletes all information for the selected address.

■Enter Details  
Select one of [Name], [Server], [Save in], [User Name], and [Password] and select [Enter Details], to display an input screen.  
The numbers of characters you can input are as follows.

- Recipient Name: Up to 36 characters
- Server: Up to 64 characters
- Save in: Up to 128 characters
- User Name: Up to 32 characters
- Password: Up to 32 characters

For detail information, refer to "Create Job Flow Sheet" (P.158).

## Transfer via SMB (1), Transfer via SMB (2)

Transfer via SMB (2) will appear when Transfer via SMB (1) is configured.  
Specify where SMB forwarding is to be stored.

■Address Book  
When the server address is registered in Address Book, you can specify the address from Address Book. The specified address appears in the [Transfer via SMB] screen.  
For information on Address Book, refer to "Add Address Book Entry" (P.165).

■Detailed Settings  
Set the subject, output file format, encryption, and digital signature. select the item to change, and select [Change Settings].

- File Format  
Specify an output file format.  
For information on file formats, refer to "5 Scan" in the User Guide.
- Resend Attempts  
Set whether to try again if a transmission fails. If you select [On], also set [Resend Attempts] and [Resend Interval (Seconds)].
  - Resend Attempts  
Set the transmission retry count in the range of 1 to 5.
  - Resend Interval (Seconds)  
Set the transmission retry interval in the range of 30 to 300 seconds.

■Clear  
Deletes all information for the selected addresses.

■Enter Details  
Select one of [Name], [Server], [Shared Name], [Save in], [User Name], and [Password] and select [Enter Details], to display an input screen.  
The numbers of characters you can input are as follows.

- Name: Up to 36 characters
- Server: Up to 64 characters

- Shared Name: Up to 128 characters
  - Save in: Up to 128 characters
  - User Name:  
For domain users: Up to 97 characters with the format of "user name@domain name" or "domain name\user name"  
(the user name and domain name must be up to 32 and 64 characters, respectively)  
For local users: Up to 32 characters
  - Password: Up to 32 characters
- For detail information, refer to "Create Job Flow Sheet" (P.158).

## Print

Makes print settings. When [On] is selected, you then configure print settings.

### ■Quantity

Set the number of copies from 1 to 999, in 1 copy increments.

### ■Paper Supply

Select the printing paper tray. When [Auto Paper Select] is selected, the same paper size as the original size is printed.

- Auto Paper Select  
A suitable paper tray is automatically selected.
- Trays 1 to 3, and 6  
Select paper from four trays.
- Bypass  
Prints on paper loaded in the Tray 5 (Bypass).

### ■2 Sided Printing

Sets the 2-sided printing option.

### ■Output

Performs the stapling, hole punch, and output destination settings.

- Staple  
Set the position for stapling.
- Hole Punch  
Set the position for punching.
- Output Destination  
Select the output destination.

## Edit/Delete

Check the content of a job flow sheet, and edit, copy, or delete it.

- Note**
- Some operations may be restricted according to types of job flow owners, authentication settings, and user types. For details, refer to "Authentication for Job Flow Sheets and Mailboxes" (P.281).

### ■Delete

Deletes the selected job flow sheet.

### ■Copy

Makes a copy of the selected job flow sheet. From the copy of the job flow sheet, you can create a new job flow sheet.

The method of creation is the same as when creating a new job flow sheet. For more information, refer to "Create Job Flow Sheet" (P.160).

### ■Edit

Edit the selected job flow sheet.

The changing method is the same as when creating a new job flow sheet. For more information, refer to "Create Job Flow Sheet" (P.160).

## Create Job Flow Sheet Keyword

You can register job flow search keywords. The registered keywords are displayed under [Search by Keyword] and allows you to use for job flow sheet search. The keywords are also available from a list under [Select Keyword] that is displayed when you create a new job flow sheet. Up to 12 characters are allowed for a job flow search keyword.

## Add Address Book Entry

You can store frequently used addresses in Address Book. Select an address type from fax, Internet Fax, e-mail, and server (FTP/SMB).

When an address is registered, you can search for it with [Address Book] on the [Fax], [Internet Fax], and [E-mail] screens.

You can store a total of 500 addresses for fax, Internet Fax, e-mail, and server (FTP/SMB).

- Note**
- If the Address Book Extension Kit (optional) is installed, you can register up to 999 locations.
  - Abbreviated address numbers (001 to 070) are supported by the one touch buttons. The one touch buttons are available for fax and Internet Fax.
  - To specify an e-mail or server (FTP/SMB) address (for insertion in the address book), it is not possible to use an address number specified with the numeric keypad, one-touch dialing, or a group dial number.

### 1 Select [Add Address Book Entry].

- Note**
- To display the [Add Address Book Entry] screen, press the <Log In/Out> button and enter the user ID, and then select [Tools] > [Setup] > [Add Address Book Entry].

### 2 Press the abbreviated number you want to register, and select [Create/Delete].

- Note**
- Select [▲] to return the previous screen or [▼] to move the next screen.
  - By entering a three-digit number with the numeric keypad, you can specify the abbreviated number directly.

### 3 Select [Address Type], and select [Change Settings].

Items	Current Settings
1 Address Type	(Not Set)
2 Address	(Recipient Not Entered)
3 Name	(Recipient Not Entered)
4 Index	(Recipient Not Entered)

### 4 Select the address type, and select [Save].

### 5 Select the item to be set, and select [Change Settings].

Items	Current Settings
1 Address Type	E-mail
2 E-mail Address	(Not Set)
3 Name	(Not Set)
4 Surname	(Not Set)
5 Given Name	(Not Set)

### 6 When the settings are completed, select [Save].

- When selecting [Fax] as the address type  
The following items appear.

- Address Type
- Fax Number
- Name
- Index
- Relay Station Setup
- Starting Rate
- Resolution
- Cover Page
- Maximum Image Size
- Delay Start
- Remote Mailbox
- F Code
- Relay Broadcast
- Billing - Day Time
- Billing - Night Time
- Billing - Midnight

- When selecting [Internet Fax] as the address type  
The following items appear.

- Address Type
- E-mail Address
- Name
- Index
- Starting Rate
- Resolution
- Maximum Image Size
- Internet Fax Profile
- S/MIME Certificate

- When selecting [E-mail] as the address type  
The following items appear.

- Address Type
- E-mail Address
- Name
- Surname
- Given Name
- Custom Item 1
- Custom Item 2
- Custom Item 3
- S/MIME Certificate

- When selecting [Server] as the address type  
The following items appear.

- Address Type
- Name
- Transfer Protocol
- Server Name/IP address
- Shared Name (SMB Only)
- Save In
- User Name
- Password
- Port Number

## Address Type

Changes an address type.

## Fax Number

Enter a fax number with not more than 128 digits.

For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

## E-mail Address

Enter an e-mail address with not more than 128 characters.



For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

**Name**

Enter a recipient name with not more than 18 characters.  
For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

**Index**

You can enter a single alphanumeric index character for use as a keyword to search the address book.  
For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

**Relay Station Setup**

When the machine is used as a relay station in a relay broadcast, select whether or not to certify the registered address number as an initiating station for the relay broadcast.  
When performing the relay broadcast, the initiating station must be registered to an address number in the relay station regardless of the instruction method.

**Starting Rate**

Set the communications mode. You can select [G3] or [Forced 4800 bps].  
When the destination is specified by an address book entry with the communications mode set, it is not possible to change the communications mode in the [Fax/Internet Fax] screen.

**Resolution**

Set the transmission image quality.  
Select from [Panel] (image quality selected on the control panel), [Standard (200x100 dpi)], [Fine (200 dpi)], [Superfine (400 dpi)], and [Superfine (600 dpi)].

**Cover Page**

Select whether to send transmissions with a cover note attached. If attached, specify comments relating to the recipients and sender to be included in the cover pages.  
Comments must be registered in advance.  
For information on comment registration, refer to "Add Fax Comment" (P.172).

- 1

Select [Off] or [Print Cover Page].

2

When [Print Cover Page] is selected, select [Comment].

3

Select [Recipient's Comment].

4

Select [Comment], and select a comment from the displayed list of comments.

Note

• Select [▲] to return to the previous screen or [▼] to move to the next screen.

5

Select [Save].

6

To insert a sender's comment, select [Sender's Comment] in step 3, and then repeat steps 4 and 5.
8. Cover Page - Comment

Cancel

Save

The following comments are added to the top of the cover page.

Recipient's Comment

☐ None

Sender's Comment

☐ None

Fax Cover Page

To: (Name as in Address Book)

From:
8. Cover Page - Comment - Recipient's Comment

Cancel

Save

Comment

☐ None

☐ Comment

1 (Not in Use)

2 (Not in Use)

3 (Not in Use)

4 (Not in Use)

5 (Not in Use)

▲

▼

**Maximum Image Size**

Select the maximum storage size from [A3], [A4], and [B4], to match the recipient's paper size or processable profile.

## Delay Start

Set whether or not to use a delayed start transmission.

If the machine's system clock is set to the 24-hour display, [AM] and [PM] do not appear. For information on the system clock, refer to "Time" (P.89).

## Remote Mailbox

Select whether to use mailbox communications. Note that when using mailbox communications, the other party's mailbox number and passcode must be set in advance.

- 1 Select [Off] or [On].
- 2 If you selected [On], enter a recipient's mailbox number with the numeric keypad, and select [Next].
- 3 If a passcode is set, enter the passcode with the numeric keypad, and select [Save].

**Note** • If no passcode is set, do not input anything, and select [Save].

## F Code

Select whether to use F code communications.

F Code is the transmission procedure set by the Communications and Information Network Association of Japan and is the T.30 (communication protocol) method for using sub-addresses that are standardized by the ITU-T.

The F code (sub address) and password use not more than 20 digits 0 to 9, \*, and #.

- 1 Select [Off] or [On].
- 2 If you selected [On], enter the F code with the numeric keypad, and select [Next].

**Note** • The F code consists of "0" + mailbox number. For example, if the mailbox number is 123, the F code is "0123".

- 3 Enter the password as required with the numeric keypad, and select [Save].

**Note** • You can enter up to 20 digits for the password.

## Relay Broadcast

Set the instruction given to a relay station, which is used when the machine is an initiating station and the registered address number is a relay station for relay broadcast.

When selecting [On], set [Relay Station ID], [Broadcast Recipients], and [Print at Relay Station].

- 1 For a relay broadcast, select [On].
- 2 With the numeric keypad, enter the two-digit relay station ID then select [Enter/Change Recipients].

**Note** • The relay station ID is the address number for the initiating station (this machine) already registered on the relay station.

- 3** With the numeric keypad, enter the address number (001 to 099) or group dial number (#01 to #09) for the broadcast destination, and select [Add].

**Note**

- If there is more than one broadcast destination, continue by entering another address number or group dial number, and pressing [Add].

- 4** To print a document also at the relay station, under [Print at Relay Station] select [On].

### Billing - Day Time, Billing - Night Time, Billing - Midnight

Set the connection time for one unit charge in each of the time bands (daytime/nighttime/midnight).

You can set the value from 0.1 to 255.9 seconds in 0.1 second increments.

This item appears when the auditron mode for the fax service is enabled. For information on how to enable the feature, refer to "Auditron Mode" (P.177).

The registered details can be confirmed by printing the [Billing Data List]. For information about how to print, refer to "Billing Data List" (P.63).

- 1** Enter the System Administration mode.

For details on how to enter the System Administration mode, refer to "System Settings Procedure" (P.76).

- 2** Select one of [Billing - Day Time], [Billing - Night Time], and [Billing - Midnight], and select [Change Settings].

- 3** Select [No Billing] or [Billing].

- 4** When [Billing] is selected, using the keyboard displayed on the screen or the numeric keypad on the control panel, enter the time for one unit charge (0.1 to 255.9 seconds in 0.1 second increments).

- 5** Select [Save].

- 6** Exit the System Administration mode.

### Internet Fax Profile

Set the format of the Internet Fax profile.

A profile is specified to restrict attribute information such as the image resolution and paper size for transmissions between Internet Fax-compatible machines.

#### ■TIFF-S

This profile is the Internet Fax standard. For documents that are larger than A4, the size is reduced automatically to A4 for transmission.

#### ■TIFF-F

Select this profile when you specify super-fine for the resolution or when you send A3 or B4 documents.

#### ■TIFF-J

Select this profile for sending documents in JBIG.

**Surname**

Enter a recipient's last name (up to 32 characters).

For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

**Given Name**

Enter a recipient's first name (up to 32 characters).

For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

**S/MIME Certificate**

Allows you to make a link with a S/MIME certificate. The S/MIME certificate needs to be registered in advance.

In order to link a certificate, select a certificate in a screen displayed when selecting [Create/Change Link]. To delete a link, select [Cut Link].

**Important** • If a linked certificate is deleted due to some reason such as hard disk initialization, the certificate is delinked from the S/MIME certificate on Address Book. When re-registering the S/MIME certificate, you need to manually link it again.

**Note** • If many certificates are registered in the machine, it may take a long time to link a certificate. For information on the certificate, refer to "Encryption and Digital Signature Settings" (P.255).

**Custom Item 1**

The attribute name set as [Custom Item 1 attribute name] is shown as the item name. You can input any information as an auxiliary item. Up to 20 characters can be used. This item is appropriate for information represented by a shorter character string, such as telephone number, employee number.

For more information on the attribute name, refer to "Attribute Name of Custom Item 1, 2, and 3" (P.124).

**Custom Item 2**

The attribute name set as [Custom Item 2 attribute name] is shown as the item name. You can input any information as an auxiliary item. Up to 40 characters can be used. This item is appropriate for information represented by a longer character string, such as company name, department.

For more information on the attribute name, refer to "Attribute Name of Custom Item 1, 2, and 3" (P.124).

**Custom Item 3**

The attribute name set as [Custom Item 3 attribute name] is shown as the item name. You can input any information as an auxiliary item. Up to 60 characters can be used. This item is appropriate for information represented by a longer character string, such as company division, company address.

For more information on the attribute name, refer to "Attribute Name of Custom Item 1, 2, and 3" (P.124).

**Transfer Protocol**

Set the forwarding destination protocol. You can select from [FTP] and [SMB].

**Server Name/IP address**

Enter a name or IP address of a forwarding destination server.

**Shared Name (SMB Only)**

Enter the shared name set for the SMB folder.

**Important** • If the "/" mark is used at the top of a shared name, a job flow cannot read the shared name correctly. Do not use the "/" mark at the top of a shared name.

## Save In

Enter the directory for storing documents. When SMB is selected, use a UNC format.

- Forwarding via FTP  
Example: To save in the bbb directory under the aaa directory in the root directory.  
aaa/bbb
- Forwarding via SMB  
Example: To save in the bbb directory under the aaa directory in a specified volume.  
aaa\bbb

## User Name

When a user name is required to be input by the forwarding destination server, set the user name.

When [FTP] is selected under [Transfer Protocol], up to 32 characters are allowed.

When [SMB] is selected under [Transfer Protocol], use one of the following formats.

- For Active Directory:  
User name@Domain name (User name: up to 32 characters / Domain name: up to 64 characters)  
Example: fuji@example.com (fuji: user name / example.com: domain name)
- For Windows NT domains:  
Domain name\User name (Domain name: up to 64 characters / User name: up to 32 characters)  
Example: example\fuji (example: domain name / fuji: user name)
- For workgroups:  
Local user (up to 32 characters)  
Example: Fuji-Taro

## Password

When a password entry is prompted by the forwarding destination server, specify a password. You can enter up to 32 characters for a password.

## Port Number

Set the forwarding destination port number. Specify a number in the range from 1 to 65535.

## When the [Delete Entry] Button is Selected

Selecting this button deletes all the information registered for the selected address. To delete all the registered information, select [Delete].

**Important** • Deleted information cannot be recovered.

## Create Fax Group Recipients

You can register addresses for broadcast transmission as a group. Each group can include up to 20 address numbers. The maximum number of groups that can be registered is 50.

Note that recipients to be added to a group must already be stored in the address book.

- Note**
- It is not possible to include a group in another group.
  - As shown in the following example, you can use wildcards for specifying the numbers.
    - 01\* : Specifies the 10 addresses with address numbers 010 to 019.
    - \*\*\* : Specifies all address numbers.

- 1 Select [Create Fax Group Recipients].
- 2 Select a group number you want to register, and select [Create/Delete].

Group (Total Entries)	Speed Dial
#01 (1)	001
#02 (1)	002
#03 (20)	001,002,003,004,005,006,007,008...
#04 (1)	***
#05 (2)	001,002

**Note** • Select [▲] to return to the previous screen or [▼] to move to the next screen.

- 3 Enter an address number (3 digits) you want to register with the numeric keypad, and select [Add to this Group].
- 4 Repeat the procedure of Step 3 to register the address numbers.
- 5 Select [Save].

Recipients (Total Entries: 1)

001

Speed Dial 001 ↔ 999

▶ 002 HeadOffice 01234567

Add to this group Delete from this group

Cancel Save

- Delete from this group  
Deletes a registered address. Enter the address number you want to delete with the numeric keypad, and select [Delete from this Group].

## Add Fax Comment

You can register comments to be added to cover sheets. A maximum of 50 comments can be registered, each of which can be up to 36 characters.  
For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

## Paper Tray Attributes

For more information, refer to "Paper Tray Attributes" (P.94).

## Accounting

In [Accounting], you can register the users that will use the machine, and set the operation settings of the accounting feature.

For more information about this feature, refer to "Authentication and Account Administration" (P.271).

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Create/View User Accounts .....	173
View Accounts .....	175
Reset User Accounts .....	176
System Administrator's Meter (Copy Jobs) .....	177
Accounting Type .....	177
Accounting Login Screen Settings .....	178
Fax Billing Data .....	179

- 1 On the [Tools] screen, select [Accounting].

For the method of displaying the [Tools] screen, refer to "System Settings Procedure" (P.76).

- 2 Select any item.

### Create/View User Accounts

When the Account Administration feature is used, register user IDs and user names to authenticate registered users.

For a user of the machine, you can set a limit on the number of pages. For each registered user, you can also check the cumulative number of pages. Up to 500 sets of user data can be registered.

**Important** • Before registering users, refer to "Accounting Type" (P.177) to set the Accounting Type you use.

**Note** • This item does not appear when [Network Accounting] is selected in "Accounting Type" (P.177).

- 1 Select [Create/View User Accounts].
- 2 Select a 3-digit number for which you want to register a user, and select [Create/Delete].

- Note**
- The number is a user control number.
  - Select [▲] to return the previous screen or [▼] to move the next screen.
  - Entering a 3-digit user ID with the numeric keypad specifies the user directly.

- 3 Select any item, and set it.
- 4 Select [Close].

#### User ID

You can enter up to 32 characters for a user ID to use the machine.

## User Name

Set a user name. You can enter up to 32 characters.

For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

## Passcode

Set the passcode. Setting a passcode is strongly recommended for security. You can use a 4 to 12-digit passcode.

- Note**
- When [Passcode Entry from Control Panel] is set to [On], a passcode entry is required upon authentication.
  - When the [User Login] screen has the [Edit Passcode] button, you can change your passcode on the screen.

## E-mail Address

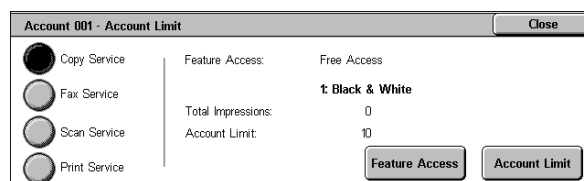
Enter an e-mail address (up to 128 characters). The address set here will be shown as the sender when sending [E-mail].

For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

## Account Limit

You can place restrictions on the use and the maximum number of allowed pages for each of the copy, fax, scan, and print features.

- 1 Select [Account Limit].
- 2 Select a feature to restrict.



- 3 To set account limits, select [Account Limit], then with the numeric keypad enter the maximum number of pages.

- Note**
- Select [Next] to switch to another item.

### ■Feature Access

Place access restrictions on features.

- Free Access  
The feature is not restricted.
- No Access to Copy/Fax/Scan/Print Service  
Disables the copy/fax/scan/print feature.

### ■Account Limit

Set the maximum number of pages for copying, faxing, scanning, or printing. You can specify a number from 1 to 9999999 (7 digits) sheets.

- The following limits can be placed on the Copy service for each user:  
Permission to use: [Free Access] or [No Access to Copy Service]  
Maximum number of black-and-white pages allowed: 1 to 9,999,999
- The following features can be placed on the Fax service for each user:  
Permission to use: [Free Access] or [No Access to Fax Service]
- The following limits can be placed on the Scan service for each user:  
Permission to use: [Free Access], [Black & White Only], [Color Only], or [No Access to Scan Service]  
Maximum number of color pages allowed: 1 to 9,999,999  
Maximum number of black-and-white pages allowed: 1 to 9,999,999



- The following limits can be placed on the Print service for each user:  
Permission to use: [Free Access] or [No Access to Print Service]  
Maximum number of black-and-white pages allowed: 1 to 9,999,999

## User Role

### ■ User Role

Allows you to select a user role for a user.

- User  
No special privileges are given to the user.
- System Administrator  
The System Administrator's privileges are given to the user.  
However, the following are not authorized.  
-Operate mailboxes  
-Operate job flow sheets  
-Change the passcode of the System Administrator
- Account Administrator  
The following privileges are given to the user.  
-Register/delete/change (except for passcode)/view (unavailable for some settings) user information  
-Register/delete/change/view accounting information  
-Change Alternative name for Account ID/Mask Account ID  
-Print an Auditron report for each user

### ■ Add This User to Authorization Group

Allows you to select an authorization group for a user.

## Reset Total Impressions

Resets the current cumulative number of pages for a selected user, returning it to zero.

### ■ Reset

Resets the current cumulative number of pages for users. Once reset, the previous count cannot be restored.

### ■ Cancel

Cancels resetting the cumulative number of pages.

## Reset Account

Deletes all registered information for a selected user.

### ■ Reset

Deletes the registered user data. Once deleted, the data cannot be restored.

**Important** • All job flow sheets, mailboxes, and documents within mailboxes belonging to the user are deleted. If the user is owner of a large amount of material (when a large quantity of documents is left remaining within a mailbox for example), the deletion will take a considerable time.

### ■ Cancel

Cancels the deletion of the user data.

## View Accounts

Selecting [Xerox Standard Accounting] on the [Accounting Type] screen allows you to check the following for each registered user or group: (1) the maximum number of times that the account can be used for each service, and (2) how many times the account has been used for each service.

### Note

- You can register users and groups on CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the CentreWare Internet Services Help.

- 1 Click [View Accounts].
- 2 Select [User Account] or [Group Account]. If you select [User Account], select also the User ID to be checked.
- 3 Clicking [Details] displays the detailed account information.

## Reset User Accounts

You can delete all registered information for all registered users in a single operation, or reset the auditor. It is also available to print contents for confirmation before resetting.

**Note** • This item does not appear when [Network Accounting] or [Xerox Standard Accounting] is selected in "Accounting Type" (P.177).

### ■All User Accounts

Deletes all information registered for each user. It also deletes all data including the maximum number of pages, cumulative number of pages, and printer auditor data.

**Important** • All job flow sheets, mailboxes, and documents within mailboxes belonging to the user are deleted. If the user is owner of a large amount of material (when a large quantity of documents is left remaining within a mailbox for example), the deletion will take a considerable time.

### ■All Feature Access Settings

Resets the feature access limit for all users.

### ■All Account Limits

Resets the maximum number of pages for all users to the default (9,999,999 pages).

### ■Total Impressions

Resets all account administration data for all users including the system administrator. The number of pages is also reset to 0.

### ■All Authorization Groups

Delinks users from authorization groups, and links those users to the default authorization group.

### ■Meter (Print Jobs)

Resets all printer auditor, and deletes automatically registered job owner names. The number of pages printed is also reset to 0.

**Note** • [Meter (Print Jobs)] is displayed when [Off] is selected for [Print Service] in the Authentication and Account Administration.

### ■Print Report

Prints a report including contents registered information to reset or a report including contents administration data to reset.

The report is available for confirmation before resetting.

### ■Reset

Deletes or resets the data for the selected item.

## System Administrator's Meter (Copy Jobs)

You can check or reset the total impression copied using the System Administration mode on the screen.

The total impressions are counted up to 9,999,999 pages.

- Note**
- This item does not appear when [Network Accounting] is selected in "Accounting Type" (P.177).

## Accounting Type

You can enable the Accounting feature and set whether or not to verify users.

### Accounting Disabled

Does not perform account administration.

### Local Accounting

Performs account administration.

### Network Accounting

Performs account administration based on the user information managed on a remote service. User information is registered on the remote service.

For more details on Network Accounting, refer to "Types of Account Administration" (P.276).

- Note**
- When [Network Accounting] is selected, users are prompted to enter their Account ID on the [Log in] screen that is displayed when attempting to use services required for accounting.

### Xerox Standard Accounting

Accounting administration is carried out based on the user information and account information pre-registered on the machine.

### Auditron Mode

Allows you to set whether or not to enable the Auditron feature for each of the following services:

Copy	Fax/Internet Fax	Scan to Mailbox
E-mail	Network Scanning	Scan to PC
Print		

- Note**
- The services displayed on the screen depend on the machine configuration.
  - Print jobs may be canceled depending on the settings in "Receive Control" (P.187).

### Verify User Details

Allows you to set whether or not to verify user information. Selecting [Yes] also allows you to set whether or not to verify user information for print and Direct Fax jobs.

- Note**
- When [Login to Local Account] is selected for [Login Type], [No] cannot be selected.

### Customize User Prompts

Allows you to set the type of user information used for authentication.

- Note**
- AccountID is used for accounting.
  - When [Login to Local Account] is selected for [Login Type] and [Yes] is selected for [Verify User Details], [Account ID Prompt Only] and [Display No Prompts] cannot be selected.
  - User & Account ID Prompts  
Prompts users to enter both their user ID and Account ID.

- **User ID Prompt Only**  
Prompts users to enter their user ID only.
- **Account ID Prompt Only**  
Prompts users to enter their Account ID only.
- **Display No Prompts**  
Does not prompt users to enter their user ID or Account ID.

---

## Accounting Login Screen Settings

---

You can configure Accounting settings.

### Alternative Name for User ID

If required, you can change the indication "UserID" on the [Login] screen that appears when the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel is pressed to another name such as "User Name" or "Number". The alias can be set to 1 to 15 characters.

**Note** • The value is also reflected in report/list displays.

### Mask User ID (\*\*\*)

You can set how an entered user ID is shown on the screen. Use this feature to strengthen security as required.

■ **Show**

As you enter the user ID, the characters are echoed on the screen in the normal way.

■ **Hide**

As you enter the user ID, the character string is hidden as a row of asterisks (\*\*\*\*\*).

### Alternative Name for Account Name ID

If required, you can change the indication "Account ID" on the [Login] screen that appears when the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel is pressed to another name such as "Account Name" or "Number". The alias can be set to 1 to 15 characters.

**Note** • This item appears when [Network Accounting] is selected in "Accounting Type" (P.177).  
• The value is also reflected in report/list displays.

### Mask Account ID (\*\*\*)

You can set how an entered Account ID is shown on the screen. Use this feature to strengthen security as required.

**Note** • This item appears when [Network Accounting] is selected in "Accounting Type" (P.177).

■ **Show**

As you enter the Account ID, the characters are echoed on the screen in the normal way.

■ **Hide**

As you enter the Account ID, the character string is hidden as a row of asterisks (\*\*\*\*\*).

### Store User Details

You can set the destination to save authentication information. Select NVM or hard disk.

**Note** • This item appears when [Network Accounting] is selected in "Accounting Type" (P.177).  
• NVM stands for nonvolatile memory and the data on it is stable after the machine has been turned off.

## Fax Billing Data

You can make settings for the fax billing.

**Important** • In order to register the billing data, enable the fax feature for the Accounting prior to the operations. For details on how to enable the fax feature, refer to "Service Access" (P.181).

**Note** • Set the communications time per unit charge in each time band (daytime/night/midnight) in [Billing]. For information on how to set [Billing], refer to "Billing - Day Time, Billing - Night Time, Billing - Midnight" (P.169).

• The registered details can be confirmed by printing the [Billing Data List]. For information about how to print, refer to "Billing Data List" (P.63).

**1** Enter the System Administration mode.

For details on how to enter the System Administration mode, refer to "System Settings Procedure" (P.76).

**2** Select [Fax Billing Data] and select [Change Rate per Unit].

■ Charge Rate per Unit

This is a communication charge per unit.

**3** Select [Change Settings].

**4** Enter an amount using the keyboard displayed on the screen.

**5** Select [Save].

Items	Current Settings
1 Charge Rate per Unit	1 Unit=10.0

1. Charge Rate per Unit

Charge Rate per Unit  
0.1 ↔ 255.9

▶ 10.0

# Authentication/Security Settings

In [Authentication/Security Settings], you can set the authentication and security settings.  
For more information about the feature, refer to "Authentication and Account Administration" (P.271).  
The following shows the reference section for each item.

System Administrator Settings.....	180
Authentication.....	181
Allow User to Disable Active Settings .....	189
Job Status Default .....	189
Overwrite Hard Disk.....	190

- 1 On the [Tools] screen, select [Authentication/Security Settings].  
For the method of displaying the [Tools] screen, refer to "System Settings Procedure" (P.76).
- 2 Select any item.

## System Administrator Settings

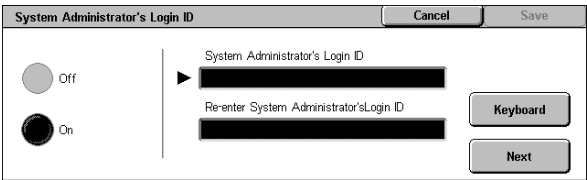
In [System Administrator Settings], you can set the system administrator ID and passcode.  
You are recommended to set the system administrator ID and passcode to prevent unauthorized setting changes and ensure security.

### System Administrator's Login ID

Set the system administrator's user ID. Enter the ID from 1 to 32 characters.

**Note** • The default of the system administrator's user ID is "11111".

- 1 Select [System Administrator's Login ID].
- 2 Select [On].
- 3 Select [Keyboard].
- 4 Enter the system administrator ID of up to 32 characters, and select [Save].
- 5 Repeat Steps 3 and 4 to reenter the same system administrator ID.
- 6 Select [Save].
- 7 A confirmation window appears. Select [Yes] to confirm your entry.

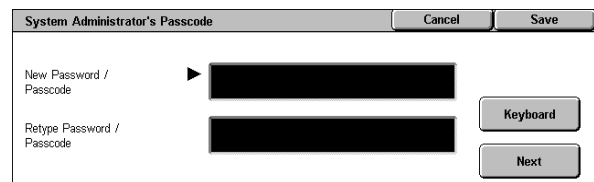


### System Administrator's Passcode

Set the passcode for System Administration mode.  
Setting a passcode is strongly recommended for security.  
**Note** • The default of the system administrator's passcode is "x-admin".  
The system administrator's passcode becomes valid when [Passcode Entry from Control Panel] in [Passcode Policy] is [On].  
Set the passcode after setting the system administrator's User ID.  
You can set the passcode from 4 to 12 numeric digits.  
For information about [Passcode Entry from Control Panel], refer to "Passcode Policy" (P.187).

- 1 Select [System Administrator's Passcode].
- 2 Select [Keyboard].
- 3 Enter a new passcode (4 to 12 digits) in [New Password/Passcode], and select [Next].
 

**Note** • To set no passcode, leave the entry fields blank, and select [Save].
- 4 Repeat Steps 2 and 3 to reenter the same passcode.
- 5 Select [Save].
- 6 A confirmation window appears. Select [Yes] to confirm your entry.



## Authentication

In [Authentication], you can set the following items.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Login Type .....	181
Access Control .....	181
Create/View User Accounts .....	182
Reset User Accounts .....	184
Create Authorization Groups .....	185
User Details Setup .....	186
System Administrator Maximum Login Attempts .....	186
Passcode Policy .....	187
Charge/Private Print Settings .....	187

### Login Type

Allows you to select a type of authentication.

- **No Login Required**  
Does not authenticate users.
- **Login to Local Accounts**  
Authenticates users based on the Accounting settings.
- **Login to Remote Accounts**  
Authenticates users with a remote authentication server.

### Access Control

- **Device Access**  
Allows you to limit operation of the buttons on the control panel of the machine.  
Select [Unlocked] or [Locked].
- **Service Access**  
Allows you to limit access to each of the following services.  
For details on [Login Type], refer to "Login Type" (P.181).
  - **Copy**  
Limits access to the Copy service on the machine. The use of stored programs that contain steps to use the Copy service is also limited.

- **Fax/Internet Fax**  
Limits access to the Fax/Internet Fax/Direct Fax service on the machine. The use of stored programs that contain steps to use the Fax/Internet Fax service is also limited.
- **Scan to Mailbox/E-mail/Scan to PC**  
Limits access to the Scan to Mailbox/Scan to E-mail/Scan to PC service on the machine. The use of stored programs that contain steps to use any of these services is also limited.
- **Network Scanning**  
Limits access to the Network Scanning service.
- **Send from Mailbox**  
Limits access to the Send-from-Mailbox service.
- **Stored Programming**  
Limits access to the Stored Programming service.
- **Job Flow Sheets**  
Limits access to the Job Flow Sheets service.
- **Print Service**  
Limits the submission of print jobs from a computer via a network.  
To use the authentication feature, user information such as a user ID and passcode needs to be entered on a print driver. If the authentication fails, the print data sent to the machine is saved in the machine or deleted according to the Charge Print settings.

**Note** • The settings in [Service Access] are not effective if [Login Type] is set to [Login to Remote Accounts].

For information about [Login Type], refer to "Login Type" (P.181).

#### ■ Feature Access

Set [Print Documents from Mailbox] and [Retrieve Documents from Mailbox].

## Create/View User Accounts

When the Account Administration feature is used, register user IDs and user names to authenticate registered users.

For a user of the machine, you can set a limit on the number of pages. For each registered user, you can also check the cumulative number of pages. Up to 500 sets of user data can be registered.

**Important** • Before registering users, refer to "Login Type" (P.181) to set the authentication type you use.

**Note** • This item does not appear when [Login to Remote Accounts] is selected in "Login Type" (P.181).

**1** Select [Create/View User Accounts].

**2** Select a 3-digit number for which you want to register a user, and select [Create/Delete].

**Note** • The number is a user control number.  
• Select [▲] to return the previous screen or [▼] to move the next screen.

**3** Entering a 3-digit user ID with the numeric keypad specifies the user directly.  
Select any item, and set it.

**4** Select [Close].

User ID	User Name
001	user1
002	user2
003	user3
004	(Not in Use)
005	(Not in Use)



## User ID

You can enter up to 32 characters for a user ID to use the machine.

## User Name

Set a user name. You can enter up to 32 characters.

For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

## Passcode

Set the passcode. Setting a passcode is strongly recommended for security. You can use a 4 to 12-digit passcode.

- Note**
- When [Passcode Entry from Control Panel] is set to [On], a passcode entry is required upon authentication.
  - Once authenticated, you can change your passcode on [Edit Passcode] screen under the [Authentication/Security Settings].

## E-mail Address

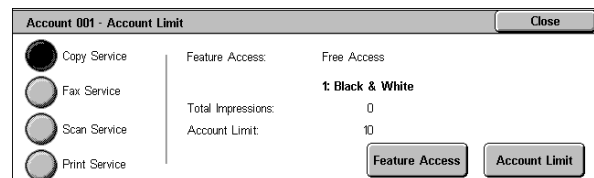
Enter an e-mail address (up to 128 characters). The address set here will be shown as the sender when sending [E-mail].

For information about how to enter characters, refer to "Entering Text" (P.24).

## Account Limit

You can place restrictions on the use and the maximum number of allowed pages for each of the copy, fax, scan, and print features.

- 1 Select [Account Limit].
- 2 Select a feature to restrict.



- 3 To set account limits, select [Account Limit], then with the numeric keypad enter the maximum number of pages.

- Note**
- Select [Next] to switch to another item.

### ■ Feature Access

Place access restrictions on features.

- Free Access  
The feature is not restricted.
- No Access to Copy/Fax/Scan/Print Service  
Disables the copy/fax/scan/print feature.

### ■ Account Limit

Set the maximum number of pages for copying, faxing, scanning, or printing. You can specify a number from 1 to 9999999 (7 digits) sheets.

- The following limits can be placed on the Copy service for each user:  
Permission to use: [Free Access], or [No Access to Copy Service]  
Maximum number of black-and-white pages allowed: 1 to 9,999,999
- The following limits can be placed on the Fax service for each user:  
Permission to use: [Free Access] or [No Access to Fax Service]
- The following limits can be placed on the Scan service for each user:  
Permission to use: [Free Access], [Black & White Only], [Color Only], or [No Access to Scan]

Service]

Maximum number of color pages allowed: 1 to 9,999,999

Maximum number of black-and-white pages allowed: 1 to 9,999,999

- The following limits can be placed on the Print service for each user:  
Permission to use: [Free Access], or [No Access to Print Service]  
Maximum number of black-and-white pages allowed: 1 to 9,999,999

## User Role

### ■ User Role

Allows you to select a user role for a user.

- User  
No special privileges are given to the user.
- System Administrator  
The System Administrator's privileges are given to the user. However, the following are not authorized.  
-Operate mailboxes  
-Operate job flow sheets  
-Change the passcode of the System Administrator
- Account Administrator  
The following privileges are given to the user.  
-Register/delete/change (except for passcode)/view (unavailable for some settings) user information  
-Register/delete/change/view accounting information  
-Change the authentication mode (when being set other than the Local Machine Authentication mode), and change Alternative Name for User ID/Mask User ID/Alternative Name for Account ID/Mask Account ID  
-Print an Auditron report for each user

### ■ Add This User to Authorization Group

Allows you to select an authorization group for a user.

## Reset Total Impressions

Resets the current cumulative number of pages for a selected user, returning it to zero.

### ■ Reset

Resets the current cumulative number of pages for users. Once reset, the previous count cannot be restored.

### ■ Cancel

Cancels resetting the cumulative number of pages.

## Reset Account

Deletes all registered information for a selected user.

### ■ Reset

Deletes the registered user data. Once deleted, the data cannot be restored.

**Important** • All job flow sheets, mailboxes, and documents within mailboxes belonging to the user are deleted. If the user is owner of a large amount of material (when a large quantity of documents is left remaining within a mailbox for example), the deletion will take a considerable time.

### ■ Cancel

Cancels the deletion of the user data.

## Reset User Accounts

You can delete all registered information for all registered users in a single operation, or reset the auditron. It is also available to print contents for confirmation before resetting.

- Note** • This item does not appear when [Network Accounting] or [Xerox Standard Accounting] is selected in "Accounting Type" (P.177).

■ **All User Accounts**

Deletes all information registered for each user. It also deletes all data including the maximum number of pages, cumulative number of pages, and printer auditron data.

- Important** • All job flow sheets, mailboxes, and documents within mailboxes belonging to the user are deleted. If the user is owner of a large amount of material (when a large quantity of documents is left remaining within a mailbox for example), the deletion will take a considerable time.

■ **All Feature Access Settings**

Resets the feature access limit for all users.

■ **All Account Limits**

Resets the maximum number of pages for all users to the default (9,999,999 pages).

■ **Total Impressions**

Resets all account administration data for all users including the system administrator. The number of pages is also reset to 0.

■ **All Authorization Groups**

Delinks users from authorization groups, and links those users to the default authorization group.

■ **Meter (Print Jobs)**

Resets all printer auditron, and deletes automatically registered job owner names. The number of pages printed is also reset to 0.

- Note** • [Meter (Print Jobs)] is displayed when [Off] is selected for [Print Service] in the Authentication and Account Administration.

■ **Print Report**

Prints a report including contents registered information to reset or a report including contents administration data to reset.

The report is available for confirmation before resetting.

■ **Reset**

Deletes or resets the data for the selected item.

## Create Authorization Groups

You can give users the privileges to use some features that are restricted under normal conditions. Users can be divided into different authorization groups.

- Note** • Up to 20 groups can be registered.

- 1 Select [Create Authorization Groups].
- 2 Select [Group Name] and then [Create/Delete].
- 3 Select any item and set it.



■ **Group Name**

Enter a group name as necessary. The group name can be up to 32 characters long.

■ **Restrict Recipient Selection Method**

Select [Always Apply Restriction] or [No Restriction].

■ **Restrict User to Edit Address Book**

Select whether to give a privilege to users to edit the address book. Select [Always Apply Restriction] or [No Restriction].

**Note** • Some models do not display this setting.

#### ■ Allow user to disable active settings

Select whether to permit the group members to disable the Watermark feature during their user session, when [Allow User to Disable Active Settings] in [Authentication/Security Settings] is set to [Enable Active Settings].

For information on [Allow User to Disable Active Settings], refer to "Allow User to Disable Active Settings" (P.189).

## User Details Setup

Set the information required when carrying out authentication.

### Alternative Name for User ID

If required, you can change the indication "UserID" on the [Login] screen that appears when the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel is pressed to another name such as "User Name" or "Number". The alias can be set to 1 to 15 characters.

**Note** • The value is also reflected in report/list displays.

### Mask User ID (\*\*\*)

You can set how an entered user ID is shown on the screen. Use this feature to strengthen security as required.

#### ■ Show

As you enter the user ID, the characters are echoed on the screen in the normal way.

#### ■ Hide

As you enter the user ID, the character string is hidden as a row of asterisks (\*\*\*\*\*).

## Failed Access Log

In order to detect unauthorized access, an error is logged if authentication fails within a specified period of time. Set the failure count.

## Display Login Status

Set whether to display login status of a user on the upper-right corner of the login screen.

## Logout Confirmation Screen

Set whether to display a logout confirmation screen every time a user session is to be ended.

## User ID for Login

Set whether or not to make the user ID entry field on the user login screen case-sensitive. Select [Case Sensitive] or [Non-Case Sensitive].

**Important** • Once this setting is changed, all the information about users, and the mailboxes and job flow sheets linked to the users are deleted.

• When [Non-Case Sensitive] is selected, user IDs shown on screens and in reports become uppercase.

## Guest Passcode

Set the guest passcode to be used in the Network Authentication mode.

## System Administrator Maximum Login Attempts

This feature protects the settings from being changed by an outsider pretending a system administrator. If authentication for a system administrator's ID fails more than specified times continuously, access is denied.

You can specify a login attempt count in the range from 1 to 10.

**Note** • The failure count is reset when the machine is restarted.

- To cancel the access rejection state, restart the machine by turning off and on the power.

## Passcode Policy

### ■ Passcode Entry from Control Panel

You can set whether a passcode is required when the system administrator or a user uses the machine. Select [On] to enable "System Administrator's Passcode" (P.180), and "Passcode" (P.183) for [Create/View User Accounts]. Select [Off] not to require the passcode, even if a passcode is set in the above settings.

**Important** • The setting of [Passcode Entry from Control Panel] is used for authentication on the machine. A passcode must always be entered when accessing from remote devices using CentreWare Internet Services or the like, regardless of the use of passcode setting. Depending on authentication procedures, a passcode may be required for other processes as well.

**Note** • The system administrator's passcode is also required when you change settings from CentreWare Internet Services.

### ■ Minimum Passcode Length

You can set whether or not to set the minimum number of digits allowed for a passcode. Specify a value in the range of 4 to 12.

**Note** • This is only applicable to ordinary users (not applicable to the machine administrator and guests).  
• For users that have already been registered, authentication with less than the minimum number of digits is possible.

## Charge/Private Print Settings

You can set how received print jobs should be handled.

### PJL Receive Command Control

Print jobs submitted by external equipment can be controlled by PjL commands. The settings for [Receive Control] described later are applied when either [Off] is selected or no PjL command is received.

### PJL Output Command Control

Print jobs submitted by an external equipment can be controlled by PjL commands.

### Receive Control

You can set how received print jobs should be handled.

For information about printing from a print driver, refer to "10 Computer Operations" in the User Guide.

For information about printing the print job that are saved after being received, refer to "9 Job Status" > "Printing and Deleting Stored Documents" > "Private Charge Print" in the User Guide.

For information about deleting the print job that are saved after being received, refer to "Deleting the Private Print Job with an Invalid User ID" (P.54).

- 1 Select [Receive Control], and select [Change Settings].
- 2 Select any item.
- 3 According to the selected item, set the processing to be applied to jobs.

1. Receive Control			
<input checked="" type="radio"/> According to Print Auditor	<b>Job Login Success</b>	<b>Job Login Failure</b>	<b>Job without User ID</b>
<input type="radio"/> Save in Private Charge Print	<input type="radio"/> Print Job	<input type="radio"/> Save in Charge Print	<input type="radio"/> Print Job
<input type="radio"/> Save in Private Charge Print	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Save in Private Charge Print	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Delete Job	<input type="radio"/> Save in Charge Print
			<input checked="" type="radio"/> Delete Job

#### ■ According to Print Auditor

Follows the settings for the [Print] under "Login Type" (P.181) and "Service Access" (P.181).

- Note**
- To restrict print job operations using the authentication feature, set [Login Type] to [Login to Local Accounts] or [Login to Network Accounts], and also set [Print] under [Service Access] to [Locked].

When [According to Print Auditor] is selected, [Job Login Success], [Job Login Failure] and [Job without User ID] appear.

#### • Job Login Success

Set the processing to be applied to successfully authenticated jobs.

- To print all received jobs, select [Print Job].
- To save received jobs using the Private Charge Print feature, select [Save in Private Charge Print].

- Note**
- When [Save in Private Charge Print] is selected, the Secure Print, Sample Set, Mailbox Print, and Delayed Print settings specified on the print driver will be ignored.
  - When saving the print jobs in Private Charge Print, use up to 24 characters for the User ID. If the User ID set on the print driver exceeds 24 characters, a print job will be cancelled, and will not be saved in Private Charge Print.

#### • Job Login Failure

Set the processing to be applied to authentication failure jobs (whose information, such as the user ID and passcode, has been incorrectly registered on the print driver).

- When [Save in Charge Print] is selected, all jobs received are saved.
- When [Delete Job] is selected, jobs received are deleted.

#### • Job without User ID

Set the processing to be applied to jobs with no user ID attached (such as print jobs sent from CentreWare Internet Services or e-mail print).

- To print all jobs, select [Print Job].
- To save jobs using the Charge Print feature, select [Save in Charge Print].
- To delete jobs, select [Delete Job].

- Note**
- [Job without User ID] is changed to [Print Job] when you select as follows on CentreWare Internet Services: [Properties] > [Authentication Configuration] > [Non-Account Print]. When [Job without User ID] is set to [Save in Charge Print] or [Cancel Job], the [Non-Account Print] check box on CentreWare Internet Services is cleared.

#### ■ Save in Private Charge Print

Regardless of whether the authentication feature is being used or not, all jobs that have a user ID are saved using the Private Charge Print feature.

- Important**
- When using [Save in Private Charge Print], all the print jobs that have User IDs are saved regardless of whether or not being successfully authenticated. To minimize the unnecessary print jobs, specify how long print jobs can be saved for, so that they can be automatically deleted after a specified period of time. Or the system administrator can manually delete them. For details on how to specify a duration of how long the print jobs are kept, refer to "Stored Document Settings" (P.153). For details on how to delete the print jobs manually, refer to "Deleting the Private Print Job with an Invalid User ID" (P.54).

- Note**
- When [Save in Private Charge Print] is selected, the Secure Print, Sample Set, Mailbox Print, and Delayed Print settings specified on the print driver will be ignored.
  - When saving the print jobs in Private Charge Print, up to 24 characters for the User ID. If the User ID set on the print driver exceeds 24 characters, a print job will be cancelled, and will not be saved in Private Charge Print.

When [Save in Private Charge Print] is selected, [Job without User ID] appears.

#### • Job without User ID

Set how to process the e-mail print jobs with no user ID attached.

- To print all jobs, select [Print Job].
- To save jobs using the Charge Print feature, select [Save in Charge Print].
- To delete jobs, select [Delete Job].

- Note** • [Job without User ID] is changed to [Print Job] when you select as follows on CentreWare Internet Services: [Properties] > [Authentication Configuration] > [Non-Account Print]. When [Job without User ID] is set to [Save in Charge Print] or [Cancel Job], the [Non-Account Print] check box on CentreWare Internet Services is cleared.

#### ■ Save in Charge Print

Regardless of whether the authentication feature is being used or not, all received jobs are saved using the Charge Print feature.

- Important** • When using [Save in Charge Print], all the print jobs are saved regardless of whether or not being successfully authenticated. To minimize the unnecessary print jobs, specify how long print jobs can be saved for, so that they can be automatically deleted after a specified period of time. Or the system administrator can manually delete them. For details on how to specify a duration of how long the print jobs are kept, refer to "Stored Document Settings" (P.153). For details on how to delete the print jobs manually, refer to "9 Job Status" > "Printing and Deleting Stored Documents" > "Charge Print" in the User Guide.

- Note** • When [Save in Charge Print] is selected, the Secure Print, Sample Set, Mailbox Print, and Delayed Print settings specified on the print driver will be ignored.

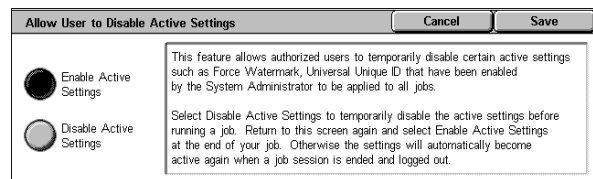
## Allow User to Disable Active Settings

This feature allows authorized users to temporarily disable the Watermark feature if it has been enabled by the System Administrator to be applied to all jobs.

If [Disable Active Settings] is selected, the setting automatically returns to [Enable Active Settings] when the logged-in user is logged out.

- Note** • If this setting is set to [Disable Active Settings] while a job is in progress, the setting is not effective for the job.

- 1 Select [Allow User to Disable Active Settings] in the [Group] menu.
- 2 Select the required option.
- 3 Select [Save].



## Job Status Default

You can hide active jobs, completed jobs, and job logs from unauthenticated users or non-job owners, to protect privacy and prevent leakage of confidential information.

### Active Jobs View

Select whether or not to hide active jobs from general users, on the [Active Jobs View] screen in Job Status.

### Completed Jobs View

Select [Allow Viewing at All Times], [Require Login to View Jobs], or [No Job Viewing].

#### ■ Access To

This is displayed when [Require Login to View Jobs] is selected. Select [All Jobs] or [Jobs Run By Login User Only].

#### ■ Hide Job Details

This is displayed when [Allow Viewing at All Times] or [Require Login to View Jobs] is selected. Select [No] or [Yes].

## Overwrite Hard Disk

Select whether or not to carry out hard disk overwrite erasing. If you overwrite the hard disk, you can select whether to overwrite once or three times.

When copy, fax, scan, or print processing is completed, the data is deleted from the hard disk and the area on which the deleted data was stored is automatically overwritten with blank data. This feature prevents unauthorized retrieval or restoration of the data recorded on the hard disk. It also applies to copy source, and other information stored temporarily by the system.

The following option can be configured.

### ■Number of Overwrites

**Important** • If the machine is powered off during the overwriting operation, unfinished files may remain on the hard disk. The overwriting operation will resume if you power the machine on again with the unfinished files remaining on the hard disk.

- The data is erased by overwriting once, but overwriting three times makes it even more definite that the data cannot be recovered. It does, however, take longer.
- During the overwriting process, processing of normal operations may be slowed down.

**Note** • An optional package is required to use this feature. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

For information about how to check the status during the overwriting process, refer to "Overwrite Hard Disk" (P.67).

### Prerequisite for Using Security Kit

The system administrator must follow the instructions below:

- To protect the data deleted from or stored on the hard disk, the following settings are required:
  - Overwrite Hard Disk: [1 Overwrite] or [3 Overwrites]
  - Data Encryption: [On]: an encryption key of 8 digits or more (maximum 12 digits)
  - Service Rep. Restricted Operation: [On]
- Change the system administrator's factory default passcode (x-admin). Register a new passcode of 7 characters or more (maximum 12 characters). Be careful not to register a passcode that can be easily assumed and not to store the registered passcode in a location that is easily accessible to other persons.

**Important** • If the system administrator's user ID and passcode are forgotten, the machine configuration will not be able to recover in case of malfunction.

- Set [Passcode Entry from Control Panel] to [On].
- Set [Maximum Login Attempts] to 5 times.
- Note that the hard disk security will not be warranted if you do not correctly follow the above setting instructions.

For information on how to set [Data Encryption], refer to "Data Encryption" (P.104).

For information on how to set [Service Rep. Restricted Operation], refer to "Service Rep. Restricted Operation" (P.105).

For information on how to set [Passcode Entry from Control Panel], refer to "Passcode Policy" (P.187).

For information on how to set the system administrator's user ID, refer to "System Administrator's Login ID" (P.180).

The manager (of the organization that this machine is used for) must be follow the instructions below:

- Assign appropriate persons as system and machine administrators, and manage and train them properly.
- When turning off the machine, make sure no operation is running. Train the users to turn off the machine after an active operation completes, if any.
- Note that Security Kit is used to protect deleted document data from being recovered; it does not protect documents stored in mailboxes on the hard disk.



- Install an anti-bugging device on the internal network that the machine with Security Kit is located on, and perform the network settings properly to protect the machine from interceptions.
- To block unauthorized access, install a firewall device between the external network and the internal network that the machine is located on.

■ **Scheduled Image Overwrite**

Specifies how often and when to overwrite data on the hard disk. At the specified time, overwriting starts and all jobs in progress, including a fax being received, are canceled. The machine will reboot after the overwriting process.



# 6 CentreWare Internet Services Settings

This chapter describes how to set up CentreWare Internet Services.

**Note** • An optional package is required to use this feature. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

- Installation of CentreWare Internet Services ..... 194
- Starting CentreWare Internet Services ..... 196
- Setting Items Using CentreWare Internet Services ..... 197

## Installation of CentreWare Internet Services

CentreWare Internet Services provides services such as displaying the status of the machine as a printer and jobs, and altering configurations using a web browser in a TCP/IP environment.

### Preparations

Prepare a computer supporting the TCP/IP protocol to use CentreWare Internet Services.

CentreWare Internet Services supports the following browsers:

#### ■ For Windows OS

- Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 Service Pack 1 or later
- Netscape Navigator 7.0 or later

#### ■ For Mac OS 9.2 or later

- Netscape Navigator 7.02 or later

#### ■ For Mac OS X 10.3.9

- Netscape Navigator 7.1 or later

#### ■ For Mac OS X 10.4

- Safari 1.3 or later

Refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Problems" (P.331) when any troubles occur during the configuration.

### Configuration on the Machine

The following describes the configuration procedure for using CentreWare Internet Services on the machine.

#### 1 Display the [Tools] screen.

- 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

- Note**
- The default user ID is "11111".
  - The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3) Select [Tools].

#### 2 Enabling the Internet Services (HTTP) port on the machine.

- 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
- 2) Select [Port Settings].
- 3) Select [Internet Services] and then select [Change Settings].
- 4) Select [Port Status] and then select [Change Settings].
- 5) Select [Enabled] then select [Save].

6) Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

**3** Set an IP address.

If an IP address is already set, this step is not necessary. Also, in an environment with DHCP or BOOTP, configure the way to obtain an IP address. Either the address cannot be obtained automatically or manual configuration is preferred, configure an IP address, a subnet mask, and a gateway address.

For information on how to set an IP address, refer to "Protocol Settings" (P.115).

**4** Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

**5** After the machine is restarted, print out a Configuration Report to confirm that the port for CentreWare Internet Services is enabled and TCP/IP is configured.

For information on how to print a Configuration Report, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

**6** Start CentreWare Internet Services to confirm whether the service is available or not.

For information on how to start CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

## Starting CentreWare Internet Services

To use CentreWare Internet Services, perform the following procedure on your computer.

Even if the authentication feature is not used for the copy, scan, fax, or print service, authentication is required to access the machine with a web browser when the Authentication feature is used on the machine.

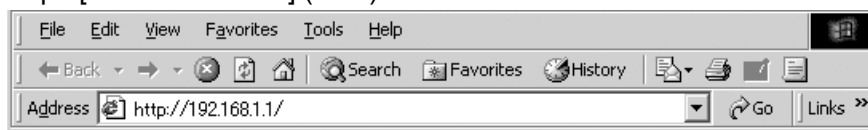
**Note** • Only the system administrators are authenticated when [Login Type] under [Authentication] is set to [Login to Remote Accounts]. CentreWare Internet Services is not available for general users.

- 1 Start a web browser.
- 2 Enter the machine's IP address or the Internet address to the address box on the web browser, and press the <Enter> key.

- Example of the IP address entry

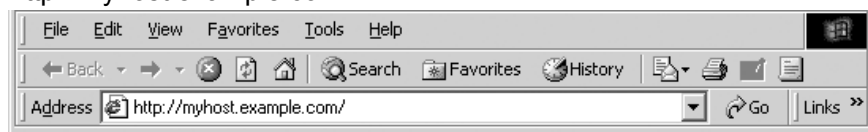
`http://192.168.1.1/ (IPv4)`

`http://[2001:DB8::1234] (IPv6)`



- Example of the Internet address entry (when the machine's Internet address is myhost.example.com)

`http://myhost.example.com/`



- Note**
- If your network uses DNS (Domain Name System) and the machine's host name is registered in the domain name server, you can access the machine using the Internet address with the combination of the host name and the domain name. For example, if the host name is "myhost", and the domain name is "example.com", then the Internet address is "myhost.example.com".
  - When specifying a port number, add ":" and the port number after the Internet address.
  - If using the authentication feature on the machine, enter a user ID and passcode into the [User Name] and [Password] fields.
  - If communications are encrypted, you must specify an address that starts with "https" instead of "http" to access CentreWare Internet Services.  
 Example of the IP address entry  
`https://192.168.1.1/ (IPv4)`  
`https://[2001:DB8::1234] (IPv6)`  
 Example of the Internet address entry  
`https://myhost.example.com/`

Refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Problems" (P.331) if CentreWare Internet Services is not displayed.

## Setting Items Using CentreWare Internet Services

CentreWare Internet Services enable you to alter various settings on the machine from a computer.

- Note**
- Confirm that the port in use is enabled in [Port Status] of the [Properties] tab, if an item that you want to set is not displayed.
  - When a setting is changed from CentreWare Internet Services while operating the control panel, the setting items changed on the screen of the control panel are not displayed. Switch the machine off and on in this case.
  - If you are prompted for your user name and password when changing settings on CentreWare Internet Services, enter the administrator's user ID and passcode into the [User Name] and [Password] fields. As default, the user name is '11111' and the passcode is 'x-admin'.

The items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services are as follows.

- Note**
- Click [Help] at the top right of the CentreWare Internet Services screen for details on the setting items.
- Mailbox  
Allows you to register a mailbox, as well as import or print documents saved in a mailbox.
  - Job Flow Sheets  
Allows you to register, edit, or delete job flow sheets.
  - Paper Tray Attributes  
Allows you to configure the settings priority for the respective paper tray.
  - Paper Settings  
Allows you to configure the settings priority for the respective paper type.
  - Power Saver/Energy Saver Settings  
Allows you to configure the energy saver time-out of the machine.
  - Stored Document Settings  
Allows you to configure the passcode for secure print and charge print.
  - Memory Settings  
Allows you to configure the settings for the free space available and the print page buffer size.
  - Internet Services Settings  
Allows you to configure the settings for Internet Services.
  - Pool Server Settings  
Allows you to configure pool server settings.
  - Cloning  
Allows you to configure the settings for authentication information.
  - Setup E-mail Notification  
Allows you to configure the recipient mail addresses, notice frequency for consumables status notice service.
  - Port Settings  
Displays the port settings and allows you to select whether to enable or disable different ports used in the machine.

- Physical Connections

Allows you to configure the port settings as follows.

- Ethernet
- USB

- Protocols

Allows you to configure the settings for protocols as follows.

- |             |                |               |          |
|-------------|----------------|---------------|----------|
| - EtherTalk | - SNMP         | - SMTP Server | - UPnP   |
| - SMB       | - IPP          | - POP3        | - SSDP   |
| - NetWare   | - Port 9100    | - HTTP        | - WebDAV |
| - TCP/IP    | - E-mail       | - Bonjour     | - LPD    |
| - LDAP      | - Proxy Server |               |          |

- Language Emulations

Allows you to configure the emulation settings.

- |              |           |       |           |
|--------------|-----------|-------|-----------|
| - Print Mode | - HP-GL/2 | - PCL | - ESC/P-K |
| - PostScript |           |       |           |

- E-mail Settings

Allows you to configure the settings for E-mail.

- Internet Fax Settings

Allows you to configure Internet fax settings.

- Fax Settings

Allows you to configure fax settings.

- Scan to Home

Allows you to configure the settings for Scan to Home.

Scan to Home is a feature that verifies a user and sends scanned data to the folder prespecified for the user.

- Scan to PC

Allows you to configure the settings for Scan to PC.

- Accounting Configuration

Allows you to configure the account administration settings.

- Authentication Configuration

Allows you to set up the Authentication feature.

- User Details Setup

Allows you to configure the authentication settings.

- Create Authorization Groups

Allows you to create authorization groups.

- Remote Authentication Servers

Allows you to configure the remote authentication server. The items that can be configured are as follows.

- Authentication System Settings



- Kerberos Server Settings
  - SMB Server Settings
- IP Filtering  
Allows you to set the IP addresses that the machine accepts connection from.
- Unbounded Port  
Allows you to set the unbounded port.
- Audit Log  
Allows you to enable the Audit Log feature.
- Machine Digital Certificate Management  
Allows you to have the machine generate a self-signed certificate and to import certificates.
- IPSec  
Allows you to configure the IPSec settings.
- Certificate Management  
Displays the certificates registered with the machine.
- Certificate Revocation Retrieval Settings  
Allows you to configure the settings for certificate revocation retrieval.
- 802.1x  
Allows you to configure the IEEE 802.1x settings.
- SSL/TLS Settings  
Allows you to configure SSL/TLS communication and certificate verification.
- S/MIME Settings  
Allows you to configure the S/MIME settings.
- PDF/DocuWorks/XPS Security Settings  
Allows you to configure the signature settings for PDF, DocuWorks, and XPS documents.
- Watermark  
Allows you to configure the Watermark and PDF settings.
- Job Status Default  
Allows you to configure the display/hide settings for the status of jobs.
- Service Representative Restricted Operation  
Allows you to configure the restricted operation settings for the Service Representative.
- System Administrator Settings  
Allows you to set the user ID and passcode of the System Administrator.



# 7 Printer Environment Settings

This chapter describes configuration to use the Printer features on the machine.

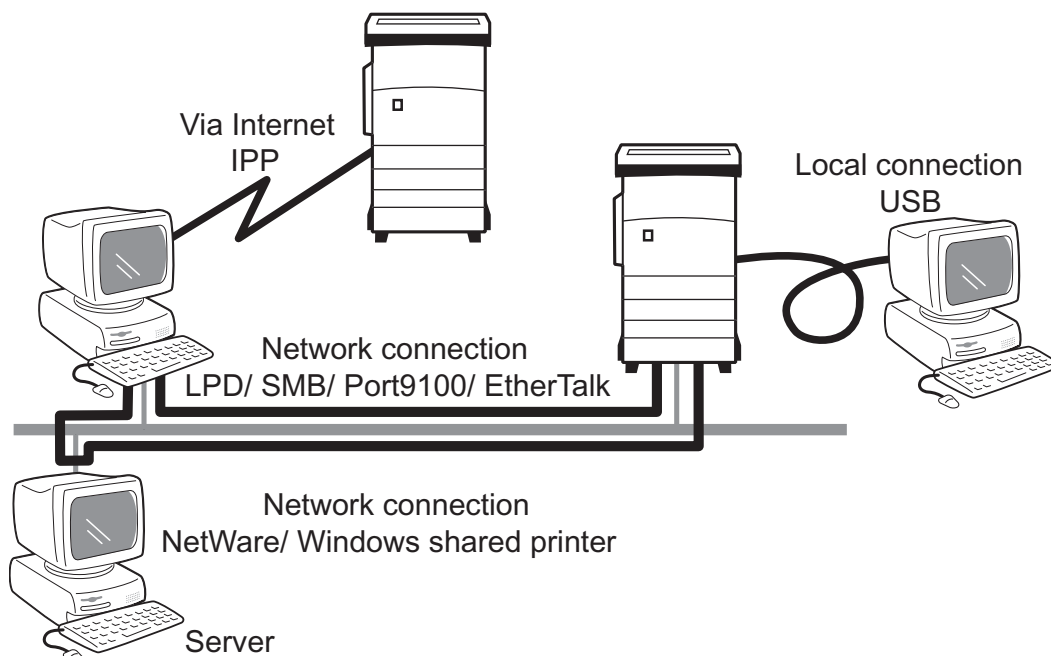
**Note** • An optional package is required to use this feature. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

• Print Features Overview .....	202
• Installation When Using USB Port .....	205
• Installation When Using TCP/IP (LPD/Port 9100) .....	207
• Installation When Using NetWare .....	210
• Installation When Using Microsoft Network (SMB) .....	213
• Installation When Using Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) .....	215
• Installation When Using EtherTalk .....	217

## Print Features Overview

This machine can be set up as a local printer by directly connecting the machine to a computer using a USB interface cable. Similarly, it can be set up as a network printer by connecting the machine to a network.

Enable the necessary port using the control panel or CetreWare Internet Services.



### Using the Machine as a Local Printer

Use a USB interface cable to directly connect the machine to a computer.

For more information on how to set up the machine using USB connection, refer to "Installation When Using USB Port" (P.205).

### Using the Machine as a Network Printer

To set up the machine as a network printer, the following methods are available to connect the machine.

#### ■LPD

Use TCP/IP protocol when direct communication with the machine can be established.

For more information on how to set up the machine using LPD, refer to "Installation When Using TCP/IP (LPD/Port 9100)" (P.207).

#### ■NetWare

The machine supports PServer mode using Netware directory service and bindery service. The PServer mode enables the machine to function as a printer server, and to capture print jobs in the print queue to output. The created printer for the machine consumes one user license of the file server.

#### Note

- The machine does not support RPrinter (Remote Printer) mode.
- You can use the machine as a printer in a NDPS environment by using a Novell NDPS Gateway. When using in a NDPS environment, settings of the machine to be used under a NetWare print environment are required. Or, you need to enable LPD in advance and set it as a gateway destination in a Novell NDPS Gateway setup. However, attribute information that can be set or captured by NDPS is not supported.

- Supported interfaces
  - 100BASE-TX
  - 10BASE-T
- Supported frame types
  - Ethernet II specification
  - IEEE802.3 specification
  - IEEE802.3 / IEEE802.2 specification
  - IEEE802.3 / IEEE802.2 / SNAP specification

- Note**
- The machine sends packets of each frame type on the network, and will initialize for the same frame type as the first reply packet received. The frame type can also be fixed. However, if there are multiple protocols running on the same network, use Ethernet II specification.
  - Some network equipment, such as hubs, may not be compatible with the automatic frame type detection. If a data link indicator corresponding to the port of the network equipment connected with the machine does not light up, change the frame type settings of the machine accordingly with that of the file server. Use CentreWare Internet Services to change these settings.

For more information on how to set up the machine using NetWare, refer to "Installation When Using NetWare" (P.210).

## ■SMB

Use SMB to print using Microsoft Networks.

For more information on how to set up the machine using SMB, refer to "Installation When Using Microsoft Network (SMB)" (P.213).

## ■IPP

Use IPP to print through the Internet.

For more information on how to set up the machine using IPP, refer to "Installation When Using Internet Printing Protocol (IPP)" (P.215).

## ■Port 9100

Use Port9100 when using Port9100 port.

For more information on how to set up the machine using Port9100, refer to "Installation When Using TCP/IP (LPD/Port 9100)" (P.207).

## ■EtherTalk

Use EtherTalk when printing from a Macintosh computer. Adobe PostScript 3 Kit (optional) is required.

For more information on how to set up the machine using EtherTalk, refer to "Installation When Using EtherTalk" (P.217).

## Supported Operating Systems

Connection method		Local connection	Network connection							
Port		USB 2.0	LPD	NetWare		SMB		IPP	Port 9100	Ether Talk
Protocol		-	TCP/IP	TCP/IP	IPX/SPX	Net BEUI	TCP/IP	TCP/IP	TCP/IP	Apple Talk
OS	Windows 2000	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
	Windows XP	O	O	O	O		O	O	O	
	Windows Server 2003	O	O	O	O		O	O	O	
	Windows Server 2008	O	O	O	O		O	O	O	
	Windows Vista	O	O				O	O	O	
	UNIX		O <sup>*2</sup>							
	Macintosh	O <sup>*1,3</sup>	O <sup>*1,3</sup>							O <sup>*1</sup>

\*1: Adobe PostScript 3 Kit (optional) is required.

\*2: Adobe PostScript 3 Kit (optional) and a Unix filter are required to print PostScript data.

\*3: Supports Mac OS 8.6/9.2.2, and Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.10/10.5

For information on network environments, refer to the manual in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

## Installation When Using USB Port

This section describes how to install the machine by using an USB interface.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step 1 Preparations .....	205
Step 2 Configuration on the Machine .....	205
Step 3 Configuration on the Computer .....	206
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items .....	206

### Step 1 Preparations

Prepare the following items to install the machine when using a USB interface.

- USB cable
- CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit (provided with the machine)
- USB port
- Adobe PostScript 3 Kit (optional) - this is required only when using a Macintosh computer

### Step 2 Configuration on the Machine

The following describes the configuration procedure to use a USB interface on the machine. For more information, refer to "USB" (P.112)

**Note** • To print binary data by using a USB interface, set [Adobe Communication Protocol] to [RAW].

The configuration can also be performed using CentreWare Internet Services. For the items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items" (P.206).

#### 1 Display the [Tools] screen.

- 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111".  
• The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3) Select [Tools].

#### 2 Enabling the USB port on the machine.

- 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
- 2) Select [Port Settings].
- 3) Select [USB], and select [Change Settings].
- 4) Select [Port Status], and select [Change Settings].
- 5) Select [Enabled], then select [Save].

#### 3 Configure other USB settings as necessary.

For details, refer to "USB" (P.112)

**4** Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

**5** Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

**6** After the machine is restarted, print a Configuration Report to confirm that the USB port is enabled.

For information on how to print a Configuration Report, refer to "Printer Reports" (P.60).

---

## Step 3 Configuration on the Computer

---

In order to print from the machine, the computer needs to have a print driver installed.

For information on the supported operating systems, refer to "Supported Operating Systems" (P.204).

For information on the print driver installation procedure, refer to the manual contained in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

You can also print from a Macintosh computer using USB if Adobe PostScript 3 Kit (optional) has been installed.

For information on the print driver installation procedure, refer to the manual contained in the CD-ROM provided with the kit.

---

## CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items

---

The items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services are as follows.

For details on features provided by CentreWare Internet Services, click [Help] in this frame to see the help.

For information on how to start CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

- Print page buffer of the USB interface
- Port Settings
- Auto Eject Time
- Adobe Communication Protocol

**Note**      • The Adobe Communication Protocol is set only when optional Adobe PostScript 3 Kit is installed.



## Installation When Using TCP/IP (LPD/Port 9100)

This section describes how to install the machine by using TCP/IP.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step 1 Preparations .....	207
Step 2 Configuration on the Machine .....	207
Step 3 Configuration on the Computer .....	208
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items .....	208

### Step 1 Preparations

Prepare the following items to install the machine when using a TCP/IP (LPD/Port 9100) protocol.

- TCP/IP network environment
- CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit (provided with the machine)
- Adobe PostScript 3 Kit (optional) - this is required only when using a Macintosh computer

### Step 2 Configuration on the Machine

The following describes the configuration procedure to use a TCP/IP (LPD/Port 9100) protocol on the machine. Enable a LPD Port/Port 9100 port, then assign an IP address.

**Note** • The configuration can also be performed using CentreWare Internet Services or IP Address Setting Tool included in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

For the items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items" (P.208).

- 1 Display the [Tools] screen.
  - 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
  - 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].
 

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111".  
• The default passcode is "x-admin".
  - 3) Select [Tools].
- 2 Enable either the LPD port or the Port 9100 port as appropriate. In this example, the LPD port is enabled.
  - 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
  - 2) Select [Port Settings].
  - 3) Select [LPD], and select [Change Settings].
  - 4) Select [Port Status], and select [Change Settings].
  - 5) Select [Enabled], then select [Save].
  - 6) Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.
- 3 Set an IP address and the others.
 

If an IP address is already set, this step is not necessary.

If DHCP or BOOTP is available in your environment, configure the method for obtaining the addresses. The configuration of an IP address, a subnet mask, and a gateway address is not required.

For information on how to set an IP address, refer to "Protocol Settings" (P.115)

- 4** If the operating system on the client is Mac OS X 10.3.9 or later, enable Bonjour port, then the discovery feature that automatically detects printers on the IP network can be enabled.

**Note**

- [Bonjour] can be set when Adobe PostScript 3 Kit is installed.
- In order to print from a printer detected by [Bonjour], the LPD port must be activated in advance.

- 1) Select [Port Settings].
- 2) Select [Bonjour] and then select [Change Settings].
- 3) Select [Port Status] and select [Change Settings].
- 4) Select [Enabled] then select [Save].

- 5** Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

- 6** After the machine is restarted, print a Configuration Report to confirm that the LPD port is enabled and TCP/IP is configured.

For information on how to print a Configuration Report, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

Configure other LPD or Port 9100 settings as necessary. Refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items" (P.208).

## Step 3 Configuration on the Computer

In order to print from the machine, the computer needs to have a print driver installed.

For information on the supported operating systems, refer to "Supported Operating Systems" (P.204).

For information on the driver installation procedure, refer to the manual contained in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

You can also print from a Macintosh using TCP/IP (LPD). You will need optional Adobe PostScript 3 Kit.

Refer to the manual contained in the CD-ROM provided with the kit for the print driver installation procedure.

## CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items

The items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services are as follows.

For details on features provided by CentreWare Internet Services, click [Help] in this frame to see the help.

For information on how to start CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

- Spool Destination for Jobs

**Note**

- The spool destination is set only when LPD port is selected.

- Print page buffer of the Port 9100 interface
- Port Settings
- IP Mode
- Host Name

- IPv4
  - Port Settings
  - IP Address
  - Subnet Mask
  - Gateway Address
- IPv6
  - Enable Manual Address
  - IP Address
  - Link-Local Address
  - Gateway Address
- Domain Name
- DNS Configuration
  - IPv4
  - IPv6
- WINS Server
- Port Number
- TBCP Filter

**Note** • The TBCP filter is set only when optional Adobe PostScript 3 Kit is installed.

- Connection Time-Out
- Maximum Number of Sessions

**Note** • The Maximum Number of Sessions is set only when the LPD port is enabled.

- IP Filtering
  - IPv4
  - IPv6

## Installation When Using NetWare

This section describes how to install the machine by using Netware.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step 1 Preparations.....	210
Step 2 Configuration on the Machine .....	210
Step 3 Configuration on the Computer .....	211
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items .....	212

### Step 1 Preparations

Prepare the following items to install the machine when using a NetWare network.

- NetWare server
- TCP/IP or IPX/SPX network environment
- CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit (provided with the machine)

### Step 2 Configuration on the Machine

The following describes the configuration procedure to connect the machine to a NetWare network.

**Note** • The configuration can also be performed using CentreWare Internet Services or IP Address Setting Tool included in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

For the items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items" (P.212).

#### Using IPX/SPX

- 1 Display the [Tools] screen.
  - 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
  - 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111".  
• The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3) Select [Tools].
- 2 Enable the NetWare port.
  - 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
  - 2) Select [Port Settings].
  - 3) Select [NetWare], and select [Change Settings].
  - 4) Select [Port Status], and select [Change Settings].
  - 5) Select [Enabled], then select [Save].
- 3 Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.
- 4 Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

- 5** After the machine is restarted, print a Configuration Report to confirm that the NetWare port is enabled, and check the NetWare device name and the network address.

For information on how to print a Configuration Report, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

- 6** Configure the machine using the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

Refer to the manual contained in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit for the configuration procedure.

## Using a LPD Port in NDPS

- 1** Display the [Tools] screen.

- 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111". When using the Authentication feature, a passcode may be required. The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3) Select [Tools].

- 2** Enable the LPD port.

- 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
- 2) Select [Port Settings].
- 3) Select [LPD] and then select [Change Settings].
- 4) Select [Port Status] and select [Change Settings].
- 5) Select [Enabled] then select [Save].
- 6) Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

- 3** Set an IP address and the others.

If an IP address is already set, this step is not necessary. If DHCP or BOOTP is available in your environment, configure the method for obtaining the addresses. The configuration of an IP address, a subnet mask, and a gateway address is not required.

For information on how to set an IP address, refer to "Protocol Settings" (P.115).

- 4** Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

- 5** After the machine is restarted, print a Configuration Report to confirm that the LPD port is enabled and TCP/IP is configured.

For information on how to print a Configuration Report, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

Configure other LPD settings as necessary. Refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items" (P.212).

- 6** Configure the machine using the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

Refer to the manual contained in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit for the configuration procedure.

## Step 3 Configuration on the Computer

In order to print from the machine, the computer needs to have a print driver installed.

For information on the supported operating systems, refer to "Supported Operating Systems" (P.204).

For information on the driver installation procedure, refer to the manual contained in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

## CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items

---

The items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services are as follows.  
For details on features provided by CentreWare Internet Services, click [Help] in this frame to see the help.

For information on how to start CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Settings" (P.193).

- Print page buffer of NetWare
- Port Settings
- Frame Type
- Queue Poll Interval
- Host Name
- Password
- Active Mode
- Number of Searches
- TBCP Filter

**Note** • The TBCP filter is set only when optional Adobe PostScript 3 Kit is installed.

- Notification Language
- File Server Name

**Note** • The File Server Name is set only when the operation mode is in Bindery Service.

- NDS Tree
- NDS Context
- SLP Active Discovery

## Installation When Using Microsoft Network (SMB)

This section describes how to install the machine by using Microsoft Network (SMB).

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step 1 Preparations .....	213
Step 2 Configuration on the Machine .....	213
Step 3 Configuration on the Computer .....	214
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items .....	214

### Step 1 Preparations

Prepare the following items to use the machine when using a Microsoft Network (SMB).

- TCP/IP or NetBEUI network environment
- CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit (provided with the machine)

### Step 2 Configuration on the Machine

The following describes the configuration procedure to connect the machine to Microsoft Networks (SMB). First enable the SMB port, then set the TCP/IP settings.

**Note** • The configuration can also be performed using CentreWare Internet Services or IP Address Setting Tool included in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

For the items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items" (P.214).

#### 1 Display the [Tools] screen.

- 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111".  
• The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3) Select [Tools].

#### 2 Enable the SMB port.

- 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
- 2) Select [Port Settings].
- 3) Select [SMB], and select [Change Settings].
- 4) Select [Port Status], and select [Change Settings].
- 5) Select [Enabled], then select [Save].
- 6) Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

#### 3 Set an IP address and the others.

If an IP address is already set, this step is not necessary. If DHCP or BOOTP is available in your environment, configure the method for obtaining the addresses. The configuration of an IP address, a subnet mask, and a gateway address is not required.

For information on how to set an IP address, refer to "Protocol Settings" (P.115).

**4** Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

**5** After the machine is restarted, print a Configuration Report to confirm that the SMB port is enabled and TCP/IP is configured.

For information on how to print a Configuration Report, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

**Note** • If using the NetBEUI protocol, select [NetBEUI] as the protocol used by SMB for the port configuration using CentreWare Internet Services.

**6** Configure other SMB settings as necessary.

Refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items" (P.214).

---

## Step 3 Configuration on the Computer

---

In order to print from the machine, the computer needs to have a print driver installed.

For information on the supported operating systems, refer to "Supported Operating Systems" (P.204).

For information on the driver installation procedure, refer to the manual contained in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

---

## CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items

---

The items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services are as follows.

For details on features provided by CentreWare Internet Services, click [Help] in this frame to see the help.

For information on how to start CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

- Filing Destination
  - Port Settings
  - Transport
  - Maximum Connections
  - Connection Timeout
  - Workgroup
  - SMB Host Name
  - TBCP Filter
- Note** • The TBCP filter is set only when optional Adobe PostScript 3 Kit is installed.
- Unicode Support
  - Auto Master Mode
  - Password Encryption
  - Obtain WINS Server Address Automatically
  - Primary Server IP Address & Port
  - Secondary Server IP Address & Port



## Installation When Using Internet Printing Protocol (IPP)

This section describes how to install the machine by using Internet Printing Protocol (IPP).

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step 1 Preparations .....	215
Step 2 Configuration on the Machine .....	215
Step 3 Configuration on the Computer .....	216
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items .....	216

### Step 1 Preparations

Prepare the following items to install the machine when using a Internet Printing Protocol (IPP).

- TCP/IP network environment
- CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit (provided with the machine)

### Step 2 Configuration on the Machine

The following describes the configuration procedure to enable Internet Printing (IPP) on the machine. First enable the IPP port, then set the TCP/IP.

**Note** • The configuration can also be performed using CentreWare Internet Services or IP Address Setting Tool included in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

For the items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items" (P.216).

#### 1 Display the [Tools] screen.

- 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111".  
• The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3) Select [Tools].

#### 2 Enable the IPP port.

- 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
- 2) Select [Port Settings].
- 3) Select [IPP], and select [Change Settings].
- 4) Select [Port Status], and select [Change Settings].
- 5) Select [Enabled], then select [Save].
- 6) Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

#### 3 Set an IP address and the others.

If an IP address is already set, this step is not necessary. If DHCP or BOOTP is available in your environment, configure the method for obtaining the addresses. The configuration of an IP address, a subnet mask, and a gateway address is not required.

For information on how to set an IP address, refer to "Protocol Settings" (P.115).

**4** Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

**5** After the machine is restarted, print a Configuration Report to confirm that the IPP port is enabled, and that TCP/IP is configured.

For information on how to print a Configuration Report, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

**6** Configure other IPP settings as necessary.

Refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items" (P.216).

### Step 3 Configuration on the Computer

---

In order to print from the machine, the computer needs to have a print driver installed.

For information on the supported operating systems, refer to "Supported Operating Systems" (P.204).

For information on the driver installation procedure, refer to the manual contained in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

### CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items

---

The items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services are as follows.

For details on features provided by CentreWare Internet Services, click [Help] in this frame to see the help.

For information on how to start CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

- Spool Destination for Jobs
- Port Settings
- Added Port Number
- TBCP Filter

**Note** • The TBCP Filter is set only when optional Adobe PostScript 3 Kit is installed.

- Administrator Mode
- DNS
- Connection Time-Out

## Installation When Using EtherTalk

This section describes how to install the machine by using EtherTalk.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step 1 Preparations .....	217
Step 2 Configuration on the Machine .....	217
Step 3 Configuration on the Computer .....	218
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items .....	218

### Step 1 Preparations

Prepare the following items to install the machine when using EtherTalk interface.

- EtherTalk network environment
- Adobe PostScript 3 Kit (optional)

### Step 2 Configuration on the Machine

The following describes the configuration procedure to connect the machine to an EtherTalk network.

The configuration can also be performed using CentreWare Internet Services. For the items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items" (P.218).

- 1** Display the [Tools] screen.
  - 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
  - 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].
 

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].
- Note**
  - The default user ID is "11111".
  - The default passcode is "x-admin".
- 3) Select [Tools].
- 2** Enable the EtherTalk port.
  - 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
  - 2) Select [Port Settings].
  - 3) Select [EtherTalk], and select [Change Settings].
  - 4) Select [Port Status], and select [Change Settings].
  - 5) Select [Enabled], then select [Save].
- 3** Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.
- 4** Select [Close].
 

The machine automatically reboots.
- 5** After the machine is restarted, print a Configuration Report to confirm that the EtherTalk port is enabled.

For information on how to print a Configuration Report, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

Configure other EtherTalk settings as necessary. Refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items" (P.218).

### Step 3 Configuration on the Computer

---

In order to print from the machine, the computer needs to have a print driver installed.

For information on the supported operating systems, refer to "Supported Operating Systems" (P.204).

For information on how to install a print driver, refer to the manual contained in the CD-ROM included in Adobe PostScript 3 Kit (optional).

### CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items

---

The items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services are as follows.

For details on features provided by CentreWare Internet Services, click [Help] in this frame to see the help.

For information on how to start CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

- Print Page Buffer of the AppleTalk interface
- Port Settings
- Printer Name
- Zone Name

# 8 E-mail Environment Settings

This chapter describes the configuration to use the E-mail features on the machine.

**Note** • An optional package is required to use this feature. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

• E-mail Overview.....	220
• Preparations .....	221
• Installation Procedure .....	223

## E-mail Overview

---

The machine is capable of sending and receiving e-mails.

The following features are available by sending and receiving e-mails.

- E-mail
- E-mail Printing
- Consumables Status Notice
- Job Completion Notice

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is required to use this feature. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

### E-mail

Scanned documents can be converted into an electronic format, and transmitted via e-mail.

### E-mail Printing

E-mail with attachments in either TIFF, JPEG, PDF, or XPS format can be sent to the machine from computers. Once the machine receives the e-mail, the machine automatically prints out the attached file.

Contents of e-mail other than its attached file are processed according to the settings specified in [Incoming E-mail Print Options] in CentreWare Internet Services.

### Consumables Status Notice

If you configure settings in [Setup E-mail Notification] of CentreWare Internet Services, the machine sends out e-mail containing consumable information, such as status of consumables, paper, and replaceable parts to a specified recipient. By receiving the statuses of consumables periodically, you can properly determine when to replace toner and drum cartridges.

As for the recipient of these e-mails, it is recommended that you register the address of a network administrator or a shared address.

### Job Completion Notice

When a computer has submitted a print job to the machine, its completion can be notified by e-mail.

Register the address of a network administrator or a shared address as necessary.

## Preparations

The following items must be set up to use the e-mail feature.

### ■ Configuration on the Machine

Item	Description	E-mail		E-mail Printing	Consumables Status Notice	Job Completion Notice
		via SMTP	via POP3			
TCP/IP address	The TCP/IP address for the machine. TCP/IP is used for e-mail.	O	O	O	O	O
Subnet mask	Required when the network is divided into subnets.	△	△	△	△	△
Gateway address	Required when multiple networks are connected by gateways.	△	△	△	△	△
Machine e-mail address	Set the E-mail address for the machine.	O	O	O	O	O
DNS server address	Required when the addresses for a POP3 server and a SMTP server are set with a domain name format instead of their IP addresses. You can also acquire this from DHCP.	△	△	△	△	△
SMTP server address	The machine uses a SMTP server to send e-mails. The SMTP server can also be used for receiving e-mails.	O	O	O	O	O
SMTP AUTH Login Name and password	If an SMTP server requires authentication, specify the authentication user name. Also specify a password as required.	△	△	△	△	△
POP3 server	Set the POP3 server address.	-	O	△	△	△
POP user name and password	Set the POP receiving user address. Also specify a password as required.	-	O	△	△	△
S/MIME settings	Set the S/MIME information.	△	△	△	×	×

O : Necessary to set    △ : Set as required    - : Not required to set    × : Not supported

### ■ Configuration on the Server

Information on server settings, contact your System Administrator.

Item	Description	E-mail		E-mail Printing	Consumables Status Notice	Job Completion Notice
		via SMTP	via POP3			
Machine e-mail address	When using the e-mail feature on the machine, an e-mail account of the machine must be registered to a mail server in advance.	O	O	O	O	O
Host Name	You have to set the host name and domain name of the machine along with the TCP/IP address for the machine to the DNS server.	O	O	△	△	△
Domain Name		O	△	△	△	△



## Installation Procedure

This section describes how to configure the machine to use the E-mail service.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step 1 Enabling Port and Setting TCP/IP.....	223
Step 2 Configuring E-mail Environment .....	224
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items .....	225

### Step 1 Enabling Port and Setting TCP/IP

First enable the E-mail port, then set the IP address.

- Note**
- The configuration can also be performed using CentreWare Internet Services.
  - For the items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Settings" (P.193).

#### 1 Display the [Tools] screen.

- 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

- Note**
- The default user ID is "11111".
  - The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3) Select [Tools].

#### 2 Enable a port which is used for the E-mail feature.

- 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
- 2) Select [Port Settings].
- 3) Select [Send E-mail], and then select [Change Settings].
- 4) Select [Port Status], and select [Change Settings].
- 5) Select [Enabled], then select [Save].
- 6) Select [Close].
- 7) Enable [Receive E-Mail] in the [Receive E-mail - Port Status] screen as above to use E-mail Printing.
- 8) Enable [E-mail Notification Service] in the [E-mail Notification Service - Port Status] screen as above to use mail notice or job completion notice.
- 9) Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

#### 3 Set an IP address and the others.

If an IP address is already set, this step is not necessary. If DHCP or BOOTP is available in your environment, configure the method for obtaining the addresses. If an IP address cannot be obtained automatically, or if manual configuration is preferred, manually enter an IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address.

For information on how to set an IP address, refer to "Protocol Settings" (P.115).

#### 4 Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

- 5** After the machine is restarted, print out a Configuration Report to confirm that the ports are enabled and TCP/IP is configured.

For information on how to print a Configuration Report, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

## Step 2 Configuring E-mail Environment

The following describes the configuration procedure to use the E-mail features.

- Note**
- The configuration can also be performed using CentreWare Internet Services. For the items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items" (P.225).
  - For information on how to use CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

- 1** Display the [Tools] screen.

- 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

- Note**
- The default user ID is "11111".
  - The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3) Select [Tools].

- 2** Set the e-mail address, host name, and domain name.

- 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
- 2) Select [Machine's E-mail Address/Host Name], and set the address and the names.
- 3) Select [Save] and then select [Close].

For information on how to set an e-mail address, refer to "Machine's E-mail Address/Host Name" (P.118).

- 3** Set the protocol for receiving e-mail.

- 1) Select [Other Settings].
- 2) Select [E-mail Receive Protocol] and then select [Change Settings].
- 3) Select either [SMTP] or [POP3] as appropriate for your environment.
- 4) Select [Save] and then select [Close].

- 4** Set the server address for receiving.

- 1) Select [Outgoing/Incoming E-mail Settings].

**■If [SMTP] has been selected for [E-mail Receive Protocol]**

Configure the SMTP server.

For information on how to configure the SMTP server, refer to "SMTP Server Settings" (P.120).

**■If [POP3] has been selected for [E-mail Receive Protocol]**

Configure the POP3 server.

For information on how to configure the POP3 server, refer to "POP3 Server Settings" (P.119).

- 5** Configure the e-mail transmission.

For information on how to configure the e-mail transmission, refer to "SMTP Server Settings" (P.120).

**6** Configure the domain restriction as necessary.

For information on how to configure the domain restriction, refer to "Domain Filtering" (P.121).

**7** Set the S/MIME information.

- 1) Select [Security Settings].
- 2) Select [S/MIME Settings] and set the items.

**8** Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

**9** Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

**10** After the machine is restarted, print a Configuration Report to confirm that each item is configured.

For information on how to print a Configuration Report, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

## CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items

The items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services are as follows.  
For details on features provided by CentreWare Internet Services, click [Help] in this frame to see the help.

For information on how to start CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

- Machine's E-mail Address
- Setup E-mail Notification
- Port Settings
- SMTP Server Settings
- POP3 Server Settings
- Receiving Protocol
- Domain Filtering
- S/MIME Settings



# 9 Scanner Environment Settings

This chapter describes the configuration to use the scan services on the machine.

**Note** • An optional package is required to use this feature. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

• Scan Service Overview.....	228
• Configuration of Scan to Mailbox.....	229
• Configuration of Scan to PC .....	231
• Configuration of Network Scanning (Job Template Scanning) .....	234
• Configuration of Job Flow Sheets.....	236



## Scan Service Overview

The machine is equipped with scanning capabilities.

Scanning capabilities on the machine allows you to use the following features:

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is required to use this feature. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

- E-mail
- Scan to Mailbox
- Network Scanning (Job Template Scanning)
- Scan to PC
- Job Flow Scanning

### ■E-mail

Scanned documents can be converted into electronic data, and transmitted via e-mail. For information on e-mail environment settings, refer to "E-mail Environment Settings" (P.219).

### ■Scan to Mailbox

Scan documents that you want to convert into electronic data. Scanned documents are stored into a mailbox, and can be accessed from any computers on the network.

For information on configuration to use mailboxes, refer to "Configuration of Scan to Mailbox" (P.229).

### ■Network Scanning (Job Template Scanning)

A configuration file defining scanning conditions is called a job template. You can apply a job template to a scanned document on the machine. The scanned document is saved on the machine as a file, and then sent automatically to the computer (server).

For information on the configuration to use job template scanning function, refer to "Configuration of Network Scanning (Job Template Scanning)" (P.234).

### ■Scan to PC

When the machine is connected to a network, scanned data can be stored on network computers using the FTP or SMB protocol.

Scan documents that you want to convert into electronic data. Scanned documents are stored on network computers.

For information on the configuration to use the Scan to PC feature, refer to "Configuration of Scan to PC" (P.231).

### ■Job Flow Scanning

You can perform scanning using a job flow processing a scanned document from a network computer with EasyOperator.

For information on the configuration to use the job flow scanning, refer to "Configuration of Job Flow Sheets" (P.236).

# Configuration of Scan to Mailbox

This section describes how to configure the machine to use the Scan-to-Mailbox service.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step 1 Enabling Port and Setting TCP/IP.....	229
Step 2 Registering a Mailbox.....	230
Step 3 Configuring a Computer .....	230

## Step 1 Enabling Port and Setting TCP/IP

When using Network Scanner Utility3 (Scan Driver and Mailbox Viewer3) and CentreWare EasyOperator (application) provided by Fuji Xerox, enable a WebDAV port and configure an IP address.

When using Network Scanner Utility3 or CentreWare EasyOperator, the WebDAV, SNMP, and SOAP ports need to be enabled.

CentreWare EasyOperator enables to obtain documents stored in a mailbox of the machine without a scan driver.

**Note** • The configuration can also be performed using CentreWare Internet Services.

For information on how to use CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Settings" (P.193).

- 1** Display the [Tools] screen.
- 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
  - 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].
- When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111".  
• The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3) Select [Tools].
- 2** Enable the port.
- 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
  - 2) Select [Port Settings].
  - 3) Select [WebDAV] and then select [Change Settings].
  - 4) Select [Port Status] and select [Change Settings].
  - 5) Select [Enabled] then select [Save].
  - 6) Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.
- 3** Set an IP address and the others.
- If an IP address is already set, this step is not necessary. If DHCP or BOOTP is available in your environment, configure the method for obtaining the addresses. If an IP address cannot be obtained automatically, or if manual configuration is preferred, manually enter an IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address.
- For information on how to set an IP address, refer to "Protocol Settings" (P.115).
- 4** Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

- 5** After the machine is restarted, print out a Configuration Report to confirm that the WebDAV port is enabled and the setting of TCP/IP is configured.

For information on how to print a Configuration Report, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

---

## Step 2 Registering a Mailbox

---

Register a mailbox for storing scanned data.

For information on registering a mailbox, refer to "Create Mailbox" (P.156).

---

## Step 3 Configuring a Computer

---

When using Network Scanner Utility3, install Network Scanner Utility3 on a computer.

Network Scanner Utility3 is stored in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit provided with the machine.

For information on the Network Scanner Utility3 installation procedure, refer to the manual contained in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

When using the Network Scanner Utility3, refer to "10 Computer Operations" in the User Guide.

When using CentreWare EasyOperator, install CentreWare EasyOperator on a computer.

CentreWare EasyOperator is stored in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit provided with the machine.



## Configuration of Scan to PC

This section describes how to configure the machine to use the Scan-to-PC service. The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step 1 Preparations.....	231
Step 2 Enabling Port and Setting TCP/IP.....	231
Step 3 Configuration on a Computer.....	232
CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items .....	233

### Step 1 Preparations

Prepare the following to use the Scan to PC feature.

#### ■Using with FTP

When FTP protocol is used for data transmission, one of the following FTP servers and an account to the FTP server (login name and password) are required.

- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 or Microsoft Windows Vista  
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Server 6.0
- Microsoft Windows 2000 Server, Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional, or Microsoft Windows XP  
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Server 3.0 or later
- Mac OS X  
FTP service of Mac OS X 10.2.X/10.3.8/10.3.9/10.4.2/10.4.4/10.4.8/10.4.9/10.4.10
- Novell NetWare  
FTP service of NetWare 5.11 or 5.12

Refer to the manual provided with the software for how to configure the FTP service.

#### ■Using with SMB

When SMB protocol is used for data transmission, a computer running on the following OS which includes a shared folder function is required.

For Mac OS X, a sharable user account is required on the Mac OS X.

- Microsoft Windows 2000
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003
- Microsoft Windows XP
- Microsoft Windows Vista
- Mac OS X 10.2.x/10.3.x/10.4.x

### Step 2 Enabling Port and Setting TCP/IP

In order to use Scan to PC, enable a port (SMB or FTP client) and set the IP address. The procedure for setting the machine is as follows.

- Note**
- The configuration can also be performed using CentreWare Internet Services.
  - For information on how to use CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Settings" (P.193).

**1** Display the [Tools] screen.

- 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

- Note**
- The default user ID is "11111".
  - The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3) Select [Tools].

**2** Enable the port.**■Using with SMB**

Enable the SMB port.

- 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
- 2) Select [Port Settings].
- 3) Select [SMB] and then select [Change Settings].
- 4) Select [Port Status] and then select [Change Settings].
- 5) Select [Enabled] then select [Save].
- 6) Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

**■Using with FTP**

Enable the FTP port.

- 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
- 2) Select [Port Settings].
- 3) Select [FTP Client] and then select [Change Settings].
- 4) Select [Port Status] and then select [Change Settings].
- 5) Select [Enabled] then select [Save].
- 6) Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

**3** Set an IP address and the others.

If an IP address is already set, this step is not necessary. If DHCP or BOOTP is available in your environment, configure the method for obtaining the addresses. If an IP address cannot be obtained automatically, or if manual configuration is preferred, manually enter an IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address.

For information on how to set an IP address, refer to "Protocol Settings" (P.115).

**4** Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

**5** After the machine is restarted, print out a Configuration Report to confirm that either the SMB port or FTP client port is enabled and the IP addresses are configured.

For information on how to print a Configuration Report, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

## Step 3 Configuration on a Computer

Create a folder for transmission destination on the computer.

- Using with FTP

Create a folder for transmission destination to the server which logs in.

- Using with SMB

Create a folder on the computer and configure it as shared folder.

**Note**      • When using Mac OS X, set [Windows Sharing] to [On] in the [Service] tab of [Sharing] under [System Preferences].

---

## CentreWare Internet Services Setting Items

---

The items that can be configured using CentreWare Internet Services are as follows.  
For details on features provided by CentreWare Internet Services, click [Help] in this frame to see the help.

For information on how to start CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

- Login Credentials to Access the Destination
- User Name for FTP Scan

## Configuration of Network Scanning (Job Template Scanning)

This section describes how to configure the machine to use the Network Scanning service.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step 1 Preparations.....	234
Step 2 Enabling Ports and Setting TCP/IP.....	234
Step 3 Configuring the SNMP Port.....	235
Step 4 Configuration on a Computer .....	235

### Step 1 Preparations

The following environment is required to use the job template scanning function on the machine.

- To use SMB forwarding, your computer must have one of the following operating systems that supports folder sharing.
  - Microsoft Windows NT 4.0
  - Microsoft Windows 2000
  - Microsoft Windows Server 2003
  - Microsoft Windows XP
  - Microsoft Windows Vista

### Step 2 Enabling Ports and Setting TCP/IP

In order to use Network Scanning feature on the machine, enable the ports and set the IP address. The procedure for setting the machine is as follows.

- Note**
- The configuration can also be performed using CentreWare Internet Services.
  - For information on how to use CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Settings" (P.193).

#### 1 Display the [Tools] screen.

- 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

- Note**
- The default user ID is "11111".
  - The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3) Select [Tools].

#### 2 Enable the SNMP port.

- 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
- 2) Select [Port Settings].
- 3) Select [SNMP] and then select [Change Settings].
- 4) Select [Port Status] and select [Change Settings].
- 5) Select [Enabled] then select [Save].
- 6) Select [Close].

7) Enable [Port Status] in the [SMB - Port Status] or [FTP Client - Port Status] screen, and then enable [Internet Services] in the [Internet Services - Port Status] screen as above.

8) Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

### **3** Set an IP address and the others.

If an IP address is already set, this step is not necessary. If DHCP or BOOTP is available in your environment, configure the method for obtaining the addresses. If an IP address cannot be obtained automatically, or if manual configuration is preferred, manually enter an IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address.

For information on how to set an IP address, refer to "Protocol Settings" (P.115).

### **4** Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

### **5** After the machine is restarted, print out a Configuration Report to confirm that the ports are enabled and TCP/IP is configured.

For information on how to print a Configuration Report, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

## **Step 3 Configuring the SNMP Port**

Configure the transport protocol for the SNMP port using CentreWare Internet Services.

### **1** Start CentreWare Internet Services.

For information on how to start CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

### **2** Configure the transport protocol for the SNMP port.

1) Click the [Properties] tab.

2) Click [Connectivity].

3) Click [Port Settings].

4) Select the [UDP] check box under [SNMP].

5) Click [Apply].

6) Enter the system administrator's user ID and passcode into [User Name] and [Password], and click [OK].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111" and the default passcode is "x-admin".

7) The right frame on the web browser will change to the machine reboot display.

8) Click [Reboot Machine]. The machine will reboot and the setting value will be reflected.

## **Step 4 Configuration on a Computer**

For information on how to configure a computer, refer to the online help of CentreWare Internet Services.

## Configuration of Job Flow Sheets

This section describes how to configure the machine to use the Job Flow Sheets service.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step 1 Enabling Ports and Setting TCP/IP .....	236
Step 2 Configuring the SNMP Port.....	237
Step 3 Configuration on the Computer .....	237

### Step 1 Enabling Ports and Setting TCP/IP

In order to use the Job Flow Sheets service, enable the SOAP, SNMP, and Internet Services (HTTP) ports, and then set an IP address and the other addresses. The procedure for setting the machine is as follows.

**Note** • The configuration can also be performed using CentreWare Internet Services.  
For information on how to use CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "CentreWare Internet Services Settings" (P.193).

- 1** Display the [Tools] screen.
    - 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
    - 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].  
When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111".  
• The default passcode is "x-admin".

  - 3) Select [Tools].
- 2** Enable the SOAP port.
  - 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
  - 2) Select [Port Settings].
  - 3) Select [SOAP] and then select [Change Settings].
  - 4) Select [Port Status] and select [Change Settings].
  - 5) Select [Enabled] and then select [Save].
  - 6) Select [Close].
- 3** Enable the SNMP port.
  - 1) Select [SNMP] and then select [Change Settings].
  - 2) Select [Port Status] and select [Change Settings].
  - 3) Select [Enabled] then select [Save].
  - 4) Select [Close].
  - 5) Enable the Internet Services port as above.
  - 6) Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.
- 4** Set an IP address and the others.  
If an IP address is already set, this step is not necessary. If DHCP or BOOTP is available in your environment, configure the method for obtaining the addresses. If an

IP address cannot be obtained automatically, or if manual configuration is preferred, manually enter an IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address.

For information on how to set an IP address, refer to "Protocol Settings" (P.115).

**5** Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

**6** After the machine is restarted, print out a Configuration Report to confirm that the SOAP, SNMP, and Internet Services (HTTP) ports are enabled and the TCP/IP is configured.

For information on how to print a Configuration Report, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

## Step 2 Configuring the SNMP Port

Configure the transport protocol for the SNMP port using CentreWare Internet Services.

**1** Start CentreWare Internet Services.

For information on how to start the CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

**2** Configure the transport protocol for the SNMP.

1) Click the [Properties] tab.

2) Click [Port Settings].

3) Select the [UDP] check box under [SNMP].

4) Click [Apply].

5) Enter the system administrator's user ID and passcode into [User Name] and [Password], and click [OK].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111" and the default passcode is "x-admin".

6) The right frame on the web browser will change to the machine reboot display.

7) Click [Reboot Machine]. The machine will reboot and the setting value will be reflected.

## Step 3 Configuration on the Computer

Create job flows used for scanned documents.

For details on creating job flows, refer to the manual contained in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.





# 10 Using the Internet Fax Service

This chapter describes how to use the Internet Fax service on the machine.

**Note** • This feature does not appear for some models. An optional package is required to use this feature. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

• Internet Fax Overview .....	240
• Preparations .....	240
• Installation Procedure .....	242

## Internet Fax Overview

When the fax feature is enabled and equipped with an optional Internet Fax Kit, the machine can transmit scanned data as an e-mail attachment using either corporate networks or the Internet, unlike conventional fax machines which utilize public phone lines. Also, the machine can receive e-mails transmitted from machines which support the Internet Fax service.

Refer to "4 Fax" > "About Internet Fax" in the User Guide for details of the Internet Fax.

## Preparations

The following describes the necessary conditions to use the Internet Fax on the machine.

### System Requirements for the Machine

- Internet Fax Kit
- The machine is connected to the network, and communication through TCP/IP is available.
- The environment is prepared for e-mail exchange.

### E-Mail Environment

To use the Internet Fax service, the preparation of the following e-mail environment configurations is required.

Item	Description	Internet Fax		Inter-net Fax Direct*
		SMTP	POP3	SMTP
TCP/IP address	TCP/IP address of the machine. TCP/IP protocol is used for the e-mail transmission.	○	○	○
Subnet mask	The subnet mask is required when the network is divided into subnetworks.	△	△	△
Gateway address	The gateway address is required when multiple networks are used through gateways.	△	△	△
System administrator's e-mail address	Configure the e-mail address of the system administrator of the machine.	△	△	△
The machine's e-mail address	The address is shown as the sender when sending an e-mail from the machine.	○	○	○
DNS server address	The address is required when the address of POP3 or SMTP server is set not using IP address but domain name.	△	△	△
SMTP server address	SMTP server is used for e-mail sending from the machine. The SMTP server is also used for e-mail receiving.	○	○	-
SMTP login user	When a certification-required SMTP server is used, configure a user name for authentication.	△	△	-

Item	Description	Internet Fax		Inter-net Fax Direct*
		SMTP	POP3	SMTP
POP3 server	When a POP3 server is used for e-mail receiving, register the machine's e-mail address and a user account to the server. Also, the configuration of the POP3 server's address to the machine is required.	-	O	-
POP user name	Configure the user address for POP receiving.	-	O	-
S/MIME settings	Configure S/MIME.	△	△	△

O : Necessary to set    △ : Set as required    × : Not supported

\* : When the Internet Fax Direct is used, set [Tools] > [Fax Service Settings] > [Internet Fax Control] > [Internet Fax Path] to [Direct (P2P)].

# Installation Procedure

## Installation Overview

This section describes the configuration procedure to use the Internet Fax feature on the machine.

The following shows the reference section for the configuration procedure.

Step 1 Enabling the Port and Setting TCP/IP .....	242
Step 2 Configuring the E-mail Environment .....	243
Step 3 Testing Internet Fax .....	247

## Step 1 Enabling the Port and Setting TCP/IP

First enable the ports for the e-mail feature, then set the IP address. The procedure for setting the machine is as follows.

- Note**
- The configuration can also be performed using CentreWare Internet Services.
  - For information on how to use CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Setting Items Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P.197).

**1** Display the [Tools] screen.

- 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2) Enter the user ID with the numeric keypad, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

- Note**
- The default user ID is "11111".
  - The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3) Select [Tools].

**2** Enable the ports which are used for e-mail.

- 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
- 2) Select [Port Settings].
- 3) Select [Receive E-mail] and then select [Change Settings].
- 4) Select [Port Status] and then select [Change Settings].
- 5) Select [Enabled] and then select [Save].
- 6) Select [Close].
- 7) Enable [Send E-Mail] in the [Send E-Mail - Port Status] screen as above.
- 8) Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

**3** Set the IP address and the others.

If an IP address is already set, this step is not necessary.  
If DHCP or BOOTP is available in your environment, configure the method for obtaining the addresses. If an IP address cannot be obtained automatically, or if manual configuration is preferred, manually enter an IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address.

For information on how to set an IP address, refer to "Protocol Settings" (P.115).

**4** Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

- 5** After the machine is restarted, print out a settings list to confirm that the ports are enabled and TCP/IP is configured.

For information on how to print a settings list, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

## Step 2 Configuring the E-mail Environment

The following describes the configuration procedure for the e-mail environment.

- Note**
- The configuration can also be performed using CentreWare Internet Services.
  - For information on how to use CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

- 1** Display the [Tools] screen.

- 1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2) Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

- Note**
- The default user ID is "11111".
  - The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3) Select [Tools].

- 2** Set an e-mail address, host name, and domain name.

- 1) Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
- 2) Select [Machine's E-mail Address/Host Name].
- 3) Select [E-mail Address] and then select [Change Settings].
- 4) Enter an e-mail address using the keyboard displayed.
- 5) Select [Save].
- 6) Set a host name and a domain name as above.
- 7) Select [Close].

### ■If [SMTP] has been selected for [E-mail Receive Protocol]

Aliases cannot be configured. A user can decide an account name (the left side of the @ mark). An address (the right side of the @ mark) is a combination of a host name and a domain name.

Example: mymail@myhost.example.com

- Account name: mymail
- Host name: myhost
- Domain name: example.com

### ■If [POP3] has been selected for [E-mail Receive Protocol]

Specify a POP user name to an account name (the left side of the @ mark), and a POP3 receiving mail server to an address (the right side of the @ mark). A user can decide an alias such as mymail@example.com.

Example: mymail@myhost.example.com

- Account name: mymail

- 3** Set the protocol for receiving e-mail.

- 1) Select [Other Settings].

- 2) Select [E-mail Receive Protocol] and then select [Change Settings].
- 3) Select either [SMTP] or [POP3] as appropriate for your environment.
- 4) Select [Save], then select [Close].

■ **If [SMTP] has been selected for [E-mail Receive Protocol]**

- 1) Select [Outgoing/Incoming E-mail Settings].
- 2) Select [SMTP Server Settings] and then set the following items for the SMTP server.

- [SMTP Server Port Number]

Enter a value in the range from 1 to 65535.

**Note** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

■ **If [POP3] has been selected for [E-mail Receive Protocol]**

- 1) Select [Outgoing/Incoming E-mail Settings].
- 2) Select [POP3 Server Settings] and set the following items for the POP3 server.

- [POP3 Server Name/IP Address]

Enter an IP address or a server name.

**Note**

- For IPv4, enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.
- For IPv6, enter the address in the format "xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx", where "xxxx" is a hexadecimal value.
- When you make an entry mistake, press the <C> (Clear) button and enter again.
- When moving to the next value without entering all 3 digits, select [Next].

- [POP3 Port Number]

Enter a value in the range from 1 to 65535.

**Note** • Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.

- [POP3 Polling Interval]

Set the interval for checking e-mail on the POP3 server.

- [POP3 Login Name]

Enter the name to login to the POP3 server.

- [POP3 Password]

Enter the same password twice in [New Password] and [Re-enter Password]. If you do not set the password, leave it blank and select [Save].

- [POP Password Encryption]

Select [On (APOP)] to encrypt the password.

- 3) Select [Save].

- 4) Select [Close].

**4** Configure the e-mail transmission

- 1) Select [SMTP Server Settings] and then set the following items for the SMTP server.

- [SMTP Server Name/IP Address]

Enter an IP address or a server name.

**Note** • For IPv4, enter the address in the format "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx", where "xxx" is a numeric value in the range of 0 to 255.

- For IPv6, enter the address in the format "xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx", where "xxxx" is a hexadecimal value.
- When you make an entry mistake, press the <C> (Clear) button and enter again.
- When moving to the next value without entering all 3 digits, select [Next].

• [SMTP Server Port Number]

Enter a value in the range from 1 to 65535.

- Note**
- Do not use the numbers assigned to the other ports.
  - This configuration is not necessary if [SMTP] has been selected for [E-mail Receive Protocol] and has already been configured.

• [E-mail Send Authentication]

Select one from [Off], [POP before SMTP], or [SMTP AUTH].

- Note**
- If [POP before SMTP] has been selected, the POP3 settings must be set.

• [SMTP AUTH Login Name]

Set this item if [SMTP AUTH] has been selected for [E-mail Send Authentication].

• [SMTP AUTH Password]

Set this item if [SMTP AUTH] has been selected for [E-mail Send Authentication]. Enter the same password twice in [New Password/Passcode] and [Retype Password/Passcode]. If you do not set the password, leave it blank and select [Save].

2) Select [Close].

## 5 Configure the Domain filter.

1) Select [Domain Filtering] and set the following items.

- Domain filtering  
Select one from [Off], [Allow Domains], or [Block Domains].
- [Domain 1] - [Domain 50]  
Specify up to 50 domains if either [Allow Domains] or [Block Domains] has been selected for [Domain Filtering].

2) Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

## 6 Set the S/MIME information.

1) Select [Security Settings].

2) Select [S/MIME Settings] and set the following items.

- Device Certificate - S/MIME  
Link a certificate to the machine.

For information on linking a certificate, refer to "Configuration of E-mail Encryption/Digital Signature" (P.263).

- S/MIME Communication  
Set whether to enable or disable S/MIME Communication when a certificate ID is set.
- Receive Untrusted E-mail  
Set whether to receive untrusted e-mail or not.
- Receive Untrusted Internet Fax  
Set whether to receive untrusted Internet Fax or not.
- Message Digest Algorithm  
Select a message digest algorithm from [SHA1] or [MD5].

- Message Encryption Method

Select a contents encryption method from [3DES], [RC2-40], [RC2-64], or [RC2-128].

- Digital Signature - Outgoing E-mail

Set whether to always attach a digital signature to e-mail or select a digital signature when sending e-mail.

- Signature - Outgoing Internet Fax

Set whether to always attach a digital signature to e-mail or select a digital signature when sending Internet Fax.

- Certificate Auto Store

Select whether or not to automatically store a S/MIME certificate attached with the e-mail when receiving e-mail sent from an address registered in the address book.

**7** Select [Close] repeatedly until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

**8** Select [Close].

The machine automatically reboots.

**9** After the machine is restarted, print a settings list to confirm that each item is configured.

For information on how to print a settings list, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).



---

## Step 3 Testing Internet Fax

---

### Send from the Machine to a Computer

Test the Internet Fax transmission from the machine.

- 1** Select [Fax/Internet Fax] on the [All Services] screen to display the [Fax/Internet Fax] screen.
- 2** Select [iFax] from the drop-down menu on the upper left corner on the screen.
- 3** Enter a destination address.
- 4** Press the <Start> button to transmit.
- 5** Check if the computer can receive e-mail.

If the computer could not receive e-mail, refer to "Problem Solving" (P.299).



# 11 Using the Server Fax Service

This chapter describes how to use the Server Fax service on the machine.

**Note** • An optional package is required to use this feature. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

• Server Fax Overview .....	250
• Preparations .....	250
• Installation Procedure .....	251

## Server Fax Overview

---

If your machine supports the scan feature, installing the Server Fax Kit (optional) allows you to use the fax feature of a Server Fax server.

With this Server Fax feature, you can transfer image data received by the machine to the Server Fax server, and can transfer image data received by the Server Fax server to the machine via a network based on the settings you made.

**Important** • While the Fax Server feature is enabled, the Fax feature is detected as "not installed" even if a Fax Kit is installed on the machine. During that time, therefore, fax transmission and reception are disabled and printed reports show that the machine does not support the Fax feature.

**Note** • The Server Fax service cannot be used together with the Fax service or the Internet Fax service.

## Preparations

---

The following describes the conditions necessary to use Server Fax on the machine.

### System Requirements for the Machine

---

- Scanner Kit needs to be installed on the machine.
- Server Fax Kit needs to be installed on the machine.
- The machine needs to be connected to a network and needs to support TCP/IP communication.
- A Server Fax server needs to be installed on the network.

# Installation Procedure

## Installation Overview

This section describes the configuration procedure to use the Server Fax feature on the machine.

The following shows the reference section for the configuration procedure.

Step 1 Fax Settings .....	251
Step 2 Setting the Server Fax Feature .....	252

## Step 1 Fax Settings

If your machine does not support the Fax feature and supports the Server Fax feature only, the Server Fax feature will be enabled automatically.  
If your machine supports both the Fax and Server Fax features, manually switch to the Server Fax feature.

The following procedure explains how to switch to the Server Fax feature on CentreWare Internet Services.

For information on how to use CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Setting Items Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P.197).

**Note** • You can switch to the Server Fax feature also on the machine's Control Panel.

- 1 Start a web browser.
- 2 Enter the machine's IP address or the Internet address into the address box on the browser, and click [Enter].
  - Example of the IP address entry  
http://192.168.1.1/ (IPv4)  
http://[2001:DB8::1234] (IPv6)
  - Example of the Internet address entry  
http://myhost.example.com/
- Note** • When specifying a port number, add ":" and the port number to the end of the Internet address.
- 3 Click the [Properties] tab.
- 4 Click [+] on the left of [Services] to display the items in the folder.
- 5 Click [+] on the left of [Fax] to display the items in the folder.
- 6 Click [Fax Settings].
- 7 On the [Fax Settings] screen, select [Scan to Fax Server] under [Fax Service].
- 8 Reflect the values as the machine's setting values.
  - 1) Click [Apply].
  - 2) The right frame on the web browser will change to the machine reboot display.
  - 3) Click [Reboot Machine]. The machine will reboot and the setting values will be reflected.

## Step 2 Setting the Server Fax Feature

Enable the Server Fax feature and set the file destination. The following procedure explains how to set them on CentreWare Internet Services.

For information on how to use CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Setting Items Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P.197).

- 1** Start a web browser.
- 2** Enter the machine's IP address or the Internet address to the address box on the browser, and click [Enter].
  - Example of the IP address entry  
http://192.168.1.1/ (IPv4)  
http://[2001:DB8::1234] (IPv6)
  - Example of the Internet address entry  
http://myhost.example.com/
- Note**
  - When specifying a port number, add ":" and the port number to the end of the Internet address.
- 3** Click the [Properties] tab.
- 4** Click [+] on the left of [Services] to display the items in the folder.
- 5** Click [+] on the left of [Fax] to display the items in the folder.
- 6** On the tree in the left frame, click [General].
- 7** On the [General] screen, set [Scan File Transfer Report] under [Fax].
- 8** Set [Optional Information] under [Job Log].
- 9** Click [Apply] to reflect the settings.
- 10** On the tree in the left frame, click [Fax Repository Setup].
- 11** On the [Fax Repository Setup] screen, set the items under [Fax Destination].
- 12** Select a protocol.

**Note**

- When [FTP] or [SMB] is selected, faxes will be sent to the destination specified under [File Destination]. When [SMTP] is selected, faxes will be sent to the destination specified in the E-mail settings.

For details on this setting, refer to the CentreWare Internet Services help.

### ■When [FTP] or [SMB] is selected

Set the repository server that is to be used for the Server Fax feature.

- IP Address/Host Name and Port (If the port number is blank, the default port number (FTP:21 or SMB:139) will be used.)
- Share (SMB only)
- Document Path
- Login Name
- Password
- Retype Password

### ■When SMTP is selected

The SMTP server settings are the same as the E-mail settings.

For details on the SMTP server settings, refer to "Step 2 Configuring E-mail Environment" (P.224)

The following settings are additionally required for the SMTP server.

- Domain Name
- E-mail Address Display Format

**13** Click [Apply] to reflect the settings.

For information on how to print a settings list, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).





# 12 Encryption and Digital Signature Settings

This chapter describes how to configure the machine to use the Encryption and Digital Signature features.

- Encryption and Digital Signature Overview .....256
- Configuration of HTTP Communication Encryption .....258
- Configuration of Encryption using IPSec .....260
- Configuration of E-mail Encryption/Digital Signature.....263
- Configuration of PDF/DocuWorks/XPS Signature .....267

## Encryption and Digital Signature Overview

### Encryption Features for Communication

The communication data between the machine and computers on a network can be encrypted.

#### ■ Encryption of the HTTP Communication from a Client to the Machine (SSL/TLS Server)

The SOAP port, Internet Services port, IPP port, and WebDAV port use the HTTP server of the machine.

The SSL/TLS protocol is used to encrypt the HTTP communication from a client to the machine.

Registered certificates or certificates created by CentreWare Internet Service can be used as SSL/TLS certificates used on the SSL/TLS server.

- Note**
- When using certificates that have already been created, import them with CentreWare Internet Services.
  - By enciphering HTTP communication, communication data can be enciphered at the time of printing using IPP (SSL encrypted communication).
  - Certificates created by CentreWare Internet Services are valid for one year.

#### ■ Encryption of the HTTP Communication from the Machine to a Remote Server (SSL/TLS Client)

The SSL/TLS protocol is used to encrypt the HTTP communication with a remote server.

No certificates are required in general. However, if a remote server is set to require a SSL client certificate, an SSL/TLS certificate must be registered from CentreWare Internet Services to the machine.

When verification of server certificates is enabled to verify a remote server, the root certificate of the remote server must be registered from CentreWare Internet Services to the machine to verify the SSL/TLS certificate of the remote server.

- Note**
- When using certificates that have already been created, import them with CentreWare Internet Services.
  - Certificates created by CentreWare Internet Services are valid for one year.

#### ■ Encryption using IPSec

IPSec enables IP-level (not application-level) encryption to communicate with remote devices. If you select [Authenticate by Digital Signature] under [IKE Authentication Method], a certificate for IPSec is required. If you select [Authenticate by Preshared Key], no certificate is required.

- Note**
- If the certificate for IPSec contains the V3 extension "keyUsage", "digitalSignature" must be set to On.

For information on the IKE authentication methods, refer to "IKE Authentication Method" (P.126).

Created certificate can be used as IPSec certificates. If [IKE Authentication Method] is set to [Authenticate by Digital Signature], the CA certificate, which contains the root certificate of the remote device, needs to be registered with the machine so that the machine can verify the certificate of the remote device.

- Note**
- When using certificates that have already been created, import them with CentreWare Internet Services.
  - Certificates created by CentreWare Internet Services are valid for one year.

### ■ E-mail Encryption/Digital Signature

S/MIME is used for E-mail Encryption/Digital Signature. To use S/MIME on the machine, S/MIME certificates are used.

Created certificates can be used as S/MIME certificates.

The certificate for S/MIME must contain "email Address". If the certificate contains V3 extension "keyUsage", "digitalSignature" and "keyEncipherment" must be set to On. Also if the certificate contains v3 extension "extendedKeyUsage", "emailProtection" must be set.

- Note**
- When using certificates that have already been created, import them with CentreWare Internet Services.
  - Certificates created by CentreWare Internet Services are valid for one year.

## Encryption and Digital-Signature Features for Scan Files

### ■ Encryption of PDF/DocuWorks Documents

PDF and DocuWorks documents can be encrypted and protected by password.

For information on how to encrypt PDF and DocuWorks documents, refer to "5 Scan" > "General Settings" > "File Format (Selecting a File Format for Output Data)" in the User Guide.

### ■ Encryption/Digital Signature of PDF/DocuWorks/XPS Documents

Digital signatures are available for PDF, DocuWorks, and XPS documents.

To use digital signature, device certificate is required.

Registered certificates can be used as Device Certificates.

- Important**
- When using certificates that have already been created, import them with CentreWare Internet Services.
  - Certificates created by CentreWare Internet Services are valid for one year.

# Configuration of HTTP Communication Encryption

This section describes how to secure HTTP communication with encryption.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step1 Configuration on the Machine .....	258
Step2 Configuration on a Computer .....	259

## Installation Overview

The following is the procedure for HTTP Communication Encryption.

### ■Configuration on the Machine

Configure a certificate to the machine. No certificate is imported on the machine in the default settings. Import certificates for a SSL server as needed.

- Configuring certificates by CentreWare Internet Services  
Two methods are available depending on types of certificates.
  - Create a self-certificate on the machine, and enable HTTPS.
  - Enable HTTPS, and import a created certificate on the machine.

### ■Configuration on a Computer

When encrypting communication between a web browser and the machine, enter an address beginning with "https" instead of "http" into the address box in the web browser.

## Step1 Configuration on the Machine

Configure a certificate to the machine. No certificate is imported on the machine in the default settings. Import certificates for a SSL server as needed.

This section describes how to create a self-certificate (for SSL server).

For information on how to import created certificates, refer to the CentreWare Internet Services online help.

- Important**
- When performing SSL communication using a self-certificate created on the machine, or a certificate with which the character code is encoded with UTF-8, SSL connection will not be made if Internet Explorer is used with Mac OS X v10.2 or later.  
This is because the operating system cannot recognize the character code (UTF-8) of the certificate. Use Netscape 7 in the above-mentioned OS environments.
  - When importing a certificate, if the same certificate has been already registered in [Local Device] or [Others], the certificate cannot be imported. Delete the registered certificate before importing.

### 1 Start CentreWare Internet Services.

Refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

### 2 Generate a certificate.

- 1) Click the [Properties] tab.
- 2) Click [+] on the left of [Security] to display the items in the folder.
- 3) Click [Machine Digital Certificate Management].
- 4) Click the [Create New Self Signed Certificate] button.
- 5) Set [Public Key Size] as necessary.

- 6) Set [Issuer] as necessary.
- 7) Click the [Generate Certificate] button. When a screen to enter the user name and passcode appears, enter the system administrator's user ID and passcode into [User Name] and [Password], and then click [OK].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111" and the default passcode is "x-admin".

- 8) Refresh the web browser.

### **3** Set the SSL/TLS information.

- 1) Click [+] on the left of [Security] to display the items in the folder.
- 2) Click [SSL/TLS Settings].
- 3) Select the [Enabled] check box for [HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication].
- 4) Set [HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication Port Number].

**Note** • Do not use the numbers of any other ports.

- 5) Click [Apply].
- 6) When the right frame on the web browser will change to the machine reboot display, click [Reboot Machine]. The machine will reboot and the setting values will be reflected.

## **Step2 Configuration on a Computer**

When encrypting communication between a web browser and the machine, enter an address beginning with "https" instead of "http" into the address box in the web browser.

- Example of the IP address entry  
 https://192.168.1.1/ (IPv4)  
 https://[2001:DB8::1234/ (IPv6)
- Example of the Internet address entry  
 https://myhost.example.com

When encrypting the IPP communication (Internet printing), enter an address beginning with "https" instead of "http" as the URL of a printer that is selected from [Add Printer] in order to add a printer.

For detail information on the settings, refer to the manual in the CD-ROM of the Driver CD Kit.

## Configuration of Encryption using IPSec

This section describes how to encrypt communication using IPSec.

When the IKE authentication method is set to [Authenticate by Preshared Key], skip step 1 "Import and Configuration a Certificate" and go to step 2 "Configuration on the Machine (Configuration of IPSec)".

For the available IKE authentication methods, refer to "IKE Authentication Method" (P.126).

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step1 Import and Configuration of a Certificate .....	260
Step2 Configuration on the Machine (Configuration of IPSec) .....	261
Step3 Configuration on a Computer .....	262

### Installation Overview

The following is the procedure for encrypting communication using IPSec.

#### ■Configuration on the Machine

When [IKE Authentication Method] is set to [Authenticate by Digital Signature], a certificate for IPSec needs to be imported into the machine. After importing a certificate, configure IPSec. By default, no certificate is registered with the machine.

- Configuring certificates by CentreWare Internet Services
- Two methods are available depending on types of certificates.
  - Create a self-certificate on the machine, and enable HTTPS.
  - Enable HTTPS, and import a created certificate on the machine.

**Note** • If a certificate to be imported as an IPSec certificate contains V3 extension "KeyUsage", "digitalSignature" must be set to On.

#### ■Configuration on a Computer

The following settings are required on a computer.

- Create an IP security policy
- Assign the IP security policy

### Step1 Import and Configuration of a Certificate

The following explains how to import and configure a certificate with CentreWare Internet Services.

To configure a certificate on CentreWare Internet Services, first configure the encryption settings for HTTP communication, and then import a certificate to use as a scan file signature certificate.

For details on how to configure the encryption settings for HTTP communication, refer to "Configuration of HTTP Communication Encryption" (P.258).

#### 1 Start CentreWare Internet Services.

Refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

#### 2 Import a certificate.

**Important** • When a certificate is to be imported, if the same certificate has been already registered in [Local Device] or [Others], the certificate cannot be imported. Delete the registered certificate before importing.

- If the certificate to be imported contains the V3 extension "keyUsage", "digitalSignature" must be set to On.

- 1) Click the [Properties] tab.
- 2) Click [+] on the left of [Security] to display the items in the folder.
- 3) Click [Machine Digital Certificate Management].
- 4) Click [Upload Signed Certificate].
- 5) Enter [Password].
- 6) Enter [Retype Password].
- 7) Enter a file name you want to import. Or select a file to be imported from a dialog box displayed by clicking the [Browse] button and then click [Open].
- 8) Click the [Import] button. When a screen to enter the user name and passcode appears, enter the system administrator's user ID and passcode into [User Name] and [Password], and then click [OK].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111" and the default passcode is "x-admin".

- 9) Refresh the web browser.

**3** Click [+] on the left of [Security] to display the items in the folder.

**4** Configure the certificate.

- 1) Click [Certificate Management].
- 2) Select [Local Device] for [Category], [IPSec] for [Certificate Purpose], and then click the [Display the List] button.
- 3) Select the certificate to be set.
- 4) Click the [Certificate Details] button.
- 5) Click the [Use this certificate] button.
- 6) Click [Reboot Machine]. The machine will reboot and the setting values will be reflected.

## Step2 Configuration on the Machine (Configuration of IPSec)

The following explains how to configure IPSec on the Machine.

- 1** Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2** Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111".  
• The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3** Select [Tools].
- 4** Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].
- 5** Select [Security Settings].
- 6** Select [IPSec Settings].
- 7** Configure the required settings.

For details on the settings, refer to "IPSec Settings" (P.126).

**8** Select [Close].

---

### Step3 Configuration on a Computer

---

The following describes the configuration for the computer.

Configure the following on the computer.

- Create an IP security policy
- Assign the IP security policy



## Configuration of E-mail Encryption/Digital Signature

This section describes how to encrypt e-mails and how to attach a digital signature to e-mails.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step1 Configuration on the Machine .....	263
Step2 Configuration on a Computer.....	265

### Installation Overview

The following is the procedure for E-mail Encryption/Digital Signature.

- Note**
- Configure the following on the certificate for S/MIME:
    - "emailAddress"
    - If the certificate contains V3 extension "keyUsage", "digitalSignature" and "keyEncipherment" must be set to On.
    - If the certificate contains V3 extension "extendedKeyUsage", "emailProtection" must be set.

#### ■ Configuration on the Machine

Configure a certificate to the machine. No certificate is imported on the machine in the default settings.

The following is the method to set a certificate.

- Configuring certificates by CentreWare Internet Services  
Encrypt HTTP communication first, then configure the certificate to the machine.

#### ■ Configuration on a Computer

Prepare a certificate that is suitable for E-mail Encryption/Digital Signature.

### Step1 Configuration on the Machine

To configure certificates by CentreWare Internet Services, first encrypt HTTP communication, import a created certificate to the machine, and then enable S/MIME. For information on the settings for encrypting HTTP communication, refer to "Configuration of HTTP Communication Encryption" (P.258)

- Note**
- Configure the following on the certificate for S/MIME:
    - "emailAddress"
    - If the certificate contains V3 extension "keyUsage", "digitalSignature" and "keyEncipherment" must be set to On.
    - If the certificate contains V3 extension "extendedKeyUsage", "emailProtection" must be set.

#### 1 Start CentreWare Internet Services.

Refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

#### 2 Import a certificate.

- Note**
- When importing a certificate, if the same certificate has been already registered in [Local Device] or [Others], the certificate cannot be imported. Delete the registered certificate before importing.

- 1) Click the [Properties] tab.
- 2) Confirm that [Machine's E-mail Address] of [Description] is filled.
- 3) Click [+] on the left of [Security] to display the items in the folder.

- 4) Click [Machine Digital Certificate Management].
- 5) Click [Upload Signed Certificate].
- 6) Enter [Password].
- 7) Enter [Retype Password].
- 8) Enter a file name you want to import. Or select a file to be imported from a dialog box displayed by clicking the [Browse] button and then click [Open].
- 9) Click the [Import] button. When a screen to enter the user name and passcode appears, enter the system administrator's user ID and passcode into [User Name] and [Password], and then click [OK].

**Note**

- The default user ID is "11111".
- The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 10) Refresh the web browser.

### 3 Configure the certificate.

**Note** • For DocuCentre series models, this step is not necessary.

- 1) Click [+] on the left of [Security] to display the items in the folder.
- 2) Click [Certificate Management].
- 3) Select [Local Device] for [Category], [S/MIME] for [Certificate Purpose], and then click the [Display the List] button.
- 4) Select the owner of the certificate to be set.
- 5) Click the [Certificate Details] button.
- 6) Click the [Use this Certificate] button.
- 7) Click [Reboot Machine]. The machine will reboot and the setting values will be reflected.
- 8) Refresh the web browser.

### 4 Enable [S/MIME Communication].

- 1) Click [+] on the left of [Security] to display the items in the folder.
- 2) Click [SSL/TLS Settings].
- 3) Select the [Enabled] check box for [S/MIME Communication].
- 4) Click [Apply].
- 5) When the right frame on the web browser will change to the machine reboot display, click [Reboot Machine]. The machine will reboot and the setting values will be reflected.
- 6) Refresh the web browser.

### 5 Configure the settings for S/MIME.

**Note** • For DocuCentre series models, this step is not necessary.

- 1) Click [+] on the left of [Security] to display the items in the folder.
- 2) Click [S/MIME Settings] and set the following items.
  - Message Digest Algorithm  
Select a message digest algorithm from [SHA1] or [MD5].
  - Message Encryption Method  
Select the e-mail content encryption method from [3DES], [RC2-40], [RC2-64], or [RC2-128] when sending an e-mail from the machine.

- **Certificate Auto Store**  
Select whether to automatically store the certificate when receiving e-mail with a S/MIME certificate sent from an address registered in the address book.
  - **Receive Untrusted E-mail**  
Set whether or not to receive untrusted e-mail with no certificate attached.
  - **Digital Signature - Outgoing E-mail**  
Set whether to always attach a digital signature to e-mail or to select a digital signature when sending e-mail from this machine.
- 3) Click [Apply] button.

## Step2 Configuration on a Computer

The following describes the configuration for a computer.

- Note**
- Configure the following on the certificate for S/MIME:
    - "emailAddress"
    - If the certificate contains V3 extension "keyUsage", "digitalSignature" and "keyEncipherment" must be set to On.
    - If the certificate contains V3 extension "extendedKeyUsage", "emailProtection" must be set.

### ■ Sending scanned data by S/MIME encrypted e-mail from the machine to a computer

It is necessary to register a personal certificate of a sender's e-mail address on the machine.

When registering a personal certificate on the machine, a root certificate should be included in the personal certificate.

For information on how to import a certificate, refer to the CentreWare Internet Services online help.

### ■ Sending e-mail with S/MIME digital signature from the machine to a computer

No settings are required on a recipient computer.

### ■ Sending S/MIME encrypted e-mail by e-mail printing from a computer to the machine

It is necessary to register a S/MIME certificate of the machine on the computer.

There are two methods to set a S/MIME certificate of the machine to the computer:

- **Sending e-mail with S/MIME digital signature from the machine to the computer**  
To send e-mail with a S/MIME digital signature from the machine, configure to attach digital signature when sending e-mail in the [Digital Signature - Outgoing E-mail] settings.
- **Exporting a S/MIME certificate to the computer using CentreWare Internet Services and registering the exported S/MIME certificate in a certificate store of an e-mail application**

For information on how to export a certificate, refer to the CentreWare Internet Services online help.

For information on how to register a certificate in an e-mail application, refer to manuals provided with the application.

### ■ Sending e-mail with S/MIME digital signature from a computer to the machine

It is necessary to register a personal certificate of a sender's e-mail address, an intermediate certificate authority certificate of the personal certificate, and a root certificate to the machine.

For information on how to import a certificate, refer to the CentreWare Internet Services online help.

■ **Supported e-mail applications**

E-mail applications that can send and receive e-mail to and from the machine are as follows:

- Outlook 2000/2002/2003
- Outlook Express 6
- Netscape 7.x

# Configuration of PDF/DocuWorks/XPS Signature

This section describes how to attach a digital signature to PDF, DocuWorks, or XPS documents.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step1 Configuration on the Machine .....	267
Step2 Configuration on a Computer.....	269

## Installation Overview

Use the following procedure to affix a signature (PDF signature/DocuWorks signature/XPS signature) to a scanned document to send as a PDF, DocuWorks, or XPS document.

### ■ Configuration on the Machine

Register a certificate to the machine. No certificate is imported on the machine in the default settings.

The following is the method to set a certificate.

- Configuring certificates by CentreWare Internet Services  
Encrypt HTTP communication first, then configure the certificate to the machine.

### ■ Configuration on a Computer

- Sending a DocuWorks security certificate file from the machine to a computer  
It is necessary to register a personal certificate of a person to whom the data is disclosed on the machine, and then register the certificate to the address book.  
When registering a personal certificate on the machine, the root certificate should be included in the personal certificate.  
For information on how to import a certificate, refer to the CentreWare Internet Services online help.
- Sending a PDF, DocuWorks, or XPS signature file from the machine to a computer  
Confirm if the root certificate of the certificate for the scan file signature of the machine is registered on the recipient's computer.

## Step1 Configuration on the Machine

To configure certificates by CentreWare Internet Services, first encrypt HTTP communication, import a created certificate to the machine, and then set it as scan file certificate.

For information on the settings for encrypting HTTP communication, refer to "Configuration of HTTP Communication Encryption" (P.258).

### 1 Start CentreWare Internet Services.

Refer to "Starting CentreWare Internet Services" (P.196).

### 2 Import a certificate.

**Important** • When importing a certificate, if the same certificate has been already registered in [Local Device] or [Others], the certificate cannot be imported. Delete the registered certificate before importing.

- 1) Click the [Properties] tab.

- 2) Click [+] on the left of [Security] to display the items in the folder.
- 3) Click [Machine Digital Certificate Management].
- 4) Click [Upload Signed Certificate].
- 5) Enter [Password].
- 6) Enter [Retype Password]
- 7) Enter a file name you want to import. Or select a file to be imported from a dialog box displayed by clicking the [Browse] button and then click [Open].
- 8) Click the [Import] button. When a screen to enter the user name and passcode appears, enter the system administrator's user ID and passcode into [User Name] and [Password], and then click [OK].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111" and the default passcode is "x-admin".

- 9) Refresh the web browser.

### **3** Click [+] on the left of [Security] to display the items in the folder.

### **4** Configure the certificate.

- 1) Click [Certificate Management].
- 2) Select [Local Device] for [Category], [Scan File] for [Certificate Purpose], and then click the [Display the List] button.
- 3) Select the owner of the certificate to be set.
- 4) Click the [Certificate Details] button.
- 5) Click the [Use this certificate] button.
- 6) Click [Reboot Machine]. The machine will reboot and the setting values will be reflected.

### **5** Configure the settings for PDF Signature/DocuWorks Signature/XPS Signature.

- 1) Refresh the web browser.
- 2) Click [+] on the left of [Security] to display the items in the folder.
- 3) Click [PDF/DocuWorks/XPS Security Settings] and then set the following items.
  - DocuWorks Signature  
Select the setting for DocuWorks Signature from [Do not add signature], [Always add signature], or [Select during send].
  - PDF Signature  
Select the setting for PDF Signature from [Do not add signature], [Always add visible signature], [Always add invisible signature], or [Select during send].
  - XPS Signature  
Select the setting for XPS Signature from [Do not add signature], [Always add signature], or [Select during send].
- 4) Click [Apply].

## Step2 Configuration on a Computer

---

- Sending a DocuWorks security certificate file from the machine to a computer

It is necessary to register a personal certificate of a person to whom the data is disclosed on the machine, and then register the certificate to the address book.

When registering a personal certificate on the machine, the root certificate should be included in the personal certificate.

For information on how to import a certificate, refer to the CentreWare Internet Services online help.

- Sending a PDF, DocuWorks, or XPS signature file from the machine to a computer

Confirm if the root certificate of the certificate for the scan file signature of the machine is registered on the recipient's computer.





# 13 Authentication and Account Administration

The machine has a unique Authentication feature that restricts the ability to use functions, and an Account Administration feature that manages the use of each machine feature.

This chapter contains information for System Administrators on the features used to change the settings and on the setting procedures.

- Overview of Authentication and Account Administration .....272
- Authentication .....274
- Services Controlled by Authentication .....278
- Authentication for Job Flow Sheets and Mailboxes .....281
- Jobs Manageable by Account Administration .....289
- Configuration for Authentication .....292
- Configuration for Account Administration .....296

# Overview of Authentication and Account Administration

This section is an overview of Authentication and Account Administration used with the machine.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Overview of Authentication.....	272
Overview of Account Administration.....	273

## Overview of Authentication

### ■Types of Users

The types of machine users include the System Administrator, authenticated users and general users.

For more details, refer to "Users Controlled by Authentication" (P.274).

### ■User Role/Authorization Group

Allows you to assign a user role and an authorization group to each user.

When users are assigned [System Administrator] in [User Role], for example, they have almost the same privileges as the System Administrator.

For more details, refer to "User Role and Authorization Groups" (P.274).

### ■Types of Authentication

The machine supports two authentication types. [Login to Local Accounts] authenticates users based on the user information registered with the machine. [Login to Remote Accounts] authenticates users based on the user information registered with a remote server.

For more details, refer to "Types of Authentication" (P.275).

**Note**      • The available remote servers are LDAP, Kerberos, and SMB servers.

### ■Access Control

- Allows you to verify users when they use a button on the Control Panel.

For more details, refer to "Device Access" (P.181).

- Allows you to verify users when they access a service such as Copy, Fax, and Scan-to-Mailbox.

For more details, refer to "Service Access" (P.181).

- Allows you to verify users when they retrieve documents stored in mailboxes.

For more details, refer to "Feature Access" (P.182).

### ■Feature Access / Account Limit for Each User

- Allows you to limit access to each service and to set the maximum number of pages allowed for the service.

For more details, refer to "Services Controlled by Authentication" (P.278).

- Allows you limit creating/editing/using job flow sheets and mailboxes.

For more details, refer to "Authentication for Job Flow Sheets and Mailboxes" (P.281).

## Overview of Account Administration

---

### ■Types of Account Administration

The machine supports three types of account administration: Local Accounting, Network Accounting, and Xerox Standard Accounting.

For more details, refer to "Types of Account Administration" (P.276).

### ■Available Combinations of Authentication and Account-Administration Types

The authentication and account-administration types can be individually selected, but some combinations are not available.

For more details, refer to "Relationships Between the Authentication and Accounting Modes" (P.277).

# Authentication

This section is the Authentication feature used with the machine.

Users Controlled by Authentication.....	274
User Role and Authorization Groups.....	274
Types of Authentication.....	275
Types of Account Administration.....	276
Relationships Between the Authentication and Accounting Modes.....	277

## Users Controlled by Authentication

The following explains the types of users controlled with the Authentication feature.

User information can be registered with the machine.

Users are classified into the following four types. The Authentication feature restricts operations according to the user type.

■System Administrators

These are users who can register and change system settings.

A system administrator uses a specific user ID called System Administrator ID.

To enter the System Administration mode, type the System Administrator ID into the user ID entry field on the authentication screen.

■Authenticated Users

These are users who are registered on the machine or a remote server.

When using a restricted service, an authenticated user is prompted to type the user ID and passcode on the authentication screen.

**Note** • Users who are assigned the System Administrator privileges in the User Role setting have almost the same privileges as the System Administrator. For more details, refer to "User Role and Authorization Groups" (P.274).

■Unauthenticated Users

These are users who are not registered.

An unauthenticated user cannot use restricted services.

■General Users

These are users other than system administrators when the machine is not in the authentication mode.

## User Role and Authorization Groups

You can select a user role and an authorization group for each user registered with the machine.

**Important** • When the authentication type is [Login to Local Accounts] and the accounting type is [Network Accounting], the authorization group cannot be assigned to a user. Therefore, the features configured for the authorization group, such as the feature to temporarily disable force-printing, are not available.

### User Role

The following three user-role types are available.

- User (general user)

- System Administrator
- Account Administrator

For details on each user role, refer to "User Role" (P.184).

## Authorization Groups

The following four settings can be configured for each authorization group.

For details on authorization groups, refer to "Create Authorization Groups" (P.185).

### ■ Restrict Recipient Selection Method

Allows you to set whether or not to permit the group members to specify recipients using the keyboard screen and buttons on the control panel, when [Restrict Recipient Selection Method] is set to [Only From Address Book].

For details on the [Restrict Recipient Selection Method] setting, refer to "Restrict Recipient Selection Method" (P.105).

### ■ Restrict User to Edit Address Book

Allows you to set whether or not to permit the group members to edit Address Book when general users are prohibited editing Address Book.

For details on the [Restrict User to Edit Address Book] setting, refer to "Restrict User to Edit Address Book" (P.105).

### ■ Allow user to disable active settings

Allows you to set whether to permit the group members to disable the Watermark feature during their user session, when [Allow User to Disable Active Settings] in [Authentication/Security Settings] is set to [Enable Active Settings].

For information on [Allow User to Disable Active Settings], refer to "Allow User to Disable Active Settings" (P.189).

## Types of Authentication

The following describes the types of authentication available on the machine.

Authentication is carried out using user information registered on the machine or user information registered on a remote accounting server.

The following two different authentication methods are offered according to the registration condition of user information.

### ■ Local machine authentication (Login to Local Accounts)

Local machine authentication uses the user information registered on the machine to manage authentication.

The print from a computer can be received on the machine after being authenticated by cross-checking the authentication information pre-configured on a client's driver with that registered on the machine.

For information on configuring driver, refer to the online help provided for the driver.

### ■ Remote authentication (Login to Remote Accounts)

Remote authentication uses a remote authentication server (LDAP, Kerberos, or SMB server), and authenticates users based on the user information managed on the server. User information cannot be registered on the machine.

**Important** • When registering user information on a remote authentication server, use up to 32 characters for a user ID and up to 128 characters for a password. Note, however, that up to 32 characters are allowed for an SMB authentication password.

## Types of Account Administration

The following describes the types of account administration available on the machine.

**Note** • Some accounting types may be grayed out and not selectable depending on the authentication type enabled. For details, refer to "Relationships Between the Authentication and Accounting Modes" (P.277).

The Account Administration feature is classified into the following four types:

### ■Local Accounting

Local accounting performs account administration on the machine.

Account Administration is carried out based on the authenticated user information pre-registered on the machine, using a variety of counters automatically created for each user. To print Auditron reports, you must be authenticated as the System Administrator, as a user who is assigned the System Administrator privileges, or as a user who is assigned the Account Administrator privileges.

For information on the types of jobs that can be the targets of account administration, refer to "Jobs Manageable by Account Administration" (P.289).

For information on how to print reports, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

### ■Network Accounting

Account administration is carried out based on user information managed by a remote service.

The remote service collects job data and counts up the numbers of pages processed for each service for each user.

User information managed by the remote service is sent to be registered on the machine. When the user information on the remote service is updated, the updated information must be sent from the remote service to the machine.

Remote services supported by the machine includes ApeosWare EasyAdmin (optional).

### ■Xerox Standard Accounting

Account administration is carried out based on the user information and account information pre-registered on the machine. Account Administration uses each counter created automatically for individual users. Auditron reports are created in CSV format using CentreWare Internet Services. For information on the print driver settings, refer to the online help of the driver. For information on the user information settings, account information settings, and how to create a report, refer to CentreWare Internet Services.

**Important** • When setting the user information or account information for another DocuCentre-III 3007/2007, it is recommended to use the Cloning feature of CentreWare Internet Services.

## Relationships Between the Authentication and Accounting Modes

You can individually select Authentication and Accounting types. The valid combinations are as follows.

		Accounting Mode			
		Off	Local	Network	Xerox Standard Accounting
Authentication Mode	Off	O <sup>*1</sup>	X	O	O
	Local	X	O <sup>*1</sup>	O	O
	Remote	O	X	X	X

O Available

X Not available

\*1 Default

## Services Controlled by Authentication

This section describes the features that are controlled by using the Authentication feature.

The controlled features are different depending on how the machine is used.

For information on the mailbox and job flow sheet restrictions that are applied when the Authentication feature is enabled, refer to "Authentication for Job Flow Sheets and Mailboxes" (P.281).

Overview .....	278
Services Controlled by Authentication and Account Administration.....	278

### Overview

The services can be controlled as follows.

Some restrictions can be set for each user, and some restrictions can be set for the device as a whole.

Refer to "Account Limit" (P.183) for details on the restrictions that can be set for each user and refer to "Service Access" (P.181) for details on the restrictions that can be set for the device as a whole.

### Services Controlled by Authentication and Account Administration

The services controlled by authentication and account administration depend on the combination of the selected Authentication and Accounting types.

**When the authentication type is [Login to Local Accounts] and the accounting type is [Local Accounting]**

The following services are controlled.

Corresponding Service	Authentica- tion <sup>*1</sup>	Restrictions on Use		Per-user Usage Count
	User ID	Feature restrictions <sup>*2</sup>	Account Limit <sup>*3</sup>	
Copy	O	O	O	O
Print	O	O	O	O
Charge Print, Private Charge Print	O	O	O	O
Scan Service	O	O	O	O
Fax, Internet Fax	O	O	-	O
Direct Fax	O		-	O
Report/List	-	-	-	-

<sup>\*1</sup> This column shows whether authentication is required for each service. "O" indicates that authentication is required.

<sup>\*2</sup> You can select features available for each user. For more information, refer to "Account Limit" (P.183).

<sup>\*3</sup> This feature stops further machine operation if the number of pages has reached the specified maximum number. For more information, refer to "Account Limit" (P.183).



## When the authentication type is [Login to Local Accounts] and the accounting type is [Network Accounting]

The following services are controlled.

For features supported by ApeosWare Accounting Service (optional), refer to the documentation provided with it.

Corresponding Service	Authentica- tion <sup>*1</sup>	Restrictions on Use		Per-user Usage Count
	User ID	Feature restrictions <sup>*2</sup>	Account Limit <sup>*3</sup>	
Copy	O	O	-	-
Print	O	O	-	-
Charge Print, Private Charge Print	O	O	-	-
Scan Service	O	O	-	-
Fax, Internet Fax	O	O	-	-
Direct Fax	O		-	-
Report/List	-	-	-	-

<sup>\*1</sup> This column shows whether authentication is required for each service. "O" indicates that authentication is required.

<sup>\*2</sup> You can select features available for each user. The settings can be made with the remote service.

<sup>\*3</sup> This feature stops further machine operation if the number of pages has reached the specified maximum number. The settings can be made with the remote service.

## When the authentication type is [Login to Remote Accounts]

When the remote authentication is used, the account administration information can be managed with ApeosWare Accounting Service (optional).

For information on ApeosWare Accounting Service (optional), refer to the documentation provided with it.

The following services are controlled.

Corresponding Service	Authentica- tion <sup>*1</sup>	Restrictions on Use		Per-user Usage Count
	User ID	Feature restrictions	Account Limit	
Copy	O	-	-	-
Print	-	-	-	-
Charge Print, Private Charge Print	O	-	-	-
Scan Service	O	-	-	-
Fax, Internet Fax	O	-	-	-
Direct Fax	- <sup>*2</sup>		-	-
Report/List	-	-	-	-

<sup>\*1</sup> This column shows whether authentication is required for each service. "O" indicates that authentication is required.

<sup>\*2</sup> When the authentication type is [Login to Remote Accounts] and the accounting type is [Network Accounting], Direct Fax feature cannot be restricted. To configure the Direct Fax feature disabled, refer to "Direct Fax" (P.145).

**Important** • Note the following when you use ApeosWare Accounting Service to perform account administration:

- When users are registered with multiple domains, each user ID must be unique.
- Before a user prints a document on a computer, the user needs to log in from the computer to the remote server to have the server identify the user ID.

**When the authentication type is [Login to Local Accounts] and the accounting type is [Xerox Standard Accounting]**

The following services are controlled.

Corresponding Service	Authentica- tion <sup>*1</sup>	Restrictions on Use		Per-user Usage Count
	User ID	Feature restrictions <sup>*2</sup>	Account Limit <sup>*3</sup>	
Copy	O	O	O	O
Print	O	O	O	O
Charge Print, Private Charge Print	O	O	O	O
Scan Service	O	O	O	O
Fax, Internet Fax	O	O	-	O
Direct Fax	O		-	O
Report/List	-	-	-	-

<sup>\*1</sup> This column shows whether authentication is required for each service. "O" indicates that authentication is required.

<sup>\*2</sup> You can select features available for each user. For more information, refer to the CentreWare Internet Services online help.

<sup>\*3</sup> This feature stops further machine operation if the number of pages has reached the specified maximum number. For more information, refer to the CentreWare Internet Services online help.

# Authentication for Job Flow Sheets and Mailboxes

This section describes job flow sheet and mailbox restrictions that are applied when the Authentication feature is enabled.

Overview .....	281
When the Authentication Feature is not Enabled.....	283
When the Authentication Feature is Enabled.....	286

## Overview

### Job Flow Sheet Types and Overview

You can create job flow sheets for mailbox operations on the machine. Job flow sheets for scanner operations can be created on a network-connected computer using software such as EasyOperator.

The job flow sheets created on a network-connected computer cannot be edited or copied on the machine.

The following four types of job flow sheets are available for the machine.

■General Shared Job Flow Sheet

This is a job flow sheet created on the [Create Job Flow Sheet] screen by a general user when the Authentication feature is disabled.

When the Authentication feature is disabled, this type of job flow sheet can be shared and its settings can be changed by any machine user.

When the Authentication feature is enabled, this type of job flow sheet can only be handled by a system administrator.

■Mailbox Job Flow Sheet

This is a job flow sheet created by a general user or a system administrator on the [Create Mailbox] or [Send from Mailbox] screen when the Authentication feature is disabled.

The owner of the job flow sheet is the "mailbox" it was created from. For example, the owner of a job flow sheet created in Mailbox 001 will be "Mailbox 001", and the job flow sheet can be used only in Mailbox 001.

Any users who have access to the mailbox upon the job flow sheet creation can use the job flow and change its settings.

This job flow sheet can be used by any machine users when the Authentication feature is disabled. When the Authentication feature is enabled, this job flow sheet can be handled only by the system administrator.

■Personal Job Flow Sheet

This is a job flow sheet created by an authenticated user when the Authentication feature is enabled.

When the Authentication feature is enabled, this type of job flow sheet is available for the authenticated user who created the job flow sheet and by a system administrator.

■Administrator Shared Job Flow Sheet

This is a job flow sheet created by a system administrator.

When the Authentication feature is disabled, any machine users can use this type of job flow sheet.

When the Authentication feature is enabled, any machine's authenticated user can use the job flow sheet.

Only the system administrator, however, can change its settings.

To create a job flow sheet shared by system administrators, you need to select the <Log In/Out> button and operate the machine as a system administrator.

The available operations for job flow sheets are different depending on whether the Authentication feature is enabled or disabled.

Job Flow Sheet Types	When the Authentication Feature is not Enabled			When the Authentication Feature is Enabled		
	Create	Edit/Delete	Use*1	Create	Edit/Delete	Use*1
General Shared Job Flow Sheet	O	O	O	x	x	△
Mailbox Job Flow Sheet						
Personal Job Flow Sheet	x	x	△	O	O	O
Administrator Shared Job Flow Sheet	△	△	O	△	△	O

O Available

X Not available

△ Available to the System Administrator only

\*1 Viewing, copying, selecting, and executing job flow sheets

## Types of Mailboxes and Overview

The following three types of mailboxes can be used with the machine.

### ■General Shared Mailbox

This is a mailbox created by a general user when the Authentication feature is not enabled.

When the Authentication feature is not enabled, this mailbox is shared and its settings can be changed by any user.

When the Authentication feature is enabled, this mailbox can only be handled by a system administrator.

### ■Personal Mailbox

This is a mailbox created by an authenticated user when the Authentication feature is enabled.

Only the authenticated user who created it can use it.

When the Authentication feature is not enabled, this mailbox can only be handled by a system administrator.

The ways you can use mailboxes differ depending on whether the Authentication feature is enabled.

### ■Administrator Shared Mailbox

This is a mailbox created by a system administrator.

When the Authentication feature is not enabled, this mailbox can be shared by all users. When the Authentication feature is enabled, this mailbox can be shared by all authenticated users.

Only a system administrator, however, can change the settings.

To create a administrator shared mailbox, you need to press the <Log In/Out> button and operate the machine as a system administrator.

The available operations for mailboxes are different depending on whether the Authentication feature is enabled or disabled.

Types of Mailboxes	When the Authentication Feature is not Enabled			When the Authentication Feature is Enabled		
	Create	Edit/Delete	Use*1	Create	Edit/Delete	Use*1
General Shared Mailbox	O	O	O	x	△	△
Personal Mailbox	x	x	△	O	O	O
Administrator Shared Mailbox	△	△	O	△	△	O

O Available

x Not available

△ Available to the System Administrator only

\*1 Viewing mailboxes, viewing, deleting, registering, and outputting documents, and viewing and executing job flow sheets

## Linking Job Flow Sheets to Mailboxes

The ways to link job flow sheets to mailboxes differ depending on whether the Authentication feature is enabled.

The types of job flow sheets and mailboxes to be linked vary depending on the Authentication feature is enabled or not as shown in the table below.

Mailbox Job Flow	When the Authentication Feature is not Enabled			When the Authentication Feature is Enabled		
	General shared	Personal	Admin shared	General shared	Personal	Admin shared
Mailbox	O	△	△	△	△	△
General shared	O	△	△	△	△	△
Personal	△	△	△	△	O	△
Admin shared	△	△	△	△	O	△

O Available

x Not available

△ Available to the System Administrator only

## When the Authentication Feature is not Enabled

### Available Job Flow Sheet Operations

If the authentication setting is changed from "enabled" to "disabled", delete all existing personal job flow sheets, and create general-shared and mailbox job flow sheets.

When the Authentication feature is not enabled, the relations between users and job flows are as follows.

The available job flow sheet operations are different between the job flow sheets created on the [Create Mailbox] screen under [Setup] or the [Send from Mailbox] screen and those created on the [Create Job Flow Sheet] screen under [Setup].

### ■[Create Mailbox] under [Setup]/[Send from Mailbox]

The following table describes the operations that can be performed on the [Create Mailbox] screen under [Setup] or on the [Send from Mailbox] screen.

Job Flow operation	General Users				System Administrators			
	General shared	Mailbox	Admin shared	Personal	General shared	Mailbox	Admin shared	Personal
Create/Register	-	O	-	-	-	-	O	-
Display	O	O	O	-	O	O	O	O
Edit	O	O	-	-	O	O	O	O
Copy *	O	O	O	-	O	O	O	O
Delete	O	O	-	-	O	O	O	O
Select/Run	O	O	O	-	O	O	O	O
Link to mailbox	O	O	O	-	O	O	O	O

\*The owner of a copied job flow sheet is the user who made the copy.

**Important** • A job flow sheet created on the [Create Mailbox] screen under [Setup] or on the [Send from Mailbox] screen can be edited, copied, deleted, or selected/run only from the mailbox where the job flow sheet was created. The applicable users are all users who can use the mailboxes.

- If job flow sheets, which are no longer available for use due to a change in the authentication status, are linked to mailboxes, they cannot be edited or copied, but still can be used. If you cancel the links, however, the job flow sheets will no longer be displayed and will be unavailable.

### ■[Create Job Flow Sheet] under [Setup]

The following table describes the operations that can be performed on the [Create Job Flow Sheet] screen under [Setup].

Job Flow operation	General Users				System Administrators			
	General shared	Mailbox	Admin shared	Personal	General shared	Mailbox	Admin shared	Personal
Create/Register	O	-	-	-	-	-	O	-
Display	O	-	O	-	O	O	O	O
Edit	O	-	-	-	O	O	O	O
Copy *	O	-	O	-	O	O	O	O
Delete	O	-	-	-	O	O	O	O
Select/Run	O	-	O	-	O	O	O	O

\*The owner of a copied job flow sheet is the user who made the copy.

## Available Mailbox Operations

If the authentication feature is changed from "enabled" to "disabled", delete all existing personal mailboxes, and create general-shared mailboxes.

When the Authentication feature is not enabled, the relations between users and mailboxes are as follows.

Mailbox operation		General Users			System Administrators		
		General shared	Admin shared	Personal	General shared	Admin shared	Personal
Create/Register		O	-	-	-	O	-
Display		O	O	-	O	O	O
Delete		O	-	-	O	O	O
Change Settings		O	-	-	O	O	O
Display Document		O	O	-	O	O	O
Delete Document		O	O	-	O	O	O
Register Document *		O	O	-	O	O	O
Output Document *		O	O	-	O	O	O
Job Flow Sheet	Display	O	O	-	O	O	O
	Link	O	-	-	O	O	O
	Auto Start	O	O	-	O	O	O
	Manual Run	O	O	-	O	O	O

\* The following operations are not authenticated:

- Document retrieval using a scan driver or Mailbox Viewer3.

**Important** • If job flow sheets, which are no longer available for use due to a change in the authentication status, are linked to mailboxes, they cannot be edited or copied, but still can be used. If you cancel the links, however, the job flow sheets will no longer be displayed and will be unavailable.

## Linking Job Flow Sheets and Mailboxes

If the authentication mode is changed and therefore a job flow sheet that is linked to a mailbox becomes unavailable, the job flow sheet cannot be edited or copied, but can still be used for the mailbox. When the job flow sheet is delinked from the mailbox, however, the job flow sheet will not be displayed on the screen and become completely unavailable.

When the Authentication feature is not enabled, the relations between users and mailboxes are as follows.

Mailbox Job Flow	General Users			System Administrators		
	General shared	Admin shared	Personal	General shared	Admin shared	Personal
Mailbox	O	-	-	O	O	O
General shared	O	-	-	O	O	O
Admin shared	O	-	-	O	O	O
Personal	-	-	-	O	O	O

## When the Authentication Feature is Enabled

### Available Job Flow Sheet Operations

If the authentication setting is changed from "disabled" to "enabled", delete all existing general-shared and mailbox job flow sheets, and create personal job flow sheets.

When the Authentication feature is enabled, the relations between users and job flows are as follows.

The same operations can be permitted on the [Create Mailbox] and [Create Job Flow Sheet] screens.

For information on the Authentication feature, refer to "Overview of Authentication" (P.272).

■When [Login to Local Accounts] is selected, when [Verify User Details] is set to [Yes] in [Network Accounting] and [Customize User Prompts] is set to [User & Account ID Prompts] or [User ID Prompt Only], or when authenticated as a user other than a guest user in [Login to Remote Accounts]

**Important** • If authenticated as a guest user in [Login to Remote Accounts], you are treated as an unauthenticated user (general user) and cannot handle job flow sheets.

Job flow operation	Unauthenticated Users (General Users)				Authenticated Users					System Administrators			
	General shared	Mailbox	Admin shared	Personal	General shared	Mailbox	Admin shared	Personal (owner)	Personal (Non-owner)	General shared	Mailbox	Admin shared	Personal
Create/ Register	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	O	-	-	-	O	-
Display	-	-	-	-	-	-	O	O	-	O	O	O	O
Edit	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	O	-	O	O	O	O
Copy *	-	-	-	-	-	-	O	O	-	O	O	O	O
Delete	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	O	-	O	O	O	O
Select/ Run	-	-	-	-	-	-	O	O	-	O	O	O	O
Link to Mailbox	-	-	-	-	-	-	O	O	-	O	O	O	O

\*The owner of a copied job flow sheet is the user who made the copy.

### Available Mailbox Operations

If the authentication feature is changed from "disabled" to "enabled", delete all existing general-shared mailboxes, and create personal mailboxes.

When the Authentication feature is enabled, the relations between users and mailboxes are as follows.

For information on the Authentication feature, refer to "Overview of Authentication" (P.272).



■ When [Login to Local Accounts] is selected, when [Verify User Details] is set to [Yes] in [Network Accounting] and [Customize User Prompts] is set to [User & Account ID Prompts] or [User ID Prompt Only], or when authenticated as a user other than a guest user in [Login to Remote Accounts]

**Important** • If authenticated as a guest user in [Login to Remote Accounts], you are treated as an unauthenticated user (general user) and cannot handle mailboxes.

Mailbox operation		Unauthenticated Users (General Users)			Authenticated Users				System Administrators		
		General shared	Admin shared	Personal	General shared	Admin shared	Personal (owner)	Personal (Non-owner)	General shared	Admin shared	Personal
Create/Register		-	-	-	-	-	O	-	-	O	-
Display		-	O <sup>*2</sup>	-	-	O	O	-	O	O	O
Delete		-	-	-	-	-	O	-	O	O	O
Change Settings		-	-	-	-	-	O	-	O	O	O
Display Document		-	O <sup>*2</sup>	-	-	O	O	-	O	O	O
Delete Document		-	O <sup>*2</sup>	-	-	O	O	-	O	O	O
Register Document <sup>*1</sup>		-	O <sup>*2</sup>	-	-	O	O	-	O	O	O
Output Document <sup>*1</sup>		-	O <sup>*2</sup>	-	-	O	O	-	O	O	O
Job Flow Sheet	Display	-	- <sup>*3</sup>	-	-	O	O	-	O	O	O
	Link	-	-	-	-	-	O	-	O	O	O
	Auto Start	-	- <sup>*3</sup>	-	-	O	O	-	O	O	O
	Manual Run	-	- <sup>*3</sup>	-	-	O	O	-	O	O	O

<sup>\*1</sup> The following operations are not authenticated:

- Document retrieval using a scan driver or Mailbox Viewer3.

<sup>\*2</sup> Available only when the mailbox operations are permitted in the Authentication feature settings of the System Administration mode.

<sup>\*3</sup> You can perform display, auto run and manual run operations for job flow sheets linked to mailboxes.

**Important** • If job flow sheets, which are no longer available for use due to a change in the authentication status, are linked to mailboxes, they cannot be edited or copied, but still can be used. If you cancel the links, however, the job flow sheets will no longer be displayed and will be unavailable.

## Linking Job Flow Sheets and Mailboxes

When the Authentication feature is enabled, the relations between users and mailboxes are as follows.

For information on the Authentication feature, refer to "Overview of Authentication" (P.272).

■When [Login to Local Accounts] is selected, when [Verify User Details] is set to [Yes] in [Network Accounting] and [Customize User Prompts] is set to [User & Account ID Prompts] or [User ID Prompt Only], or when authenticated as a user other than a guest user in [Login to Remote Accounts]

**Important** • If authenticated as a guest user in [Login to Remote Accounts], you are treated as an unauthenticated user (general user) and cannot handle job flow sheets or mailboxes.

Mailbox  Job Flow	Unauthenticated Users (General Users)			Authenticated Users				System Administrators		
	General shared	Admin shared	Personal	General shared	Admin shared	Personal (owner)	Personal (Non-owner)	General shared	Admin shared	Personal
General shared	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	O	O	O
Admin shared	-	-	-	-	-	O	-	O	O	O
Personal (Owner)	-	-	-	-	-	O	-	O	O	O
Personal (Non-owner)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	O	O	O

## Jobs Manageable by Account Administration

This section describes the items that can be managed for the jobs of each service.

### Print

The items you can manage for print jobs using the Account Administration feature are as follows.

Services (Jobs)		Authentication	Users for which Auditron are Collected	Managed Items
Normal Print	Machine's print driver	Required	Authenticated user	Pages/sheets
	Other than machine's print driver	- <sup>*2</sup>	Unauthenticated user	Pages/sheets
Secure Print	Store Documents	Required	-	-
	Print Documents	Not required <sup>*1</sup>	Authenticated user	Pages/sheets
Sample Set	Sample Set Store Documents in Mailboxes/Print Documents	Required	Authenticated user	Pages/sheets
	Sample Set Print Mailbox-stored Documents	Not required <sup>*1</sup>	Authenticated user	Pages/sheets
Mailbox Print	Store Documents	Required	-	-
	Print Documents	Required/ Not required <sup>*4</sup>	Authenticated user	Pages/sheets
Delayed Print	Store Documents	Required	-	-
	Print Documents	Not required <sup>*1</sup>	Authenticated user	Pages/sheets
Charge Print	Store Documents	Not required	-	-
	Print Documents	Required	Authenticated user	Pages/sheets
Private Charge Print	Store Documents	Required/ Not required <sup>*3</sup>	-	-
	Print Documents	Required	Authenticated user	Pages/sheets
E-mail Printing		- <sup>*2</sup>	Unauthenticated user	Pages/sheets

\*1 Authentication is unnecessary upon printing because each print job has been authenticated when received by the machine.

\*2 You can print only when [Non-Account Print] is set to [Enable] on CentreWare Internet Services.

\*3 Depends on the "Receive Control" (P.187) settings in the System Administration mode.

\*4 Depends on the "Service Access" (P.181) settings in the System Administration mode.

### Scan Service

The items you can manage for scan jobs using the Account Administration feature are as follows.

Corresponding Service	Authenti- cation	Users for which Auditron are Collected	Managed Items
E-mail	Required	Authenticated user	Scanned pages, mail transmission pages
Scan to Mailbox	Required	Authenticated user	Scanned pages, stored pages

Corresponding Service	Authenti- cation	Users for which Auditron are Collected	Managed Items
Scan to PC	Required	Authenticated user	Scanned pages, file transfer pages
Network Scanning	Required	Authenticated user	Scanned pages, file transfer pages

## Fax

The items you can manage for fax jobs using the Auditron Administration feature are as follows.

Services (Jobs)		Authenti- cation	Users for which Auditron are Collected	Managed Items
Fax Send	Automatic Transmission	Required	Authenticated user	Transmissions/pages, charging units
	Manual Transmission (Call in, Call out)	Required	Authenticated user	Transmissions/pages, charging units
Fax reception/ printing	Automatic Reception/ Printing	Not required	Fax reception	Receptions/pages, charging units, printed pages/number of sheets
	Manual Reception/Printing (Calling in, Calling out)	Required	Fax reception	Receptions/pages, charging units, printed pages/number of sheets
Fax to Mailbox	Automatic Reception to Mailbox	Not required	Fax reception	Receptions/pages, charging units
	Reception/ Printing of Mailbox-received Fax	Required* <sup>1</sup>	Authenticated user	Pages/number of sheets
Fax Polling	Storing Documents for Polling (Mailboxes, Polling Mailboxes)	Required* <sup>1</sup>	-	-
	Automatic Transmission (to Mailbox)	Not required	Unregistered user	Transmissions/pages
	Automatic Reception/ Printing	Required	Authenticated user	Polls/pages, charging units, printed pages/number of sheets
	Polling Document Printing (Mailboxes, Polling Mailboxes)	Required* <sup>1</sup>	Authenticated user	Pages/number of sheets
Fax Relay Broadcast	Reception of Relayed Documents	Not required	Fax reception	Receptions/pages, charging units
	Relay Broadcasting, Printing	Not required	Relay Broadcast	Transmissions/pages, charging units, printed pages/number of sheets
Direct Fax transmission		Required	Authenticated user	Transmissions/pages, charging units
Send as Internet Fax		Required	Authenticated user	transmissions/pages

Services (Jobs)		Authenti- cation	Users for which Auditron are Collected	Managed Items
Internet Fax Reception/ Printing	Automatic Reception/ Printing	Not required	Internet Fax Received	Receptions/pages, printed pages/ number of sheets
	Automatic Reception to Mailbox	Not required	Internet Fax Received	Receptions/pages
	Reception/ Printing of Mailbox-received Fax	Required <sup>*1</sup>	Authenticated user	Pages/number of sheets
Internet Fax Received Fax Forward- ing	Relayed Internet Fax Reception	Not required	Internet Fax Received	Receptions/pages
	Automatic Transmission (Forwarding)	Not required	Internet Fax reception/fax forwarding	Transmissions/pages, charging units

<sup>\*1</sup> In the System Administration mode, when you select [Unlock] for [Tools] > [Authentication/Security Settings] > [Authentication] > [Access Control] > [Feature Access], authentication is not required to access mailboxes shared by system administrators, and the machine will print the job as unauthenticated.

• Restriction on Using the auditron mode on Fax Jobs:

Note the followings when using the auditron mode on fax jobs.

- Sending documents from different user accounts to the same destination is not counted as a batch send.
- The number of charging units is calculated using the machine's built-in timer. Therefore, the communication charges calculated from the number of charging units may slightly differ from the charges invoiced by the telecommunications company.
- When fax-received pages are split for printing, the number of pages counted will be those received, not those printed.
- The number of charging units is not computed for the following communications.
  - When dialing a fax number using the numeric keypad or the on-hook/off-hook feature.
  - When using an address number in which the billing data is not registered.
  - When a phone conversation took place, including the one before a transmission.

# Configuration for Authentication

This section explains how to configure the machine to use the authentication feature. The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step 1 Enabling Authentication .....	292
Step 2 Changing the Default Authorization Group Settings.....	294
Step 3 Creating an Authorization Group.....	295

## Installation Overview

Set either one of the following authentication modes to authenticate.

■Local machine authentication

Specify the authentication mode, access control, and register user.

■Remote authentication

Specify the authentication mode, access control, and remote authentication server.

Change the default authorization group settings and add an authorization group, as necessary.

## Step 1 Enabling Authentication

This step explains the procedures when [Login to Local Accounts] is selected and when [Login to Remote Accounts] is selected respectively.

### When [Login to Local Accounts] is Selected

Use the following procedure to enable local authentication.

- 1 Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2 Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

- Note**
- The default user ID is "11111".
  - The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3 Select [Tools].
- 4 Select [Authentication/Security Settings].
- 5 Select [Authentication].
- 6 Select [Login Type].
- 7 Select [Login to Local Accounts], then select [Save].

Refer to "Login Type" (P.181).

- 8 Select [Access Control].
- 9 Select [Service Access].

- 10** Select [Unlocked] for the required services to permit users unlimited access, and then select [Close].
- 11** Select [Device Access] and then select [Locked] to disable button operations on the control panel.
- 12** Select [Save].
- 13** Select [Close].
- 14** Select [Passcode Entry from Control Panel] under [Passcode Policy]. To prompt users to enter their passcode, select [On].
- 15** Select [Save].
- 16** Select [Close].
- 17** Select [Create/View User Accounts].
- 18** Select "(Not in Use)" and select [Create/Delete].
- 19** Enter a UserID and select [Save].
- 20** Select [Account Limit].
- 21** Configure the [Account Limit] and [Feature Access] settings for each service.
- 22** If necessary, select a user role and an authorization group for the user, under [User Role] and [Add This User to Authorization Group] respectively.

### When [Login to Remote Accounts] is Selected

Use the following procedure to enable remote authentication.

- 1** Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2** Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note**

- The default user ID is "11111".
- The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3** Select [Tools].
- 4** Select [Authentication/Security Settings].
- 5** Select [Authentication].
- 6** Select [Login Type].
- 7** Select [Login to Remote Accounts], then select [Save].  
Refer to "Login Type" (P.181).
- 8** Select [Access Control].
- 9** Select [Service Access].
- 10** Select [Unlocked] for the required services to permit users unlimited access.
- 11** When an LDAP server is used as a remote authentication server, use the following procedure to set the user authorization on the LDAP server.
  - 1) Start CentreWare Internet Services.

- 2) Click the [Properties] tab.
- 3) Click [Connectivity] > [Protocols] > [LDAP] > [LDAP Group Access].
- 4) Set [System Administrator Access Group] and [Account Administrator Access Group].  
Setting example:  
System Administrator Access Group: CN=SA,CN=Users,DC=secEQ,DC=local  
Account Administrator Access Group: CN=AA,CN=Users,DC=secEQ,DC=local

**12** Select [System Settings].

**13** Select [Connectivity & Network Setup].

**14** Select [Remote Authentication/Directory Service Settings].

**15** Select [Authentication System Setup] and then select a remote authentication server.

Refer to "Remote Authentication/Directory Service Settings" (P.121)

**Note** • The available options are [Kerberos (Windows 2000), [Kerberos (Solaris)], [LDAP], and [SMB].

**16** Configure the settings for the remote authentication server.

For more information on the Authentication feature, refer to "Kerberos Server Settings" (P.121), "LDAP Server/Directory Service" (P.122), and "SMB Server Settings" (P.124).

---

## Step 2 Changing the Default Authorization Group Settings

---

Use the following procedure to change the settings of the Default Authentication Group. The Default Authentication Group is the authorization group that registered users belong to by default.

**1** Press the <Log In/Out> button.

**2** Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note** • The default user ID is "11111".  
• The default passcode is "x-admin".

**3** Select [Tools].

**4** Select [Authentication/Security Settings].

**5** Select [Authentication].

**6** Select [Create Authorization Groups].

**7** Select "DEFAULT (Default)" and select [Create/Delete].

**8** Set [Restrict Recipient Selection Method] and [Restrict User to Edit Address Book].

Refer to "Create Authorization Groups" (P.185).

**9** Select [Close].



---

## Step 3 Creating an Authorization Group

---

If necessary, you can create authorization groups using the following procedure.

- 1** Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2** Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note**

- The default user ID is "11111".
- The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3** Select [Tools].
- 4** Select [Authentication/Security Settings].
- 5** Select [Authentication].
- 6** Select [Create Authorization Groups].
- 7** Select "(No Name)" and select [Create/Delete].
- 8** Enter a group name into [Group Name].
- 9** Set [Restrict Recipient Selection Method] and [Restrict User to Edit Address Book].  
Refer to "Create Authorization Groups" (P.185).
- 10** Select [Close].

# Configuration for Account Administration

This section explains how to configure the machine to use the account administration feature.

The following shows the reference section for each item.

Step 1 Selecting an Accounting Type.....	296
Step 2 Registering User Information .....	296

## Step 1 Selecting an Accounting Type

Use the following procedure to select an accounting type.  
For information on relationships between the authentication and accounting modes, refer to "Relationships Between the Authentication and Accounting Modes" (P.277)

- 1 Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2 Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note**      • The default user ID is "11111".  
              • The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3 Select [Tools].
- 4 Select [Accounting].
- 5 Select [Accounting Type].
- 6 Select an accounting type, and select [Save].

**Note**      • The available options are [Local Accounting], [Network Accounting], and [Xerox Standard Accounting].

Refer to "Accounting Type" (P.177).

## Step 2 Registering User Information

Use the following procedure to register user information.

- 1 Press the <Log In/Out> button.
- 2 Enter the system administrator's user ID with the numeric keypad or a keyboard, and select [Enter].

When a passcode is required, select [Next Input] and enter the system administrator's passcode, then select [Enter].

**Note**      • The default user ID is "11111".  
              • The default passcode is "x-admin".

- 3 Select [Tools].
- 4 Select [Accounting].
- 5 Select [Create/View User Accounts].
- 6 Select "(Not in Use)" and select [Create/Delete].

- 7** Enter a UserID and select [Save].
- 8** Select [Account Limit].
- 9** Configure the [Account Limit] and [Feature Access] settings for each service.  
Refer to "Account Limit" (P.174).
- 10** If necessary, select a user role and an authorization group for the user, in [User Role].  
**Note**      • [User Role] is only displayed when the authentication mode is local authentication.  
Refer to "User Role" (P.175).



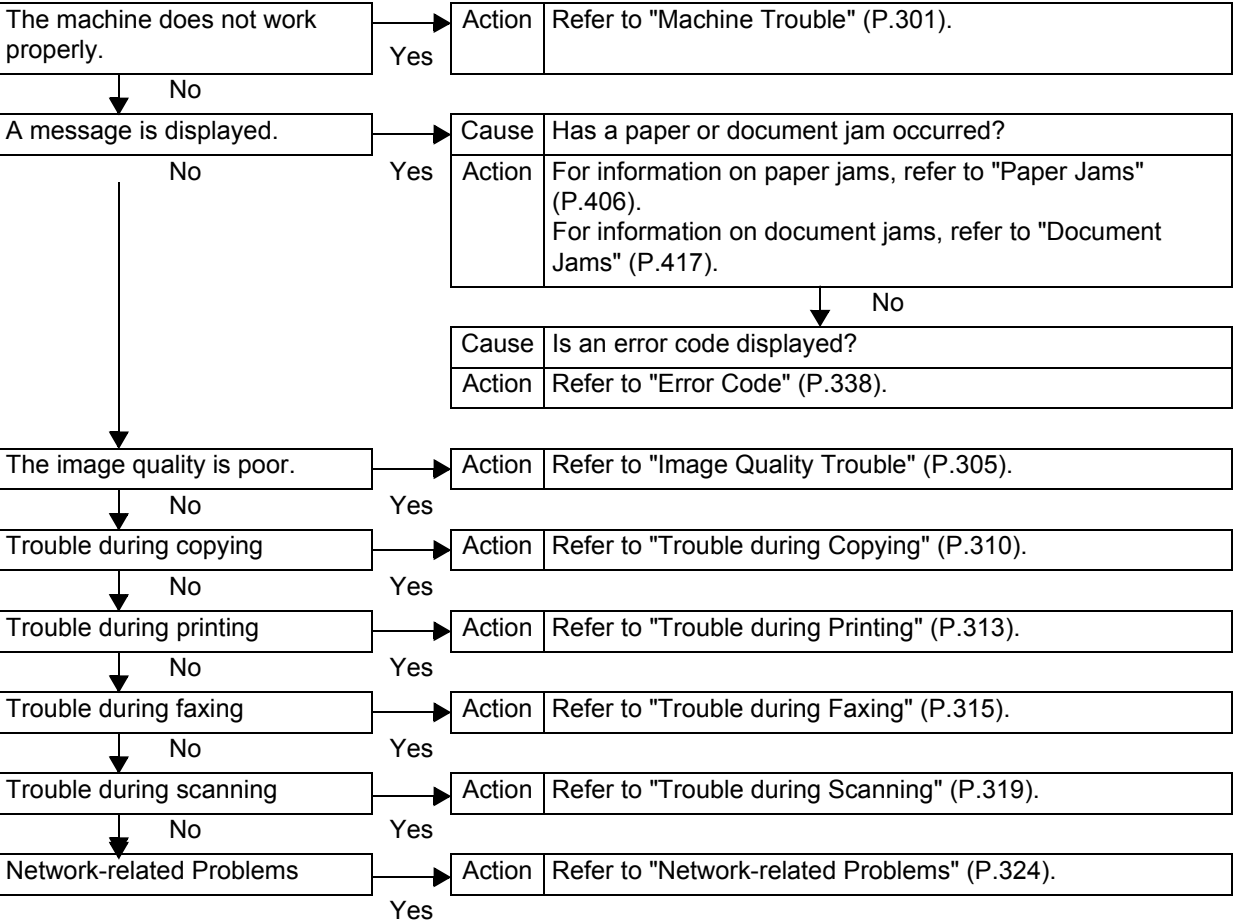
# 14 Problem Solving

This chapter describes troubles that may occur with the machine and their solutions.

• Troubleshooting .....	300
• Machine Trouble .....	301
• Image Quality Trouble .....	305
• Trouble during Copying .....	310
• Trouble during Printing .....	313
• Trouble during Faxing .....	315
• Trouble during Scanning .....	319
• Network-related Problems .....	324
• Error Code .....	338
• Paper Jams .....	406
• Document Jams .....	417
• Stapler Faults .....	419

# Troubleshooting

This section describes troubles that may occur with the machine and their solutions.  
Follow the troubleshooting procedure below to solve the problems.



If the machine does not recover even after following the above procedure, contact our Customer Support Center.

## Machine Trouble

Before you determine that the machine is defective, check the machine status again.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The machine is not powered on.	Is the power switched on?	Switch the power on. Refer to "2 Product Overview" in the User Guide.
	Is the power cord plugged into the power outlet?	Turn the power switch off, and then firmly plug the power cord into the connector and power outlet. Then turn the power switch on.
	Is the power cord disconnected from the machine?	Refer to "2 Product Overview" in the User Guide.
	Does the AC outlet supply power properly?	Connect another appliance to the outlet to verify the power supply.
The touch screen is too dark.	Is the <Energy Saver> button on?	The machine is in the Energy Saver mode. Press the <Energy Saver> button on the control panel to exit the Energy Saver mode. Refer to "2 Product Overview" in the User Guide.
	Is the screen contrast low?	Adjust the screen contrast by using the contrast adjustment dial. Refer to "2 Product Overview" in the User Guide.
Unable to print, or unable to copy.	Is a message displayed on the touch screen?	Follow the instructions displayed to solve the problem.
	Is the memory capacity insufficient?	Perform one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set [Image Quality] to [Standard], or try to print again by setting [Print Page Mode] to [On]</li> <li>Reduce the number of open ports to increase the print page buffer size</li> <li>Add memory by installing add-on memory (256 MB)</li> </ul> <b>Note</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When memory capacity is insufficient, the port status is automatically set to [Stop] and the machine restarts.</li> </ul>
	Is the print mode [Off-line]?	Press the <Machine Status> button to check the [Print Mode] on the [Machine Status] screen. If [Print Mode] is set to [Off-line], select [On-line].
	Is the power cord disconnected from the machine?	Turn the power switch off, and then firmly plug the power cord into the connector and power outlet. Then turn the power switch on. Refer to "2 Product Overview" > "Power On / Off" in the User Guide.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The <Online> indicator does not light even though you instructed the machine to print.	Is the interface cable connected?	Turn the power switch off, unplug the power cord from the power outlet, and check the interface cable connection. Refer to "Interface Cables" (P.17).
	Is the computer's environment correctly set?	Check the computer environment such as print driver settings.
	Is the required interface correctly set?	Check the status of the interface port. Refer to "Printer Environment Settings" (P.201).
A document is not fed from the Tray 5 (Bypass).	Is the specified size paper loaded in the tray?	Follow the instructions displayed to load paper of correct size, and try again. Refer to "Loading Paper in the Tray 5 (Bypass)" (P.30).
Unsatisfactory print quality.	A probable cause is an image defect.	Remedy the problem referring to "Image Quality Trouble". Refer to "Image Quality Trouble" (P.305).
Unable to print text correctly. (Text is garbled.)	Non-standard fonts are used for printing.	Check the application or print driver settings. If PostScript (optional) is being used, download the required fonts.
The <Online> indicator lights or blinks, but printed paper is not output.	Data remains in machine memory.	Cancel printing, or delete the remaining data. Refer to "9 Job Status" > "Checking Current/ Pending Jobs" in the User Guide.
Unable to insert or remove a paper tray.	Did you open a cover or turn the power switch off during printing?	Do not forcibly insert or remove the paper tray. Turn the power switch off. In a few seconds, turn the power switch on. When the machine is ready to receive data, insert or remove the paper tray.
Unable to copy with the specified size.	Is the document glass or the document cover dirty?	Clean the document glass and the document cover. Refer to "Cleaning the Document Cover and Document Glass" (P.50).
	Is the document a transparent type such as a transparency film?	Place the document on the document glass, and then place a white sheet over the document.
	Is the document in the correct position?	Load the document correctly. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
	Is the document loaded correctly?	
	Are the document guides on the document feeder in the correct positions?	Adjust the document guide positions. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
	Is the document folded?	Unfold and correctly place the document. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
	Is the document a non-standard size?	Specify the document size. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.



Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Paper is often jammed or wrinkled.	Is the paper loaded correctly in the tray?	Load the paper correctly. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	Is the paper tray inserted correctly?	Firmly push in the paper tray as far as possible to insert it correctly. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	Is the paper damp?	Replace the paper with new one. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	Is the paper curled?	Turn over the paper in the tray, or replace the paper with new one. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	Are the paper and paper tray settings correct?	Correctly load the paper into the paper tray. Refer to "Changing the Paper Settings" (P.34).
	Are there any torn pieces of paper remaining or is there a foreign object in the machine?	Open the door of the machine or slide out the paper tray to remove the torn pieces or the foreign object. Refer to "Paper Jams" (P.406), or "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	Is non-standard paper loaded in the tray?	Replace with paper that meets machine specifications. Refer to "Paper Types" (P.26), or "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	Is paper exceeding the maximum fill line in the tray?	Load paper in the paper tray so that it does not exceed the maximum fill line. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	Are the paper guides set correctly?	Load the paper correctly, and align the paper guides with the paper gently. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29), or "Changing the Paper Size for the Trays" (P.32).
	Is the image nearly the same size as the paper?	Increase the edge erase widths. For more information, refer to "3 Copy" in the User Guide when you make copies, or to the print driver's online help when you print data.
	Is the paper finely cut out?	Some types of paper may not be cut out finely. Load the paper after fanning it well.
A document is not fed into the document feeder.	Is the document small?	The minimum size of the document that can be loaded on the document feeder is 139.7 x 210 mm (A5, A5 $\square$ , 5.5 x 8.5, 5.5 x 8.5 $\square$ ). Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
An error message appears after paper is loaded in the Tray 5 (Bypass) and the <Start> button is pressed.	Check the positions of the paper guides of the Tray 5 (Bypass).	Adjust the paper guides to the correct positions. Refer to "Loading Paper in the Tray 5 (Bypass)" (P.30).


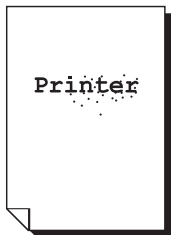
Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Documents are often jammed.	Are the suitable types of documents used?	Correctly load documents suitable for the document feeder.
	Are you trying to copy irregular shaped documents, business cards, transparencies, or thin documents?	Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
	Are you trying to copy documents with sticky labels, paper clips or adhesive tape?	Remove sticky labels, paper clips or adhesive tape from the document before copying.
	Are the document guides in the correct positions?	Adjust the document guide positions. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
	Is a piece of torn paper remaining in the document feeder?	Open the document feeder cover and check inside. Refer to "Document Jams" (P.417).
	Is the [Mixed Sized Originals] setting set to [On] when you copy originals of different sizes?	Set [Mixed Sized Originals] to [On]. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Layout Adjustment" > "Mixed Sized Originals (Scanning Different Size Documents Simultaneously)" in the User Guide.
	Is an A5 document loaded in landscape orientation (☐) on the document feeder when the Mixed Sized Originals feature is in use?	Load the A5 document in portrait orientation (☐).
A corner of the document is folded.	Is the document curled?	Flatten out the curl and load the document again.
Stapler Faults	-	Refer to "Stapler Faults" (P.419).

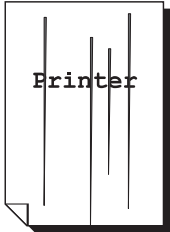
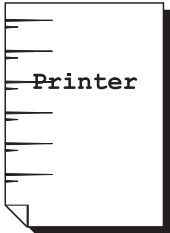
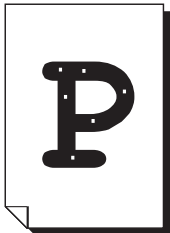

## Image Quality Trouble





If the image quality of printed documents is poor, identify the similar symptom in the following table to prescribe the remedy.

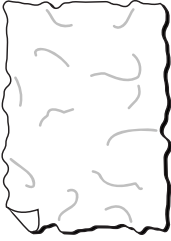

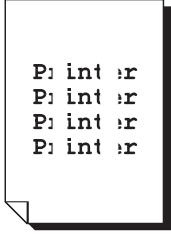
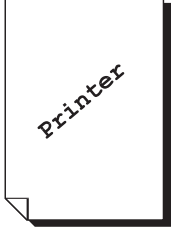
If the image quality is not improved even after prescribed the relevant remedy, contact our Customer Support Center.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The copy is dirty.	Is the document glass or the document cover dirty?	Clean the document glass and the document cover. Refer to "Cleaning the Document Cover and Document Glass" (P.50).
	Is the document a transparent type such as a transparency film?	If the document is transparent, dirt on the document cover will be copied. Place a white sheet of paper over the original document when copying.
	Is the document colored, rough, or a blueprint?	Adjust the copy density or image quality. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Image Quality" in the User Guide.
	Is the document glossy printing paper?	Glossy printing paper easily sticks to the document glass, and shadows are sometimes copied and shown as dirt. Place a transparency film under the document when copying.
The copy has black lines.	Is the document glass on the document feeder dirty?	Clean the document glass. Refer to "Cleaning the Film and Constant Velocity Transport Glass" (P.51).
When stripes appear near around 210 mm from the top of the output.	Are the [Image Quality] settings appropriate for the paper type?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When choosing Bond Paper, Plain Paper, Recycled Paper, or Custom Paper as a paper type and printing in black and white, change the paper type in [Image Quality] to [Heavyweight 2D].</li> <li>When choosing Heavyweight 1S as a paper type and printing in black and white, change the paper type in [Image Quality] to [Heavyweight 2A], [Heavyweight 2B], [Heavyweight 2C], or [Heavyweight 2S].</li> </ul> For more information about the paper type in [Image Quality], refer to Paper Tray Settings (P.94).
The copy is too dark.	Is the copy density set to [Darken]?	Adjust the copy density. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Image Quality" in the User Guide.
The copy is too light.	Is the document faint?	
	Is the copy density set to [Lighten]?	
The copy is slightly misaligned.	Are the paper edges aligned and the leading edge flush with the tray corners?	Align the paper edges, and adjust them with the tray's front corners to reload the paper. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The copy is misaligned or skewed.	Is the document loaded correctly?	Load the document correctly. Refer to "3 Copy" in the User Guide.
	Is the paper loaded correctly in the tray?	Load the paper correctly. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	Are the paper guides of the Tray 5 (Bypass) correctly aligned with the paper?	Load the paper correctly. Refer to "Loading Paper in the Tray 5 (Bypass)" (P.30).
	Are the document guides on the document feeder in the correct positions?	Load the document correctly, and align the document guides with the document sides. Refer to "3 Copy" in the User Guide.
	Is the paper tray inserted correctly?	Firmly push in the tray as far as possible to insert it properly. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
Part of the image is missing on the copy.	Is the paper damp?	If the paper is damp, the copy image may be partially missing or unclear. Replace the paper with new one. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	Is folded or wrinkled paper included in the tray?	Remove the improper paper or replace whole paper with new one. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	Is the document pasted or folded?	There may be a gap between the document glass and the pasted or folded section. Place a stack of white sheets on the document to remove the gap between the document and the document glass.
The copy has a stripe pattern.	Is the enlargement ratio large?	Output may have vertical stripes depending on the ratio. Adjust the ratio to remove the stripes. Refer to "3 Copy" in the User Guide.
Printing is faint. (smudged, unclear)  	The paper is damp.	Replace the paper with new one. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	The drum cartridge has deteriorated or is damaged.	Replace the drum cartridge with a new one. Refer to "Replacing the Drum Cartridge (for customers having a spot maintenance contract)" (P.41).
	There is no toner left in the toner cartridge.	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. Refer to "Replacing the Toner Cartridges" (P.39).
Black dots are printed.  	The drum cartridge has deteriorated or is damaged.	Replace the drum cartridge with a new one. Refer to "Replacing the Drum Cartridge (for customers having a spot maintenance contract)" (P.41).

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Black lines are printed. 	The drum cartridge has deteriorated or is damaged.	Replace the drum cartridge with a new one. Refer to "Replacing the Drum Cartridge (for customers having a spot maintenance contract)" (P.41).
	The document glass on the document feeder is dirty.	Clean the document glass. Refer to "Cleaning the Film and Constant Velocity Transport Glass" (P.51).
Dirt appears at equal intervals. 	The paper feeder is dirty.	Print a few pages to remove the dirt.
	The drum cartridge has deteriorated or is damaged.	Replace the drum cartridge with a new one. Refer to "Replacing the Drum Cartridge (for customers having a spot maintenance contract)" (P.41).
White dots appear in black filled areas. 	The paper is unsuitable.	Load suitable paper. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	The drum cartridge has deteriorated or is damaged.	Replace the drum cartridge with a new one. Refer to "Replacing the Drum Cartridge (for customers having a spot maintenance contract)" (P.41).
Printed toner smudges when rubbed with your finger. Toner is not fused. The paper is dirty with toner. 	The paper is damp.	Replace the paper with new one. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	The paper is unsuitable.	Load suitable paper. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The entire paper area is printed black. 	The drum cartridge has deteriorated or is damaged.	Replace the drum cartridge with a new one. Refer to "Replacing the Drum Cartridge (for customers having a spot maintenance contract)" (P.41).
	High-voltage power supply problem may have occurred.	Contact our Customer Support Center.
Nothing is printed. 	Two or more sheets of paper are being fed simultaneously (double-feed).	Fan the paper well and load it again. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	There is no toner left in the toner cartridge.	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. Refer to "Replacing the Toner Cartridges" (P.39).
	Power supply problem may have occurred.	Contact our Customer Support Center.
White areas or white stripes appear. 	The paper is damp.	Replace the paper with new one. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	The paper is unsuitable.	Load suitable paper. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
The output is entirely faint. 	When the Tray 5 (Bypass) is used, the size and type of the loaded paper are different from the settings on the print driver.	Load correct paper into the Tray 5 (Bypass). Refer to "Loading Paper in the Tray 5 (Bypass)" (P.30).
	Two or more sheets may be fed at once.	Fan the paper well and load it again. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Paper becomes wrinkled. 	The paper is unsuitable.	Replace the paper with new one. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	Paper has been added to the loaded paper.	
	The paper is damp.	
Text is blurred. 	The paper is unsuitable.	Replace the paper with new one. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	Paper has been added to the loaded paper.	
	The paper is damp.	
White patches appear vertically. 	A drum cartridge has deteriorated or is damaged.	Replace the drum cartridge with a new one. Refer to "Replacing the Drum Cartridge (for customers having a spot maintenance contract)" (P.41).
	There is no toner left in a toner cartridge.	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. Refer to "Replacing the Toner Cartridges" (P.39).
Text or images are printed at an angle. 	The paper guides in the paper tray are not set in the correct positions.	Adjust the horizontal and vertical paper guides to the correct positions. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).

# Trouble during Copying

This section describes how to solve copy problems.

## Unable to Copy

Follow the procedure below if you cannot copy documents.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The document is not correctly fed from the document feeder.	The document is too small.	The minimum size of the document that can be loaded on the document feeder is A5. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
	The document type is unsuitable.	The document feeder does not feed irregular sized documents, business cards, transparencies, or thin documents. In addition, the document feeder does not feed documents with tags, paper clips, or tape. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
	The document guides are in incorrect positions.	Adjust the document guides to the document. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
	Part of a document is remaining in the document feeder.	Open the document feeder cover, and remove the piece. Refer to "Document Jams" (P.417).
	Documents of different sizes are loaded.	When loading documents of different sizes, be sure to specify [Mixed Sized Originals]. Otherwise, a paper jam will occur. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.



## The Copy Result is Not What was Expected

Follow the procedure below if the copy result is not what was expected.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The copy is dirty.	The document glass or the document cover is dirty.	Clean the document glass or the document cover. Refer to "Cleaning the Document Cover and Document Glass" (P.50).
	The document is a transparent type such as a transparency film.	If the document is transparent, dirt on the document cover may be copied. Place a white sheet of paper over the original document when copying.
	The document is colored, rough, or a blueprint.	The paper's background color is copied. Adjust the copy density or image quality, or specify for [Background Suppression].
	The document is glossy printing paper.	Glossy printing paper easily sticks to the document glass, and shadows are sometimes copied and reproduced as dirt. Place a transparency film under the document when copying.
The copy is too dark or light.	The copy density is set to [Darken] or [Lighten].	Adjust the copy density. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Image Quality" in the User Guide.
	The original document density is too light.	Adjust the copy density. Refer to "3 Copy" in the User Guide.
	The setting for [Original Type] is inappropriate for the document.	Copy black text. If it is too light, select [Text] for [Original Type]. Refer to "3 Copy"> "Image Quality" in the User Guide.
The copy is slightly misaligned.	Paper is misaligned in the tray.	Align the paper edges, and adjust them with the tray's front corners to reload the paper. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
Part of the image is missing on the copy.	The paper is damp.	If the paper is damp, the copy image may be partially missing or unclear. Replace the paper with new one. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	Folded or wrinkled paper is included in the paper tray.	Remove the improper paper or replace whole paper with new one. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	The document is pasted or folded.	The folded or pasted part of the document may not touch the document glass. Place a stack of white sheets on the document to remove a gap.
The copy has a stripe pattern.	The document enlargement ratio is too large.	Output may have stripes depending on the enlargement ratio. Adjust the ratio to remove the stripes. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copy" in the User Guide.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The copy is misaligned or skewed.	The document is not loaded correctly.	Load the document correctly. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
	The document guides on the document feeder are not in the correct positions.	Load the document correctly, and align the document guides with the document. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
	The paper tray is not inserted correctly.	Firmly push in the tray as far as possible to set it properly. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	The paper guides in the Tray 5 (Bypass) are not in the correct positions.	Load the paper correctly, and align the paper guides with the paper. Refer to "Loading Paper in the Tray 5 (Bypass)" (P.30).
Unable to copy with the specified size.	The document glass or the document cover is dirty.	Clean the document glass or the document cover. Refer to "Cleaning the Document Cover and Document Glass" (P.50).
	The document is a transparent type such as a transparency film.	Place a white sheet of paper over the original document when copying.
	The document is misaligned.	Load the document correctly. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
	The document guides on the document feeder are not in the correct positions.	Load the document correctly, and align the document guides with the document. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
	The document is a non-standard size.	Specify the document size. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
	The document is folded.	Unfold and correctly place the document. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Copying Procedure" in the User Guide.
The document edges are missing on the copy.	The document is larger than the printable area.	Adjust [Reduce/Enlarge] to make the copy smaller.
Documents are not stapled.	The Finisher is not attached.	A finisher is needed to perform stapling. Attach the Finisher, or change the print option setting to cancel stapling.
	The number of pages to staple exceeds the maximum number for stapling.	Staple-enabled number of pages is 50 or lower. Reduce the number of pages to 50 or less.

## Trouble during Printing

This section describes how to solve print problems.

- Note**
- The print features are not available for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

### Unable to Print

Follow the procedure below if you cannot print a document.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Data remains in the printer icon.	The machine is not powered on.	Turn the machine's power switch on.
	The network cable is disconnected from the computer.	Connect the network cable to the computer.
	The network cable is disconnected from the machine.	Connect the network cable to the machine. Refer to "Interface Cables" (P.17).
	The print mode is off on the machine.	Press the <Machine Status> button to check the [Print Mode] on the [Machine Status] screen. If [Print Mode] is set to [Off-line], select [On-line].
	An error occurred with the machine.	Check the error details.
	The IP address or SMB network path is not correctly set.	Set the correct IP address or SMB network path. Refer to "Printer Environment Settings" (P.201).
	The network between the computer and machine is abnormal.	Check with your network administrator.
	The port is not enabled.	Enable the port.
	The hard disk space of the machine is insufficient.	Delete unnecessary data to increase free space.
	The machine is connected to multiple computers.	Wait for a while, and then try printing again.
The data has been sent to the machine.	Out of paper.	Supply paper to the machine.
	No paper for the specified paper size.	Set the specified size paper. Refer to "Loading Paper" (P.29).
	Printing is interrupted by a copy operation.	Cancel the interrupting operation.
	An error occurred on the machine.	Check the error details.

## The Print Result is Not What was Expected

Follow the procedure below if the print result is not what was expected.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Documents are not stapled.	The Finisher is not attached.	A finisher is needed to perform stapling. Attach the Finisher, or change the print option setting to cancel stapling.
	The number of pages to staple exceeds the maximum number for stapling.	Staple-enabled number of pages is 50 or lower. Reduce the number of pages to 50 or less.
The 2-sided printing is not available.	The print page buffer is insufficient.	Add memory.
The document is printed with a different paper size.	The document size is different from the paper size in the specified tray.	Change the paper in the tray, or change the print option to specify a tray that contains the correct size paper.
The document edges are missing on the output.	The image is larger than the printable area.	Expand the printable area, or reduce the document print area.
The font differs from the font specified on the computer.	The font replacement is set on the print driver.	Check the font replacement table.
	The font is non-standard for this machine.	Check the application or print driver settings. If the Adobe PostScript 3 Kit is being used, download the required fonts.
The printing is not offset.	The machine does not have the offset feature.	For offset output, the Offset Catch Tray or the Finisher must be attached.
Printing is slow.	[High Resolution] has been selected for [Print Mode].	When image data, such as a photo, is printed with the high image quality, the print speed becomes slow. Select [Standard] for [Image Quality].
The print option settings do not take effect.	The print driver used is for another model.	Install the print driver for this model.
	The required optional kit is not attached on the machine.	Check the options installed on the machine, and set the configuration again.
Image edges are missing.	The image is larger than the printable area.	Expand the printable area, or reduce the document print area.

## Trouble during Faxing

This section describes how to solve fax problems.

- Note**
- The print features are not available for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

### Sending Problems

Follow the procedure below if you cannot send a fax.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
A Transmission Report - Job Undelivered is output.	The fax was not sent due to an error.	Check the "Transmission Results" in the Transmission Report - Job Undelivered. If an error code is displayed, refer to "Error Code" (P.338).
The phone line has a problem.	The phone line is not connected correctly.	The machine is equipped with some connectors to connect phone lines to. The communication is disabled unless the phone line is connected to a correct connector. When the cable connection is correct, the on-hook feature allows you to call through general lines.
	The phone dialing method is not available.	Specify the same dialing method as the subscribed one (Tone/10pps) for the machine.
	An error occurred with the phone line.	Use a telephone near the machine to check whether to be able to make a phone call. If the phone call is disabled, the problem is the phone line, not the machine.
	The destination machine is abnormal	The data cannot be sent if the recipient's machine condition is one of the following: the power is off, the receiving mode is "manual", and the G3 reception mode is not supported. Call the recipient to check the machine condition.
The operation is incorrect.	An incorrect fax number is used.	Check the fax number and try sending again.
	The number is not for fax.	If no peep sound is heard from the receiver when you call the number, the number is not for fax.
	The auditron mode is enabled and the fax is sent directly from the computer.	When the auditron mode is enabled and you send a fax directly from the computer, you must set the user ID and passcode registered on the machine to the driver. For details on the auditron mode, refer to "Authentication and Account Administration" (P.271). For details on how to directly send a fax from the computer, refer to "10 Computer Operations" > "Sending Fax" in the User Guide.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The image quality is poor.	The document glass is dirty.	Clean the document glass. Refer to "Cleaning the Film and Constant Velocity Transport Glass" (P.51).
	The fax density is improper.	Adjust the fax density. Refer to "4 Fax" > "General Settings" > "Lighten/Darken (Adjusting Fax Density)" in the User Guide.
	The sender's machine has a problem.	Check it to the sender. Image quality may be affected by a problem of the sender's machine, as well as a problem of this machine.

## Receiving Problems

Follow the procedure below if you cannot receive a fax

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The phone line has a problem.	The phone line is not connected correctly.	The machine equips some connectors to connect phone lines to. The communication is disabled unless the phone line is connected to a correct connector. When the cable connection is correct, the on-hook feature allows you to call through general lines.
	An error occurred with the phone line.	Use a telephone near the machine to check whether to be able to make a phone call. If the phone call is disabled, the problem is the phone line, not the machine.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The receiving operation is incorrect.	The machine is powered off.	The machine does not receive a fax while powered off. Turn the machine's power switch on.
	No paper is set.	Set paper on the machine to receive faxes.
	Paper is jammed.	Follow the instructions displayed on the control panel to remove the jammed paper. Refer to "Paper Jams" (P.406).
	The machine is in the system administration mode.	The machine does not receive a fax in the system administration mode. Exit the system administration mode.
	A password has been set.	When a password has been set, the machine accepts only fax data or polling with the password in F code communication.
	The receiving mode is set to manual.	Receive the fax manually, or set the receiving mode to Auto. Refer to "Fax Receiving Mode" (P.70).
	The sending mode is manual.	To use FAX Information Service, set the receiving mode to manual on the on-hook screen to enter an information code, and press the <Start> button.
	The document is not correctly loaded on the sender's machine.	Check it to the sender. <b>Note</b> • Image quality may be affected by a problem of the sender's machine, as well as a problem of this machine.
The image quality is poor.	The drum cartridge is damaged.	Copy a document. If the image quality is poor, replace the drum cartridge with a new one. Refer to "Replacing the Drum Cartridge (for customers having a spot maintenance contract)" (P.41).
	The document glass on the sender's machine is dirty.	Check it to the sender. <b>Note</b> • Image quality may be affected by a problem of the sender's machine, as well as a problem of this machine.
	The resolution setting on the sender's machine is too low.	Check it to the sender. <b>Note</b> • Image quality may be affected by a problem of the sender's machine, as well as a problem of this machine.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy									
The received one-page document is split into multiple pages.	When scanned on the sender's machine, the document was enlarged for some reason.	<div>This machine can process such a document using the Auto% Receiving feature and a border limit value for page split. According to the setting combination, the received document is printed as follows.</div> <table><tr><td>Auto Reduce on Receipt Page Split Border Limit</td><td>Auto Reduce on Receipt ON</td><td>Auto Reduce on Receipt OFF</td></tr><tr><td>Equal to, or less than border limit</td><td>Automatically reduces in size and prints on one page.</td><td>Prints only the area of the standard size.</td></tr><tr><td>More than border limit</td><td colspan="2">Prints by splitting with the same ratio.</td></tr></table> <div>Refer to "Border Limit" (P.143), or "Auto Reduce On Receipt" (P.144).</div>	Auto Reduce on Receipt Page Split Border Limit	Auto Reduce on Receipt ON	Auto Reduce on Receipt OFF	Equal to, or less than border limit	Automatically reduces in size and prints on one page.	Prints only the area of the standard size.	More than border limit	Prints by splitting with the same ratio.	
Auto Reduce on Receipt Page Split Border Limit	Auto Reduce on Receipt ON	Auto Reduce on Receipt OFF									
Equal to, or less than border limit	Automatically reduces in size and prints on one page.	Prints only the area of the standard size.									
More than border limit	Prints by splitting with the same ratio.										
The mailbox selector feature is set, however, the received document is printed, and cannot be stored in the mailbox.	The unregistered mailbox is specified on the mailbox selector feature.	<div>When using the mailbox selector feature, specify the registered mailbox. If the unregistered mailbox is selected, the received document cannot be stored in the mailbox, and will be automatically printed.</div> <div>For information on how to register the mailbox, refer to "Create Mailbox" (P.156). For information on the mailbox selector, refer to "Fax Received Options" (P.145).</div>									



## Trouble during Scanning

This section describes how to solve scanning problems.

- Note**
- The scanner features are not available for some models. An optional package is necessary. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.

### Unable to Scan with the Machine

Follow the procedure below if you cannot scan with the machine.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The document is not correctly fed from the document feeder.	The document is too small.	The minimum size of the document that can be loaded on the document feeder is A5. Refer to "5 Scan" > "Scanning Procedure" in the User Guide.
	The document type is unsuitable.	The document feeder does not feed irregular sized documents, business cards, transparencies, or thin documents. In addition, the document feeder does not feed documents with tags, paper clips, or tape. Refer to "5 Scan" > "Scanning Procedure" in the User Guide.
	The document guides are in incorrect positions.	Adjust the document guides to the document. Refer to "5 Scan" > "Scanning Procedure" in the User Guide.
	Part of a document is remaining in the document feeder.	Open the document feeder cover, and remove the piece. Refer to "Document Jams" (P.417).
	Documents of different sizes are loaded.	When loading documents of different sizes, be sure to specify [Mixed Sized Originals]. Otherwise, a paper jam will occur. Refer to "5 Scan" > "Layout Adjustment" in the User Guide.

## Unable to Import Scanned Documents to the Computer

Follow the procedure below if you cannot import scanned documents to the computer.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Unable to find the scanner.	The machine is not powered on.	Turn the machine's power switch on.
	The network cable is disconnected from the computer.	Connect the network cable to the computer.
	The network cable is disconnected from the machine.	Connect the network cable to the machine. Refer to "Interface Cables" (P.17).
	The network between the computer and machine is abnormal.	Check with your network administrator.
Unable to open a mailbox.	The mailbox is unregistered.	Register the mailbox. Refer to "Create Mailbox" (P.156).
	The mailbox passcode has been forgotten.	The passcode cannot be retrieved. Set the passcode to [Off], and then set the passcode again. Refer to "Create Mailbox" (P.156).
Unable to import data from the scanner due to a TWAIN transmission error.	The scan driver is not installed.	Install the scan driver.
Operation halts during scanning.	The file size is too large.	Lower the resolution, and import again. Refer to "5 Scan" > "General Settings" in the User Guide.

## Unable to Send a Scanned Document over the Network (FTP/SMB)

Follow the procedure below if you cannot send a scanned document over the network.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
A Transmission Report - Job Undelivered is output.	Unable to transmit due to the error.	Check the "Transmission Results" in the Transmission Report - Job Undelivered. If the error code is listed, refer to "Error Code" (P.338).

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Unable to send data over the network.	The server is not correctly specified.	Correctly specify the server.
	The save destination is not correctly specified.	Correctly specify the save destination.
	When using SMB, the shared name is not correctly specified.	Correctly specify the shared name.
	When using SMB (UNC Format), the save destination is not correctly specified.	Correctly specify the save destination.
	The login name is not entered correctly.	Correctly enter the login name.
	The password is not correctly entered.	Correctly enter the password.
	The time setting on the machine does not agree with that of Windows, when SMB transmission to Windows Server 2003.	Synchronize the time settings of the machine and Windows.
	On Windows Server 2003 or Windows XP, users who do not set a password cannot use SMB transmission.	Follow the steps below to change the settings of network access. 1. Start Windows, and select [Control Panel] > [Administrative Tools] > [Local Security Policy]. 2. Select [Security Settings] > [Local Policies] > [Security Options]. 3. Change [Accounts: Limit local account use of blank passwords to console logon only] to [Disabled].
	SMB transmission is not available when a DFS access path (\\Domain name\Shared name) is designated.	The DFS access path is not supported. Use the UNC path (\\Host name\Shared name) instead.

## Unable to Send E-mail

Follow the procedure below if you cannot send a scanned document using the e-mail feature.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
A Transmission Report - Job Undelivered is output.	Unable to transmit due to an error.	Check the "Transmission Results" in the Transmission Report - Job Undelivered. If the error code is listed, refer to "Error Code" (P.338).
Unable to send e-mail.	The mail address is incorrect.	Enter the correct mail address.
	The data size exceeded the maximum e-mail size.	Change the maximum e-mail size, or lower the resolution. Refer to "Maximum Total Data Size" (P.151), or "5 Scan" in the User Guide.

## The Image is not What was Expected

Follow the procedure below if the image is not what was expected.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The image is dirty.	The document glass or the document cover is dirty.	Clean the document glass or the document cover. Refer to "Cleaning the Document Cover and Document Glass" (P.50).
	The document is a transparent type such as a transparency film.	If the document is transparent, dirt on the document cover will appear on the image. Place a white sheet of paper on the document when scanning.
	The document is colored, rough or a blueprint.	Adjust the copy density or image quality when scanning.
	Glossy printing paper is scanned.	Glossy printing paper easily sticks to the document glass, and shadows are sometimes scanned and reproduced as dirt. Place a transparency such as a transparent film under the document when scanning.
The image is too dark, or too light.	The scan density is set to [Darken], or to [Lighten].	Adjust the scan density. Refer to "5 Scan" > "Advanced Settings" in the User Guide.
	The setting for [Original Type] is inappropriate for the document.	Select an image quality type appropriate for the document. Refer to "5 Scan" > "Advanced Settings" in the User Guide.
Part of the image is missing.	The document is pasted or folded.	The folded or pasted part of the document may not touch the document glass. Place a stack of white sheets on the document to remove the gap.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
The image is not the desired size.	The document glass or the document cover is dirty.	Clean the document glass or the document cover. Refer to "Cleaning the Document Cover and Document Glass" (P.50).
	The document is a transparent type such as a transparency film.	Place a white sheet of paper on the document when scanning.
	The document is misaligned.	Load the document correctly. Refer to "5 Scan" > "Scanning Procedure" in the User Guide.
	The document guides on the document feeder are not in the correct positions.	Load the document correctly, and align the document guides with the document. Refer to "5 Scan" > "Advanced Settings" in the User Guide.
	The document is a non-standard size.	Specify the document size. Refer to "5 Scan" > "Advanced Settings" in the User Guide.
	The document is folded.	Unfold and correctly place the document. Refer to "5 Scan" > "Advanced Settings" in the User Guide.
The image is not color.	[Color Scanning] is set to [Black & White], or [Grayscale].	Select [Color] for [Color Scanning]. Refer to "5 Scan" > "General Settings" in the User Guide.
The image is coarse.	The resolution is too low.	Set the resolution higher. Refer to "5 Scan" > "Layout Adjustment" in the User Guide.
	Image is saved with high compression.	Select a lower compression output file format. Refer to "5 Scan" > "E-mail Options/Filing Options" in the User Guide.
Black-and-white gradation is not reproduced properly.	[Black & White] is selected for [Color Scanning].	Select [Grayscale] for [Color Scanning]. Refer to "5 Scan" > "General Settings" in the User Guide.

## Network-related Problems

This section describes how to solve network related problems.

### When using SMB

The possible causes, check points, and remedies for problems when using SMB are as follows.

#### When you cannot communicate with the printer

Cause	Check point	Remedy
The computer and the machine are using different protocols.	While [Search for Other Computers] ([Start] > [Search] > [Other Computers]) on the computer is showing the printer, [Network Computer] does not show the printer.	Configure the machine and each computer to use the same SMB operational protocol.
The machine belongs to different networks (subnets).	While [Search for Other Computers] ([Start] > [Search] > [Other Computers]) on the computer is showing the printer, [Network Computer] does not show the printer.	When the machine and the computers are on different networks, consult your network administrator.
The host name for the machine is already in use.	Print out [Configuration Report] to confirm if "Repetitive Host Name" is printed in the SMB status information.	Use CentreWare Internet Services to change the host name to a unique name, or initialize the machine settings to their default.

#### When you cannot communicate with the printer or other SMB machines

Cause	Check point	Remedy
If [Auto Master Mode] of SMB is set to [Enabled], the number of machines whose information can be stored is limited. That depends on the network environment.	The machine or other SMB machines cannot be searched from the Network Computers icon.	Confirm the setting of [Auto Master Mode] of SMB. If enabled, uncheck the [Enabled] check box.

#### When you cannot print

Cause	Check point	Remedy
The machine is processing a request from a different computer. (When [Receiving Buffer - SMB] is set to [No Spooling])	Confirm the machine is processing a print job. (A write error dialog should be displayed to indicate that there is no room for the print job.)	Wait till the machine finishes processing the print job, or change the machine setting to [Spool to Memory] or [Spool to Hard Disk].

Cause	Check point	Remedy
Number of connections to the machine exceeded the maximum connections allowed.	Confirm if the machine is processing simultaneous requests (print requests, status queries, etc.) from multiple computers. (A write error dialog should be displayed to indicate that no more remote computers can be connected.)	Wait for a while and retry printing.

### When you cannot delete documents from the [Printer] window

Cause	Check point	Remedy
You are trying to delete all print data displayed in the [Printer] window. (Only the system administrator is allowed to delete all data.)	Confirm whether you are trying to delete the print data from the [Printer] menu. ([Cancel All Documents] menu.)	Select the print data to be deleted, and delete from the [Document] menu in the [Printer] window. (Select [Cancel].)
The print data has a different owner.	Confirm if the names displayed as the owner for the selected print data and the user's login name to Windows are the same.	Login to Windows using the owner's name and then delete the print data.

### Others

Symptom	Remedy
The message "Unknown document name" is displayed at the job name in the job history instead of the correct job name.	Change the setting of the SMB receiving buffer to [Hard Disk Spool] or [Memory Spool].

### When using NetWare

The possible causes, check points, and remedies for problems when using NetWare are as follows.

### When you cannot print

Cause	Check point	Remedy
Network equipment (hubs, etc.) are not supporting automatic frame type detection.	Check the network equipment to see if the data link indicator of the port where the machine is connected is lit. Confirm if the frame types used by the file servers on the network are standardized.	Set the machine's frame type to the same type as the connected file server.

Cause	Check point	Remedy
A problem occurred on the network between the computer and the machine.	Use NWADMIN on the computer to confirm if the machine object can be browsed.*	Replace the faulty network cable installed between the computer and the machine.
Job sender (user or group name) is not specified in [User] for the print queue.	Use NWADMIN from a computer to confirm that the print queue object [User] information lists the job sender (user or group name).*	Re-transmit the print data to the print queue whose [User] information includes the job sender (user or group name).
		Use NWADMIN from a computer to register job sender (user or group name) to [User] of [Print Queue].*
Job transmission to the print queue is prohibited.	Use PCONSOLE to confirm if [User can register to the queue] is set to [Yes] under [Current Queue Status] of [Print Queue].	Use PCONSOLE to set the item to [Yes].
	Use NWADMIN on the computer to confirm if [Recognition] of the print queue has the operator class checked.*	Use NWADMIN on a computer to confirm if [Recognition] of the print queue has each item of the operator class checked.*
Job sender (user or group name) is not specified in the user setting for the print server.	Use NWADMIN from a computer to confirm that the print server's [User] information lists the job sender (user or group name).*	Re-transmit the print data to the print queue whose [User] of [Print Server Information] includes the job sender (user or group name).
		Use NWADMIN from a computer to register job sender (user or group name) to [User] information of the print server.*
The print queue where the user has transmitted the print data, is not assigned to the machine.	Use NWADMIN from a computer to check the print queue [Assignment] to see if the machine is in the printer list serviced by the print queue.*	Re-transmit the print data to the print queue which is assigned to the machine.*
		Use NWADMIN from a computer to add the print queue to the machine.*
Print data format and the print environment settings on the computer do not match.	-	If the computer is running on Windows, set it not to output <Ctrl>-D.
The number of print queues set for the machine exceeds the maximum number of supported queues on the machine.	Use NWADMIN from a computer to check the machine's [Assignment] print queue list to see if the desirable print queue is assigned to the machine.*	Re-transmit the print data to the print queue which is assigned to the machine.*



Cause	Check point	Remedy
The slave file server is not configured. ([Bindery Service] mode)	Use PCONSOLE from a computer to confirm if the slave file server is registered to [Service NetWare Server] on the print server indicated by [Print Server Information].*	Use PCONSOLE from a computer to register the slave file server and propagate the configuration parameters.
The slave file server configuration is mismatched. ([Bindery Service] mode)	Use PCONSOLE from a computer to confirm if the printer type is set to [Defined Elsewhere] under [Print Server Information] > [Printer] > [Printer xxx Environment Settings].*	If not set to [Defined Elsewhere], change to [Defined Elsewhere] and propagate the configuration parameter.*
The form number on the print data and the form number set to the printer do not match.	Use NWADMIN on a computer to select the machine and confirm that the start number of the form in the environment setting matches the number in the print data.*	Use NWADMIN from a computer to match the [Start Form] number in the machine's environment setting to the number in the print data.*
The level settings for the IPX checksum do not match.	Use the set command from the console screen on the file server and confirm whether the IPX checksum is set to level 2.	Enter the following command from the console screen on the file server to set the IPX checksum to either level 0 or level 1. set Enable IPX Checksum=x (x = 0 or 1)
The level settings for the NCP packet signature do not match.	Use the set command from the console screen on the file server and confirm whether the NCP packet signature is set to level 3.	Enter the following command from the console screen on the file server to set the NCP packet signature to either level 0, 1, or 2, and restart the file server. set NCP Packet Signature Option=x (x = 0, 1, or 2)
The default device name is incorrect.	Print out either [Configuration Report] to confirm the last 6 digits (3 bytes) of the Ethernet address.	Set the device name using the correct Ethernet address.
		Set the device name different from the default name.
The directory tree name is not configured.	Print out [Configuration Report] to confirm if the tree name is specified.	Set the tree name.
The context is not set.	Print out [Configuration Report] to confirm if the context is specified.	Set the context.

Cause	Check point	Remedy
Connected to a different printer object.	Use NWADMIN from a computer to confirm if the correct object is assigned using the layout information of the print server.*	Use Driver CD Kit CD-ROM from a computer to correctly set the file server name/tree name/context/active mode.
		Use CentreWare Internet Services from a computer to correctly set the file server name/tree name/context/active mode.
The NetWare port on the machine is not set to "Enable".	Print out [Configuration Report] to confirm if the NetWare port is enabled.	Enable the NetWare port.
The file server is down.	Search for the file server using [Network Neighborhood].	Start the file server.
There is another device on the network with an identical device name.	Switch off the machine and use NWADMIN from a computer to confirm that the status of the printer object is "Standby".	Use the Driver CD Kit CD-ROM from a computer to set a different device name.
The NetWare port is not functioning.	Print out [Configuration Report] to confirm if the network number is left to "0000000" (NetWare server is down) if using IPX/SPX. If using TCP/IP, confirm if the IP address is left to "0.0.0.0" (static address unspecified, or the DHCP server is down).	For the case of IPX/SPX, start the NetWare server. For the case of TCP/IP, either set a static IP address or start the DHCP server.

\*:Refer to NetWare Online Documentation for configuration and operations.

### When "Switch the machine off" is displayed

Cause	Check point	Remedy
A NetWare problem occurred.	-	Restart the machine. Switch on the machine after the display completely disappears.

### When the print output is not as you expected

Cause	Check point	Remedy
The print language of the print data and the print language configured on the machine are different.	Confirm the print language on the machine.	Match the print language of the print data and the print language configured on the machine.

### When no notification is received

The possible causes, check points and remedies when no notification is received on the computer which instructed a print job are as follows.

### ■When the printing problems are not notified

Cause	Check point	Remedy
The user is not listed on the print server notification recipients.	Use PCONSOLE on the computer to check if the job user or user's group has been registered under [Print Server Information] > [Printer] > [Printer xxx Environment Settings] > [Notify].	Add the name of the job user or the name of the user's group to [Notify].

### ■When the completion of the job is not notified

Cause	Check point	Remedy
The [Notify] option is not specified when the computer transmitted the print data.	Confirm if the [Notify] option is specified when transmitting the print data.	Specify the [Notify] option when transmitting the print data.
Netware command [CASTOFF] has been issued on the computer.	-	Issue the NetWare command [CASTON] on the computer.

## When using TCP/IP

The possible causes, check points, and remedies for problems when using TCP/IP (LPD) are as follows.

### Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2008

#### ■When you cannot print

Cause	Check point	Remedy
The IP address is incorrect.	Request your network administrator to check the machine's IP address.	Set a correct IP address on the machine.
The volume of the print data of an instruction from a computer exceeded the maximum receivable volume when the LPD spool is set to memory spool.	Confirm the memory amount for the LPD spool and compare against the volume of the print data transmitted by an instruction.	If the print data is one file and still exceeds the memory amount, divide the file to make one instruction smaller than the memory.
		If the print data is multiple files and exceeds the memory amount, decrease the number of files to print at once.
An unrecoverable error occurred during the printing process.	Confirm if any error messages are displayed on the control panel.	Restart the machine. Switch on the machine after the display completely disappears.

Cause	Check point	Remedy
The machine is not set to the transport protocol which matches the protocol on the computer.	Confirm the transport protocol selected on the machine.	Select the transport protocol which matches the computer's protocol.
The data format the machine is trying to process does not match the data format of the print data transmitted from a computer.	-	Set not to output Ctrl-D.

■When the print output is not as you expected

Cause	Check point	Remedy
Selected print language on the machine does not match the print language of the print data.	Confirm the selected print language on the machine and the print language of the print data.	Select the print language on the machine to match the print data.
The computer is not using the print driver supplied with the machine (using another company's print driver).	Confirm if the print driver on the computer is the one supplied with the machine.	Select the print driver supplied with the machine on the computer. If it does not appear on the selection list, install the print driver supplied with the machine and then select it. The operation is not guaranteed if another print driver is used.

Mac OS X 10.3.9/10.4.10/10.5

■When you cannot print

Cause	Check point	Remedy
The LPD port is not enabled.	Confirm whether or not the LPD port is enabled.	When you use the printer detected by Bonjour, the LPD port is set to enable.

## When using EtherTalk

The possible symptoms, causes, and remedies for problems when using EtherTalk are as follows.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Documents are printed by a printer that is not selected.	If a printer that is assigned the same printer name has already existed on the network, one of the printer names is automatically changed during boot-up. Therefore, depending on the timing of powering on the printer, the name of the printer assigned may be different from the printer name used before. As a result, the printer name is automatically changed, and documents are printed by a printer that is not selected.	A printer that is assigned the same printer name may exist on the network. Confirm the printer name. If duplicated, change the printer name.
The printer cannot be browsed from clients.	If the printer is turned on before it is connected to a network, clients may not be able to identify the printer name and therefore cannot browse the printer.	Turn the printer on after connecting to the network. If the printer is activated while disconnected from the network, turn the machine off, connect it to the network, and then turn the printer on again.

## CentreWare Internet Services Problems

The possible symptoms and remedies for problems when using CentreWare Internet Services are as follows.

Symptom	Remedy
Cannot connect to CentreWare Internet Services	Is the machine working properly? Check if the machine is powered on.
	Is Internet Services (HTTP) port activated? Print out [Configuration Report] to confirm.
	Is the Internet address correctly entered? Confirm the Internet address again. If the problem persists, enter an IP address to make a connection.
	Is a proxy server being used? Depending on the proxy server, connections may not be possible. Set the browser to "Not using proxy server" or set that particular address to "Not using a proxy server".
The "Please wait" message is displayed throughout.	Wait for a while as instructed. If the status does not change, click the [Refresh] button. If this does not have any effect, check if the machine is working properly.

Symptom	Remedy
The [Refresh] button does not work.	Are you using a specified browser? Refer to "Installation of CentreWare Internet Services" (P.194) to confirm if your browser is supported.
Selecting the menu on the left frame does not update the right frame contents.	
The screen display is distorted.	Change the window size for the browser.
The latest information is not displayed.	Click the [Refresh] button.
Characters are not correctly displayed.	Use Western European language command. Or, do not use the single byte Kana characters.
The [Apply] button does not reflect the new settings.	Are all entered values correct? If a value outside of the permitted range is entered, the update will automatically be made within the range.
	This may occur when an user operation on the control panel is being performed or has just been completed. When the automatic reset function is configured, any setting by CentreWare Internet Services is not applied until setting time passes. Wait for a while as instructed.
Clicking the [Apply] button causes the browser to display "The server has returned ineffective or unrecognizable response" or "No data" message.	Has a correct password been supplied? The entries for Password and Confirm Password do not match. Enter the correct password.
	Restart the machine.
Cannot delete jobs.	Wait for a while and click the [Refresh] button.

## E-Mail Features Problems

This section describes symptoms and recommended remedies for errors that may occur while using the e-mail notification service, the E-mail Printing, and the E-mail feature.

Symptom	Remedy
Cannot receive E-mail (E-mail Printing)	Is the e-mail address for the machine configured?
	Is [Receive E-mail] set to [Enabled]?
	Are IP addresses for the SMTP server and POP3 server (if POP3 is selected for the incoming mail protocol) configured correctly?
	Are the POP3 user name and password entered correctly?
	Is [Domain Filtering] imposed? Confirm if your own domain is included in the permitted domain using CentreWare Internet Services.
	Are the SMTP server and/or POP3 server operating properly? Check with your network administrator.

Symptom	Remedy
Cannot transmit e-mail (e-mail notification service and E-mail)	Is the E-mail address for the machine configured?
	Is [E-mail Notification Service] set to [Enable]? (For mail notice)
	Is [Send E-mail] set to [Enabled]?
	Is the IP address for the SMTP server configured correctly?
	Are the notification items for transmission set correctly? (For mail notice) Confirm the settings on the property screen using CentreWare Internet Services.
	Is the destination address entered correctly?
	Is the SMTP server operating properly? Check with your network administrator.

## Internet/Intranet Connection Problems

The possible causes and remedies for problems when connecting to the Internet or intranet.

### When connection to the Internet/Intranet fails

Cause	Remedy
The authentication feature used on the remote server is not supported by the machine.	Only Basic Authentication is supported by the machine. The machine does not support NTLM/digest. For security purposes, use the authentication feature using SSL.
The IP address is incorrect.	Confirm the IP address. If the IP address is not correct, either set the static IP address or resolve the IP address using DHCP or Autonet.
The IP gateway address is incorrect.	Set the correct IP gateway address when connecting to the proxy server, or a Web server through the IP gateway.
The subnet mask is incorrect.	Set the correct subnet mask corresponding to the environment you use.
The DNS server address is incorrect.	Confirm the DNS server address.
The DNS server selected cannot resolve the address.	Select a DNS server that can resolve the address. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When connecting through the proxy server Set the IP address of a DNS server that can resolve the address of the proxy server.</li> <li>When connecting not through the proxy server Set the IP address of a DNS server that can resolve the destination address.</li> </ul>

Cause	Remedy
The address that does not go through a proxy server is incorrect.	<p>Confirm if only addresses not through the proxy server are set. Even if addresses not through the proxy server are set with the FQDN format, if a server is directly accessed using its IP address, the registered server is not excluded. Set an address for the IP address that does not go through the proxy server.</p> <p>Even if the address that does not go through the proxy server is directly designated, if a server is accessed using the FQDN format, the registered server is not excluded. Set an IP address with the FQDN format that does not go through the proxy server.</p>
The desired server, or the proxy server goes down.	Confirm if the desired server or the proxy server runs properly.
The network cable is not connected, or broken.	Check if the network cable is properly connected. We recommend spanning-tree configuration, with which network disconnection rarely occurs.
Communication cannot be established due to overloading of the server application.	Wait for a while and try to access again.
An error occurs that is not displayed on the control panel.	When an error occurs while a background processing is running, no message appears on the control panel. Display the [Job Status] screen, or print the job history report to confirm the result.
Cannot access to the proxy server, firewall, or a Web server due to its access control.	<p>The following types of access control are used. Confirm the configured access control.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Address (port) restriction</li> <li>• SSL restriction</li> <li>• User access restriction (including access right levels)</li> <li>• Content block</li> <li>• Scheme restriction (cannot use HTTP etc.)</li> <li>• Transfer data size restriction</li> <li>• Method restriction (cannot use POST etc.)</li> <li>• HTTP header restriction (only accepting a specified browser etc.)</li> <li>• Time restriction (only available during a specific period of time etc.)</li> </ul>



### When connection to a desired Web server fails

Cause	Remedy
The settings to use the proxy server is not configured.	In the environment using the proxy server, the machine should be configured to use the proxy server. Otherwise, you cannot connect to a desired Web server. Make the settings to use the proxy server.
The settings to use the proxy server is configured even though the environment does not go through the proxy server.	In the environment that does not use the proxy server such as connecting to an intranet, do not make the settings to use the proxy server.
The proxy server address is incorrect.	When the settings to use the proxy server are configured, you cannot connect to a desired Web server unless the IP address of the proxy server is correct. Set the correct IP address of the proxy server.
When the proxy server requires authentication, cannot connect to the server because the user name or password is incorrect.	Set the user name and password to the machine that are allowed to connect to the proxy server.

### IPv4 and IPv6 Connection Problems

This section describes symptoms and remedies for errors that may occur when an IPv4 or IPv6 address is used for connection.

#### Unable to connect using an IPv4 address

Symptom	Remedy
When 0 (zero) is prepended to the head of a value, connection fails. (Example: 124.249.010.033)	Do not prepend 0 (zero) to each value of an IPv4 address.

#### Unable to connect using an IPv6 address

Symptom	Remedy
A connection cannot be made to the machine with the link-local address.	When you specify the machine's link-local address, a scope ID must be appended to the address. For example, when you use Internet Explorer 7 on Windows Vista to access the address "fe80::203:baff:fe48:9010", the Ethernet adapter local area connection number (e.g., 8) must be appended to the address as follows: fe80::203:baff:fe48:9010%8
The machine cannot connect to a Windows Vista computer.	Assign an IPv6 address manually to the Windows Vista computer, and then register the IPv6 address with the machine to permit connection from the computer.
A device outside the router cannot be searched.	When searching a device outside the router via SMB, directly specify the address. Multicasting is supported only within a local link (FF02::1).

Symptom	Remedy
When SSL is enabled, the address to access CentreWare Internet Services "http://[IPv6 address]" entered on a web browser is not redirected to "https://[IPv6 address]".	When SSL is enabled, directly specify "https://[IPv6 address]".

### Unable to print using an IPv6 address

Symptom	Remedy
On an IPv6 network without a DNS server, Windows Vista computers cannot be connected to a Windows shared printer.	Register the computer name of the machine on the "hosts" file stored in Windows Vista computers. In general, the "hosts" file is found in the following folder: C:\Windows\system32\driver\etc\
IPv6 communication cannot be made with Netware.	NetWare does not support IPv6 communication. Use IPv4 for NetWare.
IPv6 communication cannot be made with Bonjour.	Bonjour does not support IPv6 communication. Use IPv4 for Bonjour.

### Unable to scan using an IPv6 address

Symptom	Remedy
When the machine is configured with a link-local address only, file transfer fails.	Assign a global address to the machine.
In IPv6 environment without a DNS server, scan data cannot be transferred using the Scan to PC (SMB) service.	Scan data cannot be transferred if a destination server is specified using the computer name. Use the IPv6 format to specify the server.
The machine does not work properly if the Internet Fax direct destination is specified in IPv6 address literal format, such as csw@[ipv6:2001:db8::1]	In IPv6 environment, use a DNS server and specify a destination using FQDN.
The machine does not work properly if the mail address for E-mail service is specified in IPv6 address literal format, such as csw@[ipv6:2001:db8::1]	In IPv6 environment, use a DNS server and specify an E-mail address using FQDN.

**Other problems on IPv6 addresses**

Symptom	Remedy
In an IPv6 network with no DNS server installed, authentication fails if an SMB authentication server is specified using the computer name.	Directly specify the IPv6 address to specify the computer name of an authentication server.
IPv6 addresses are not correctly recorded on job logs.	Use an IPv4 network for correct logging.

## Error Code

This section explains error codes.

If an error caused printing to end abnormally, or a malfunction occurred in the machine, then an error message code (\*\*\*-\*\*\*) is displayed.

For faxing, an error code is also displayed on [Activity Reports] and [Transmission Report - Job Undelivered].

Refer to the following table for error codes to rectify problems.

**Important** • If an error code is displayed, any print data remaining on the machine and information stored in the machine's memory is not warranted.

If an error code appears that is not listed in the table below, or if an error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Errors are classified into the following categories.

C: Copy

P: Print

F: Fax

S: Scan

M: Mail

O: Others

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>002-770</b>				O		O	[Cause] Unable to process the job template due to insufficient hard disk space. [Remedy] Remove unnecessary data from the hard disk to increase free disk space.
<b>003-701</b>	O			O			[Cause] A digital code is embedded in the document to restrict duplication. [Remedy] Use a document that no digital code is embedded in.
<b>003-702</b>	O			O			[Cause] The scanning ratio set to the front and back sides of the document does not match when making 2-sided copies using Build Job feature. [Remedy] Make sure to match the ratio of the front and back sides.
<b>003-750</b>	O						[Cause] Unable to store any documents using the 2-Sided Book Copy feature. [Remedy] Check the 2-Sided Book Copy settings. Refer to "3 Copy" > "Layout Adjustment" in the User Guide.
<b>003-751</b>	O			O			[Cause] Unable to process, because the specified document area is too small. [Remedy] Increase the resolution or scan area.
<b>003-752</b>				O			[Cause] The mixed sized document was to be scanned at 600dpi with Color/2 Sided. [Remedy] Set [Resolution] to [400dpi] or lower, and try again.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>003-753</b>				O			[Cause] The mixed sized document was to be scanned with high resolution using the 2-sided feature. [Remedy] Set [Resolution] to [200dpi], and try again.
<b>003-754</b> <b>003-755</b>				O			[Cause] An error occurred in the document feeder. [Remedy] Execute the job again.
<b>003-756</b>			O				[Cause] The fax document is all blank. [Remedy] Check whether or not the document is blank or the document is correctly loaded.
<b>003-757</b>				O			[Cause] The mixed sized document was to be scanned with high resolution using the 2-sided feature. [Remedy] Set [Resolution] to [300dpi] or lower, and try again.
<b>003-760</b>			O	O			[Cause] An incompatible combination of features are specified as document scan conditions. [Remedy] Check the selected options.
<b>003-761</b>	O	O					[Cause] The paper size of the tray selected for auto tray is different from the paper size of the tray selected for Auto Tray Switching. [Remedy] Change the paper size for the tray, or change the [Paper Type Priority] settings.
<b>003-764</b>	O						[Cause] The scanned documents contains only one page for form overlay function. [Remedy] Make sure the document contains at least two pages.
<b>003-780</b>			O				[Cause] Failed to compress the scanned document. [Remedy] Reduce the resolution or the ratio for [Reduce/Enlarge] to decrease the data size, or split the data to send it separately.
<b>003-795</b>	O						[Cause] When enlarging/reducing a scanned document to the specified paper size, the reduction/enlargement ratio value is out of allowed range. [Remedy] Take one of the following actions: • Manually enter a reduction/enlargement ratio. • Change the paper size.
<b>003-981</b>	O						[Cause] For a mixed size document, the stapling feature is available for paper with the same width. [Remedy] Cancel stapling or align the paper width for stapling.
<b>005-210</b>	O			O			[Cause] The document feeder settings failed. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on, then perform the same operation again.
<b>005-275</b> <b>005-280</b> <b>005-283</b> <b>005-284</b> <b>005-285</b> <b>005-286</b>	O			O		O	[Cause] An error occurred in the document feeder. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
012-211 012-212 012-213 012-221 012-223 012-224 012-231 012-241 012-242 012-243 012-244						O	[Cause] Finisher malfunction [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
012-247 012-249 012-252 012-253						O	[Cause] Finisher malfunction [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
012-254						O	[Cause] The sensor was activated because paper output to the finisher was removed before the finisher tray lowered and completely stopped in position. Or, there is a foreign object under the finisher tray. [Remedy] If there is any foreign object under the finisher tray, remove it and then turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
012-255 012-256 012-257 012-258 012-259 012-260 012-262 012-263 012-267 012-268 012-269 012-280 012-281 012-282 012-283 012-284 012-286 012-287 012-291 012-295 012-296						O	[Cause] Finisher malfunction [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>013-210</b> <b>013-211</b> <b>013-212</b> <b>013-213</b> <b>013-220</b>						O	[Cause] Finisher did not work correctly. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on, and perform the same operation again.
<b>016-210</b> <b>016-211</b> <b>016-212</b> <b>016-213</b> <b>016-214</b> <b>016-215</b> <b>016-216</b> <b>016-217</b> <b>016-218</b> <b>016-219</b>						O	[Cause] Software error [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>016-220</b> <b>016-221</b> <b>016-222</b> <b>016-223</b> <b>016-224</b> <b>016-225</b> <b>016-226</b> <b>016-227</b> <b>016-228</b>	O			O			[Cause] An error occurred in the document feeder. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>016-229</b> <b>016-230</b>						O	[Cause] Software error [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>016-240</b>	O			O			[Cause] An error occurred in the document feeder. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>016-405</b>						O	[Cause] An error occurred in the certification database. [Remedy] Initialize the certificate by selecting [Start] at [Delete All Certificate/Initialize Settings] under [Tools] > [System Settings] > [Common Service Settings] > [Maintenance]. Refer to "Maintenance" (P.98).
<b>016-450</b>						O	[Cause] The SMB host name already exists. [Remedy] Change the host name. Refer to "Host Name" (P.118).
<b>016-453</b>						O	[Cause] Failed to update the IPv6 address and hostname for the DNS server. [Remedy] Check if the address of the DNS server is correctly set on the machine.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-454</b>						O	[Cause] Unable to retrieve the IP address from DNS. [Remedy] Check the DNS configuration and IP address retrieve setting.  Refer to "Protocol Settings" (P.115).
<b>016-455</b>						O	[Cause] Connection to the SNTP server was timed out. [Remedy] Check the network cable connection and the IP address of the SNTP server.  Refer to "Machine Clock/Timers" (P.89).
<b>016-456</b>						O	[Cause] Received from the SNTP server a message saying that it was not synchronized with the standard time source. [Remedy] Check the SNTP server settings.  Refer to "Machine Clock/Timers" (P.89).
<b>016-503</b>					O		[Cause] Unable to resolve the SMTP server name when sending e-mail. [Remedy] Check on the CentreWare Internet Services if the SMTP server settings are correct. Also, check the DNS server settings.
<b>016-504</b>					O		[Cause] Unable to resolve the POP3 server name when sending e-mail. [Remedy] Check on CentreWare Internet Services if the POP3 server settings are correct. Also, check the DNS server settings.
<b>016-505</b>					O		[Cause] Unable to login to the POP3 server when sending e-mail. [Remedy] Check on CentreWare Internet Services if the user name and password used in the POP3 server are correct.
<b>016-513</b>				O			[Cause] A time-out occurred while the machine was waiting for a response from the SMTP server. [Remedy] The server or network may be overloaded. Wait for a while, and try again.
<b>016-514</b>		O					[Cause] An error occurred during processing of an XPS document. [Remedy] If an error occurred while printing from a driver which supports XPS, print from the application using another print driver (PCL, etc.). If an error occurred while direct printing an XPS document (such as ContentsBridge Utility and E-mail), print using the print driver (PCL, etc.) from XPS Document Viewer. "XPS" stands for XML Paper Specification.
<b>016-515</b>		O					[Cause] There was insufficient memory during processing of an XPS document. [Remedy] Use one of the following methods to resolve the problem. •Set [Image Quality] to [Standard]. •Increase the amount of memory. •Print using the print driver (PCL, etc.) from XPS Document Viewer.  For details on [Print Mode], refer to the online help for the print driver.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.



Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-516</b>		O					<p>[Cause] The PrintTicket included in the XPS document includes an invalid description or a format not supported by the machine.</p> <p>[Remedy] Confirm whether there is a problem with the way the application that sent the print job was used, or the content of the print instruction. If there is no problem, confirm the operation of the application with not us but the company that created the application that sent the print job. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.</p>
<b>016-517</b>		O					<p>[Cause] There is an error with the content described in the PostScript file.</p> <p>[Remedy] Print with the PostScript driver. Furthermore, modify ProcessColorModel described in the PostScript file so that the color mode is not changed.</p>
<b>016-518</b>						O	<p>[Cause] PS booklet and Watermark were specified at the same time.</p> <p>[Remedy] Specifying a combination of PS booklet and Watermark is not possible. Cancel one of them.</p>
<b>016-519</b>						O	<p>[Cause] The number of pages reached the specified maximum number of pages, and the print job is terminated.</p> <p>[Remedy] Have the system administrator change the maximum limit of printable pages.</p>
<b>016-522</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server SSL authentication error. Unable to get an SSL client certificate.</p> <p>[Remedy] The LDAP server is requesting an SSL client certificate. Set an SSL client certificate on the machine.</p>
<b>016-523</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server SSL authentication error. The server certificate data is incorrect.</p> <p>[Remedy] The machine cannot trust the SSL certificate of the LDAP server. Register the root certificate for the LDAP server's SSL certificate to the machine.</p>
<b>016-524</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server SSL authentication error. The server certificate will expire soon.</p> <p>[Remedy] Change the SSL certificate of the LDAP server to a valid one. This error can be cleared if you select [Off] for [LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication] under [SSL/TLS Settings] on the machine; however, note that selecting this option will not ensure the validity of the LDAP server.</p>
<b>016-525</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server SSL authentication error. The server certificate has expired.</p> <p>[Remedy] Change the SSL certificate of the LDAP server to a valid one. This error can be cleared if you select [Off] for [LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication] under [SSL/TLS Settings] on the machine; however, note that selecting this option will not ensure the validity of the LDAP server.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-526</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server SSL authentication error. The server name does not match the certificate.</p> <p>[Remedy] Set the same LDAP server address to the machine and to the SSL certificate of the LDAP server. This error can be cleared if you select [Off] for [LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication] under [SSL/TLS Settings] on the machine; however, note that selecting this option will not ensure the validity of the LDAP server.</p>
<b>016-527</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server SSL authentication error. This is an SSL authentication internal error.</p> <p>[Remedy] Software has a problem. Contact our Customer Support Center.</p>
<b>016-529</b>						O	<p>[Cause] An error occurred while connected to the Remote Download server. There was no response from the server within the specified time (60 seconds).</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the network connection. Check whether the Remote Download server is correctly configured on the network.</p>
<b>016-533</b>						O	<p>[Cause] Kerberos server authentication protocol error</p> <p>[Remedy] The time difference between the machine and the Kerberos server exceeded the clock skew limit value set on the Kerberos server. Check if the clocks on the machine and Kerberos server are correctly set. Also check the settings of the summer time and the time zone as well on the machine and Kerberos server.</p>
<b>016-534</b>						O	<p>[Cause] Kerberos server authentication protocol error</p> <p>[Remedy] The realm set on the machine does not exist on the Kerberos server, or the Kerberos server address set on the machine is invalid for connection. Check if the realm name and the server address have been correctly set on the machine. For connection to Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 Server, specify the realm name in uppercase.</p>
<b>016-535</b>						O	<p>[Cause] The specified file does not exist on the Remote Download server.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the file.</p>
<b>016-536</b>						O	<p>[Cause] An error occurred when accessing the DNS prior to connecting to the Remote Download server.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the connection with the DNS. Also check whether the Remote Download server name is registered to the DNS.</p>
<b>016-537</b>						O	<p>[Cause] Could not connect to the Remote Download server. The port of the destination Remote Download server is not open.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the port in the network settings.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-538</b>						O	[Cause] An error occurred when writing the remote download file to the hard disk drive. The file obtained from the Remote Download server could not be written to the hard disk drive. [Remedy] Check the amount of available space, and delete files that are no longer required. Alternatively, replace the hard disk drive.
<b>016-539</b>						O	[Cause] Kerberos server authentication protocol error [Remedy] An error occurred on the software. Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>016-546</b>						O	[Cause] A general user tried to obtain the information of another user. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>016-559</b>						O	[Cause] A remote download parameter error occurred. An invalid value is set for essential system data. [Remedy] Check the settings for essential system data.
<b>016-564</b>						O	[Cause] Failed to authenticate the Remote Download server. [Remedy] Check the login name and password to access the Remote Download server. If the problem persists, contact the Customer Support Center or your dealer.
<b>016-570</b>		O					[Cause] Unable to print because of insufficient memory for job tickets. [Remedy] Increase the size of memory for job tickets in [Job Ticket Memory] of [Print Service Settings] in [System Settings], turn the machine off and on, and then start the print job again. For details on [Job Ticket Memory], refer to "Job Ticket Memory" (P.130).
<b>016-571</b>		O					[Cause] Unable to print because the content of the job ticket is incorrect. [Remedy] Check whether there is a problem with the print settings, correct the print settings, and send the print job again.
<b>016-572</b>		O					[Cause] Unable to print because the paper attribute specified for the job ticket is for paper (size, paper quality, or paper color) that cannot be used on this machine. [Remedy] Check whether the paper specified for printing can be used by this machine.
<b>016-573</b>		O					[Cause] Unable to print because the content of the job ticket is incorrect. [Remedy] Check whether the printer driver is correctly installed on the computer that specified printing, whether the operating conditions are satisfied, and whether the driver is one that can be used with this machine.
<b>016-574</b>				O			[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because the host or server name of the FTP server could not be resolved. [Remedy] Check the connection to the DNS server. Check if the FTP server name is registered correctly on the DNS server.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-575</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because the DNS server address was not registered.</p> <p>[Remedy] Specify the correct DNS server address. Or, specify the destination FTP server using its IP address.</p>
<b>016-576</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because it could not connect to the FTP server.</p> <p>[Remedy] Ensure that both the destination FTP server and the machine are available for network communications, by checking the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•The IP address of the server is set correctly.</li> <li>•The network cables are plugged in securely.</li> </ul>
<b>016-577</b>				O			<p>[Cause] Unable to connect to the FTP service of the destination server.</p> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Check if the FTP service of the server is activated.</li> <li>•Check if the FTP port number of the server is correctly registered on the machine.</li> </ul>
<b>016-578</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature due to unsuccessful login to the FTP server.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check if the login name (user name) and password are correct.</p>
<b>016-579</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because the scanned image could not be saved in the FTP server after connection.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check if the FTP server's save location is correct.</p>
<b>016-580</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because the file or folder name on the FTP server could not be retrieved after connection.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the access privilege to the FTP server.</p>
<b>016-581</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because the suffix of the file or folder name exceeded the limit after connection.</p> <p>[Remedy] Change the file name, or change the destination folder on the FTP server. Or, move or delete files from the destination folder.</p>
<b>016-582</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because file creation was not successful on the FTP server after connection.</p> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Check if the specified file name can be used in the save location.</li> <li>•Check if enough space is available in the save location.</li> </ul>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-583</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because lock folder creation was not successful on the FTP server after connection.</p> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•If any lock directory (.LCK) exists in the forwarding destination, delete it manually, then try executing the job again.</li> <li>•Check if the specified folder name can be used in the save location.</li> <li>•Check if the same folder name exists in the save location.</li> <li>•Check if enough space is available in the save location.</li> </ul>
<b>016-584</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because folder creation was not successful on the FTP server after connection.</p> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Check if the specified folder name can be used in the save location.</li> <li>•Check if the same folder name exists in the save location.</li> <li>•Check if enough space is available in the save location.</li> </ul>
<b>016-585</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because file deletion was not successful on the FTP server after connection.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the access privilege to the FTP server.</p>
<b>016-586</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because lock folder deletion was not successful on the FTP server after connection.</p> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Check the access privilege to the FTP server.</li> <li>•If any lock directory (.LCK) exists in the forwarding destination, delete it manually, then retry executing the job.</li> </ul>
<b>016-587</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because folder deletion was not successful on the FTP server after connection.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the access privilege to the FTP server.</p>
<b>016-588</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because the data could not be written in the FTP server after connection.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check if enough space is available in the save location.</p>
<b>016-589</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because the data could not be read from the FTP server after connection.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the access privilege to the FTP server.</p>
<b>016-590</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because the file could not be saved in the FTP server; [File Name Conflict] may be set to [Cancel Job].</p> <p>[Remedy] Set [File Name Conflict] to any item other than [Cancel Job].</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-591</b>				O			[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because the filing policy was invalid. [Remedy] When [File Name Conflict] is set to [Change Name and Save], make sure the file format is not Multiple-Page.
<b>016-592</b>				O			[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because access to the NEXTNAME.DAT file was not successful after connection to the FTP server. [Remedy] When [File Name Conflict] is set to [Change Name and Save], check the NEXTNAME.DAT file is correct.
<b>016-593</b>				O			[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because an internal error occurred after connection to the FTP server. [Remedy] Try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>016-594</b> <b>016-595</b> <b>016-596</b>				O			[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature because a network error occurred. [Remedy] Try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>016-597</b>				O			[Cause] The transfer processing using [FTP] of the [Scan to PC] feature was cancelled after connection to the FTP server, because the same file or folder name existed. [Remedy] Make sure that the multiple machines are not accessing the same folder on the server, then try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>016-700</b>		O					[Cause] The job was suspended because the number of the digits for the Security Print or Charge Print passcode set on the print driver was less than the value specified in [Min. Passcode Length for Stored Job] on the machine. [Remedy] On the print driver, set the passcode string equal to or longer than the value specified in [Min. Passcode Length for Stored Job].
<b>016-702</b>		O					[Cause] Unable to process print data due to insufficient print page buffer. [Remedy] Take one of the following actions: •Set [Image Quality] to [Standard]. •Increase the print page buffer size. •Add on memory.  For information about the Print Mode and the Page Print Mode, refer to the print driver's online help. For information about memory, refer to "Allocate Memory" (P.129).

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-703</b>					O		<p>[Cause] The hard disk has not been installed or the machine received e-mail which specified an invalid mailbox number.</p> <p>[Remedy] For error upon fax or Internet Fax transmission: Contact our Customer Support Center. For error upon e-mail/fax/Internet Fax reception: Take one of the following actions:  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Register the specified mailbox number, and request the sender to send the e-mail/fax/Internet Fax again.</li> <li>•Request the sender to send to an available mailbox.</li> </ul> If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.  For error upon using the Delayed Print feature:  Check if the hard disk has been installed on the machine.  If the Delayed Print feature is disabled with the hard disk installed, contact our Customer Support Center. If the hard disk is not installed, set [Hard Disk] to [Off] on the [Printer] tab of the print driver. An HDD Extension Kit is required for the Delayed Print feature.</p>
<b>016-704</b>						O	<p>[Cause] The mailbox is full, and hard disk capacity is insufficient.</p> <p>[Remedy] Remove unnecessary documents from the mailbox, and save the document.</p> <p>Refer to "6 Send from Mailbox" &gt; "Checking/Operating Documents in a Mailbox" in the User Guide.</p>
<b>016-705</b>		O		O			<p>[Cause] One of the following may be the cause:  1) You have specified the mailbox registry for the scanned document to the machine. However, optional Scanner Kit is not installed.  2) You have not used the print driver for this machine.  3) The machine received a Secure Print, Mailbox Print, Charge Print, or Private Print job with no HDD Extension Kit installed.</p> <p>[Remedy] For 1), press the &lt;All Services&gt; button, and check if [Scan to PC] is displayed. If [Scan to PC] is displayed, then check if the scanned document can be stored in a mailbox. If unable to store in the mailbox, install optional Scanner Kit.  For 2), use the print driver appropriate for this machine.  For 3), Check if the HDD Extension Kit is installed on the machine.  If the HDD Extension Kit is not installed:  - If you do not need to use the feature, select [off] under [Hard Disk] on the [Printer] tab of the print driver.  - If you need to use the feature, install the HDD Extension Kit.  If the HDD Extension Kit is installed:  - If you need to use the feature, select [on] under [Hard Disk] on the [Printer] tab of the print driver.  If the error persists even after following the listed solutions, contact our Customer Support Center.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-706</b>		O					<p>[Cause] The hard disk space is insufficient because Secure Print users exceeded the allowed number.</p> <p>[Remedy] Remove unnecessary documents from the machine, and delete unnecessary Secure Print users.</p> <p>For information about user deletion of Secure Print documents, refer to "9 Job Status" &gt; "Printing and Deleting Stored Documents", and about deleting documents, refer to "6 Send from Mailbox" &gt; "Checking/Operating Documents in a Mailbox" in the User Guide.</p>
<b>016-707</b>		O					<p>[Cause] Unable to print with the Sample Set feature because a HDD Extension Kit is unattached or defective.</p> <p>[Remedy] A HDD Extension Kit is required for the Sample Set feature. If the HDD Extension Kit is defective, contact our Customer Support Center.</p>
<b>016-708</b>	O						<p>[Cause] Unable to annotate due to insufficient hard disk space.</p> <p>[Remedy] Remove unnecessary data from the hard disk to increase free disk space.</p>
<b>016-710</b>		O					<p>[Cause] Unable to register the Delayed Print document because HDD Extension Kit is unattached.</p> <p>[Remedy] HDD Extension Kit is required to use the Delayed Print feature.</p>
<b>016-711</b>					O	O	<p>[Cause] The upper limit for the e-mail size has been exceeded.</p> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following measures, and then try sending the mail again.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Reduce the number of sheets of the document.</li> <li>•Lower the resolution with [Resolution].</li> <li>•Reduce the magnification with [Reduce/Enlarge].</li> <li>•Ask the machine administrator to increase the value set for [Maximum E-mail Size].</li> </ul>
<b>016-712</b>				O			<p>[Cause] Unable to process, because the specified document area is too small.</p> <p>[Remedy] Increase the resolution or scan area.</p>
<b>016-713</b>						O	<p>[Cause] The input passcode does not agree with the passcode set to the mailbox.</p> <p>[Remedy] Input the correct passcode.</p>
<b>016-714</b>						O	<p>[Cause] The specified mailbox does not exist.</p> <p>[Remedy] Create a new mailbox or specify an existing mailbox.</p>
<b>016-716</b>		O					<p>[Cause] Unable to spool TIFF file due to insufficient hard disk space.</p> <p>[Remedy] Remove unnecessary documents and users from the machine, and then install an HDD Extension Kit. For information on installing an HDD Extension Kit, contact our Customer Support Center.</p> <p>Refer to "9 Job Status" &gt; "Printing and Deleting Stored Documents" in the User Guide.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.



Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-717</b>			O				<p>[Cause] Unable to create a "transmission report (undelivered)" or "transmission report" because transmission result information required for creating the report is not stored in the machine's memory.</p> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Execute the jobs for large size Internet Fax documents (about 2GB) by splitting each document to minimize memory or HDD usage.</li> <li>•If many scan or Internet Fax documents are being processed, wait to execute a new job until the jobs are completed.</li> <li>•After the job that you want to check in a report is completed, do not execute 200 or more jobs to have the job recorded on a report.</li> </ul>
<b>016-718</b>		O					<p>[Cause] Unable to process the PCL print data due to insufficient memory.</p> <p>[Remedy] Reduce the resolution, or cancel 2-sided printing or N up, and then print again.</p>
<b>016-719</b>		O					<p>[Cause] Unable to process the PCL print data due to insufficient print page buffer.</p> <p>[Remedy] Increase the size of the print page buffer.</p>
<b>016-720</b>		O					<p>[Cause] An invalid command is included in PCL print data.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the print data and try to print again.</p>
<b>016-721</b>		O				O	<p>[Cause] An error occurred during print processing. Probable causes are as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Printing was instructed by automatic tray selection when [Paper Type Priority] is set to [Auto Paper Off] for all paper in the [Common Service Settings].</li> <li>2. ESC/P-K command error</li> </ol> <p>[Remedy] For Cause 1: When printing by automatic tray selection, set one of the paper types to a setting other than [Auto Tray switching Off] in [Paper Type Priority]. For Cause 2: Check the print data.</p> <p>Refer to "Paper Type Priority" (P.94).</p>
<b>016-722</b>		O					<p>[Cause] The specified staple position or the specified paper size is not supported in the finisher.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the staple position and the paper size, and try to print again.</p>
<b>016-723</b>		O					<p>[Cause] The specified punch position or the specified paper size is not supported in the finisher.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the punch position and the paper size, and try to print again.</p>
<b>016-724</b>		O					<p>[Cause] The specified staple and punch position combination is unsupported.</p> <p>[Remedy] Specify the staple and punch positions to be on the same side, and try to print again.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-725</b>			O				<p>[Cause] A scanned document stored in a mailbox was to be sent by fax using the Job Flow feature, but the mailbox document could not be converted to fax data.</p> <p>[Remedy] Do not use the Job Flow feature. Simply scan the document through the machine's [Fax] screen to send it by fax.</p>
<b>016-726</b>		O					<p>[Cause] Unable to automatically select a printer language even though the print mode is set to [Auto]. Probable causes are as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. PostScript data was sent with no Adobe PostScript 3 Kit (optional) installed.</li> <li>2. The PDF file was sent directly to the machine using LPR with Adobe PostScript 3 Kit installed and no HDD Extension Kit installed.</li> </ol> <p>[Remedy] For Cause 1: An Adobe PostScript 3 Kit must be installed. For Cause 2: A HDD Extension Kit must be installed.</p>
<b>016-727</b>		O					<p>[Cause] A job was cancelled without storing a document into a mailbox because the document was determined as 0 page.</p> <p>[Remedy] The document could not be stored into the mailbox because the machine determined the print document as 0 page. Disable [Skip Blank Pages] on the Print Options setting, or add text to the document if the document is blank.</p>
<b>016-728</b>		O					<p>[Cause] An unsupported tag is included in the TIFF file.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the print data.</p>
<b>016-729</b>		O					<p>[Cause] Unable to print because the number of colors or the resolution of the TIFF file is out of allowed range.</p> <p>[Remedy] Change the number of colors/resolution for the TIFF file, and try again.</p>
<b>016-731</b>		O					<p>[Cause] Unable to print TIFF data because it was interrupted.</p> <p>[Remedy] Retry printing.</p>
<b>016-732</b>		O					<p>[Cause] The form specified by the emulation has not been registered at the host side.</p> <p>[Remedy] Resend the form data.</p>
<b>016-733</b>				O	O		<p>[Cause] 1. Unable to obtain the IP address (the string after "@" in the destination e-mail address) when sending e-mail. 2. Unable to resolve the Internet address (the string after "@") by the DNS server when sending e-mail.</p> <p>[Remedy] For Cause 1: Check the e-mail address. For Cause 2: Check the DNS server address.</p>
<b>016-734</b>					O		<p>[Cause] Failed to print the simple address result report.</p> <p>[Remedy] Set the e-mail reception setting to [SMTP reception] on the sender's machine.</p>
<b>016-735</b>				O		O	<p>[Cause] Attempted to print [Job Template List] while updating the job template.</p> <p>[Remedy] Retry printing after waiting for a while.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-736</b>				O			<p>[Cause] Any data cannot be saved in the forwarding destination directory.</p> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the free space of the forwarding destination disk.</li> <li>2. Check to see whether you have privileges for the forwarding destination directory.</li> <li>3. Delete a ".LCK" file from the forwarding destination directory.</li> </ol>
<b>016-737</b>				O			<p>[Cause] Any data cannot be saved in the forwarding destination directory.</p> <p>[Remedy] Delete ".LCK" file from the forwarding destination directory.</p>
<b>016-741</b> <b>016-742</b> <b>016-743</b> <b>016-744</b> <b>016-745</b>						O	<p>[Cause] An error occurred during the update process of the machine.</p> <p>[Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.</p>
<b>016-746</b>		O					<p>[Cause] An unsupported feature is included in the received PDF.</p> <p>[Remedy] Print using a print driver.</p>
<b>016-747</b>	O						<p>[Cause] The memory became insufficient when using both the [Repeat Image] and [Annotations] features simultaneously.</p> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Use the bigger annotation image size.</li> <li>•Use less [Repeat Image].</li> <li>•Increase memory.</li> </ul>
<b>016-748</b>	O	O	O			O	<p>[Cause] Unable to print due to insufficient hard disk space.</p> <p>[Remedy] Reduce the number of print pages by dividing up the print data or printing one copy at a time when making multiple copies.</p>
<b>016-749</b>		O					<p>[Cause] For a print job:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The print language received from the print driver is unsupported by this machine.</li> <li>2. A PDF file was to be printed on the PDF-unsupported model using ContentsBridge.</li> </ol> <p>For printing of a document received by Internet Fax:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. The print language received from the print driver is unsupported by this machine.</li> </ol> <p>[Remedy] For Cause 1: Use the machine's print driver for printing. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.</p> <p><b>Note</b>•An optional package is necessary for some print languages such as PostScript. For more information, contact our Customer Support Center.</p> <p>For Cause 2: Do not use ContentsBridge to print a PDF file.</p> <p>For Cause 3: Request the sender to send Internet Fax using a print language supported by this machine.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-750</b>		O					<p>[Cause] The machine received a PDF and a printing job ticket from an application that allows to directly send PDF (such as "ContentsBridge"), but the printing job ticket data had a grammar or print instruction unsupported by this machine.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check if you are correctly using the application (such as "ContentsBridge") and if the print instruction was correct. If your application usage and print instruction are correct, check with the application manufacturer for operations of the application. If the problem persists, have a printer settings list, a job history report, and the print data with the printing job ticket ready, and contact our Customer Support Center.</p>
<b>016-751</b>		O					<p>[Cause] 1. During the PDF Bridge processing, one of the following occurred: a syntax or parameter error occurred; an undefined command was used; and a PDF file was damaged. 2. When [Print Processing Mode] for the PDF Direct Print feature has been set to [PS]: Cause 1 or insufficient memory.</p> <p>[Remedy] For Cause 1: Use the print driver to print the document. For Cause 2: Take one of the following actions: •Use the print driver to print the document. •Expand the PostScript memory.</p> <p>For information on the memory, refer to "Allocate Memory" (P.129).</p>
<b>016-752</b>		O					<p>[Cause] Unable to process for PDF Bridge due to insufficient memory space.</p> <p>[Remedy] Change the [Image Quality] setting from [High Resolution] to [High Quality], or from [High Quality] to [Standard]. Or, add memory.</p>
<b>016-753</b>		O					<p>[Cause] The entered password does not agree with that of the PDF file.</p> <p>[Remedy] Set the correct password on ContentsBridge.</p>
<b>016-755</b>		O					<p>[Cause] Attempted to process a print protected PDF file.</p> <p>[Remedy] Cancel the print protection using Adobe Reader, and try to print again.</p>
<b>016-756</b>						O	<p>[Cause] No permissions to use the service.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check with your System Administrator.</p>
<b>016-757</b>						O	<p>[Cause] The password is incorrect.</p> <p>[Remedy] Enter the correct password.</p>
<b>016-758</b>	O	O	O	O			<p>[Cause] No permissions to use the service.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check with your Auditron Administrator.</p>
<b>016-759</b>	O	O		O			<p>[Cause] The number of pages reached the maximum number of pages for this service.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check with your Auditron Administrator.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-760</b>		O					<p>[Cause] An error occurred during processing with Adobe PostScript 3 Kit (optional).</p> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Set [Image Quality] to [Standard].</li> <li>•Expand PostScript memory.</li> </ul> <p>For information about [Print Mode], refer to the print driver's online help. For information about memory, refer to "Allocate Memory" (P.129).</p>
<b>016-761</b>		O					<p>[Cause] An error occurred during image processing.</p> <p>[Remedy] Set [Image Quality] to [Standard] and try again. If the problem persists, set [Print Page Mode] to [On].</p>
<b>016-762</b>		O					<p>[Cause] The specified print language is not installed on the machine.</p> <p>[Remedy] In [Print Mode] under [Port Settings], specify another print language.</p>
<b>016-763</b>					O		<p>[Cause] Unable to connect to the POP server.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check if the address of the POP server is correctly set on the machine.</p>
<b>016-764</b>					O		<p>[Cause] Unable to connect to the SMTP server.</p> <p>[Remedy] Contact the SMTP server administrator.</p>
<b>016-765</b>					O		<p>[Cause] Unable to send the e-mail because the hard disk on the SMTP server is full.</p> <p>[Remedy] Contact the SMTP server administrator.</p>
<b>016-766</b>					O		<p>[Cause] An error occurred on the SMTP server.</p> <p>[Remedy] Contact the SMTP server administrator.</p>
<b>016-767</b>					O		<p>[Cause] Unable to send the e-mail due to an incorrect address.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the address, and try again.</p>
<b>016-768</b>					O		<p>[Cause] Unable to connect to the SMTP server due to the machine's incorrect mail address.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the machine's mail address.</p>
<b>016-769</b>					O		<p>[Cause] The SMTP server does not support confirmation of mail distribution (DSN).</p> <p>[Remedy] Send e-mail without setting confirmation of mail distribution (DSN).</p>
<b>016-770</b>			O				<p>[Cause] Direct Fax is disabled.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the system administrator if Direct Fax is available. If it is available, contact our Customer Support Center.</p>
<b>016-771</b>				O			<p>[Cause] Unable to retrieve the scan data repository address.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the connection to DNS. Or, check if the scan data repository domain name has been registered to DNS.</p>
<b>016-772</b>				O			<p>[Cause] Unable to retrieve the scan data repository address.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the DNS address. Or, set the scan data repository address with its IP address.</p>
<b>016-773</b>						O	<p>[Cause] The machine's IP address is incorrect.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the DHCP environment. Or, assign a fixed IP address to the machine.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-774</b>			O	O		O	[Cause] Unable to process compression conversion due to insufficient hard disk space. [Remedy] Remove unnecessary data from the hard disk to increase free disk space.
<b>016-775</b>			O	O		O	[Cause] Unable to process image conversion due to insufficient hard disk space. [Remedy] Remove unnecessary data from the hard disk to increase free disk space.
<b>016-776</b>			O	O		O	[Cause] An error occurred during image conversion processing. [Remedy] For error upon forwarding with Scan to Mailbox or Internet Fax: The image conversion processing for the data may be finished partially. Get each converted page from the mailbox using CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to "Setting Items Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P.197). For error after instructing encryption or signature using certificate: Take one of the following actions: •Check if the certificate is valid. •Set the correct date and time on the machine.
<b>016-777</b>						O	[Cause] A hard disk error occurred during image processing. [Remedy] The hard disk may be defective. For replacing the hard disk, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>016-778</b>				O			[Cause] The scanned image conversion processing was interrupted, due to insufficient disk space. [Remedy] Remove unnecessary data from the hard disk to increase free disk space.
<b>016-779</b>				O			[Cause] An error occurred during scanned image conversion processing. [Remedy] Retry scanning. If using large-size paper such as A3 with [Resolution] set to 600dpi, specify [Resolution] to 400dpi or less in [Layout Adjustment]. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>016-780</b>				O			[Cause] A hard disk error occurred during scanned image conversion processing. [Remedy] The hard disk may be defective. For replacing the hard disk, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>016-781</b>				O			[Cause] Unable to connect to the FTP server. •Unable to establish a connection between the machine and the server. •The ASCII characters are not used for the host name specified on the machine, though the connection between the machine and the server has been established. [Remedy] Take one of the following actions: •Make sure the network cables are plugged in securely. •Enter the host name using ASCII characters in [Tools] > [System Settings] > [Connectivity & Network Setup] > [Machine's E-mail Address/Host Name].

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-782</b>				O			<p>[Cause] Unable to login to the server during file forwarding.</p> <p>[Remedy] For forwarding with FTP: Check the network cable connection.</p> <p>For forwarding with SMB: Check the network cable connection. If the problem persists, check if the OS of the forwarding destination PC is Windows NT4.0 and if the IP address is used for the "Server Name/IP Address" setting on the Address Book. If the IP address is used, change it to the host name.</p>
<b>016-783</b>				O			<p>[Cause] Unable to find the specified server path during file forwarding.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the server path name specified in the job template.</p> <p>If this code appears while using CentreWare Scan Service, refer to the "CentreWare Scan Service Installation Guide".</p>
<b>016-784</b>				O			<p>[Cause] A write error occurred on the server during file forwarding.</p> <p>[Remedy] Cancel forwarding the file. Then check if you have the write privilege for the server directory and if the server directory has free space.</p> <p>If this code appears while using CentreWare Scan Service, refer to the "CentreWare Scan Service Installation Guide".</p>
<b>016-785</b>				O			<p>[Cause] Unable to forward a file due to insufficient hard disk space on the server.</p> <p>[Remedy] Cancel forwarding the file, and check if you have the write privilege for the server directory. Remove unnecessary data from the server's hard disk to increase free disk space.</p> <p>If this code appears while using CentreWare Scan Service, refer to the "CentreWare Scan Service Installation Guide".</p>
<b>016-786</b>				O			<p>[Cause] When using the scanning feature, the machine could not write the file to the hard disk.</p> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Turn the machine off and on.</li> <li>•Load paper on the paper tray if needed.</li> <li>•If the error occurs when sending an e-mail, take one of the following solutions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Lower the resolution.</li> <li>- Reduce the size.</li> <li>- Reduce the number of pages, and divide the job into several e-mails to send.</li> </ul> </li> <li>•Send the job by setting [Color Scanning] to [Black &amp; White].</li> </ul>
<b>016-787</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The server IP address specified in the job template is invalid.</p> <p>[Remedy] Specify the correct job template.</p>
<b>016-788</b>						O	<p>[Cause] Failed to retrieve a file from the Web browser.</p> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions, and try again.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Reload the browser page.</li> <li>•Restart the browser.</li> <li>•Turn the machine off and on.</li> </ul>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>016-789</b>					O	O	[Cause] Insufficient space available for mail processing. Processing was interrupted. [Remedy] Reduce the resolution or the ratio for [Reduce/Enlarge] to decrease the data size, or split the data to send it separately.
<b>016-791</b>						O	[Cause] Failed to access to the destination computer or the save location for Network Scanning. [Remedy] Check the directory configuration and files on the server, the access privileges for the destination or the location, and check if you are authorized to access the specified destination computer or server.
<b>016-792</b>						O	[Cause] Failed to get the job history report specified in [Job Counter Report]. [Remedy] The specified job history does not exist.
<b>016-793</b>						O	[Cause] Free space is insufficient on the hard disk. [Remedy] Either remove unnecessary data from the hard disk to increase free disk space, or initialize the hard disk.
<b>016-798</b>		O					[Cause] Unable to print the document because a HDD Extension Kit is unattached. [Remedy] Attach a HDD Extension Kit, and print again.
<b>016-799</b>		O					[Cause] An invalid print parameter is included. [Remedy] Check the print data and options, and print again.
<b>018-500</b>						O	[Cause] Unable to connect to the SSL server because the server certificate and the private key do not exist. [Remedy] Set the server certificate. Or, set the CA feature to [Off].
<b>018-501</b>						O	[Cause] Unable to connect to the CA authentication server. [Remedy] Check if the address of the CA authentication server set on the machine is correct. Or, check the network connection.
<b>018-502</b>				O			[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, the login to the server was failed because the computers permitted to log in were limited. [Remedy] Check the property information for the specified user, and check if the server sets the login limit for computers.
<b>018-503</b>						O	[Cause] An error occurred while connected to the CA authentication server. [Remedy] Perform the authentication operation again.
<b>018-504</b>						O	[Cause] An error occurred while connected to the CA authentication server. [Remedy] Perform the authentication operation again.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.



Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>018-505</b>						O	<p>[Cause] If an error occurred during SMB authentication, the probable causes are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Authentication failed because of the incorrect user name or incorrect password.</li> <li>•The time does not match on the SMB server and the machine. (This may occur when Windows Server 2003 is used.)</li> <li>•When the destination computer is Macintosh, the specified user has not been registered as a user who is permitted to use Windows Sharing.</li> </ul> <p>If an error occurred during data transfer via SMB, the probable causes are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Login to the SMB server failed while transferring the scanned image, due to the incorrect user name or incorrect password.</li> <li>•The time does not match on the SMB server and the machine. (This may occur when Windows Server 2003 is used.)</li> <li>•When the destination computer is Macintosh, the specified user has not been registered as a user who is permitted to use Windows Sharing.</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions, and try again:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Check the user name and password with the network administrator.</li> <li>•When using Windows Server 2003, make sure to match the time set on the SMB server and the machine.</li> <li>•When the destination computer is Macintosh, specify a user who is permitted to use Windows Sharing.</li> </ul> <p>The password cannot be retrieved. If you have forgotten the password, reset the password.</p> <p>To reset the password:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Select [Start] &gt; [Programs] &gt; [Administrative Tools] &gt; [Active Directory Users and Computers] on the Active Directory domain controller where the user information is set.</li> <li>2) Display the user information by selecting [Domains] &gt; [Users] from the left side frame of the [Active Directory Users and Computers] window.</li> <li>3) Right-click the appropriate user from the right side frame of the [Active Directory Users and Computers] window, then select [Reset Password].</li> </ol>
<b>018-506</b>						O	<p>[Cause] An error occurred while connected to the CA authentication server.</p> <p>[Remedy] Perform the authentication operation again.</p>
<b>018-507</b>						O	<p>[Cause] Failed to authenticate the user.</p> <p>[Remedy] Either the user name or the passcode entered is not correct. Enter the correct user name or passcode.</p>
<b>018-508</b>						O	<p>[Cause] An error occurred while connected to the CA authentication server.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the server status. Then, turn the power off and on and perform the authentication operation again.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>018-524</b>						O	[Cause] The network settings are incorrectly set. [Remedy] Check whether settings related to any port required for scanning jobs and network related settings are correct. Check the following points: •Are the DNS server settings correct? •Is the port of the specified protocol enabled?
<b>018-529</b>						O	[Cause] There were duplicate SOAP job start requests. [Remedy] Perform the same operation again. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
<b>018-530</b>						O	[Cause] The authentication operation was incorrect, or there are restrictions placed on the operation that was attempted. [Remedy] Perform the authentication operation correctly, or check the restrictions (color mode, number of sheets, services) placed on the operation by the administrator.
<b>018-531</b>						O	[Cause] An error occurred during processing of the job. [Remedy] Perform the same job again. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center or your dealer.
<b>018-532</b>						O	[Cause] An error occurred during processing of the job. [Remedy] Wait a while and then try performing the same job again. If the problem persists, turn the machine off and on.
<b>018-543</b>				O			[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, logging in to the SMB server failed because one of the following problems occurred on the shared name of the SMB server. •The specified shared name does not exist on the server. •Unavailable characters are used in the specified shared name. •When the server is Macintosh, the specified shared name may not have an access right. [Remedy] Confirm the specified shared name, and set the name correctly.
<b>018-547</b>				O			[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, the number of login users to the SMB server have exceeded the limit. [Remedy] Take one of the following actions: •Check how many users can access to the shared folder. •Check whether the number of login users have exceeded the limit.
<b>018-556</b>						O	[Cause] Received the "XRERROR" error detection code from the HTTP server. [Remedy] 1) Check if the specified drive and directory is available on the destination HTTP server for the scanned document. 2) Perform the same operation again. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>018-557</b>				O		O	[Cause] The specified file name contains invalid characters. [Remedy] Modify the file name. Make sure that invalid characters are not contained in the destination file name for the scanned document.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>018-558</b>				O		O	[Cause] Received an error code from HTTP server. [Remedy] 1) Check if the specified directory exists on the destination HTTP server for the scanned document. 2) Check if the specified file exists on the HTTP server.
<b>018-559</b>				O		O	[Cause] The same file name already exists. [Do Not Save] is selected when duplicate file name exists. [Remedy] Select any option other than [Cancel Job] in [File Name Conflict].
<b>018-560</b>				O		O	[Cause] An user authentication error occurred. (Received HTTP Status 401). [Remedy] Check the followings: •The destination HTTP server for the scanned document is accessible by PC. •Login name •Login password •The HTTP server name •The HTTP server path name
<b>018-561</b>				O		O	[Cause] The hostname or the script storage location is not correct. (Received HTTP Status 404). [Remedy] Check the followings: •The destination HTTP server for the scanned document is accessible by PC. •The HTTP server name •The HTTP server path name
<b>018-562</b>				O		O	[Cause] A client-side error occurred. (Received HTTP Status 4xx other than 401 and 404). [Remedy] Check the followings: •The destination HTTP server for the scanned document is accessible by PC. •The server settings
<b>018-563</b>				O		O	[Cause] A server-side error occurred. (Received HTTP Status 5xx). [Remedy] Check the followings: •The destination HTTP server for the scanned document is accessible by PC. •The server settings
<b>018-564</b>				O		O	[Cause] DNS resolution for the specified hostname failed. [Remedy] Check the followings: •The destination HTTP server for the scanned document is registered on the DNS server. •The machine is connected to the DNS server. •The address of the DNS server is set on the machine.
<b>018-565</b>				O		O	[Cause] DNS resolution for the proxy server name set on the machine failed. [Remedy] Check the followings: •The proxy server name set on the machine is registered on the DNS server. •The machine is connected to the DNS server. •The address of the DNS server is set on the machine.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>018-566</b>				O		O	[Cause] Unable to connect to the HTTP server. [Remedy] Check the followings: •The network cable connection on the machine •The destination HTTP server for the scanned document is accessible by PC.
<b>018-567</b>				O		O	[Cause] The followings may be the cause: •The communication is disconnected while reading or writing due to some reason. •Close process of the file failed due to some reason [Remedy] Check if the destination HTTP server for the scanned document is accessible by PC.
<b>018-568</b>						O	[Cause] An SSL/TLS connection error occurred. [Remedy] Check the followings: •The destination HTTP server for the scanned document is accessible by PC. •SSL settings for the HTTP server is correct. •The HTTP server name •The HTTP server path name
<b>018-569</b>				O		O	[Cause] The SSL server certificate may have a problem. [Remedy] 1) Check if the destination HTTP server for the scanned document is accessible by PC. 2) Check if the SSL server certificate is registered on the HTTP server. 3) Check if the SSL server certificate is valid. Check the followings: - the certificate is unexpired - the time set on the machine is correct - the certificate is not on the discard list 4) Check the certificate path to the SSL server certificate, and import the required CA certificate. 5) If the SSL server certificated is not registered on the HTTP server, disable the [Verify Remote Server Certificate] setting.
<b>018-570</b>				O		O	[Cause] A client certificate authentication error occurred on the HTTP server. [Remedy] Check the followings: •The destination HTTP server for the scanned document is accessible by PC. •The SSL client certificate is registered on the machine. •The device certificate is correctly registered on the HTTP server.
<b>018-571</b>				O		O	[Cause] An internal error occurred. [Remedy] Perform the same operation again. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>018-572</b>						O	[Cause] The specified context name contains invalid characters. [Remedy] Check if the specified context name is correct.
<b>018-573</b>						O	[Cause] The specified connection name contains invalid characters. [Remedy] Check if the specified connection name is correct.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>018-574</b>						O	[Cause] The specified volume name contains invalid characters. [Remedy] Check if the specified volume name is correct.
<b>018-575</b>						O	[Cause] The specified user name or password contains invalid characters. [Remedy] Check if the specified user name or password is correct.
<b>018-576</b>						O	[Cause] The specified path name contains invalid characters. [Remedy] Check if the specified path name is correct.
<b>018-577</b>						O	[Cause] The specified file name contains invalid characters. [Remedy] Check if the specified file name is correct.
<b>018-578</b>						O	[Cause] The specified server or tree name does not exist. [Remedy] Check the followings: •The network cable connection on the machine •The NetWare server is accessible by PC •The NetWare server or tree name Run DSREPAIR at the server console on the NetWare server.
<b>018-579</b>						O	[Cause] The hard disk on the NetWare server may be full. [Remedy] Check the followings: •The NetWare server is accessible by PC •The free space of the server to store data Run DSREPAIR at the server console on the NetWare server.
<b>018-580</b>						O	[Cause] The specified volume name does not exist on the NetWare server. [Remedy] Check the followings: •The NetWare server is accessible by PC •The volume name Run DSREPAIR at the server console on the NetWare server.
<b>018-581</b>						O	[Cause] The specified directory path does not exist on the NetWare server. [Remedy] Check the followings: •The NetWare server is accessible by PC •The directory path name Run DSREPAIR at the server console on the NetWare server.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>018-582</b>						O	<p>[Cause] The followings may be the cause:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•The login user does not have Open rights to the file.</li> <li>•The login user does not have Create rights to create a file.</li> <li>•The login user does not have Access rights to the directory.</li> <li>•The login user does not have Read rights to the file.</li> <li>•The login user does not have Write rights to the file.</li> <li>•The login user does not have Delete rights of the directory or file.</li> <li>•Made a delete request to the directories or files but all of them are read-only.</li> <li>•Made a delete request to the directories or files but some of them are read-only.</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] 1) Check if the NetWare server is accessible by PC.  2) Check the user has the following rights.  - Open rights to the file  - Create rights to a file  - Access rights to the directory  - Write rights to the file  - Read rights to the file  - Delete rights to the directory or file  3) Run DSREPAIR at the server console on the NetWare server.</p>
<b>018-583</b>						O	<p>[Cause] A hard disk error occurred on the NetWare server.</p> <p>[Remedy] 1) Check the status of the HDD on the NetWare server.  2) Check if the NetWare server is accessible by PC.  3) Run DSREPAIR at the server console on the NetWare server.</p>
<b>018-584</b>						O	<p>[Cause] The followings may be the cause:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•The communication is disconnected while reading or writing due to some reason</li> <li>•Close process of the file failed due to some reason</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] 1) Check if the NetWare server is accessible by PC.  2) Run DSREPAIR at the server console on the NetWare server.</p>
<b>018-585</b>						O	<p>[Cause] The followings may be the cause:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•The specified folder or file is in use by another user</li> <li>•Made a delete request to the directories or files though some of them are in use by another user</li> <li>•Made a delete request to the directories or files though all of them are in use by another user</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] 1) Check if the NetWare server is accessible by PC.  2) Check the status of use of the other users.  3) Run DSREPAIR at the server console on the NetWare server.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>018-586</b>						O	<p>[Cause] Login to the NetWare server was denied.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the followings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•The NetWare server is accessible by PC</li> <li>•Login user name</li> <li>•Login password</li> <li>•Volume name</li> <li>•Server or tree name</li> <li>•Context name</li> </ul> <p>Run DSREPAIR at the server console on the NetWare server.</p>
<b>018-587</b>				O		O	<p>[Cause] There are duplicate file names. [Do Not Save] is set for when there are duplicate names for scanned files.</p> <p>[Remedy] Set the process for when there are duplicate file names to other than [Cancel Job].</p>
<b>018-588</b>				O		O	<p>[Cause] Detected an incorrect filing policy (when add was selected) after connecting to the server.</p> <p>[Remedy] When [Rename New File] is set for the process for when there are duplicate file names, check the file format is not multi page.</p>
<b>018-589</b>				O		O	<p>[Cause] Failed to access the NEXTNAME.DAT file.</p> <p>[Remedy] When [Rename New File] is set for the process for when there are duplicate file names, check the NEXTNAME.DAT file is correct.</p>
<b>018-590</b>				O		O	<p>[Cause] A file or folder of the same name was detected on the server.</p> <p>[Remedy] 1) Perform the operation again when the same folder of the same server is not being accessed from multiple machines.</p> <p>2) If the problem occurs again, contact our Customer Support Center.</p>
<b>018-591</b>				O		O	<p>[Cause] When the server was connected to and the name of a file or folder on the server was decided, the suffix of the name of the file or folder exceeded the limit.</p> <p>[Remedy] Change the file name or transfer destination folder of the scan server. Also try moving or deleting the files within the transfer destination folder.</p>
<b>018-592</b>				O		O	<p>[Cause] Failed to delete a scan lock folder.</p> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) If an existing lock directory (*.LCK) remains in the transfer destination, delete it manually and then execute the job again.</li> <li>2) Check there is a folder with the same name as that specified.</li> </ol>
<b>018-593</b>				O		O	<p>[Cause] Failed to create the scan lock folder.</p> <p>[Remedy] If an existing lock directory (*.LCK) remains in the transfer destination, delete it manually and then execute the job again.</p>
<b>018-596</b>				O			<p>[Cause] An error occurred during LDAP server authentication.</p> <p>[Remedy] Try again. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>018-701</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "1" (operations error) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check if [LDAP Server / Directory Service] under [Remote Authentication Server / Directory Service] has been set correctly. Or, the server may have a problem. Check with your network administrator.</p>
<b>018-702</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "2" (protocol error) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server settings, and try again.</p>
<b>018-703</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "3" (time limit exceeded) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] Change the search conditions/start position to narrow the range of search area, and try again. If the problem persists, check with your network administrator.</p>
<b>018-704</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "4" (size limit exceeded) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] Change the search conditions/start position to narrow the range of search area, and try again. If the problem persists, check with your network administrator.</p>
<b>018-705</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "5" (compare false) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] The result may be different from the specified content. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.</p>
<b>018-706</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "6" (compare true) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] The desired result has been achieved. No problem occurred.</p>
<b>018-707</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "7" (specified authentication not supported) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] The LDAP server does not support the specified authentication method. Change the authentication method. Check with your system administrator for another method.</p>
<b>018-708</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "8" (strong authentication required) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check if the authentication settings are correct. Check with your system administrator to consolidate the authentication, and try again.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.



Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>018-710</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "10" (referral) for Address Book query. [Remedy] No registered items were found in the specified retrieval range. Have the network administrator check the authentication settings.
<b>018-711</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "11" (admin limit exceeded) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the operational status of the server.
<b>018-712</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "12" (unavailable extension) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the operational status of the server.
<b>018-713</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "13" (confidentiality required) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the operational status of the server.
<b>018-714</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "14" (SASL bind in progress) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Retry after waiting for a while. If the problem persists, check with your network administrator.
<b>018-716</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "16" (no such attribute) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has an Attribute problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-717</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "17" (undefined type) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has an Attribute problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-718</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "18" (inappropriate matching) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has an Attribute problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-719</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "19" (constraint violation) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has an Attribute problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>018-720</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "20" (attribute exists) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has an Attribute problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-721</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "21" (invalid syntax) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has an Attribute problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-732</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "32" (no such object) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The target e-mail address does not exist. Check the e-mail address you entered or the e-mail address registered on the LDAP server.
<b>018-733</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "33" (incorrect alias) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has a Name problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-734</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "34" (invalid DN syntax) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has a Name problem. Check the user name and password to cancel an incorrect password. If the problem persists, have the network administrator check the authentication settings and status of the LDAP server.
<b>018-735</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "35" (object is leaf) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has a Name problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-736</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "36" (alias differencing problem) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has a Name problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-748</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "48" (inappropriate authentication) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has a security problem. Have the network administrator check the authentication settings on the LDAP server.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>018-749</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "49" (invalid credentials) for Address Book query. The address search was performed with an incorrect authentication user name and password.</p> <p>[Remedy] The LDAP server has a security problem. Check the authentication user name and password to cancel an incorrect login name. If the problem persists, have the network administrator check the authentication settings on the LDAP server.</p>
<b>018-750</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "50" (insufficient access) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] The LDAP server has a security problem. Have the network administrator check the access rights for the LDAP server.</p>
<b>018-751</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "51" (busy) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] The service has a problem. Retry after waiting for a while. If the problem persists, check with your network administrator.</p>
<b>018-752</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "52" (unavailable) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] The LDAP server has a service problem. Retry after waiting for a while. If the problem persists, check with your network administrator.</p>
<b>018-753</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "53" (unwilling to perform) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] The LDAP server has a service problem. Retry after waiting for a while. If the problem persists, check with your network administrator.</p>
<b>018-754</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "54" (loop detected) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] The LDAP server has a service problem. Have the network administrator check the operational status of the service on the LDAP server.</p>
<b>018-764</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "64" (naming violation) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] The LDAP server has an Update problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.</p>
<b>018-765</b>				O			<p>[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "65" (object class violation) for Address Book query.</p> <p>[Remedy] The LDAP server has an Update problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>018-766</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "66" (not allowed on nonleaf) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has an Update problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-767</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "67" (not allowed on RDN) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has an Update problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-768</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "68" (already exists) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has an Update problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-769</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "69" (no object class modifications) for Address Book query. [Remedy] The LDAP server has an Update problem. Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-770</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "70" (results too large) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Change the search conditions/start position to narrow the range of search area, and try again. If the problem persists, check with your network administrator.
<b>018-771</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "71" (affecting multiple DSAs) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-780</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "80" (unknown error) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-781</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. Connection to the server cannot be established for Address Book query. [Remedy] Take one of the following actions: •Check the network cable connection. •If the network cable connection has no problem, check the active status of the target server. •Check if the server name has been correctly set for [LDAP Server / Directory Service] under [Remote Authentication Server / Directory Service].

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>018-782</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "82" (program error or SASL authentication error) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-783</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "83" (encoding error) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-784</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "84" (decoding error) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-785</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "85" (timeout) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Change the search conditions/start position to narrow the range of search area, and try again. If the problem persists, check with your network administrator.
<b>018-786</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "86" (unknown authentication method) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-787</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "87" (search filter error) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Check the search conditions set on Address Book. If the problem persists, check with your network administrator.
<b>018-788</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "88" (user cancelled operation) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-789</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "89" (incorrect parameter) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-790</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "90" (no memory) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>018-791</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "91" (server connection error) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-792</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "92" (unsupported feature) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-793</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "93" (no results returned) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-794</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "94" (no more results) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-795</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "95" (results remaining) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-796</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "96" (client loop detected) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>018-797</b>				O			[Cause] LDAP server protocol error caused by the Address Book operation. The server returned RFC2251 Result Message No "97" (referral limit exceeded) for Address Book query. [Remedy] Have the network administrator check the LDAP server status.
<b>024-700</b>		O					[Cause] Required memory capacity or hard disk is not installed to use the optional feature. [Remedy] Turn off the power, wait until the touch screen goes dark, and then turn on power again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>024-742</b>		O					[Cause] Booklet printing was specified for printer properties, but the number of print pages for the job exceeded the maximum number for booklet creation. [Remedy] Change the printer properties setting to split the pages appropriately to create separate volumes, or to cancel the booklet setting.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>024-746</b>		O					[Cause] The specified paper type is not compatible with the specified paper size, paper tray, output tray, or 2-sided printing. [Remedy] Check the print data.
<b>024-747</b>		O					[Cause] Incompatible print parameters are used. The combination of the specified features such as Document Size, Paper Size, Paper Tray, 2 sided print, and Output Tray is incompatible. [Remedy] Check the print data, and try to print again.
<b>024-748</b>	O						[Cause] The number of digits specified in [Number of Digits] of the [Page Number] screen does not match the value specified in [Starting Number] of the [Apply Page Numbers To] screen. [Remedy] Set [Number of Digits] to [Auto Assign] or a value appropriate for the value specified in [Starting Number].
<b>024-775</b>		O					[Cause] Booklet printing was specified for printer properties, but the number of print pages for the job exceeded the maximum number for booklet creation. [Remedy] Change the printer properties setting to split the pages appropriately to create separate volumes, or to cancel the booklet setting.
<b>026-700</b>				O			[Cause] By Address Book operation, the machine received an unsupported protocol from the LDAP server. [Remedy] Try again. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>026-701</b>				O			[Cause] The number of queries to Address Book exceeded the machine's processing capability. [Remedy] Wait for a while and try again. If the number of queries to Address Book is only one, the machine's software may be defective. Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>026-702</b>				O			[Cause] The number of access from the LDAP server to the machine exceeded the machine's processing capability. [Remedy] Wait for a while and try again. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>027-400</b>						O	[Cause] Unable to communicate because of another error. Unable to communicate because the control panel is in use. [Remedy] If another error message is displayed, clear the problem first. If the control panel is being used by a user, wait until the user operation is completed and start the communications. Turn the machine off and on. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>027-442</b>						O	[Cause] The IPv6 auto stateless address 1 of the machine is duplicated on the network. [Remedy] Change the IPv6 auto stateless address 1 of the machine or the address of the other device. Refer to "Auto Configured IPv6 Address" (P.117).

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>027-443</b>						O	[Cause] The IPv6 auto stateless address 2 of the machine is duplicated on the network. [Remedy] Change the IPv6 auto stateless address 2 of the machine or the address of the other device. Refer to "Auto Configured IPv6 Address" (P.117).
<b>027-444</b>						O	[Cause] The IPv6 auto stateless address 3 of the machine is duplicated on the network. [Remedy] Change the IPv6 auto stateless address 3 of the machine or the address of the other device. Refer to "Auto Configured IPv6 Address" (P.117).
<b>027-445</b>						O	[Cause] The manually configured IPv6 address is invalid. [Remedy] Correct the manually configured IPv6 address of the machine. Refer to "Manually Configured IPv6 Address" (P.117).
<b>027-446</b>						O	[Cause] The manually configured IPv6 address is duplicated on the network. [Remedy] Change the manually configured IPv6 address of the machine or the address of the other device. Refer to "Manually Configured IPv6 Address" (P.117).
<b>027-447</b>						O	[Cause] The IPv6 link-local address is duplicated on the network. [Remedy] Change the IPv6 link-local address of the machine or the address of the other device. Refer to "Auto Configured IPv6 Address" (P.117).
<b>027-452</b>					O	O	[Cause] IP address already exists. [Remedy] Change the IP address.
<b>027-500</b>					O	O	[Cause] Unable to connect to the SMTP server. [Remedy] Specify the SMTP server name correctly or specify using its IP address.
<b>027-501</b>					O	O	[Cause] An error occurred in the POP server. [Remedy] Perform the same operation again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>027-502</b>					O	O	[Cause] Failed to login to the POP3 server when using the POP3 protocol. [Remedy] Check on CentreWare Internet Services if the user name and password used in the POP3 server are correct.
<b>027-503</b>					O	O	[Cause] An error occurred in the POP server. [Remedy] Try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>027-504</b>					O	O	[Cause] An error occurred in the SMTP server. [Remedy] Try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.



Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>027-513</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature because access to the SMB server was not permitted.</p> <p>When the server is Macintosh, a folder with the same name as the specified file name may exist on the server.</p> <p>[Remedy] Change the settings so that a file or a folder can be read and written at the save location.</p> <p>When the server is Macintosh, change the folder name on the server, or the file name to be transferred.</p>
<b>027-514</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature because the machine could not resolve the host name or the server name of the SMB server when accessing the DNS.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the connection to the DNS. Check if the forwarding destination SMB server name has been registered on the DNS.</p>
<b>027-515</b>				O			<p>[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, accessing the DNS failed because the DNS server was not set correctly.</p> <p>[Remedy] Set the DNS server address. Or, specify the destination SMB server address using its IP address.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>027-516</b>				O			<p>[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, the SMB server could not be found.</p> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Check the following to see if the destination SMB server and the machine are set up properly for network communications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check the network cables are plugged in securely.</li> <li>- Check the TCP/IP settings.</li> <li>- Check communications of port 137 (UDP), port 138 (UDP), port 139 (TCP).</li> </ul> </li> <li>•Check the following to see if the computer correctly works as an SMB server. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check if the file sharing service for Microsoft Network is activated.</li> <li>- Check if [NetBIOS over TCP/IP] for TCP/IP is activated.</li> <li>- Check if the file sharing service (using communication through port 137 (UDP), port 138 (UDP), and port 139 (TCP)) are authorized for the Firewall settings.</li> </ul> </li> <li>•For communications which exceed the subnet, check the WINS server settings, and check if the server address can be resolved correctly.</li> <li>•For Windows NT 4.0 Server/Workstation, use the following steps to see if the NetBIOS interface device is activated on the destination SMB server: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [Start] &gt; [Settings] &gt; [Control Panel].</li> <li>2. Display [Services], then select [Messenger] service.</li> <li>3. Select [Startup] &gt; [Auto] &gt; [OK], then select [Close].</li> <li>4. Select [Devices] in the [Control Panel], then select [NetBIOS Interface].</li> <li>5. Select [Startup] &gt; [Auto] or [Manual] &gt; [OK], then select [Close].</li> <li>6. Reboot the computer.</li> </ol> </li> </ul>
<b>027-518</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The machine failed to transfer data using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature because the specified password was incorrect.</p> <p>When the server is Macintosh, the specified user may not have been registered as a user who are permitted to use Windows Sharing.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the password for the shared folder.</p> <p>When the server is Macintosh, specify a user who is permitted to use Windows Sharing.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>027-519</b>				O			<p>[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, an error occurred because the save location or file name specified for the scanned image had a problem.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•The specified save location does not exist on the server.</li> <li>•Unavailable characters are used in the save location or the file name.</li> <li>•Because the specified save location has the Distributed File System (DFS) settings, it is linked to other shared folders.</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Check if the save location is correct.</li> <li>•Check if the specified file name is available on the SMB server.</li> <li>•Use the following steps to check with the system administrator for the Distributed File System (DFS) settings: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [Start] &gt; [Programs] &gt; [Administrative Tools] &gt; [Distributed File System] on the SMB server.</li> <li>2. Select the specified save location from the left side frame of the [Distributed File System] window, and then check the target information displayed on the right side frame of the window.</li> <li>3. Specify the SMB server, shared name, and save location based on the information you checked in step 2.</li> </ol> </li> </ul>
<b>027-520</b>				O			<p>[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, the file name or folder name could not be retrieved.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check the access privilege to the SMB server.</p>
<b>027-521</b>				O			<p>[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, the suffix of the file name or folder name exceeded the limit on the SMB server.</p> <p>[Remedy] Change the file name or destination folder on the SMB server. Or, move or delete the files from the destination folder.</p>
<b>027-522</b>				O			<p>[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, the scanned image file could not be created on the SMB server due to one of the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•The specified file name has already been used on the server.</li> <li>•The specified file name has already been used.</li> <li>•The specified file name exists as a directory.</li> <li>•Unavailable characters are used in the file name.</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Check if the specified file name can be used in the save location.</li> <li>•Check whether or not the specified file name has been used by another user.</li> <li>•Check whether or not the specified file name has been used for another file or folder.</li> </ul>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>027-523</b>				O			<p>[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, a lock folder could not be created on the SMB server due to the following reason:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•The specified lock folder already exists.</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•If any lock directory (.LCK) exists in the forwarding destination, manually delete it, and then try again.</li> <li>•Check if the same name is being used for another folder.</li> </ul>
<b>027-524</b>				O			<p>[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, a folder could not be created on the SMB server because the specified folder already exists.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check if the specified name is being used for another file or folder on the SMB server.</p>
<b>027-525</b>				O			<p>[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, a file could not be deleted from the SMB server due to one of the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•The file does not exist.</li> <li>•The file is opened.</li> <li>•The specified file name is being used as a directory.</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check whether or not the file is not being used by another user at the specified save location.</p>
<b>027-526</b>				O			<p>[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, a lock folder could not be deleted from the SMB server due to one of the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•The file does not exist.</li> <li>•The directory is not empty.</li> <li>•The specified directory name does not exist.</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] If any lock directory (.LCK) exists in the forwarding destination, manually delete it, and then try again.</p>
<b>027-527</b>				O			<p>[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, a folder could not be deleted from the SMB server due to one of the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•The file does not exist.</li> <li>•The directory is not empty.</li> <li>•The specified directory name does not exist.</li> </ul> <p>[Remedy] Check whether or not the file is not being used by another user at the specified save location.</p>
<b>027-528</b>				O			<p>[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, no space is available at the save location on the SMB server.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check if the save location has free space.</p>
<b>027-529</b>				O			<p>[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, an unexpected error has occurred on the SMB server, or an unexpected internal error has occurred on the machine.</p> <p>[Remedy] Log in to the server from another computer using the same user name, to see if a file can be written into the same save location on the server. If the error persists, it may be an internal error. Contact our Customer Support Center.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>027-530</b>				O			[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, a file could not be saved because [Cancel Job] had been selected for [File Name Conflict]. [Remedy] Select any option other than [Cancel Job] for [File Name Conflict].
<b>027-531</b>				O			[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, an error occurred because the filing policy was invalid. [Remedy] When selecting [Change Name and Save] in [File Name Conflict], make sure that the file format is not Multi-Page.
<b>027-532</b>				O			[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, an error occurred when accessing to the NEXTNAME.DAT file. [Remedy] If [Change Name and Save] has been selected for [File Name Conflict], check if the NEXTNAME.DAT file is correct.
<b>027-533</b>				O			[Cause] During the transfer using [SMB] of the [Scan to PC] feature, an internal error occurred. [Remedy] Try executing the same operation. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>027-543</b>				O			[Cause] The SMB server (NetBIOS) name is invalid. [Remedy] Check if the server name of the SMB server is correct.
<b>027-547</b>				O		O	[Cause] SMB protocol error. An invalid character was detected in the specified domain name. [Remedy] If the error occurred during SMB authentication: Check with the network administrator for the domain name, then re-configure correctly. Also, check if the domain name set on the machine is correct, using the following procedure: 1. Enter the System Administration mode, and select [Tools] > [System Settings] > [Connectivity & Network Setup] > [Remote Authentication Server / Directory Service] > [SMB Server Settings]. 2. Select the SMB server to check the domain name. If the error occurred during the transfer via SMB of [Scan to PC]: Check the domain name which has been specified when entering login name with the network administrator. To check the domain name on the server, take the following procedure: 1. Select [Start] > [Programs] > [Administrative Tools] > [Active Directory Domains and Trusts] on the Active Directory domain controller. 2. From the left side frame of the [Active Directory Domains and Trusts] window, select [Active Directory Domains and Trusts] > [Domains]. Right-click [Domains] to select [Properties]. 3. Select [General] tab in the domain properties window, check the domain name (prior to Windows 2000).

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>027-548</b>				O		O	<p>[Cause] SMB protocol error. An invalid character was detected in the specified user name.</p> <p>[Remedy] The user name on the server needs to be set without using unauthorized characters by the network administrator. To check the user name on the server, take the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [Start] &gt; [Programs] &gt; [Administrative Tools] &gt; [Active Directory Users and Computers] on the Active Directory domain controller where the user information is set.</li> <li>2. Select [Active Directory Users and Computers] &gt; [Server] &gt; [Domains] &gt; [Users] from the left side frame of the [Active Directory Users and Computers] window, to display the user information.</li> <li>3. Right-click the target user from the right side frame of the [Active Directory Domains and Trusts] window to select [Properties].</li> <li>4. Select the [Account] tab in the [User Properties] window, check the user name of [User Log On Name (Prior to Windows 2000)].</li> </ol>
<b>027-549</b>						O	<p>[Cause] SMB protocol error</p> <p>[Remedy] Try again. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.</p>
<b>027-564</b>						O	<p>[Cause] SMB protocol error. The SMB server was not found.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check if the connection between the authentication server and the machine has been established via a network. For example, check the following points:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Network cable connection</li> <li>•TCP/IP settings</li> <li>•Connection via Port 137 (UDP)/Port 138 (UDP)/Port 139 (TCP)</li> </ul>
<b>027-565</b>						O	<p>[Cause] SMB protocol error</p> <p>[Remedy] Try again. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.</p>
<b>027-566</b>						O	<p>[Cause] SMB protocol error. SMB (TCP/IP) is not active.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check on CentreWare Internet Services that SMB (TCP/IP) is active on the [Port Status] screen of the [Properties] tab.</p>
<b>027-569</b>				O			<p>[Cause] The SMB (TCP/IP) port is not activated.</p> <p>[Remedy] Check on CentreWare Internet Services that SMB (TCP/IP) is active on the [Port Status] screen of the [Properties] tab.</p>
<b>027-572</b> <b>027-573</b> <b>027-574</b> <b>027-576</b> <b>027-578</b>						O	<p>[Cause] SMB protocol error</p> <p>[Remedy] Try again. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.</p>

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>027-584</b>						O	[Cause] SMB protocol error. The SMB server is in shared security mode. [Remedy] The SMB server may be on Windows 95, Windows 98, or Windows Me OS. Set the SMB server on an OS other than Windows 95, Windows 98, or Windows Me OS.
<b>027-585</b>				O		O	[Cause] SMB protocol error. Login disabled period. [Remedy] Check with the system administrator for the login-permitted period.
<b>027-586</b>				O		O	[Cause] SMB protocol error. The password has expired. [Remedy] Obtain a valid password from the system administrator.
<b>027-587</b>				O		O	[Cause] SMB protocol error. The password must be changed. [Remedy] Log in to Windows, and change the password. Ask the system administrator for changing the setting so that you do not need to change the login password next time.
<b>027-588</b>				O		O	[Cause] SMB protocol error. The user is invalid. [Remedy] Ask the system administrator for validating the user.
<b>027-589</b>				O		O	[Cause] SMB protocol error. The user was locked out. [Remedy] Ask the system administrator for canceling the lockout status.
<b>027-590</b>				O		O	[Cause] SMB protocol error. The user account has expired. [Remedy] Obtain a valid user account from the system administrator. Or, ask the system administrator to extend the account expiration date.
<b>027-591</b>				O		O	[Cause] SMB protocol error. Users are restricted. A blank password is invalid. [Remedy] Set the password for the user.
<b>027-599</b>				O		O	[Cause] SMB protocol error [Remedy] Try again. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>027-702</b>				O	O		[Cause] The specified recipient's certificate does not exist. [Remedy] Register the certificate to the machine.
<b>027-703</b>				O	O		[Cause] The specified recipient's certificate has expired. [Remedy] Register a valid certificate to the machine.
<b>027-704</b>				O	O		[Cause] The CA certificate for the specified Address Book does not exist. [Remedy] Check the path to the recipient's certificate, and register the required CA certificate to the machine.
<b>027-705</b>				O	O		[Cause] The specified recipient's certificate has been revoked. [Remedy] Specify a valid certificate.
<b>027-706</b>					O		[Cause] Unable to find the S/MIME certificate associated with the machine's e-mail address when sending e-mail. [Remedy] Import the S/MIME certificate corresponding to the mail address to the machine.
<b>027-707</b>					O		[Cause] The S/MIME certificate associated with the machine's e-mail address has expired. [Remedy] Ask the sender to issue a new S/MIME certificate and import the certificate to the machine.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>027-708</b>					O		[Cause] The S/MIME certificate associated with the machine's e-mail address is not reliable. [Remedy] Import a reliable S/MIME certificate to the machine.
<b>027-709</b>					O		[Cause] The S/MIME certificate associated with the machine's e-mail address has been discarded. [Remedy] Import a new S/MIME certificate to the machine.
<b>027-710</b>					O		[Cause] No S/MIME certificate is attached to the received e-mail. [Remedy] Ask the sender to send the e-mail with an S/MIME certificate.
<b>027-711</b>					O		[Cause] No S/MIME certificate was obtained from the received e-mail. [Remedy] Import the sender's S/MIME certificate to the machine, or attach an S/MIME certificate to S/MIME signature mail sent from the sender.
<b>027-712</b>					O		[Cause] The received S/MIME certificate has expired, or is an unreliable certificate. [Remedy] Ask the sender to send the e-mail with a valid S/MIME certificate.
<b>027-713</b>					O		[Cause] The received e-mail has been discarded because it might be altered on its transmission route. [Remedy] Tell the sender about it, and ask to send the e-mail again.
<b>027-714</b>					O		[Cause] The received e-mail has been discarded because the address in its From field was not the same as the mail address in the S/MIME signature mail. [Remedy] Tell the sender that the mail addresses are not identical, and ask to send the e-mail again.
<b>027-715</b>					O		[Cause] The received S/MIME certificate has not been registered on the machine, or has not been set to use on the machine. [Remedy] Import the sender's S/MIME certificate to the machine, or change settings to use the S/MIME certificate on the machine when the S/MIME certificate has already been registered.
<b>027-716</b>					O		[Cause] The received S/MIME certificate has been discarded because the certificate was unreliable. [Remedy] Ask the sender to send the e-mail with a reliable S/MIME certificate.
<b>027-720</b>						O	[Cause] Unable to find the server of an application interface destination. [Remedy] Check the DNS server address. Or, check whether or not the computer that the application (ApeosWare Flow Service) is installed on has been registered on the DNS server.
<b>027-721</b>						O	[Cause] An application interface destination does not exist. [Remedy] Check whether the application linked (ApeosWare Flow Service) operates correctly.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.



Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>027-722</b>						O	[Cause] The jobs was timed out during connection with an application interface destination. [Remedy] Try to process the job flow again.
<b>027-723</b>						O	[Cause] Authentication at the application interface destination (ApeosWare Flow Service) failed. [Remedy] Check the user name and password that is used when creating a job flow.
<b>027-724</b>				O			[Cause] An application interface destination (ApeosWare Flow Service) could not be accessed. [Remedy] Check whether ApeosWare Flow Service operates correctly. When it is operating correctly, check the log.
<b>027-725</b>						O	[Cause] A job operation failed using an application interface. [Remedy] Check whether the application linked (ApeosWare Flow Service) operates correctly. When it is operating correctly, check the log. When it is not operating, check the network environments.
<b>027-726</b>				O			[Cause] The status of the application interface destination (ApeosWare Flow Service) is unknown. [Remedy] Check whether ApeosWare Flow Service operates correctly. When it is operating correctly, check the log.
<b>027-727</b>						O	[Cause] A parameter is illegal during an application interface. [Remedy] Try to process the job flow again.
<b>027-728</b>						O	[Cause] The number of files that are to be sent to external services exceeded the maximum number. [Remedy] Reduce the number of files, and send them again.
<b>027-730</b>				O	O		[Cause] The number of the document pages attached to the SMTP mail is more than the maximum number of pages allowed for the Split Send feature. [Remedy] Reduce the number of the document pages, and try again.
<b>027-737</b>				O		O	[Cause] An error occurred while reading data from the job template pool server. [Remedy] Check to see whether you have privileges for the directory which stores the job template.
<b>027-739</b>				O		O	[Cause] Unable to find the specified job template pool server. [Remedy] Check the path name of the job template pool server.
<b>027-740</b>				O		O	[Cause] Unable to login to the job template pool server. [Remedy] Check the login user name and password.
<b>027-741</b>				O		O	[Cause] Unable to connect to the job template pool server. [Remedy] Ask the network administrator to check the network and server environments.
<b>027-742</b>				O		O	[Cause] Unable to store job template due to insufficient hard disk space. [Remedy] Remove unnecessary data from the hard disk to increase free disk space.
<b>027-743</b>				O		O	[Cause] The specified job template pool server is incorrect. [Remedy] Check the settings of the job template pool server.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>027-744</b>				O		O	[Cause] The domain name of the job template pool server has a problem. [Remedy] Make sure that the DNS server connection and the domain name have been registered to the DNS server.
<b>027-745</b>				O		O	[Cause] The address of the DNS server has not been registered on the machine. [Remedy] Either register the address of the DNS server on the machine, or set the address of the job template pool server with its IP address.
<b>027-746</b>				O		O	[Cause] The protocol settings on the job template pool server are incorrect. [Remedy] Set up the correct port.
<b>027-750</b>						O	[Cause] Attempted to give a fax/print/Internet Fax command to the scan document. [Remedy] Fax/print/Internet Fax features are unavailable for scan documents. Set the job flow correctly.
<b>027-751</b>						O	[Cause] An error occurred during job flow processing. [Remedy] Check the settings of the job flow.
<b>027-752</b>						O	[Cause] A mandatory entry field is blank in the job flow. [Remedy] Take one of the following actions: •Link mailboxes only to job flows that do not have mandatory entry fields. •Set the default values to the mandatory fields of the job flow.
<b>027-753</b>						O	[Cause] 1) Attempted to execute the service while the port necessary for the job flow is either deactivated or disabled. 2) Attempted to execute a job flow to send e-mail using the encryption or digital signature feature while S/MIME communication is disabled. [Remedy] For Cause 1) Have your System Administrator check the port status. For Cause 2) Enable S/MIME communication, or modify the job flow so that e-mail is sent by not using the encryption or digital signature feature.
<b>027-754</b>				O			[Cause] The setting contents for [DocuWorks Signature] or [PDF Signature] on the job flow are not appropriate. [Remedy] Check the DocuWorks and PDF signatures for both the system data settings (machine's current settings) and the executed job flow settings. If these settings are not the same, change either of them.
<b>027-770</b>		O					[Cause] The print job has a problem. [Remedy] Submit a print job again.
<b>027-771</b>		O					[Cause] The hard disk of the server connected to the machine is full. [Remedy] Delete unnecessary data from the server.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>027-772</b>						O	[Cause] An error occurred during communication with the SMTP server. [Remedy] Use ASCII characters to modify the host name that has been specified under [System Settings] > [Connectivity & Network Setup] > [Machine's E-mail Address/Host Name]. If the error persists, check with your network administrator whether the SMTP server supports the HELO command.
<b>027-773</b>						O	[Cause] An error occurred during communication with the SMTP server. [Remedy] Wait for a while, and try again.
<b>027-774</b>						O	[Cause] The specified e-mail address contains unsupported characters. [Remedy] Specify the e-mail address using ASCII characters.
<b>027-775</b>						O	[Cause] Too many destination addresses have been specified. [Remedy] Reduce the number of destination addresses. If the error persists, check with your network administrator whether the SMTP server supports the EHLO command.
<b>027-776</b>						O	[Cause] An error occurred during communication with the SMTP server. [Remedy] Use ASCII characters to modify the host name that has been specified under [System Settings] > [Connectivity & Network Setup] > [Machine's E-mail Address/Host Name]. If the error persists, check with your network administrator whether the SMTP server supports the EHLO command.
<b>027-777</b>						O	[Cause] The destination SMTP server does not support SMTP-AUTH. [Remedy] Set [E-mail Send Authentication] to [Off] under [System Settings] > [Connectivity & Network Setup] > [Outgoing/Incoming E-mail Settings] > [SMTP Server Settings].
<b>027-778</b>						O	[Cause] The destination SMTP server does not support the SMTP-AUTH system. [Remedy] Check with your network administrator about the authentication type supported by the SMTP server. The machine supports the following authentication types: PLAIN (plain text) authentication, LOGIN (BASE64) authentication, and CRAM-MD5 (challenge-response).
<b>027-779</b>						O	[Cause] Failed to authenticate the SMTP server. [Remedy] Check the login name and password set to SMTP-AUTH.
<b>027-796</b>		O			O	O	[Cause] The received e-mail was discarded because it had no attached documents. (The machine is set to print attached documents only.) [Remedy] To also print the mail body or header information, change settings in the Properties screen of CentreWare Internet Services.  Refer to "10 Computer Operations" > "E-mail Printing" in the User Guide.
<b>027-797</b>					O	O	[Cause] The output destination of the received e-mail is invalid. [Remedy] Specify a correct output destination, and send the e-mail again.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>033-363</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>033-710</b>			O				[Cause] The document to be sent by polling was deleted. [Remedy] Store the document again.
<b>033-712</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to process due to insufficient memory. [Remedy] Remove unnecessary data.
<b>033-713</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>033-716</b>			O				[Cause] The mailbox specified from the sender's machine does not exist. [Remedy] Register the mailbox. Refer to "Create Mailbox" (P.156).
<b>033-717</b>			O				[Cause] The mailbox passcode specified from the sender's machine is incorrect. Or, the machine password is incorrect. [Remedy] Notify the correct information to the sender's machine.
<b>033-718</b>			O				[Cause] Fax or polling documents do not exist in the mailbox specified from the sender's machine. [Remedy] Store fax or polling documents into the mailbox as necessary.
<b>033-719</b>			O				[Cause] The document may be deleted by turning off and on the machine. [Remedy] Retry sending.
<b>033-721</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>033-722</b>			O				[Cause] The document is jammed, or the document pages are over the limit. [Remedy] Remove the jammed paper or reduce the document pages, and retry sending.
<b>033-724</b>			O				[Cause] The reception was interrupted because the image volume exceeded the upper limit. [Remedy] Attach a HDD Extension Kit or Extension System Memory to increase the maximum volume of image data.
<b>033-725</b>			O				[Cause] The hard disk is full. [Remedy] Remove unnecessary data from the hard disk to increase free disk space.
<b>033-726</b>			O				[Cause] The received document was printed with the single sided printing, because the 2-sided printing is not available for a mixed sized document. [Remedy] No operation is necessary.
<b>033-727</b>			O				[Cause] The received page was printed without being rotated, because its data volume was too large to change the orientation automatically. [Remedy] No operation is necessary.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>033-728</b>			O				[Cause] The Auto Print formatting of the received fax document was interrupted by a manual print operation. [Remedy] No operation is necessary. The machine will automatically start the Auto Print job after manual printing.
<b>033-731</b>			O				[Cause] The print job for the received fax document was interrupted. [Remedy] The Auto Print processing of the received fax document was interrupted by a manual print operation. No operation is necessary.
<b>033-733</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the machine conditions are not improved by performing the relevant remedy, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>033-734</b>			O				[Cause] The print job of the received fax document was interrupted by a report job. [Remedy] No operation is necessary.
<b>033-735</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>033-736</b>			O				[Cause] The forwarding job was interrupted because the data volume exceeded the upper limit. [Remedy] No operation is necessary.
<b>033-737</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>033-738</b>			O				[Cause] Received abnormal JBIG data. [Remedy] No operation is necessary.
<b>033-740</b>			O				[Cause] The print job for the received fax document was interrupted. [Remedy] No operation is necessary.
<b>033-741</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>033-742</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. This error may occur if the remaining capacity of the machine's memory is 10% or less and Manual Send is used. [Remedy] When this error was caused by Manual Send, connect the line after storing the document. If the error is still not cleared, remove unnecessary data from the hard disk to increase free disk space, and retry again. Try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>033-743</b> <b>033-744</b> <b>033-745</b> <b>033-746</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. Try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>033-747</b>			O				[Cause] The job is in pending status. [Remedy] No operation is necessary.
<b>033-749</b>			O				[Cause] The machine will automatically resume and print out. [Remedy] No operation is necessary.
<b>033-750</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. Try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>033-751</b>						O	[Cause] An activity report output occurred during the printer lockout duration. Outputting the activity report was suspended because the machine was in Sleep mode. [Remedy] No operation is necessary. The machine will output the report after exiting the Sleep mode.
<b>033-755</b>			O				[Cause] A fax document was to be printed, but the print job was canceled because the fax feature did not work. If multiple documents stored in mailboxes are to be printed, and one of them is a fax document, the fax document and the documents to be printed subsequently will not be printed out. [Remedy] Take one of the following actions: •Turn the machine off and then back on. •Check if the phone cable connection is secured. •Print an Error History Report to obtain the fax-related error code (133-xxx, 134-xxx), and then solve the problem. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-211</b> <b>034-212</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred on the fax control system. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-500</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to communicate due to an incorrect phone number. [Remedy] Check the phone number, and try again.
<b>034-501</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to communicate because the specified telephone line does not exist. [Remedy] Check the telephone line, and try again.
<b>034-505</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-506</b>			O				[Cause] The destination machine does not have the remote copy feature (for printing the multiple sets of a received document). [Remedy] Check if the destination machine has the remote copy feature.
<b>034-507</b>			O				[Cause] The specified password is not identical with the ID number of the destination machine. [Remedy] Check the password and the phone number. The destination machine may be set not to send its ID number. Check the setting of the destination machine. This error code also appears when polling is rejected.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>034-508</b> <b>034-509</b> <b>034-510</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-511</b>			O				[Cause] A document for relay broadcasting cannot be transmitted. [Remedy] Select [Address Book] to print an address list, and check if the relay station is correctly registered. If the registered address is incorrect, modify it. Check also the contents of the address number registered at the relay station.  For information on Relay Broadcast, refer to "4 Fax" > "Broadcast" in the User Guide. For information on Remote Relay Broadcast, refer to "4 Fax" > "Broadcast" in the User Guide.
<b>034-512</b>			O				[Cause] An infinite loop was detected on the remote relay broadcast. [Remedy] Check the abbreviated number of the relay broadcast. Check also the abbreviated number registered in the relay station.  For information on Remote Relay Broadcast, refer to "4 Fax" > "Broadcast" in the User Guide.
<b>034-515</b>			O				[Cause] The destination machine has a problem. [Remedy] Check the conditions of the destination machine.
<b>034-519</b>			O				[Cause] The number of destinations specified for the broadcast transmission exceeded the upper limit. [Remedy] Wait until the waiting jobs decrease, or reduce the number of destinations, and try again.
<b>034-520</b>			O				[Cause] The number of waiting jobs exceeded the upper limit. [Remedy] Wait until the waiting jobs decrease, and try again.
<b>034-521</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred while faxing. [Remedy] Turn off and on the machine. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-522</b>			O				[Cause] There is no line available for the manual communication. [Remedy] Wait until the job in communication is completed, and try again.
<b>034-523</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to accept jobs. [Remedy] Retry after waiting for a while.
<b>034-527</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred while faxing. [Remedy] Turn off and on the machine. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-528</b>			O				[Cause] Manual communication is not available during dialing. [Remedy] Try again after the dialing.
<b>034-529</b>			O				[Cause] Paper with the same size as the received document is not loaded on the machine. [Remedy] Check the following: •Check the sizes of paper loaded on the machine. •Check if the paper trays are correctly inserted.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>034-530</b>			O				[Cause] Operation time out [Remedy] Operate within a specified time.
<b>034-550</b>						O	[Cause] An error occurred while faxing. [Remedy] Turn off and on the machine. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-700</b> <b>034-701</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred while faxing. [Remedy] Turn off and on the machine. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-702</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to transmit because the number is not registered in Address Number. [Remedy] Check if the number registered in Address Number is correct, and try again.
<b>034-703</b> <b>034-704</b> <b>034-705</b> <b>034-706</b>			O				[Cause] The phone cable is not correctly connected. [Remedy] Check the phone cable connection, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-707</b> <b>034-708</b> <b>034-709</b> <b>034-710</b> <b>034-711</b> <b>034-712</b> <b>034-713</b> <b>034-714</b> <b>034-715</b> <b>034-716</b> <b>034-717</b> <b>034-718</b> <b>034-719</b> <b>034-720</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-721</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred while faxing. [Remedy] Turn off and on the machine. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-722</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-723</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred while faxing. [Remedy] Turn off and on the machine. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-724</b> <b>034-725</b> <b>034-726</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.



Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>034-727</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred while faxing. [Remedy] Turn off and on the machine. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-728</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to communicate due to an incorrect phone number. [Remedy] Check the phone number, and try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-730</b> <b>034-731</b> <b>034-732</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-734</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred while faxing. [Remedy] Turn off and on the machine. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-738</b> <b>034-739</b>			O				[Cause] The phone cable is not correctly connected. [Remedy] Check the phone cable connection, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-740</b> <b>034-741</b> <b>034-742</b> <b>034-743</b> <b>034-744</b> <b>034-745</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-752</b>			O				[Cause] The destination machine is busy. [Remedy] Retry after waiting for a while. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-753</b>			O				[Cause] The destination machine does not respond. [Remedy] Check the phone number, and try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-754</b>			O				[Cause] The destination machine does not respond. [Remedy] Check if the destination machine is ready to receive a fax, and try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-755</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to communicate due to an incorrect phone number. [Remedy] Check the phone number, and try again. If the problem persists, contact your telephone company. If the machine conditions are not improved by performing the relevant remedy, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-756</b>			O				[Cause] The destination machine does not respond. [Remedy] Check the phone number, and try again. If the problem persists, send to another machine at the recipient's site. If the machine conditions are not improved by performing the relevant remedy, contact our Customer Support Center.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>034-758</b> <b>034-759</b> <b>034-760</b> <b>034-761</b> <b>034-762</b> <b>034-763</b> <b>034-764</b> <b>034-765</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to communicate due to an incorrect phone number. [Remedy] Check the phone number, and try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-766</b> <b>034-767</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-768</b> <b>034-769</b> <b>034-770</b> <b>034-771</b> <b>034-772</b>			O				[Cause] Communication error [Remedy] When this error was caused by a sending operation, try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-773</b> <b>034-774</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to communicate due to an incorrect phone number. [Remedy] Check the phone number, and try again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-775</b> <b>034-776</b> <b>034-777</b> <b>034-778</b> <b>034-779</b> <b>034-780</b> <b>034-781</b> <b>034-782</b> <b>034-783</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-784</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to communicate due to an incorrect phone number. [Remedy] Check the phone number, and try again. If the problem persists, contact your telephone company.
<b>034-785</b> <b>034-786</b> <b>034-787</b> <b>034-788</b> <b>034-789</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>034-790</b> <b>034-791</b> <b>034-792</b> <b>034-793</b> <b>034-794</b> <b>034-795</b>			O				[Cause] Is the telephone line (modular jack) correctly connected? [Remedy] Check the telephone line connection, and try again. Refer to "2 Product Overview" > "Machine Components" > "Telephone Line Connectors" in the User Guide.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>034-796</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to communicate due to an incorrect phone number. [Remedy] Check the phone number, and try again.
<b>034-797</b> <b>034-798</b> <b>034-799</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>035-550</b>						O	[Cause] An error occurred when writing to the FaxG3-ROM. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>035-700</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>035-701</b> <b>035-702</b> <b>035-703</b>			O				[Cause] The communication was interrupted on the destination machine. This error is not due to this machine. [Remedy] Call the destination to check the condition of the destination machine, and try again.
<b>035-704</b>			O				[Cause] The fax was sent using a feature (such as Polling), but the destination machine does not have the feature. [Remedy] Make a phone call to the recipient to check the destination machine features.
<b>035-705</b>			O				[Cause] The destination machine may have a problem. [Remedy] Call the destination to check the condition of the machine, and try again.
<b>035-706</b>			O				[Cause] The destination machine has a problem, or the fax number is incorrect. [Remedy] Call the destination to check the condition of the machine and the fax number, and then try again.
<b>035-707</b>			O				[Cause] The received document has an incorrect or no password. [Remedy] No operation is necessary. This error is just to notify that the machine received such a document.
<b>035-708</b> <b>035-709</b> <b>035-710</b> <b>035-711</b>			O				[Cause] The destination machine may have a problem. [Remedy] Call the destination to check the condition of the machine, and try again.
<b>035-712</b>			O				[Cause] The destination machine may have a problem. [Remedy] Check on the destination machine if any document is jammed. When you requested polling, check also on the destination machine if the target document have been correctly placed.
<b>035-713</b>			O				[Cause] The destination machine may have a problem. [Remedy] Call the destination to check the condition of the machine, and try again.
<b>035-714</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to communicate due to an incorrect fax number or mailbox number. [Remedy] Check the fax number and mailbox number, and try again.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>035-715</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to communicate due to an incorrect fax number, mailbox number, or mailbox passcode. [Remedy] Check the fax number, mailbox number, and mailbox passcode, and then try again.
<b>035-716</b> <b>035-717</b> <b>035-718</b> <b>035-719</b>			O				[Cause] Communication error [Remedy] Ask the sender to try again.
<b>035-720</b>			O				[Cause] An communication error occurred. [Remedy] For error during fax transmission: Check if the fax number is correct and if the destination machine has the specified feature, and then try again. For error during fax reception: Ask the sender to try again.
<b>035-721</b> <b>035-722</b>			O				[Cause] Communication error [Remedy] Ask the sender to try again.
<b>035-723</b> <b>035-724</b>			O				[Cause] Communication error [Remedy] For sending error, check the destination phone number, check also if the destination machine has the feature you specified, and then try again. For receiving error, ask the sender to try again.
<b>035-725</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to communicate because the fax number is incorrect or the destination machine does not have the specified feature. [Remedy] Check if the fax number is correct and the destination machine has the specified feature, and then try again.
<b>035-726</b>			O				[Cause] Communication error [Remedy] For sending error, check the destination phone number, check also if the destination machine has the feature you specified, and then try again. For receiving error, ask the sender to try again.
<b>035-727</b> <b>035-728</b> <b>035-729</b>			O				[Cause] Communication error [Remedy] Ask the sender to try again.
<b>035-730</b> <b>035-731</b> <b>035-732</b> <b>035-733</b> <b>035-734</b> <b>035-735</b> <b>035-736</b> <b>035-737</b> <b>035-738</b> <b>035-739</b> <b>035-740</b> <b>035-741</b> <b>035-742</b>			O				[Cause] Communication error [Remedy] For sending error, check the destination phone number, check also if the destination machine has the feature you specified, and then try again. For receiving error, ask the sender to try again.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>035-743</b> <b>035-744</b> <b>035-745</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to communicate. The phone number is incorrect or the destination machine does not have the feature you specified. [Remedy] Check the destination phone number, check also if the destination machine has the feature you specified, and then try again.
<b>035-746</b>			O				[Cause] The fax network does not respond. This may be caused by the following. Check them and then send the fax again. [Remedy] Is the telephone line correctly connected? You may not have a fax network contract, or the fax network may have a problem. When connecting the machine to the fax network, enter two pauses after "161" and "162", then dial the telephone number.
<b>035-747</b> <b>035-748</b>			O				[Cause] The dialing or transmission was interrupted by the <Stop> button. [Remedy] No action is necessary.
<b>035-749</b>			O				[Cause] The number was re-dialed the specified number of times, but the destination machine did not respond. [Remedy] Ask the recipient if the telephone number is correct or if the telephone line and telephone switchboard for the destination machine are defective.
<b>035-750</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>035-751</b> <b>035-752</b>			O				[Cause] The dialing or transmission was interrupted by the <Stop> button. [Remedy] No action is necessary.
<b>035-753</b>			O				[Cause] Memory became insufficient when attempting to receive more than 999 pages of fax document. [Remedy] Ask the sender to reduce the number of pages at one transmission.
<b>035-754</b> <b>035-755</b> <b>035-756</b> <b>035-757</b> <b>035-758</b> <b>035-759</b> <b>035-760</b> <b>035-761</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
035-762			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
036-500							
036-501							
036-502							
036-503							
036-504							
036-505							
036-506							
036-507							
036-508							
036-509							
036-510							
036-511							
036-512							
036-513							
036-514							
036-515							
036-516							
036-517							
036-518							
036-519							
036-520							
036-521							
036-522							
036-523							
036-524							
036-525							
036-526							
036-527							
036-528							
036-529							
036-530							
036-531							
036-532							
036-533							
036-534							
036-535							
036-536							
036-537							
036-538							
036-539							
036-540							
036-541							
036-542							

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>036-700</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>036-701</b>							
<b>036-702</b>							
<b>036-703</b>							
<b>036-704</b>							
<b>036-705</b>							
<b>036-706</b>							
<b>036-707</b>							
<b>036-708</b>							
<b>036-709</b>							
<b>036-710</b>							
<b>036-711</b>							
<b>036-712</b>							
<b>036-713</b>							
<b>036-714</b>							
<b>036-715</b>							
<b>036-716</b>							
<b>036-717</b>							
<b>036-718</b>							
<b>036-719</b>							
<b>036-720</b>							
<b>036-721</b>							
<b>036-722</b>							
<b>036-723</b>							
<b>036-724</b>							
<b>036-725</b>							
<b>036-726</b>							
<b>036-727</b>							
<b>036-728</b>							
<b>036-729</b>							
<b>036-730</b>							
<b>036-731</b>							
<b>036-732</b>							
<b>036-733</b>							
<b>036-734</b>							

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>036-735</b> <b>036-736</b> <b>036-737</b> <b>036-738</b> <b>036-739</b> <b>036-740</b> <b>036-741</b> <b>036-742</b> <b>036-743</b> <b>036-744</b> <b>036-745</b> <b>036-746</b> <b>036-747</b> <b>036-748</b> <b>036-749</b> <b>036-750</b> <b>036-751</b> <b>036-752</b> <b>036-753</b> <b>036-754</b> <b>036-755</b> <b>036-756</b> <b>036-757</b> <b>036-758</b> <b>036-759</b> <b>036-760</b> <b>036-761</b> <b>036-762</b> <b>036-763</b> <b>036-764</b> <b>036-765</b> <b>036-766</b> <b>036-767</b> <b>036-768</b> <b>036-769</b> <b>036-770</b> <b>036-771</b> <b>036-772</b> <b>036-773</b> <b>036-774</b> <b>036-775</b> <b>036-776</b> <b>036-777</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>036-778</b> <b>036-779</b>			O				[Cause] The communication was interrupted on the destination machine. [Remedy] Ask the sender to try again.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.



Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>036-780</b> <b>036-781</b> <b>036-782</b> <b>036-783</b> <b>036-784</b> <b>036-785</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>036-786</b> <b>036-787</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to communicate due to an incorrect password. [Remedy] Enter the correct password, and try again. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>036-788</b> <b>036-789</b>			O				[Cause] The machine sent a polling request, but the destination machine does not have target documents. [Remedy] Call the destination to check the condition, and try again.
<b>036-790</b> <b>036-791</b>			O				[Cause] Unable to communicate due to incorrect operation. [Remedy] Refer to this Administrator Guide to operate the machine correctly.
<b>036-792</b> <b>036-793</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>036-795</b>			O				[Cause] The destination machine does not have the remote copy feature (for printing the multiple sets of a received document). [Remedy] Check if the destination machine has the remote copy feature.
<b>036-796</b>			O				[Cause] The document was faxed with normal transmission, because the destination machine does not have the remote copy feature (for printing the multiple sets of a received document). [Remedy] No operation is necessary.
<b>036-797</b> <b>036-798</b> <b>036-799</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Check the settings and the phone number, and send the fax again. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>047-211</b>						O	[Cause] Offset output tray error [Remedy] Power-cycle the machine. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>047-214</b>						O	[Cause] Duplex unit error [Remedy] Power-cycle the machine. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>047-216</b>						O	[Cause] Finisher error [Remedy] Power-cycle the machine. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>062-210</b>	O			O			[Cause] Document feeder malfunction [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>062-211</b>	O			O			[Cause] An error occurred in the document feeder. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>062-220</b>	O			O			[Cause] Document feeder malfunction [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>062-277</b>	O			O			[Cause] A communication error occurred between the document scan unit and the document feeder. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>062-278</b>	O			O			[Cause] An error occurred in the document feeder. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>062-790</b>						O	[Cause] The scanned document is copy-protected. [Remedy] Check documents, referring to "1 Before Using the Machine" > "Legal Notice" in the User Guide.
<b>063-210</b> <b>063-220</b> <b>063-230</b> <b>063-240</b>	O			O			[Cause] An error occurred in the document feeder. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>065-210</b> <b>065-211</b> <b>065-212</b> <b>065-213</b> <b>065-214</b>						O	[Cause] An error occurred with the machine. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>065-215</b> <b>065-216</b>	O			O			[Cause] An error occurred with the document feeder. [Remedy] Power-cycle the machine. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>065-219</b> <b>065-220</b>	O			O			[Cause] The document feeder is defective. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>071-210</b> <b>071-211</b> <b>071-212</b>						O	[Cause] Tray 1 malfunction. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center. Trays other than the Tray 1 can be used.
<b>072-210</b> <b>072-211</b> <b>072-212</b>						O	[Cause] Tray 2 malfunction [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center. Trays other than the Tray 2 can be used.
<b>073-210</b> <b>073-211</b> <b>073-212</b>						O	[Cause] Tray 3 malfunction [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center. Trays other than the Tray 3 can be used.
<b>074-212</b>						O	[Cause] Tray 4 malfunction [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center. Trays other than the Tray 4 can be used.
<b>075-212</b>						O	[Cause] Tray 5 (bypass) malfunction [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center. Trays other than the Tray 5 can be used.
<b>077-212</b>						O	[Cause] A different type of paper tray is attached. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>081-799</b>						O	[Cause] Tray 1 malfunction [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center. Trays other than the Tray 1 can be used.
<b>112-700</b>						O	[Cause] The finisher's punch waste container is full. [Remedy] Empty the punch waste container.
<b>116-220</b>						O	[Cause] Failed to move to the Download mode. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>116-324</b>		O					[Cause] An error occurred on the machine. [Remedy] If an error occurred while printing, turn off the machine once, then hold down both the <Start> and <Stop> buttons simultaneously for 6 seconds when turning the machine back on. This will delete the print data which caused the error. If the error was caused by other reasons, turn the machine off and on. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>116-392</b>						O	[Cause] The Rom of Printer Kit (optional) or Adobe PostScript 3 Kit (optional) is attached to an improper slot. [Remedy] Attach the ROM to the correct slot. For more information about the slot for each ROM, refer to the instruction guide provided with the ROM.
<b>116-701</b>	O	O					[Cause] Unable to use the 2-sided printing feature due to insufficient memory. [Remedy] Add memory.
<b>116-702</b>		O					[Cause] A print job was processed using a substitute font. [Remedy] Check the print data.
<b>116-703</b>		O					[Cause] An error occurred during PostScript (optional) processing. [Remedy] Either check the print data, or click [Spool Settings] on the [Details] tab in the print driver to set bi-directional communication to off.
<b>116-710</b>		O					[Cause] A probable cause is that the correct document size could not be judged as the receive data exceeded the HP-GL/2 spool size. [Remedy] Increase the size assigned to HP-GL/2 auto-layout memory.
<b>116-713</b>						O	[Cause] The job was divided to be printed due to insufficient disk space. [Remedy] Remove unnecessary data from the hard disk to increase free disk space.
<b>116-714</b>		O					[Cause] An HP-GL/2 command error occurred. [Remedy] Check the print data.
<b>116-720</b>		O					[Cause] An error occurred during print processing due to insufficient memory. [Remedy] Stop unnecessary ports or remove unnecessary data from the hard disk, to increase free disk space.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>116-740</b>		O					[Cause] Numerical value operation error occurred as a value exceeding the value limit of the printer was used in the print data. [Remedy] Check the print data.
<b>116-747</b>		O					[Cause] The paper margin value is too large for the HP-GL/2 effective coordinate area. [Remedy] Decrease the paper margin value, and try again.
<b>116-748</b>		O					[Cause] There is no plot data in the HP-GL/2 print data. [Remedy] Check the print data.
<b>116-749</b>		O					[Cause] The job was cancelled because the specified font does not exist. [Remedy] Install the font, or set the font replacement on the print driver.
<b>116-750</b>						O	[Cause] Banner sheet tray malfunction [Remedy] Get the tray back to normal or change the Banner sheet tray.
<b>116-752</b>		O					[Cause] The descriptions of the PDF printing job ticket have a problem. [Remedy] Try again. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>116-771</b> <b>116-772</b> <b>116-773</b> <b>116-774</b> <b>116-775</b> <b>116-776</b> <b>116-777</b> <b>116-778</b>			O				[Cause] The data was automatically modified because it included an invalid parameter. [Remedy] The printed image may be incomplete. Check if the image has no problem, or ask the sender to send the data again. When using the Internet Fax forwarding feature, check the data sent to the e-mail recipient.
<b>116-780</b>					O	O	[Cause] There is a problem with the document attached to the received e-mail. [Remedy] Check the attached document.
<b>116-790</b>		O					[Cause] 1. If the operator cancelled printing a document that was received using the Fax to Mailbox or Internet Fax to Mailbox feature: The first set of the document is not stapled. 2. For a cause other than Cause 1: All the sets of the document are not stapled. [Remedy] For Cause 1. Manually staple the first set of the document. Or, do not cancel printing a document that is received using the Fax to Mailbox or Internet Fax to Mailbox feature. For Cause 2. Check if the staple position has been correctly specified, and try printing again.
<b>123-207</b> <b>123-209</b> <b>123-400</b>		O					[Cause] A malfunction occurred in the machine. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>124-701</b>						O	[Cause] The output destination was changed to the center tray due to the malfunction of the specified output tray (Side tray). [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center. Any trays other than the defective output tray can be used.
<b>124-702</b>						O	[Cause] The output destination was changed to the center tray due to the malfunction of the specified Finisher tray. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center. Any trays other than the defective output tray can be used.
<b>124-705</b>	O						[Cause] The punch setting was cancelled. [Remedy] Check the punch position, and try again.
<b>124-706</b>	O						[Cause] The folding setting was cancelled. [Remedy] Check the folding setting, and try to print again.
<b>124-708</b>	O						[Cause] The output tray was changed to the center tray because the size of the paper used was different from the size specified for the 2-Sided feature. [Remedy] Check if the specified size paper has been loaded in a paper tray.
<b>124-709</b>	O						[Cause] The document exceeded the maximum number of pages that can be stapled. [Remedy] Reduce the number of pages, or cancel the stapling setting, then try to print again.
<b>124-710</b>						O	[Cause] The output destination was changed from the mailbox because the mailbox does not support the specified paper size. [Remedy] Specify the paper size that the mailbox supports.
<b>133-210</b> <b>133-211</b> <b>133-212</b> <b>133-213</b> <b>133-214</b> <b>133-215</b> <b>133-216</b> <b>133-217</b> <b>133-218</b> <b>133-219</b> <b>133-220</b> <b>133-221</b> <b>133-222</b> <b>133-223</b> <b>133-224</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>133-226</b>			O				[Cause] An unsupported country code was specified. [Remedy] Contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>133-280</b> <b>133-281</b> <b>133-282</b> <b>133-283</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

Error Code	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
<b>133-700</b>	O						[Cause] The staple setting was cancelled. [Remedy] Check the staple position, and try again.
<b>133-710</b>			O				[Cause] When printing the received fax document, the paper loaded on the bypass tray was used for printing because the specified tray could not be used. [Remedy] Take one of the following actions: •Load the printable paper for printing the received fax document: A3SEF □, A4LEF □, B4SEF □, B5LEF □, A4SEF □, A5SEF □, B5SEF □, 8.5x11"SEF □, 8.5x13"SEF □, 8.5x14"SEF □, 11x17"SEF □, 8.5x11" LEF, □ 5.5x8.5" SEF □. •Use the printable paper type for printing the received fax document: plain paper, bond paper, recycled paper, side 2 paper, user-defined custom paper. •Check the settings by selecting [System Settings] > [Fax Mode Settings] > [Fax Control] > [Receiving Paper Size]. 1. Select [Receiving Paper Size] > [Tray Mode] to add the tray to be used for printing the received fax documents. 2. Set up so that specified tray in [Tray Mode] can be used for printing the received fax documents. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.
<b>134-210</b> <b>134-211</b>			O				[Cause] An error occurred during fax transmission. [Remedy] Turn the machine off and on. If the problem persists, contact our Customer Support Center.

\* If the error persists after following the listed solution, contact our Customer Support Center. The contact number is printed on the label or card attached on the machine.

## Other Errors

Remedies are described for situations in which the following messages are displayed.

Error Message	Category						Cause and Remedy
	C	P	F	S	M	O	
A fault has occurred. Switch off the machine. (xxx-yyy)	O	O		O	O	O	[Cause] An error occurred. [Remedy] Turn off the power, wait until the touch screen goes dark, and then turn on power again. If the message persists, record the displayed contents for [(xxx-yyy)]. Switch off the machine immediately, wait for the touch screen to go dark, and contact our Customer Support Center.
Completed with an error. (xxx-yyy)	O	O		O	O	O	[Cause] An error occurred. [Remedy] Retry the same procedure.
A fault has occurred. The machine has rebooted. Select [Close]. If the problem persists, call for service. (xxx-yyy)	O	O		O	O	O	[Cause] An auto-recoverable internal error occurred, and the machine restarted automatically. [Remedy] Select the [Close] button. The machine is operating normally now. If the error persists, contact our Customer Support Center.

# Paper Jams


If paper is jammed inside the machine, the machine stops and an alarm sounds. A message is also displayed on the touch screen. Follow the instructions displayed to remove the jammed paper.

Gently remove the paper taking care not to tear it. If paper is torn while it is being removed from the machine, remove all the torn pieces making sure that none remain inside the machine.


If a paper jam message is displayed again after you have cleared the paper jam, paper is probably jammed at another location. Clear this by following the message.

When you have finished clearing the paper jam, printing is automatically resumed from the state before the paper jam occurred.

If a paper jam occurred during copying, press the <Start> button. Copying is resumed from the state before the paper jam occurred.

**WARNING**

If you need to pull out a tray to remove paper jam, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative. Do not pull out a tray, otherwise it may cause injuries.

**CAUTION**

Do not attempt to remove a paper jammed deeply inside the product, particularly a paper wrapped around a fuser or a heat roller. Otherwise, it may cause injuries or burns. Switch off the product promptly and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

This section describes how to clear paper, document, and staple jams at the following locations.

Refer to each section.

Paper Jams in the Top Left Cover [A] .....	407
Paper Jams in the Bottom Left Cover [B] .....	409
Paper Jams in the Bottom Left Cover [C] .....	410
Paper Jams in the Top Cover [E] .....	411
Paper Jams in the Trays 1 to 4 .....	412
Paper Jams in the Tandem Tray Module .....	412
Paper Jams in the Tray 5 (Bypass) .....	413
Paper Jams in the Duplex Kit .....	414
Paper Jams in the Finisher-A1 .....	415
Paper Jams in the Finisher-B1 .....	415
Document Jams .....	417
Staple Jams in the Staple Cartridge (For Finisher-A1) .....	420
Staple Jams in the Staple Cartridge (For Finisher-B1) .....	421

- Important**
- When a paper jam occurs, paper is sometimes torn and remains inside the machine if you pull out a paper tray without checking the paper jam position. This may cause machine malfunctions. Check where the paper jam occurred first.
  - If a piece of jammed paper remains inside the machine, the paper jam message will not disappear from the touch screen.
  - Clear the paper jams while the machine is on. When the power is turned off, all information stored to the machine's memory will be erased.
  - Do not touch components inside the machine. This may cause print defects.



## Paper Jams in the Top Left Cover [A]

The following describes how to clear paper jams in the top left cover A.

Use the green lever A1 or A2 to clear the paper jams in the top left cover A. Follow the instructions displayed and remove the jammed paper.

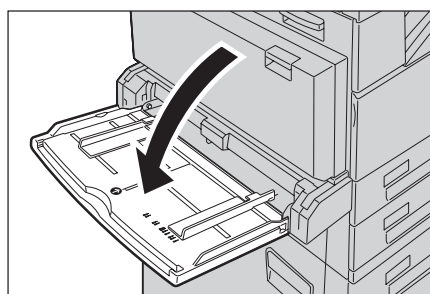
The following sections separately explain how to use the green levers A1 and A2 for clearing paper jams.

When using the green lever A1 ..... 407

When using the green lever A2 ..... 408

### When using the green lever A1

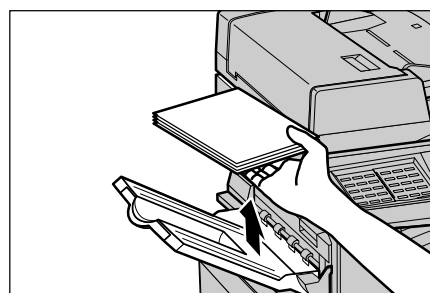
- 1 Open the Tray 5 (bypass).



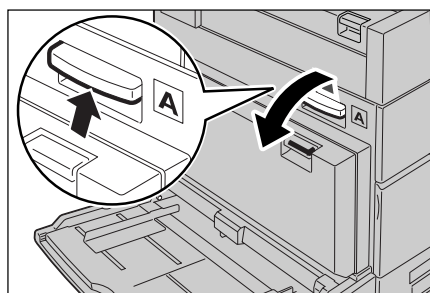
- 2 If the Side Tray (optional) is attached, remove paper from the Side Tray.

**Note**

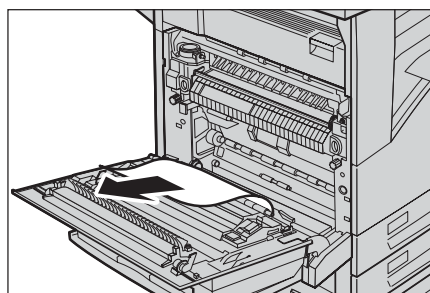
- If opened with the paper loaded on the Side Tray, the cover A will not be easily folded up when closed.



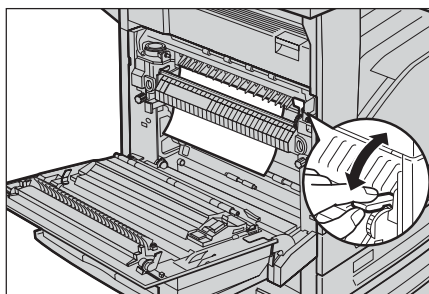
- 3 Lift up the lever on the upper right side of the cover A, and open the cover A.



- 4 If the jammed paper does not reach to the Fuser Unit, remove it. Then proceed to Step 7.  
If the jammed paper reaches to the Fuser Unit, proceed to Step 5.



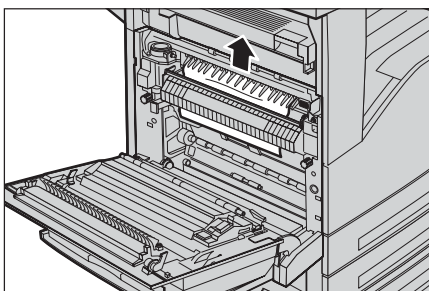
- 5** Push down the green lever A1 in the direction of the arrow several times to eject the paper upward.



- 6** Remove the paper in the direction of the arrow.

**Note**

- If the paper is torn, check for any torn pieces inside the machine.

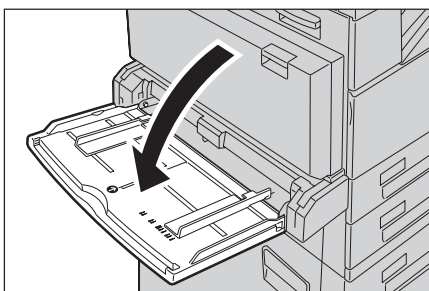


- 7** Push the center section of the cover A to firmly close it.

- 8** Close the Tray 5 (bypass).

### When using the green lever A2

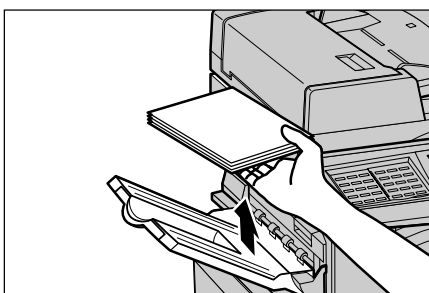
- 1** Open the Tray 5 (bypass).



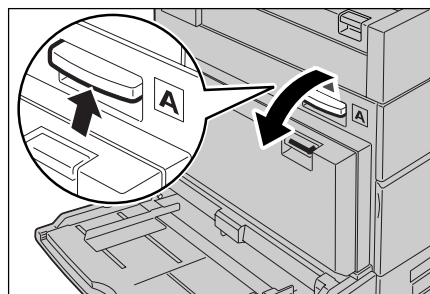
- 2** If the Side Tray (optional) is attached, remove paper from the Side Tray.

**Note**

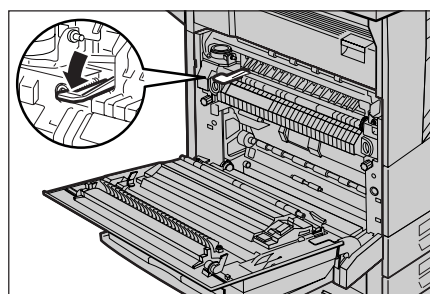
- If opened with the paper loaded on the Side Tray, the cover A will not be easily folded up when closed.



- 3** Lift up the lever on the upper right side of the cover A, and open the cover A.

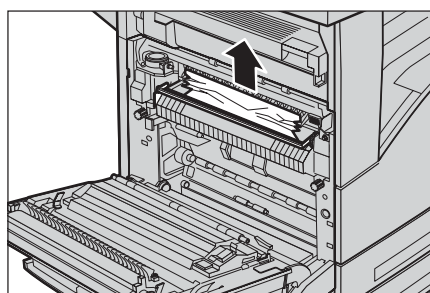


- 4** If paper is jammed at the Fuser Unit, push down the green lever A2 in the direction of the arrow to open the Fuser Unit cover.



- 5** If paper is jammed inside the Fuser Unit, gently remove the paper while holding down the green lever A2.

**Note** • If the paper is torn, check for any torn pieces inside the machine.



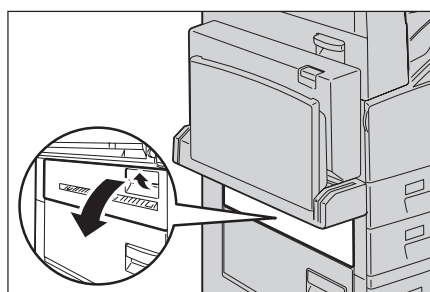
- 6** Push the center section of the cover A to firmly close it.

- 7** Close the Tray 5 (bypass).

## Paper Jams in the Bottom Left Cover [B]

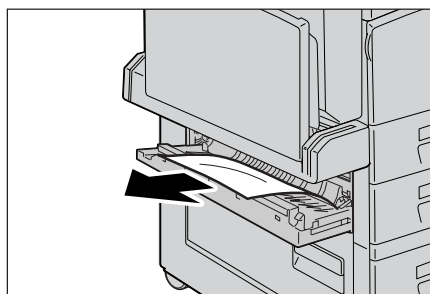
The following describes how to clear paper jams in the bottom left cover B.

- 1** Lift up the lever on the right side of the cover B, and open the cover B.



**2** Remove the jammed paper.**Note**

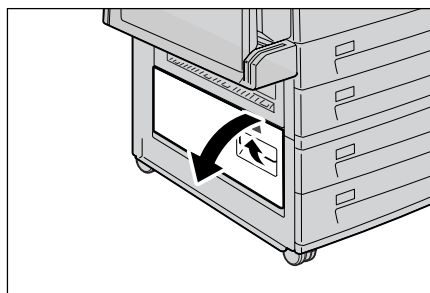
- If paper is jammed at the upper position, it may be invisible. Check inside thoroughly.
- If paper is torn, check for any torn pieces of paper inside the machine.

**3** Press the center section of the cover B to close it.**Note**

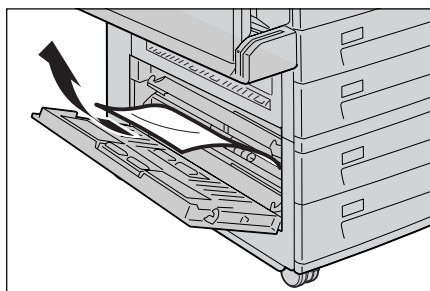
- Be sure to press the center section of the cover to firmly close it.

## Paper Jams in the Bottom Left Cover [C]

The following describes how to clear paper jams in the bottom left cover C.

**1** Lift up the lever on the right side of the cover C, and open the cover C.**2** Remove the jammed paper.**Note**

- If paper is jammed at the upper position, it may be invisible. Check inside thoroughly.
- If paper is torn, check for any torn pieces of paper inside the machine.

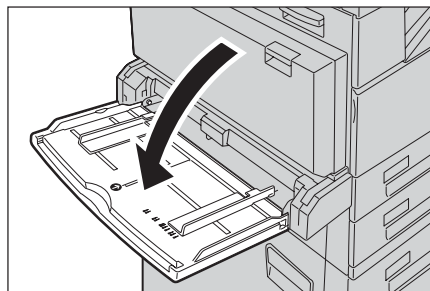
**3** Press the center section of the cover C to close it.**Note**

- Be sure to press the center section of the cover to firmly close it.

## Paper Jams in the Top Cover [E]

The following describes how to clear paper jams in the Top cover E.

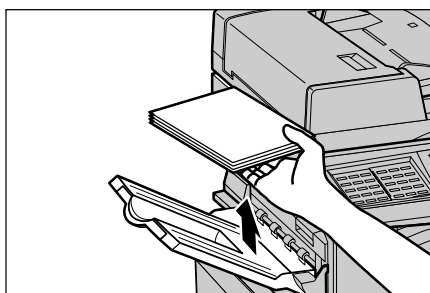
- 1 Open the Tray 5 (bypass).



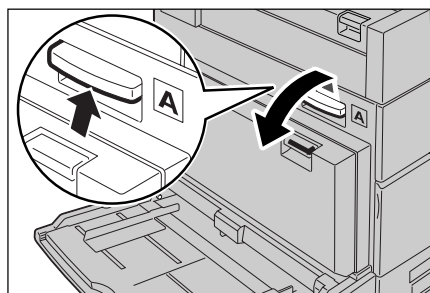
- 2 When the Side Tray is installed, remove paper from the Side Tray.

**Note**

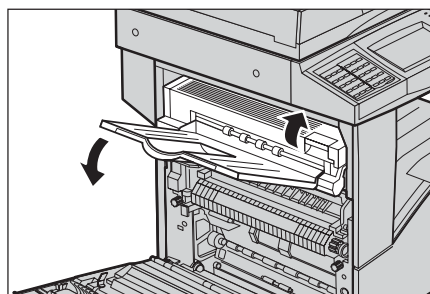
- If opened with the paper loaded on the Side Tray, the cover A will not be easily folded up when closed.



- 3 Lift up the lever on the upper right side of the cover A, and open the cover A.



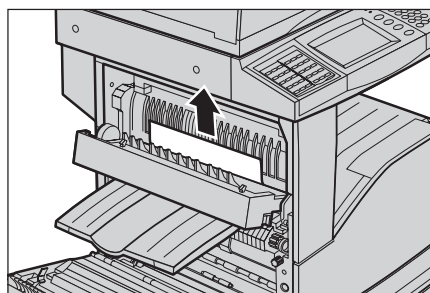
- 4 Lift up the handle to open the top cover E.



- 5 Remove the jammed paper.

**Note**

- If paper is torn, check for any torn pieces of paper inside the machine.



- 6 Close the top cover E.
- 7 Press the center section of the cover A to firmly close it.
- 8 Close the Tray 5 (bypass).

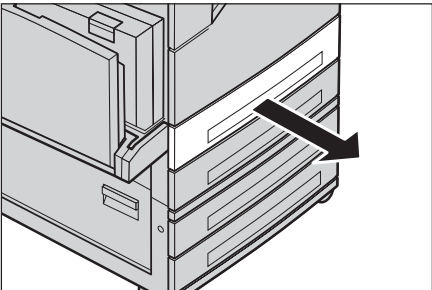
## Paper Jams in the Trays 1 to 4

The following describes how to clear paper jams in the Trays 1 and 2, and the Trays 3 and 4 (optional).

Refer to "Paper Jams in the Tandem Tray Module" (P.412) for clearing paper jams in the Tandem Tray.

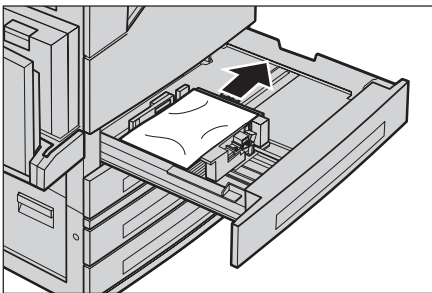
- 1** Pull out the tray where the paper jam occurred.

**Important** • Paper is sometimes torn and remains inside the machine if you pull out a tray without checking the paper jam position. This may cause machine malfunction. Check where the paper jam occurred first.



- 2** Remove the jammed paper.

**Note** • If paper is torn, check for any torn pieces of paper inside the machine.



- 3** Push the tray in gently until it comes to a stop.

## Paper Jams in the Tandem Tray Module

This section describes how to clear paper jams in the optional Tandem Tray Module. The following explains how to remove jammed paper from the locations below.

Paper Jams in the Tray 3 .....	412
Paper Jams in the Tray 4 .....	413

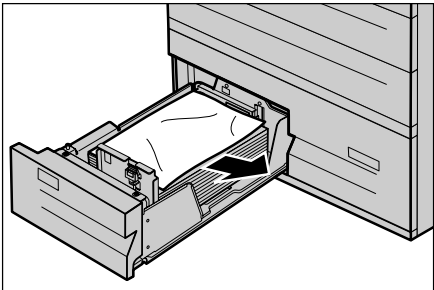
### Paper Jams in the Tray 3

- 1** Pull out the Tray 3.

- 2** Remove the jammed paper.

**Note** • If paper is torn, check for any torn pieces of paper inside the machine.

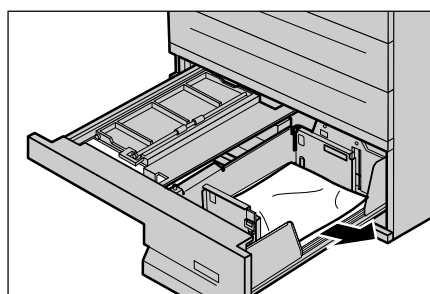
- 3** Push the tray in gently until it comes to a stop.



## Paper Jams in the Tray 4

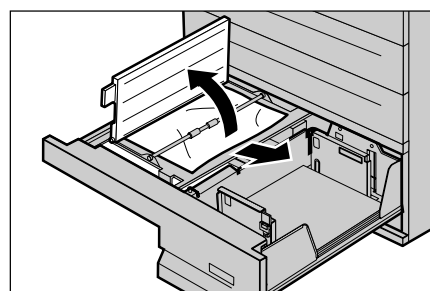
- 1** Pull out the Tray 4.
- 2** Remove the jammed paper.

**Note** • If paper is torn, check for any torn pieces of paper inside the machine.



- 3** If paper is jammed underneath the inner cover, open the cover and remove the paper.

**Note** • If paper is torn, check for any torn pieces of paper inside the machine.



- 4** Push the tray in gently until it comes to a stop.

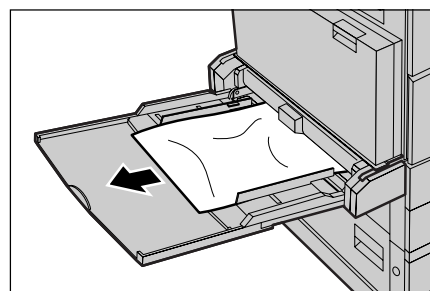
## Paper Jams in the Tray 5 (Bypass)

The following describes how to clear paper jams in the Tray 5 (bypass).

- 1** Check the feed slot of the Tray 5 (Bypass) to remove the jammed paper.

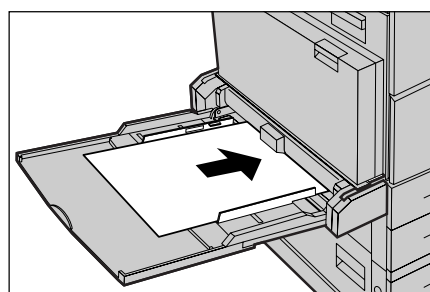
**Important** • When two or more sheets of paper are loaded, remove all of the sheets from the tray.

**Note** • If paper is torn, check for any torn pieces of paper inside the machine.



- 2** Fan the paper you removed making sure that all four corners are neatly aligned.

- 3** Insert the paper into the tray with the printing side facing down until its leading edge lightly comes up against the feed slot.

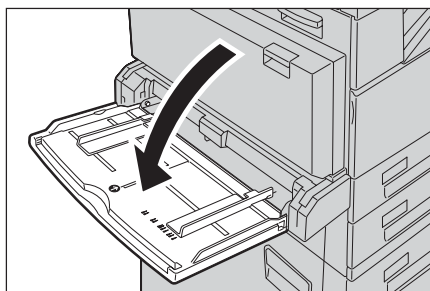




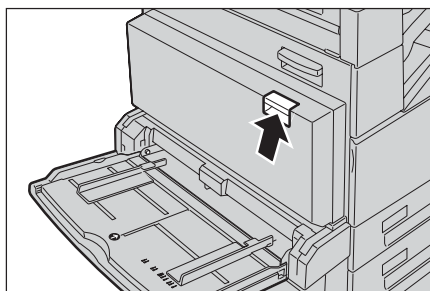
## Paper Jams in the Duplex Kit

The following describes how to clear paper jams in the Duplex Kit. Refer to this section when your machine has the 2-sided printing feature.

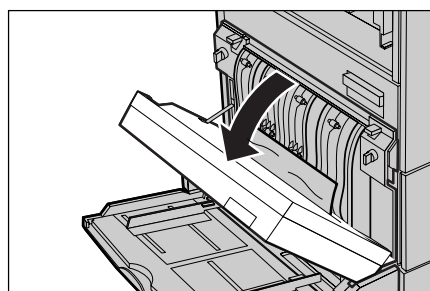
- 1** Open the Tray 5 (bypass).



- 2** Lift up the lever on the upper right side of the cover D to unlock it.



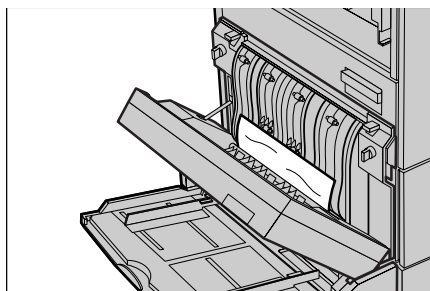
- 3** Open the cover D.



- 4** Remove the jammed paper.

**Note**

- If paper is torn, check for any torn pieces of paper inside the machine.



- 5** Close the cover D.

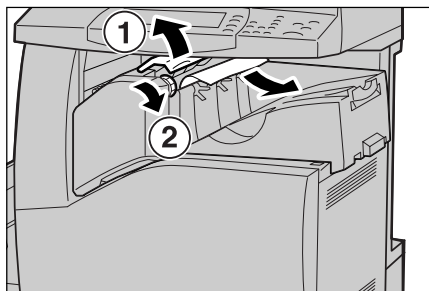
- 6** Close the Tray 5 (bypass).



## Paper Jams in the Finisher-A1

The following describes how to clear paper jams in the optional Finisher-A1.

- 1 Open the finisher top cover.



- 2 Turn the wheel to remove the jammed paper.

- 3 Close the finisher top cover.

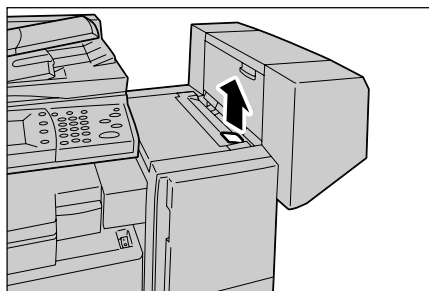
**Note** • If a paper jam message appears again or you cannot see the jammed paper inside the machine, the Finisher-A1 must be removed to clear the jam. For details on how to remove the Finisher-A1, refer to "Removing the Finisher-A1" (P.488).

## Paper Jams in the Finisher-B1

The following describes how to clear paper jams in the optional Finisher-B1.

### Paper Jams under the Top Cover of the Finisher-B1

- 1 Push up the lever on the top cover of the finisher.

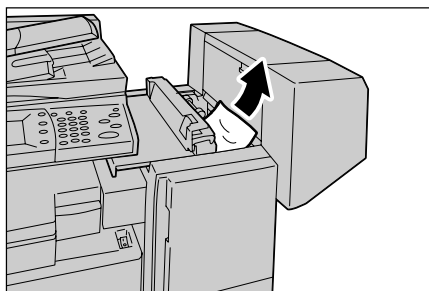


- 2 The top cover opens.



- 3 Remove the jammed paper.

**Note** • If the paper is torn, check for any torn pieces inside the machine.



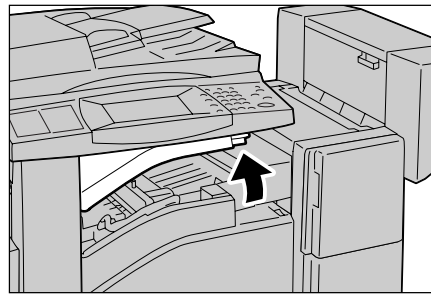
- 4 Close the top cover of the finisher.

## Paper Jams in the Center Unit

- 1 Lift the top cover and open.

**Note**

- The top cover cannot be detached from the machine.



- 2 Remove the jammed paper.

**Note**

- If the paper is torn, check for any torn pieces inside the machine.



- 3 Close the top cover of the finisher.



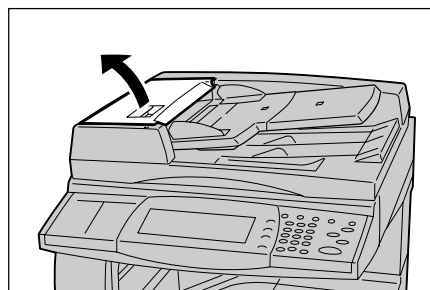
## Document Jams

If a document is jammed in the document feeder, the machine stops and an error message is displayed on the screen. Clear the document jam according to the instructions displayed, and then load the document again on the document feeder.

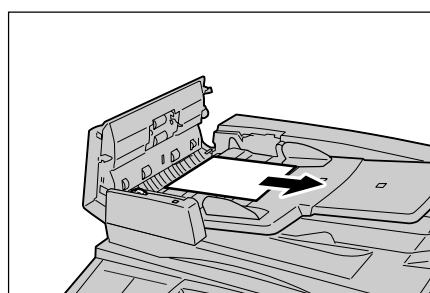
- 1** Hold the front handle on the left cover of the document feeder, to open the left cover until it comes to a stop.

**Note**

- When you fully open the cover, it enters a fixed position. Open the cover gently.

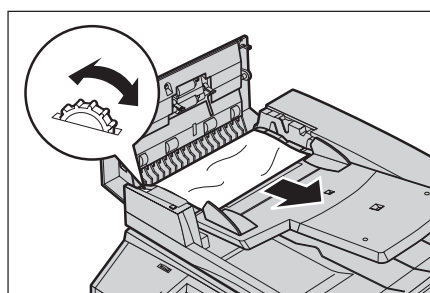


- 2** If the document is not caught in the entry of the document feeder, remove the document.



- 3** If the displayed message instructs you to turn the wheel, turn the green wheel to eject the document upward.

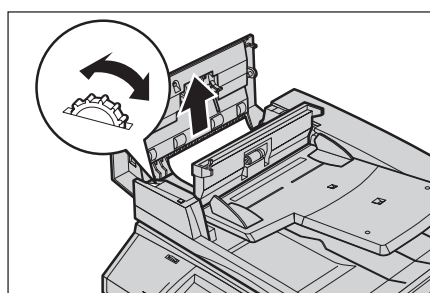
**Important** • If the document is caught, do not pull it out forcibly. The document could be damaged.



- 4** If the displayed message instructs you to open the inner cover, lift up the lever with the green label attached, and open the inner cover.

- 5** Turn the green wheel to eject the document upward.

**Important** • If the document is caught, do not pull it out forcibly. The document could be damaged.

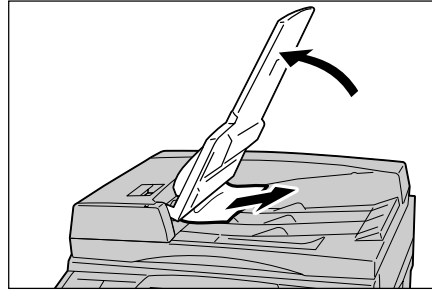


- 6** Close the inner cover, and then close the left cover until it clicks into place.

- 7** If the document cannot be found, move up the document feeder gently, and remove the document if it is there. Then close the document feeder.

**8** If the document is not found in step 7, move up the document feeder tray and remove the document.

**9** Gently return the document feeder tray to its original position.



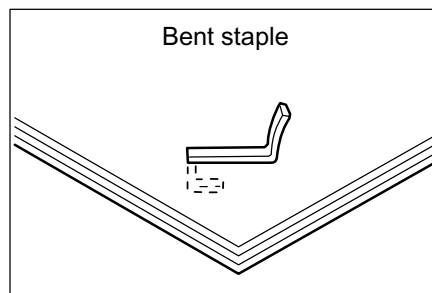
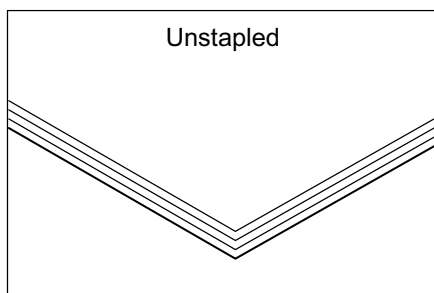
**10** Make sure that the document is not torn, wrinkled or folded, and load the document again following the instructions displayed on the touch screen.

- Note**
- After removing the jammed document, reload the entire document including the pages already scanned. The machine will automatically skip the scanned pages and start scanning unscanned pages.
  - Torn, wrinkled or folded documents may cause document jams and damage. To copy such documents, directly place them on the document glass.

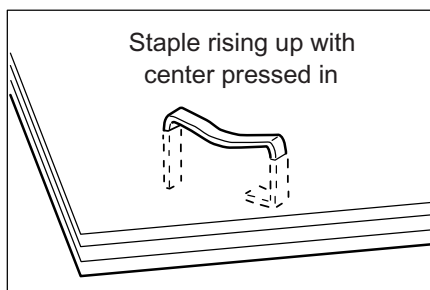
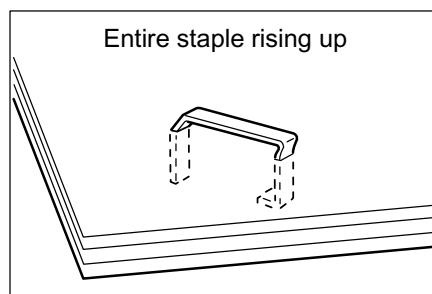
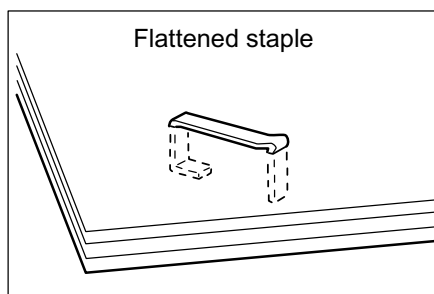
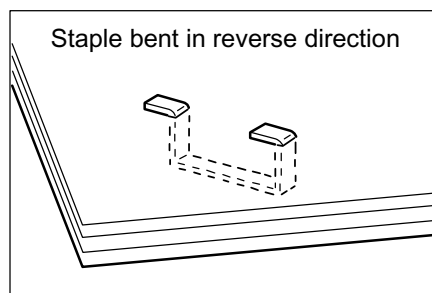
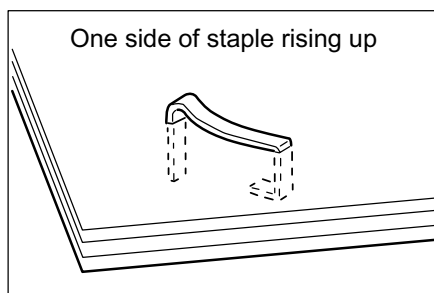
## Stapler Faults

The following describes stapler troubles when the finisher (optional) is installed.

Follow the procedures on the following pages when copies are not stapled or staples are bent. Contact our Customer Support Center if the problem persists after you have tried the following solutions.



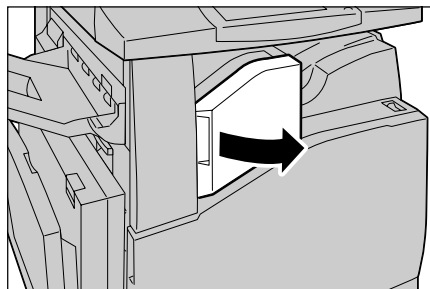
If copies are stapled as shown in the figures below, contact our Customer Support Center.



## Staple Jams in the Staple Cartridge (For Finisher-A1)

The following describes how to clear staple jams in the Finisher-A1 (optional).

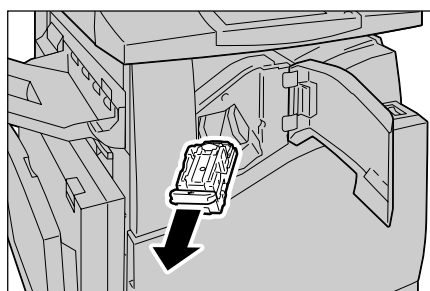
- 1 Make sure that the machine has stopped, and open the front cover of the finisher.



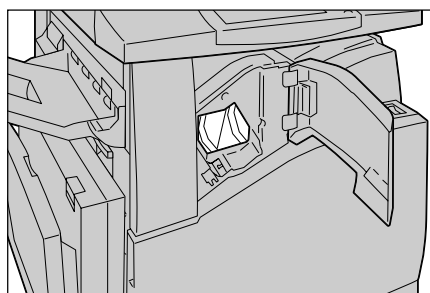
- 2 Take the staple cartridge out of the machine.

**Note**

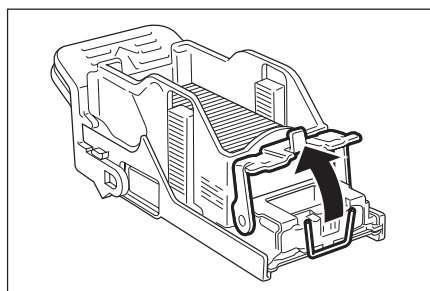
- The staple cartridge is firmly inserted. A slight force is required to pull the cartridge out of the finisher.



- 3 After removing the staple cartridge, check inside of the finisher for any remaining staples.



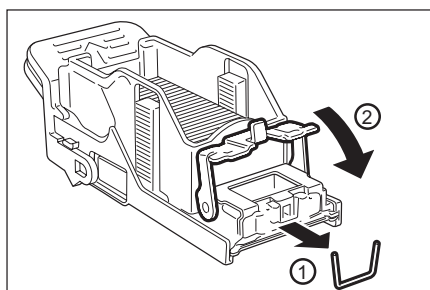
- 4 Pull up the metal part of the staple cartridge as shown in the figure.



- 5 Remove the jammed staples (1), and return the metal part pulled up in step 4 to the original position (2).

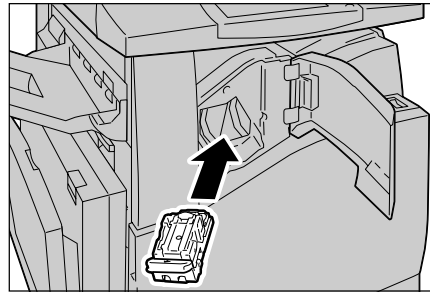
### ⚠ CAUTION

Be careful in removing jammed staples.



- 6** Push the staple cartridge into the machine until it clicks into place.
- 7** Close the front cover of the finisher.

**Note** • If the front cover is not completely closed, a message will appear and the machine will not operate.

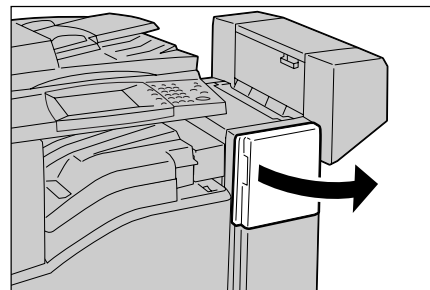


If you cannot remove jammed staples even after you use the above procedure, contact our Customer Support Center.

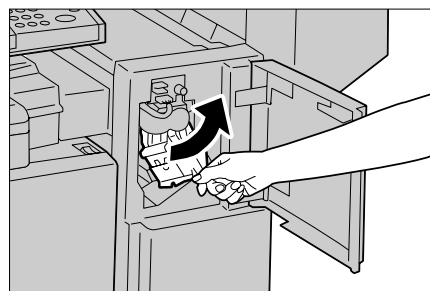
## Staple Jams in the Staple Cartridge (For Finisher-B1)

The following describes how to clear staple jams in the Finisher-B1 (optional).

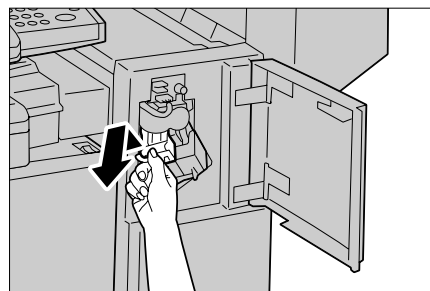
- 1** Make sure that the machine has stopped, and open the front cover of the finisher.



- 2** Grip the lever as shown in the figure to pull out the staple cartridge to the right, towards you.



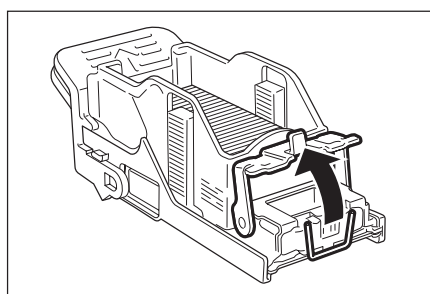
- 3** Move up the staple cartridge, and take it out of the machine.



- 4** After removing the staple cartridge, check inside of the finisher for any remaining staples.



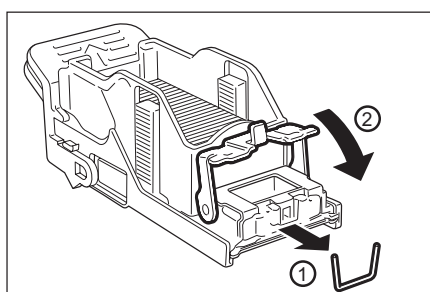
- 5** Pull up the metal part of the staple cartridge as shown in the figure.



- 6** Remove the jammed staples (1), and return the metal part pulled up in step 5 to the original position (2).

**⚠ CAUTION**

Be careful in removing jammed staples.

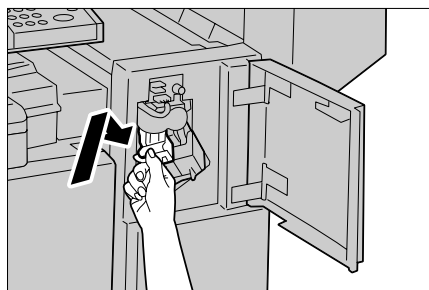


- 7** Return the staple cartridge to its original position until it clicks into place

- 8** Close the front cover of the finisher.

**Note**

- If the front cover is not completely closed, a message will appear and the machine will not operate.





# 15 Appendix

This chapter describes information on the machine specifications, notes and restrictions, optional components, and printer emulation languages.

• Specifications.....	424
• Printable Area .....	433
• Internal Fonts.....	434
• Optional Components .....	436
• ESC/P-K Emulation .....	438
• PDF Direct Print.....	452
• PCL Emulation.....	454
• HP-GL2 Emulation.....	457
• Using the Telephone.....	470
• Activity Report.....	472
• Notes and Restrictions.....	474
• Removing the Finisher-A1 .....	488
• Glossary.....	489

## Specifications

This section lists the main specifications of the machine. Note that the specifications and the appearance of the product may change without prior notice.

### ■ Copy Function

Type	Console
Memory	512 MB (Maximum 768 MB) <b>Important</b> • Optional memory may be required for some models.
HDD	40 GB (optional) <b>Important</b> • User's available disk space is less than the capacity shown.
Scanning Resolution	600 dpi × 600 dpi
Printing Resolution	2,400 (equiv.) × 600 dpi
Halftone	256 gradation
Warm-up Time	Copier only model: 16 seconds or less (at 20 °C room temperature) Copier/printer model: 18 seconds or less (at 20 °C room temperature)
Original Paper Size	The maximum size is 297 × 432 mm (A3, 11 × 17") for both sheets and books.
Output Paper Size	[Paper Tray 1 to 4] Maximum : A3 (297 × 420 mm), 11 × 17" (279 × 432 mm) Minimum : A5 (148 × 210 mm), 139.7 × 182 mm  [Paper Tray 5 (Bypass)] Maximum : 297 × 431.8 mm Minimum : Postcard (100 × 148 mm), No.3 standard envelope (120 × 235 mm), 89 × 98.4 mm  Image loss width: Top edge, 4 mm or less; bottom edge, 4 mm or less; left and right edges, 4 mm or less
Output Paper Weight	Paper Tray 1 : 60 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> Paper Tray 2 to 4: 60 - 215 g/m <sup>2</sup> Paper Tray 5 (Bypass): 60 - 215 g/m <sup>2</sup> <b>Important</b> • Use paper recommended by Fuji Xerox. Copying may not be performed correctly depending on the conditions.
First Copy Output Time	Monochrome: 4.3 seconds (A4□) <b>Important</b> • The values may vary depending on the machine configuration.
Reduction/Enlargement	Size-for-Size 1:1±0.7% Preset % 1:0.500, 1:0.707, 1:0.816, 1:0.866, 1:1.154, 1:1.225, 1:1.414 Variable % 1:0.25-1:4.00 (1% increments)

<p>Continuous Copy Speed</p> <p><b>Important</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The speed may be reduced due to image quality adjustment.</li> <li>• The performance may be reduced depending on the paper type.</li> </ul>	<p>&lt;DocuCentre-III 3007&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Paper Tray 1 - 2: Continuous 1 sided copy/same magnification [Monochrome] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A4☐ :30 sheets/minute</li> <li>A4 :22 sheets/minute</li> <li>B4 :19 sheets/minute</li> <li>A3 :16 sheets/minute</li> <li>B5☐ :30 sheets/minute</li> <li>B5 :17 sheets/minute</li> <li>A5 :13 sheets/minute</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Paper Tray 1 - 2: Continuous 2 sided copy/same magnification [Monochrome] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A4☐ :30 sheets/minute</li> <li>A4 :22 sheets/minute</li> <li>B4 :12 sheets/minute</li> <li>A3 :11 sheets/minute</li> <li>B5☐ :30 sheets/minute</li> <li>B5 :17 sheets/minute</li> <li>A5 :13 sheets/minute</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>&lt;DocuCentre-III 2007&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Paper Tray 1 - 2: Continuous 1 sided copy/same magnification [Monochrome] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A4☐ :25 sheets/minute</li> <li>A4 :20 sheets/minute</li> <li>B4 :16 sheets/minute</li> <li>A3 :14 sheets/minute</li> <li>B5☐ :25 sheets/minute</li> <li>B5 :15 sheets/minute</li> <li>A5 :11 sheets/minute</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Paper Tray 1 - 2: Continuous 2 sided copy/same magnification [Monochrome] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A4☐ :25 sheets/minute</li> <li>A4 :20 sheets/minute</li> <li>B4 :10 sheets/minute</li> <li>A3 : 9 sheets/minute</li> <li>B5☐ :25 sheets/minute</li> <li>B5 :15 sheets/minute</li> <li>A5 :11 sheets/minute</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* When paper is fed from Tray 5 (Bypass) and the paper size is set to [Auto Size Detect], the printing speed for the first page will be slower.</p>
<p>Paper Tray Capacity</p>	<p>[Standard] 500 sheets × 2 + 95 sheets (Bypass tray) Maximum paper feed capacity: 1,095 sheets</p> <p>[Option] Trays 3 and 4 : 500 sheets × 2 Trays 3 and 4 (TTM) : 500 sheets × 2 + 800 sheets (Tray 3) + 1,200 sheets (Tray 4) + 95 sheets (Bypass tray) Maximum paper feed capacity: 3,095 sheets</p> <p><b>Important</b> • When using 80 g/m<sup>2</sup> paper</p>
<p>Continuous Copy</p>	<p>999 images</p> <p><b>Note</b> • The machine may pause temporarily to perform image stabilization.</p>

### ■Print Function (optional)

Type	Built-in
Continuous Print Speed	Same as the main unit
Printing Resolution	Output resolution 600 x 600 dpi 1,200 x 1,200 dpi Data processing resolution Standard : 600 x 600 dpi High Resolution: 1,200 x 1,200 dpi
PDL	Standard : PCL6, PCL5 Option : Adobe PostScript 3
Protocol	Ethernet : TCP/IP (SMB, LPD, Port9100, IPP), IPX/SPX (NetWare), EtherTalk (optional)  <b>Important</b> • EtherTalk is supported by Mac OS 8.6/9.2.2, and Mac OS X 10.3.9 - 10.5

Operating System	<p>Standard : PCL6/PCL5  Microsoft® Windows® 2000,  Microsoft® Windows® XP,  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003,  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008,  Microsoft® Windows Vista®,  Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional x64 Edition,  Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64,  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64 Edition,  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64 Edition</p> <p>Option : PostScript  Microsoft® Windows® 2000 English,  Microsoft® Windows® XP English,  Microsoft® Windows Vista® English,  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 English,  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 English,  Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional x64 Edition English,  Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64 English,  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64 Edition English,  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64 Edition English,  Mac OS® 8.6 - 9.2.2 English,  Mac OS® X 10.3.9 - 10.5 English</p> <p><b>Note</b> • For information about the latest supported operating systems, contact our Customer Support Center.</p>
Fonts	PCL : European 82 type faces, symbol 35 sets PostScript (optional):European 136 type faces
Emulation	ESC/P-K (LQ1900K II), HP-GL (HP7586B), HP-GL2/RTL (HP Design Jet 750C Plus), PCL5/PCL6 (HP Laser Jet 4200), KSSM, KS5843, KS5895
Connectivity	<p>Standard : Ethernet (100BASE-TX/10BASE-T),  : USB 2.0*</p> <p><b>Important</b> • USB 2.0 is supported by Windows® 2000/XP, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Vista®, Mac OS® 8.6 - 9.2.2, and Mac OS® X 10.3.9 - 10.5.</p>

### ■ Scan Function (optional)

Type	Color scanner
Original Paper Size	Same as the Copy function
Scanning Resolution	600 × 600 dpi, 400 × 400 dpi, 300 × 300 dpi, 200 × 200 dpi
Scanning Halftone	10-bit input / 8-bit output for each RGB color
Scanning Speed	<p>Monochrome : 50 sheets/min.  Color : 45 sheets/min.  (For ITU-T No.1 Chart A4 200 dpi, Scan to Mailbox)</p> <p><b>Important</b> • The scanning speed varies depending on documents.</p>
Connectivity	Shared with the printer controller
Scan to Mailbox	<p>Protocol: TCP/IP (WebDAV, HTTP)</p> <p>File Format<sup>*1</sup>:  Monochrome binary: TIFF, PDF<sup>*2</sup>, DocuWorks<sup>*2</sup>, XPS<sup>*2</sup>  Gray scale/full color: TIFF, JPEG (JFIF), PDF<sup>*2</sup>, DocuWorks<sup>*2</sup>, XPS<sup>*2</sup></p> <p>*1 When the driver is used, the output format depends on the application for the driver.</p> <p>*2 Supported only when documents are received using CentreWare Internet Services.</p> <p>Driver: TWAIN  Driver supported OS: Microsoft® Windows® 2000,  Microsoft® Windows® XP,  Microsoft® Windows Vista®,  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003,  Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional x64 Edition,  Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64,  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64 Edition</p> <p><b>Note</b> • For information about the latest supported operating systems, refer to the Fuji Xerox Web site.</p>
Scan to PC	<p>Protocol: TCP/IP (SMB, FTP)</p> <p>Operating System: Microsoft® Windows® 2000,  Microsoft® Windows® XP,  Microsoft® Windows Vista®,  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003,  Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional x64 Edition,  Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64,  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64 Edition,  Mac OS X 10.2.x/10.3.8/10.3.9/10.4.2/10.4.4/  10.4.8/10.4.9/10.4.10,  NetWare® 5.11/5.12<sup>*1</sup></p> <p><b>Note</b> • For information about the latest supported operating systems, refer to the Fuji Xerox Web site.</p> <p><b>Important</b> • *1 NetWare 5.11/5.12 supports FTP protocol only.</p> <p>File Format:  Monochrome binary: TIFF (Compression type: MH, MMR),  DocuWorks, PDF, XPS  Gray scale/full color: TIFF (Compression type: JPEG), JPEG (JFIF), DocuWorks, PDF, XPS</p>

Send to e-mail	Protocol: TCP/IP (SMTP)
	File Format: Monochrome binary: TIFF (Compression type: MH, MMR), DocuWorks, PDF, XPS Gray scale/full color: TIFF (Compression type: JPEG), JPEG, DocuWorks, PDF, XPS

### ■FAX Function (optional)

Send Document Size	Maximum: A3, 11×17", Long document (Maximum 600 mm)
Recording Paper Size	Maximum: A3, 11×17" Minimum : A5
Transmission Time	less than 3 seconds  <b>Important</b> • When transmitting an A4 size 700-character document in the standard quality (8 × 3.85 lines/mm) and high speed mode (28.8 kbps or above: JBIG). This is only the transmission speed for image information and does not include the controlling time for the communication. Note that the actual transmission time depends on the content of documents, the machine that the recipient uses, and the status of the communication line.
Transmission Mode	ITU-T G3
Scanning Resolution	Standard : 8 × 3.85 lines/mm 200 × 100 dpi (7.9 × 3.9 dots/mm) Fine : 8 × 7.70 lines/mm 200 × 200 dpi (7.9 × 7.9 dots/mm) Superfine (400dpi): 400 × 400 dpi (15.7 × 15.7 dots/mm) Superfine (600dpi): 600 × 600 dpi (23.6 × 23.6 dots/mm)
Coding Method	MH / MR / MMR / JBIG
Transmission Speed	G3: 33.6/31.2/28.8/26.4/24.0/21.6/19.2/16.8/14.4/12.0/9.6/7.2/ 4.8/2.4kbps
No. of Fax Lines	PSTN, PBX (G3 maximum 3 lines)

### ■Direct Fax Function (optional)

Document Size	A3, B4, A4
Transmission Speed	Same as the fax function
Transmission Resolution	Standard : 200 × 100 dpi (7.9 × 3.9 dots/mm) Fine : 200 × 200 dpi (7.9 × 7.9 dots/mm) Super-fine : 400 × 400 dpi (15.7 × 15.7 dots/mm) 600 × 600 dpi (23.6 × 23.6 dots/mm)
Applicable Lines	Same as the fax function
Operating Systems	Microsoft® Windows® 2000, Microsoft® Windows® XP, Microsoft® Windows Vista®, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008, Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional x64 Edition, Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64 Edition, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64 Edition  <b>Note</b> • For information about the latest supported operating systems, refer to the Fuji Xerox Web site.

### ■Internet Fax Function (optional)

Document Size	A3, B4, A4
Scanning Resolution	Same as the fax function
Output Format	Format : TIFF-FX Compression method : MH, MMR, JBIG
Profile	TIFF-S, TIFF-F, TIFF-J
Protocol	Transmission: SMTP, Reception: SMTP, POP3

### ■Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (optional)

Type	Duplex automatic document feeder
Original Paper Size	Maximum: A3, 11 × 17" (297 × 600 mm (only for fax)) Minimum : A5 (139.7 × 210 mm) 38 - 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (2 sided: 50 - 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
Capacity	75 sheets <b>Important</b> • When using 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> paper
Feeding Speed (A4 1 sided)	Monochrome: 50 sheets/minute, Color: 45 sheets/minute <b>Important</b> • The number of sheets may vary depending on the scanning speed.
Dimensions/Weight	Width 560 x Depth 517 x Height 123 mm, 10 kg

### ■Duplex Output Unit (optional)

Applicable Paper Size	Same as the Copy function
Paper Weight	60 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>

### ■Finisher-A1 (optional)

Type	Finisher tray × 1: Collated (offset stacking available)/ Uncollated (offset stacking available)
Paper Size/Paper Weight	Finisher tray Maximum: A3, 11 x 17" Minimum: B5, 56 - 215 g/m <sup>2</sup>
Stacker Capacity	500 sheets Finisher tray (For paper not stapled) A4: 500 sheets B4: 250 sheets A3 or larger: 200 sheets Mixed stack*: 250 sheets Finisher tray (For paper stapled) 30 sets A4: 50 sheets B4 or larger: 30 sheets  * Based on when larger size paper is stacked on paper. <b>Important</b> • When using 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> paper
Staple	Capacity : 50 sheets (90 g/m <sup>2</sup> or less) Paper Size : Maximum: A3, 11x17", Minimum: B5 Position : 1 place (front/angled stapling) <b>Important</b> • When using 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> paper
Dimensions/Weight	Width 565 x Depth 450 x Height 250 mm, 12 kg



### ■Finisher-B1 (optional)

Type	Finisher tray × 1: Collated (offset stacking available)/ Uncollated (offset stacking available)
Paper Size/Paper Weight	Finisher tray Maximum: A3, 11 x 17" Minimum: B5, 56 - 215 g/m <sup>2</sup>
Stacker Capacity	Finisher tray (For paper not stapled) A4: 2,000 sheets B4 or larger: 1,000 sheets Mixed stack* <sup>1</sup> : 300 sheets  Finisher tray (For paper stapled) A4: 100 sets or 1,000 sheets B4 or larger: 75 sets or 750 sheets Center folding* <sup>2</sup> : 50 sets or 600 sheets Folding* <sup>2</sup> : 500 sheets  <b>Important</b> • When using 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> paper
Staple	Capacity : 50 sheets (90 g/m <sup>2</sup> or less) Paper Size : Maximum: A3, 11x17", Minimum: B5 Position : 1 place (front: angled stapling* <sup>2</sup> , back: straight stapling), 2 places (parallel stapling)  <b>Important</b> • When using 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> paper
Punch* <sup>3</sup>	Paper Size : A3, 11×17", A4, A4□, 8.5x11", 8.5x11"□, B4, B5□ Number of Holes : 2, 3, or 4 Paper Weight : 56-200 g/m <sup>2</sup>  <b>Important</b> • When using 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> paper
Booklet Finishing* <sup>2</sup>	Capacity : 15 sheets (center binding), 5 sheets (folding) Paper Size : Maximum: A3, 11×17", Minimum: A4, 8.5 x 11" Paper Weight : 64-80 g/m <sup>2</sup> (center binding) 64-105 g/m <sup>2</sup> (folding)  <b>Important</b> • When using 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> paper
Dimensions/Weight	Width 565 × Depth 552 × Height 942 mm, 27 kg Width 565 × Depth 597 × Height 1,057 mm, 36 kg (When Booklet Maker Unit is attached)
Space Requirement	Width 1,614 x Depth 668 mm (Main unit + Finisher-B1, when the extension tray is extended, when Bypass Tray is fully extended) Width 1,614 x Depth 688 mm (Main unit + Finisher-B1, + Booklet Maker Unit, when the extension tray is extended, when Bypass Tray is fully extended)

\*1 Based on when larger size paper is stacked on paper.

\*2 For the center binding/folding feature, Booklet Maker Unit for Finisher-B1 is required. After a job with center binding/folding specified was output, remove the output paper from the tray to output the next job. In addition, when you print a job with center binding/folding specified and smaller-sized paper remains on the output tray, remove the paper from the tray first.

\*3 For the Punching feature, US 2/3 Hole Punch Kit for Finisher-B1 or 2/4 Hole Punch Kit for Finisher-B1 is required.

**■Side Tray (optional)**

Paper size	Same as the Copy function
Capacity	100 sheets <b>Important</b> • When using 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> paper
Dimensions/Weight	Width 274 × Depth 469 × Height 128 mm, 1 kg
Space Requirement	Width 1,040 x Depth 652 mm (Main unit + Side Tray, when Bypass Tray is fully extended)

---

## Printable Area

---

The area on paper that can be printed is as follows.

### Standard Printable Area

---

The standard printable area is an area on paper excluding the 4 mm margins on all four edges of paper. The actual printable area, however, may vary depending on the printer (plotter) control language.

### Extended Printable Area

---

With the extended printable area setting, the printable area can be extended to 297x432 mm at a maximum. The un-printable area, however, may vary depending on the size of paper.

**Note**      • To extend the print area, change the PCL print driver setting, or the [Print Area] setting on the touch screen.

For the setting method on the print driver, refer to the online help provided for the print driver. For more about the setting on the control panel, refer to "Print Area" (P.131).

## Internal Fonts

The following fonts are available as standard.

Refer to the manual in the PostScript Driver Library CD-ROM for the PostScript fonts.

Stroke fonts (for PCL5 and HP-GL/2)			• European Stroke fonts	
Outline fonts	Euro- pean	ESC/P-K	Roman OCR-B	Sans Serif
		PDF	Arial Arial Italic Arial Bold Arial Bold Italic Courier Courier Italic Courier Bold Courier Bold Italic	Symbol Times New Roman Times New Roman Bold Times New Roman Italic Times New Roman Bold Italic ITC Zapf Dingbats GoldSEMM GoldSAMM
		PCL	CG Times CG Times Italic CG Times Bold CG Times Bold Italic Univers Medium Univers Medium Italic Univers Bold Univers Bold Italic Univers Medium Condensed Univers Medium Condensed Italic Univers Bold Condensed Univers Bold Condensed Italic Antique Olive Antique Olive Italic Antique Olive Bold CG Omega CG Omega Italic CG Omega Bold CG Omega Bold Italic Garamond Antiqua Garamond Kursiv Garamond Halbfett Garamond Kursiv Halbfett (Default): Courier Courier Italic Courier Bold Courier Bold Italic Letter Gothic Letter Gothic Italic Letter Gothic Bold Albertus Medium Albertus Extra Bold Clarendon Condensed Coronet Marigold Arial Arial Italic Arial Bold Arial Bold Italic Times New Times New Italic	Times New Bold Times New Bold Italic Symbol Wingdings Line Printer Times Roman Times Italic Times Bold Times Bold Italic Helvetica Helvetica Oblique Helvetica Bold Helvetica Bold Oblique CourierPS CourierPS Oblique CourierPS Bold CourierPS Bold Oblique SymbolPS Palatino Roman Palatino Italic Palatino Bold Palatino Bold Italic ITC Bookman Light ITC Bookman Light Italic ITC Bookman Demi ITC Bookman Demi Italic Helvetica Narrow Helvetica Narrow Oblique Helvetica Narrow Bold Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique New Century Schoolbook Roman New Century Schoolbook Italic New Century Schoolbook Bold New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic ITC Avant Garde Book ITC Avant Garde Book Oblique ITC Avant Garde Demi ITC Avant Garde Demi Oblique ITC Zapf Chancery Medium Italic ITC Zapf Dingbats OCR-B

	KO	PCL5	Muyngio Gothic R- Gothic	Graphic Kungso Saemmul
		KS	Muyngio Gothic R- Gothic Graphic Kungso Saemmul	T-Myungio T-Gothic TR-Gothic T-Graphic T-Kungso T-Saemmul
	TC	PCL5	ShuSong KaiTi	HeiTi FangSong
	SC	PCL5 ESC/P-K	ShuSong KaiTi	HeiTi FangSong

**Note** • The fonts provided will vary depending on the region of use.

## Optional Components

The following are the principal options available. To purchase these options, contact our Customer Support Center.

Product Name	Description
DADF	An abbreviation of Duplex Automatic Document Feeder. Automatically scans multiple-sheet documents. In the main body of this guide, DADF is referred to as "document feeder".
Duplex Kit	Allows you to copy or print on both sides of paper.
Exit 2 Tray	Allows you to use the center output tray as two separate trays. <b>Note</b> • This option cannot be installed when a finisher is installed.
Exit Kit (Exit2+OCT2)	When the Exit 2 Tray is installed together with this kit, the center output tray can be used as two separate trays. When the Side Tray is installed, this enables to deliver output face up.
Two Tray Module	Adds two trays that can be used as Trays 2 and 3.
Tandem Tray Module	Adds two high-capacity trays that can be used as Trays 2 and 3.
Stand	A stand for the machine. It allows you to store paper stock inside.
Side Tray	Delivers output face up. <b>Note</b> • This option can be used when the Exit Kit (Exit2+OCT2) is installed.
Finisher-A1	Staples output sheets.
Finisher-B1	Staples output sheets.
2/4 Hole Punch Kit for Finisher-B1	Staples or 2/4 hole-punches output sheets.
US 2/3 Hole Punch Kit for Finisher-B1	Staples or 2/3 hole-punches output sheets. The spacing between the 2 punch holes of US 2/3 Hole Punch Kit is 70 mm, which differs from that of 2/4 Hole Punch Kit (spacing is 80 mm).
Booklet Maker Unit for Finisher-B1	Staples or hole-punches output sheets. Also folds output sheets in half or staples them.
Printer Kit	If your machine does not have the printer feature, this enables you to use the printer feature on the machine.
Adobe PostScript 3 Kit	Allows you to use the machine as a PostScript printer. Also enables printing from Macintosh.
HDD Extension Kit	Provides the extended copy features and adds the spool and scanner features.
Extension System Memory (256 MB)	Increases the system memory by 256 MB.
Fax Kit	Adds the fax feature to the machine.
Fax Extension Board Kit	Adds extra facsimile lines to the machine.
Internet Fax Kit	Adds the Internet Fax feature to the machine.

Product Name	Description
Additional G3 Port Kit	Adds an additional G3 port to the machine that offers the fax feature.
Stamp Kit	Allows you to stamp each sheet of a document to mark successfully scanned sheets.
Scanner Kit	Adds the scan feature to the machine.
Address Book Extension Kit	Increases the number of addresses that can be registered to the address book to 999. To use this kit, a HDD Extension Kit needs to be installed.
Data Security Kit	Enhances the security of data written to the hard disk.
Copy Management Expansion Kit	prints dates or serial numbers on all the pages of confidential documents to restrict duplication.
Server Fax Kit	Adds the Server Fax feature to the machine.
Network Accounting Kit	Allows you to keep track of user accounts via an external authentication server.
Searchable PDF Kit	Allows you to use optical character recognition (OCR) when scanning.
Attention Light II	Emits light when the machine receives a document or an error occurs in the machine.

- Note**
- The optional components are subject to change without notice.
  - For the latest information, contact our Customer Support Center.

## ESC/P-K Emulation

This section explains how to use ESC/P-K emulation.

### Emulation

The following describes the printer language emulations available on this machine.

Print data follows certain rules (grammars). These rules (grammars) are called printer languages.

This machine supports two types of printer languages: a page description language, which is used to create images on a page-by-page basis, and an emulation, which is used to obtain the print results similar to that of other printers. To "emulate" means to imitate the print results of other printers.

### Emulation Mode

When printing data written in a language other than the page description language supported by this machine, switch this machine to the emulation mode. The relationships between the emulation mode and the printer to be emulated are as follows.

Emulation Mode	Printer to be Emulated
ESC/P-K emulation mode (ESC/P-K mode)	LQ1900K II

### Host Interfaces and Emulation

Different host interfaces support different printer languages. The host interfaces that support printer languages are as follows.

- USB port
- NetWare port
- lpd port
- SMB port
- IPP port
- Port 9100 port

### Switching between Printer Languages

The machine provides a multi-emulation feature that allows to switch between different printer languages.

There are three methods of switching between printer languages.

#### ■ Switching by Commands

Commands for switching between printer languages are provided. Upon receipt of a command, the machine switches to the relevant printer language.

#### ■ Automatic Switching

The machine analyzes the data received by a host interface, and automatically identifies the printer language to be used. It then switches to the identified printer language.

#### ■ Interface-dependent

You can set a printer language for each host interface using CentreWare Internet Services. The machine switches to a printer language corresponding to the host interface that received data.



---

## Fonts

---

This section explains the fonts used for emulation.

### Available fonts

The following fonts can be used for emulation.

#### ■ESC/P-K Emulation

Available outline fonts are the followings:

- Roman
- Sans serif
- OCR-B

### User-defined Characters

On this machine, you can use user-defined characters.

The total capacity of memory for storing user-defined characters and other user-defined data can be set on the control panel. This value is retained after the machine is switched off.

User-defined characters are registered as bitmap fonts, and cannot be shared among different printer languages.

### Font Caching

To ensure hi-speed printing, outline fonts of up to a certain size are cached. Outline fonts are converted into bitmap data temporarily and then printed. To minimize this processing time, the processed bitmap data is saved in the memory. This process is called font caching.

The saved bitmap data is deleted upon power-off or system reset.

---

## Output Feature

---

This section describes the machine's output feature.

### Outputting a Pending Print Job

The jobs received by the printer can be prioritized over other jobs.

For information on how to give priority to the jobs received by the printer, refer to "9 Job Status" > "Printing Pending Jobs" in the User Guide.

---

## ESC/P-K Emulation Print Features

---

### Multiple-Up

The multiple-up feature reduces the size of multiple-sheet documents and prints them on a single sheet of paper.

The multiple-up feature can be used in the ESC/P-K emulation mode. In the ESC/P-K mode, 2 Up can be used.

### Form Overlay

In the ESC/P-K mode, you can register an original form to the printer, and overprint it on a printed output.

A form to be overprinted can be specified on the control panel.

## Barcodes

In the ESC/P-K mode, you can use barcodes. The barcodes that can be used are as follows.

- JAN code
- CODE39
- CODABAR
- Industrial 2 of 5
- Matrix 2 of 5
- Interleaved 2 of 5

## Forms

You can use ESC/P-K to register forms on the machine. Up to 64 forms can be registered.

## ESC/P-K Emulation Settings

The following tables show the basic and extended settings that can be configured on the ESC/P-K emulation mode menu.

### Basic Settings

Setting Item	Item Number	Value
Paper tray	3	<p>Sets the paper tray to be used for printing.</p> <p>[0] : Auto</p> <p>[1] (Default) : Tray 1</p> <p>[2] : Tray 2</p> <p>[3] : Tray 3</p> <p>[4] : Tray 4</p> <p>[5] : Tray 5 (Bypass)</p> <p>If printing from Tray 5 (Bypass), instruct printing and then operate the machine to start printing. To cancel the setting, change the setting for "Tray 5 Confirmation".</p> <p><b>Important</b> • When Trays 1 to 4 is selected, the size of paper loaded in the tray becomes the output paper size, and thus [Paper Size] cannot be set.</p> <p><b>Note</b> • When [Auto] is selected, and if the paper of the same size is loaded in the same orientation in multiple trays, paper will be supplied in the order of Tray 1 → Tray 2 → Tray 3 → Tray 4. If paper of the same size is loaded in multiple trays but in different orientations, the paper loaded in the landscape orientation is given priority.</p>

Setting Item	Item Number	Value
Document size	1	<p>Sets the client-created document size.</p> <p>[99] (Default) : Paper  [100] : Continuous form paper (10 x 12)  [101] : Continuous form paper (10 x 11)  [102] : Continuous form paper (15 x 12)  [103] : Continuous form paper (15 x 11)  [3] : A3  [4] : A4  [5] : A5  [14] : B4  [15] : B5  [21] : 8.5 x 14  [22] : 8.5 x 13  [23] : 8.5 x 11  [24] : 11 x 17  [0] : Postcard</p> <p>The number of characters printed is: 80 characters/72 rows for continuous form paper (10 x 12), 80 characters/66 rows for continuous form paper (10 x 11), 136 characters/72 rows for continuous form paper (15 x 12), and 136 characters/66 rows for continuous form paper (15 x 11).</p> <p><b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•When a continuous form paper is selected for [Document Size], [Paper Position] cannot be set.</li> <li>•When [Preset%] or [Fit to Cut Sheet] is selected for [Reduce/Enlarge], the machine automatically calculates the magnification based on [Document Size] and [Paper Size]. If the magnification, however, is not within 45-210%, the original will not be reduced/enlarged, and will be printed in a scale of 100%. When [2 Up] is selected, the machine automatically calculates the magnification based on [Document Size] and 1/2 of [Paper Size].</li> <li>•The orientation set here is that of the original. It is not affected by the orientation of paper loaded in the paper trays.</li> </ul>
Orientation	19	<p>Sets the orientation of paper.</p> <p>[0] (Default) : Portrait  [1] : Landscape</p>
Paper size	2	<p>Sets the size of paper to be printed. This setting can be made only when [Paper Tray] is set to [Auto] or [Tray 5 (Bypass)]. This setting can be made only for cut sheets.</p> <p>[3] : A3  [4] : A4  [5] : A5  [14] : B4  [15] : B5  [21] : 8.5 x 14  [22] : 8.5 x 13  [23] : 8.5 x 11  [24] : 11 x 17  [0] : Postcard</p> <p><b>Important</b>•If [Paper Tray] is set to Trays 1 to 4 [Paper Size] cannot be set.</p> <p><b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•If [Preset%] or [Fit to Cut Sheet] is selected for [Reduce/Enlarge], the machine automatically calculates the magnification based on [Document Size] and [Paper Size]. If the magnification, however, is not within 45-210%, the original will not be reduced/enlarged, and will be printed in a scale of 100%. When [2 Up] is selected, the machine automatically calculates the magnification based on [Document Size] and 1/2 of [Paper Size].</li> </ul>

## Extended Settings

Setting Item	Item Number	Value
Paper position	20	<p>Sets the paper position.</p> <p>[0] (Default) : Without cut sheet feeder (left)</p> <p>[1] : With cut sheet feeder (center)</p> <p><b>Note</b> •When a continuous form paper is selected for [Document Size], [Paper Position] cannot be set.</p>
Output quantity	8	<p>Sets the number of copies to be printed.</p> <p>[1 to 250] (Default: 1): 1-250 copies</p> <p><b>Important</b> •When the output quantity is specified by a client, the copies of that set of number will be printed. After printing, the number set on the control panel will be changed to that number. However, the number of copies specified from NetWare or lpd port will not change the number set on the control panel.</p>
Reduce/enlarge	54 (Reduce/ enlarge mode)	<p>Sets the print magnification.</p> <p>[0] (Default) : Preset %</p> <p>[1] : Variable %</p> <p>[2] : Fit to Cut Sheet</p> <p>[Preset %] is a magnification calculated automatically based on [Document Size] and [Paper Size], and reduces/enlarges the printable area of the original to fit to the printable area of the output paper. Therefore, if the size of the original and that of the output paper are the same, the magnification will be 100%. Also, if [2 Up] is selected, the original will be reduced to the size where two pages fit into one sheet of paper.</p> <p>[Variable %] is a magnification set in [Variable %] under [Reduce/Enlarge]. A reference point for scaling (reducing/enlarging) is the upper left corner of the printable area. This reference point applies to all text, images, and graphics.</p> <p>[Fit to Cut Sheet] prints the entire cut sheet area to the printable area of the output paper. It is a magnification calculated automatically based on [Document Size] and [Paper Size], and reduces/enlarges the whole original (including the area outside of the printable area) to fit to the printable area of the output paper.</p>
	17 (Variable %/ vertical magnification)	<p>Sets the magnification for the vertical or horizontal direction.</p> <p>[45 to 210] (Default:100): 45-210%</p> <p><b>Note</b> •When a continuous form paper is selected for [Document Size], both [Preset %] and [Fit to Cut Sheet] produce the same print result.</p>
	18 (Variable %/ horizontal magnification)	
2 Up mode	21	<p>Sets whether to print in 2 Up or page by page. 2 Up is a feature that prints two pages onto one sheet of paper. Depending on the paper orientation, the two pages are printed side by side, or one above the other.</p> <p>[0] (Default) : Off</p> <p>[1] : Forward</p> <p>[2] : Reverse</p> <p><b>Important</b> •When [Landscape] is selected for [Document Size], [Forward] or [Reverse] produce the same print result.</p>

Setting Item	Item Number	Value
Output destination	9	Sets the output tray where the output will be delivered. [0] (Default) : Center Tray [80] : Finisher Tray (optional)
Tray 5 confirmation	67	Prints from Tray 5 (Bypass), after instructing to print and then operating the machine to start printing. [0] (Default) : Off [1] : On
Grid lines	22	Sets the method for printing 2-byte grid lines. The options are as follows. [0] (Default) : Image [1] : Font
2 Sided printing	12	Sets the 2-sided printing. [0] (Default) : Off [1] : Head to Head [2] : Head to Toe  <b>Important</b> •When [Postcard] is selected for [Paper Size], [Head to Head] and [Head to Toe] cannot be selected.
Chinese character fonts	13	Sets the font for 2-byte characters. [3] (Default) : ShuSong [4] : FangSong [5] : HeiTi [6] : KaiTi
Alphanumeric fonts	14	Sets the font for 1-byte characters (ANK). [0] (Default) : Roman [1] : Sanserif [2] : OCR-B  <b>Important</b> •Since this feature selects the default value, its setting will not be affected when an extended command is received.
Print control	51 (Blank sheet output)	Sets whether to print blank pages if included in the original. [0] (Default) : Off [1] : On  <b>Note</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Even when [Off] is selected, blank pages will be printed if they are spaces created with user-defined characters or images in white color.</li> <li>•If [Off] is selected, and if 2 Up or 2-sided printing is specified, blank pages will not be printed.</li> </ul>
	52 (Character print area)	Extends the position of the right margin. [0] (Default) : Standard [1] : Extended  <b>Important</b> •If the character print area is changed from [Extended] to [Standard], the left and right margins will be initialized to the default values. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the position of the right margin is set here, that position will be the right edge of the character print area.</li> </ul>
	53 (Image enhancement)	Sets whether or not to enable the Image Enhancement feature. Image Enhancement makes border between black and white smooth, with rough edges reduced, giving the appearance of higher resolution. [0] : Off [1] (Default) : On

Setting Item	Item Number	Value
ESCP switch	55 (Text quality)	<p>Sets the Text Quality mode to high quality or draft.            [0] (Default) : High Quality            [1] : Draft</p> <p><b>Important</b>•Since the [Text Quality], [Reduced Characters], [Character Code Table], [Page Length], and [1-inch Perforation Skip] features select the default values, their settings will not be affected when an extended command is received.</p> <p><b>Note</b> •When the setting is changed, only the state of the setting changes, not the actual printing quality.            •This setting affect the Text Quality selection commands.</p>
	56 (Reduced characters)	<p>Reduces the size of 1-byte alphanumeric characters when printing. Sets whether to reduce their sizes or to print them in a scale of 100%.            [0] (Default) : Off            [1] : On</p>
	58 (1 Page length)	<p>Sets the length of a page (printable area) to 11 inches or 12 inches.            [0] (Default) : 11 inches            [1] : 12 inches</p>
	59 (1-Inch perforation skip)	<p>Sets whether or not to leave a 1-inch space between pages.            [0] (Default) : Off            [1] : On</p> <p><b>Important</b>•This is only effective when CSF under [Paper Position] is set to [Off].</p>
	60 (Paper feed position)	<p>Sets the position to start printing to 8.5 mm or 22 mm below the top edge of paper.            [0] (Default) : 8.5 mm            [1] : 22 mm</p>
	61 (CR feature)	<p>Sets the action to be performed when a CR command is received.            [0] (Default) : Carriage return            [1] : Carriage return and linefeed</p>
Position adjustment	15 (Vertical position adjustment)	<p>Adjusts the printing position vertically or horizontally, and changes the positions of the margins.            [0] (Default) : Off            [1-500] : -250 to +250 mm</p>
	16 (Horizontal position adjustment)	<p><b>Important</b>•Data outside the printable area will not be printed even when the printing position is adjusted. In addition, data moved outside the printable area due to the adjustment of the printing position will not be printed.</p>
Escape sequence	62 (Escape sequence)	<p>The syntax of an extended command starts with an escape sequence, then the data identifying the command, and followed by parameters if any. The escape sequence is the first two bytes of an extended command (an ESC, which is a hexadecimal 1BH, plus the semicolon (3BH) followed by it). This setting specifies whether or not to enable the escape sequence you specified. When enabled, an extended command can be controlled using a text code. The default setting is "Disabled".            [0] (Default) : Disabled            [1] : Enabled</p>
	63 (Escape sequence character)	<p>To control an extended command with a text code, an escape sequence (the first two bytes) of the extended command must be specified. Enter two characters using the keyboard displayed on the screen.            [&amp;%] (Default) : 0x21 - 0x7e</p>

Setting Item	Item Number	Value
Form overlay	64	<p>Constantly performs Form Overlay by selecting a form name (No. 01-64) registered on the machine.</p> <p>[0] (Default) : Off [1-64] : No. 1 - No. 64</p> <p><b>Important</b>•Since this setting selects the default value, it is not affected when an extended command is received.</p> <p>•Once a form name is selected, it will remain displayed even if the form is deleted. When a form name is selected using the up and down arrow keys, it will not be displayed. In this case, the setting is set to "Off".</p>
Stapling	66	<p>Sets the stapling position.</p> <p>[0] (Default) : Off [1] : Top left [2] : Top Double [3] : Top Right [4] : Left Double [5] : Right Double [6] : Bottom Left [7] : Bottom Double [8] : Bottom Right</p>
Bypass Tray - Wait User	67	<p>Sets whether to suspend the print processing when feeding paper from Bypass Tray. The processing is resumed by a user operation on the machine.</p> <p>[0] : Off [1] (Default) : On</p>
Punching	69	<p>Select the position for punching.</p> <p>[0] (Default) : Off [1] : Top [2] : Bottom [3] : Left [4] : Right</p>
Number of holes	70	<p>Select the number of punch holes.</p> <p>[0] (Default) : 2 holes [1] : 3 holes</p>
Binary character strings	72	<p>Sets the specified character strings when entering commands in hexadecimal format.</p> <p>[0] (Default) : Off [1] : &amp;\$\$ [2] : \$?!#</p>
0 Style	73	<p>Sets the typeface for "0".</p> <p>[0] (Default) : 0 [1] : ∅</p>
Number of sets	74	<p>Sets which value to use as the number of print sets.</p> <p>[0] : Protocol [1] : Panel [2] (Default) : Command</p>

## Magnification Table

### Preset %

Document Size	Paper Size	A3	A4	A5	B4	B5	11 x 17"	8.5 x 14"	8.5 x 13"	8.5 x 11"	Postcard
A3	Long edge	100	70	49	86	60	103	84	78	66	100
	Short edge	100	70	48	86	60	94	72	72	72	100
A4	Long edge	143	100	70	123	86	147	120	112	94	48
	Short edge	143	100	69	123	86	135	103	103	103	45
A5	Long edge	204	143	100	177	123	210	172	160	135	69
	Short edge	207	145	100	178	124	195	149	149	149	65
B4	Long edge	116	81	57	100	70	119	98	90	76	100
	Short edge	116	81	56	100	70	109	83	83	83	100
B5	Long edge	164	116	81	143	100	171	140	130	109	56
	Short edge	164	116	81	143	100	156	120	120	120	53
11 x 17"	Long edge	97	68	48	84	59	100	82	76	64	100
	Short edge	106	74	51	92	64	100	77	77	77	100
8.5 x 14"	Long edge	119	83	58	102	72	122	100	93	78	100
	Short edge	139	97	67	120	84	131	100	100	100	100
8.5 x 13"	Long edge	128	90	63	111	77	132	108	100	84	100
	Short edge	139	97	67	120	84	131	100	100	100	100
8.5 x 11"	Long edge	152	106	74	131	92	156	128	119	100	100
	Short edge	139	97	67	120	84	131	100	100	100	100
Postcard	Long edge	100	100	145	100	178	100	100	100	100	100
	Short edge	100	100	153	100	190	100	100	100	100	100
15 x 11"	Long edge	119	83	58	103	72	122	100	93	78	100
	Short edge	103	72	50	89	62	97	74	74	74	100
15 x 12"	Long edge	119	83	58	103	72	122	100	93	78	100
	Short edge	95	66	46	81	57	89	68	68	68	100
10 x 11"	Long edge	147	103	72	127	89	151	124	115	97	50
	Short edge	142	99	68	122	85	133	102	102	102	45
10 x 12"	Long edge	135	95	66	117	81	139	114	105	89	46
	Short edge	142	99	68	122	85	133	102	102	102	45

Unit: %

**Note**

- If the magnification for either the long edge or short edge is not within the range of 45 - 210%, the magnifications for both the long edge and short edge will be 100%.



**Preset % (2-Up Printing)**

Document Size	Paper Size	A3/2	A4/2	A5/2	B4/2	B5/2	11 x 17" /2	8.5 x 14" /2	8.5 x 13" /2	8.5 x 11" /2	Postcard /2
A3	Long edge	70	49	100	60	100	66	50	50	50	100
	Short edge	70	48	100	60	100	72	59	54	45	100
A4	Long edge	100	70	48	86	60	94	72	72	72	100
	Short edge	100	69	48	86	59	103	84	78	65	100
A5	Long edge	143	100	69	123	86	135	103	103	103	45
	Short edge	145	100	69	124	86	149	121	112	94	47
B4	Long edge	81	57	100	70	49	76	58	58	58	100
	Short edge	81	56	100	70	48	83	68	63	53	100
B5	Long edge	116	81	56	100	70	109	83	83	83	100
	Short edge	116	80	55	100	69	120	98	90	76	100
11 x 17"	Long edge	68	48	100	59	100	64	49	49	49	100
	Short edge	74	51	100	64	100	77	62	58	48	100
8.5 x 14"	Long edge	83	58	100	72	50	78	60	60	60	100
	Short edge	97	67	100	84	57	100	82	75	63	100
8.5 x 13"	Long edge	90	63	100	77	54	84	64	64	64	100
	Short edge	97	67	100	84	57	100	82	75	63	100
8.5 x 11"	Long edge	106	74	51	92	64	100	77	77	77	100
	Short edge	97	67	46	84	57	100	82	75	63	100
Postcard	Long edge	100	145	100	178	124	100	149	149	149	65
	Short edge	100	153	105	190	131	100	185	172	144	71
15 x 11"	Long edge	83	58	100	72	100	78	60	60	60	100
	Short edge	72	50	100	62	100	74	60	56	47	100
15 x 12"	Long edge	83	58	100	72	100	78	60	60	100	100
	Short edge	66	46	100	57	100	68	55	51	100	100
10 x 11"	Long edge	103	72	50	89	62	97	74	74	74	100
	Short edge	99	68	47	85	59	102	83	77	64	100
10 x 12"	Long edge	95	66	46	81	57	89	68	68	68	100
	Short edge	99	68	47	85	59	102	83	77	64	100

Unit: %

**Note**

- If the magnification for either the long edge or short edge is not within the range of 45 - 210%, the magnifications for both the long edge and short edge will be 100%.

**Fit to Cut Sheet**

Document Size	Paper Size	A3	A4	A5	B4	B5	11 x 17"	8.5 x 14"	8.5 x 13"	8.5 x 11"	Postcard
A3	Long edge	98	69	48	85	59	101	83	77	64	100
	Short edge	97	68	47	84	58	91	70	70	70	100
A4	Long edge	138	97	68	120	84	142	117	108	91	100
	Short edge	137	96	66	118	82	129	99	99	99	100
A5	Long edge	196	137	96	169	118	201	165	153	129	66
	Short edge	195	136	94	168	117	183	140	140	140	62
B4	Long edge	113	79	55	98	68	116	95	88	74	100
	Short edge	112	78	54	97	67	105	81	81	81	100
B5	Long edge	160	112	78	138	97	165	135	125	105	54
	Short edge	158	110	76	136	95	149	114	114	114	50
11 x 17"	Long edge	95	67	47	82	57	98	80	74	63	100
	Short edge	103	72	50	89	62	97	74	74	74	100
8.5 x 14"	Long edge	116	81	57	100	70	119	98	90	76	100
	Short edge	133	93	64	115	80	125	96	96	96	100
8.5 x 13"	Long edge	125	87	61	108	75	128	105	97	82	100
	Short edge	133	93	64	115	80	125	96	96	96	100
8.5 x 11"	Long edge	147	103	72	127	89	151	124	115	97	100
	Short edge	133	93	64	115	80	125	96	96	96	100
Postcard	Long edge	100	195	136	100	168	100	100	100	183	94
	Short edge	100	201	139	100	173	100	100	100	207	91
15 x 11"	Long edge	135	95	66	117	81	139	105	114	89	46
	Short edge	142	99	68	122	85	133	102	102	102	45
15 x 12"	Long edge	135	95	66	117	81	139	105	114	89	46
	Short edge	142	99	68	122	85	133	102	102	102	45
10 x 11"	Long edge	147	103	72	127	89	151	115	124	97	50
	Short edge	142	99	68	122	85	133	102	102	102	45
10 x 12"	Long edge	147	103	72	127	89	151	124	115	97	50
	Short edge	142	99	68	122	85	133	102	102	102	45

Unit: %

**Note**

- If the magnification for either the long edge or short edge is not within the range of 45 - 210%, the magnifications for both the long edge and short edge will be 100%.

**Fit to Cut Sheet (When 2 Up is specified)**

Document Size	Paper Size	A3/2	A4/2	A5/2	B4/2	B5/2	11 x 17" /2	8.5 x 14" /2	8.5 x 13" /2	8.5 x 11" /2	Postcard /2
A3	Long edge	69	48	100	59	100	64	49	49	100	100
	Short edge	68	47	100	58	100	70	57	53	100	100
A4	Long edge	97	68	47	84	58	91	70	70	70	100
	Short edge	96	66	46	82	57	99	80	74	62	100
A5	Long edge	137	96	66	118	82	129	99	99	99	100
	Short edge	136	84	65	117	80	140	114	106	88	100
B4	Long edge	79	55	100	68	48	74	57	57	57	100
	Short edge	78	54	100	67	46	81	66	61	51	100
B5	Long edge	112	78	54	97	67	105	81	81	81	100
	Short edge	110	76	53	95	65	114	93	86	72	100
11 x 17"	Long edge	67	47	100	57	100	63	48	48	48	100
	Short edge	72	50	100	62	100	74	60	56	47	100
8.5 x 14"	Long edge	81	47	100	70	49	76	58	58	58	100
	Short edge	93	50	100	80	55	96	78	72	61	100
8.5 x 13"	Long edge	87	61	100	75	52	82	63	63	63	100
	Short edge	93	64	100	80	55	96	78	72	61	100
8.5 x 11"	Long edge	103	89	100	89	72	97	74	74	74	100
	Short edge	93	80	100	80	55	96	78	72	61	100
Postcard	Long edge	195	136	94	168	117	183	140	140	140	62
	Short edge	201	139	96	173	119	207	169	156	131	65
15 x 11"	Long edge	95	66	46	81	57	89	68	68	68	100
	Short edge	99	68	47	85	59	102	83	77	64	100
15 x 12"	Long edge	95	66	46	81	57	89	68	68	68	100
	Short edge	99	68	47	85	59	102	83	77	64	100
10 x 11"	Long edge	103	72	50	89	62	97	74	74	74	100
	Short edge	99	68	47	85	59	102	83	77	64	100
10 x 12"	Long edge	103	72	50	89	62	97	74	74	74	100
	Short edge	99	68	47	85	59	102	83	77	64	100

Unit: %

**Note**

- If the magnification for either the long edge or short edge is not within the range of 45 - 210%, the magnifications for both the long edge and short edge will be 100%.

## Paper Size and Number of Printable Characters

When the paper feed position is 22 mm

Paper Size	Portrait		Landscape	
	Characters	Lines	Characters	Lines
A3	113	92	161	63
B4	97	78	139	53
A4	79	63	113	42
B5	68	53	97	35
A5	54	42	79	27
Postcard	35	30	54	19
11 x 17"	106	94	166	58
8.5 x 14"	81	76	136	43
8.5 x 13"	81	70	126	43
8.5 x 11"	81	58	106	43

When the paper feed position is 8.5 mm

Paper Size	Portrait		Landscape	
	Characters	Lines	Characters	Lines
A3	113	95	161	66
B4	97	82	139	56
A4	79	66	113	45
B5	68	56	97	39
A5	54	45	79	31
Postcard	35	30	54	19
11 x 17"	106	98	166	62
8.5 x 14"	81	80	136	47
8.5 x 13"	81	74	126	47
8.5 x 11"	81	62	106	47

- Note**
- The values are based on 10-cpi character pitch and 6-lpi line pitch.
  - The magnifications for both the long edge and short edge are 100%.
  - Some paper sizes are not available for use depending on the hardware configuration.

**Fit to Cut Sheet**

Paper Size	Portrait		Landscape	
	Characters	Lines	Characters	Lines
A3	116	99	165	70
B4	101	85	143	60
A4	82	70	116	49
B5	71	60	101	42
A5	58	49	82	34
Postcard	39	34	58	23
11 x 17"	110	102	170	66
8.5 x 14"	85	84	140	51
8.5 x 13"	85	78	130	51
8.5 x 11"	85	66	110	51

- Note**
- The values are based on 10-cpi character pitch and 6-lpi line pitch.
  - Some paper sizes are not available for use depending on the hardware configuration.

**15-inch Continuous Form Mode (When Aligned at Left in Portrait Orientation)**

Paper Size	Portrait		Landscape	
	Characters	Lines	Characters	Lines
All supported paper sizes	136	66	136	72

- Note**
- The values are based on 10-cpi character pitch and 6-lpi line pitch.

**10-inch Continuous Form Mode**

Paper Size	Portrait		Landscape	
	Characters	Lines	Characters	Lines
All supported paper sizes	80	66	80	72

## PDF Direct Print

PDF Direct Print is a feature that prints PDF files by directly using the lpr command instead of a print driver. When this feature is used, the following items will be printed based on the settings on the control panel.

- Output Quantity
- 2 Sided Printing
- Print Mode
- Collate
- Layout
- Paper Size
- Print Processing Mode

- Note**
- When using the lpr command to print, specify the number of copies to be printed in the lpr command. The copy quantity setting made on the control panel becomes invalid. If the copy quantity is not specified in the lpr command, only one copy is printed.
  - When printing a PDF file using the lpr command, the LPD protocol of the machine must be started using the control panel or CentreWare Internet Services.

## PDF Direct Print Settings

This section explains the setting items for the PDF Direct Print feature.

The settings configured here are valid when printing PDF files without using "ContentsBridge" provided by Fuji Xerox.

- Note**
- For information on printing PDF files using ContentsBridge Utility, refer to the manual provided on the driver CD kit CD-ROM.

Setting Item	Item Number	Value
Output Quantity	401	Sets the number of copies to be printed. [1-999] (Default: 1): 1-999 sheets
2 Sided Printing	402	Sets the 2-sided printing option. [0] (Default) : 1 Sided [1] : 2 Sided (Flip on long edge) [2] : 2 Sided (Flip on short edge) [2 Sided (Flip on long edge)] prints 2 sided in the orientation so that pages can be bound along the long edge. [2 Sided (Flip on short edge)] prints 2 sided in the orientation so that pages can be bound along the short edge.
Print Mode	403	Sets whether to give priority to the print speed or the image quality. [0] (Default) : Standard [1] : High Speed [2] : Fine The [Standard] setting prints in a standard speed and quality. The [High Speed] setting gives priority to the print speed. The [Fine] quality setting prints in high quality but in a slower speed.
Collate	404	Sets whether to print multiple-sheet documents as collated sets (1, 2, 3...1, 2, 3...). [0] (Default) : Off [1] : On

Setting Item	Item Number	Value
Layout	405	<p>Sets the layout for printing.</p> <p><b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This item can be set when [PDF Bridge] is selected for [Print Processing Mode].</li> </ul> <p>[0] (Default) : Auto %  [1] : Booklet  [2] : 2-up  [3] : 4-up  [4] : 100% (size-by-size)</p> <p>The [Auto %] setting automatically calculates the largest magnification possible to fit to the output paper size. It automatically selects A4 or letter size paper based on the size of the original PDF file.</p> <p>The [Booklet] setting prints the images side by side, on both sides of each page, in the correct order to make a booklet. Some documents may not be printed in a booklet fashion depending on the structure of their pages. In such case, they will be printed with the [Auto %] setting.</p> <p><b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When [A4] is selected for [Paper Size], documents will be printed on A4 size paper.</li> <li>• When [Paper Size] is set to [Auto], documents will be printed on A3 or A4 size paper.</li> </ul> <p>The 2-up setting prints two pages onto one sheet of paper. When 2 Up is selected, the paper size is fixed at A4.</p> <p>The 4-up setting prints four pages on each sheet of paper. When 4 Up is selected, the paper size is fixed at A4.</p>
Paper Size	406	<p>Set the size of the paper to be printed.</p> <p>[0] (Default) : Auto  [1] : A4</p> <p>The [Auto] setting automatically determines the paper size, based on the size of a PDF file to be printed and the settings configured for it.</p>
Print Processing Mode	408	<p>Sets the print processing mode when using the PDF Direct Print feature.</p> <p>[0] (Default) : PDF Bridge  [1] : PS</p> <p>[PDF Bridge] processes PDF files using the PDF Direct Print feature provided by Fuji Xerox.</p> <p>[PS] processes PDF files using the PostScript feature provided by Adobe.</p> <p><b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This item appears only when the optional Adobe PostScript 3 kit is installed.</li> <li>• The print results may be different between the [PDF Bridge] and [PS] selections.</li> <li>• When [PS] is selected, the [Layout] setting becomes invalid.</li> </ul>

## PCL Emulation

The following table shows the emulation parameters and their values for PCL emulation.

For information on how to change parameter values, refer to "Print Mode" (P.68)

Parameter	Item No.	Value
Paper Tray	201	<p>[0] (Default) : Auto            [1] : Tray 1            [2] : Tray 2            [3] : Tray 3            [4] : Tray 4            [5] : Tray 5 (Bypass)</p> <p>Selects the paper tray. When [Auto] is selected, the machine automatically selects the tray that contains the paper whose size is specified on the [Paper Supply] screen.</p>
Auto Size	202	<p>[3] : A3            [4] (Default*) : A4            [5] : A5            [14] : B4            [15] : B5            [21] : 8.5 × 14"            [22] : 8.5 × 13"            [23] (Default*) : 8.5 × 11"            [24] : 11 × 17"            [25] : Custom            [30] : 8K</p> <p>Sets the default paper size when the machine is set to select the paper size automatically. Only available when [Paper Tray] is set to [Auto].            * The default value will be either [4] or [23] depending on the region of use.</p>
Bypass Size	203	<p>[3] : A3            [4] (Default*) : A4            [5] : A5            [14] : B4            [15] : B5            [21] : 8.5 × 14"            [22] : 8.5 × 13"            [23] (Default*) : 8.5 × 11"            [24] : 11 × 17"            [25] : Custom</p> <p>Sets the paper size for the bypass tray. Only available when [Paper Tray] is set to [Tray 5 (Bypass)].            * The default value will be either [4] or [23] depending on the region of use.</p>
Orientation	205	<p>[0] (Default) : Portrait            [1] : Landscape</p> <p>Sets the document orientation.</p>



Parameter	Item No.	Value
2 Side Print	206	[0] (Default) : Off [1] : On  Sets whether to enable double-sided printing.
Default Font	207	[0]: CG Times [1]: CG Times Italic [2]: CG Times Bold [3]: CG Times Bold Italic [4]: Univers Medium [5]: Univers Medium Italic [6]: Univers Bold [7]: Univers Bold Italic [8]: Univers Medium Condensed [9]: Univers Medium Condensed Italic [10]: Univers Bold Condensed [11]: Univers Bold Condensed Italic [12]: Antique Olive [13]: Antique Olive Italic [14]: Antique Olive Bold [15]: CG Omega [16]: CG Omega Italic [17]: CG Omega Bold [18]: CG Omega Bold Italic [19]: Garamond Antiqua [20]: Garamond Kursiv [21]: Garamond Halbfett [22]: Garamond Kursiv Halbfett [23] (Default): Courier [24]: Courier Italic [25]: Courier Bold [26]: Courier Bold Italic [27]: Letter Gothic [28]: Letter Gothic Italic [29]: Letter Gothic Bold [30]: Albertus Medium [31]: Albertus Extra Bold [32]: Clarendon Condensed [33]: Coronet [34]: Marigold [35]: Arial [36]: Arial Italic [37]: Arial Bold [38]: Arial Bold Italic [39]: Times New [40]: Times New Italic [41]: Times New Bold [42]: Times New Bold Italic [43]: Symbol [44]: Wingdings [45]: Line Printer [46]: Times Roman [47]: Times Italic [48]: Times Bold [49]: Times Bold Italic [50]: Helvetica [51]: Helvetica Oblique [52]: Helvetica Bold [53]: Helvetica Bold Oblique [54]: CourierPS [55]: CourierPS Oblique [56]: CourierPS Bold [57]: CourierPS Bold Oblique [58]: SymbolPS [59]: Palatino Roman [60]: Palatino Italic [61]: Palatino Bold [62]: Palatino Bold Italic [63]: ITC Bookman Light [64]: ITC Bookman Light Italic [65]: ITC Bookman Demi [66]: ITC Bookman Demi Italic [67]: Helvetica Narrow [68]: Helvetica Narrow Oblique [69]: Helvetica Narrow Bold [70]: Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique [71]: New Century Schoolbook Roman [72]: New Century Schoolbook Italic [73]: New Century Schoolbook Bold [74]: New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic [75]: ITC Avant Garde Book [76]: ITC Avant Garde Book Oblique [77]: ITC Avant Garde Demi [78]: ITC Avant Garde Demi Oblique [79]: ITC Zapf Chancery Medium Italic [80]: ITC Zapf Dingbats

Parameter	Item No.	Value
Symbol Set	208	[0] (Default): Roman 8 [1]: ISO 8859-1 Latin 1 [2]: ISO 8859-2 Latin 2 [3]: ISO 8859-9 Latin 5 [4]: ISO 8859-10 Latin 6 [5]: PC-8 [6]: PC-8 DN [7]: PC-775 [8]: PC-850 [9]: PC-852 [10]: PC-1004 (OS/2) [11]: PC Turkish [12]: Windows 3.1 Latin 1 [13]: Windows 3.1 Latin 2 [14]: Windows 3.1 Latin 5 [15]: DeskTop [16]: PS Text [17]: MC Text [18]: Microsoft Publishing [19]: Math 8 [20]: PS Math [21]: Pi Font [22]: Legal [23]: ISO 4 United Kingdom [24]: ISO 6 ASCII [25]: ISO 11 Swedish:names [26]: ISO 15 Italian [27]: ISO 17 Spanish [28]: ISO 21 German [29]: ISO 60 Norwegian v1 [30]: ISO 69 French [31]: Windows 3.0 Latin 1 [32]: Windows Baltic [33]: Symbol [34]: Wingdings [35]: UCS-2
Font Size	209	[400] - [5000] (Default: [1200]): Specifies the point size of a font in increments of 25. The value of 100 represents 1 point.
Font Pitch	210	[600] - [2400] (Default: [1000]): Specifies the pitch size of a font. The value of 100 represents the pitch size of 1.
Form Line	211	[5] - [128] (Default: [64] or [60]*): Specifies the number of lines on a page. * The default value will be [64] if the default value of the item 202/203 is [4]; [60] if the value for 202/203 is [23].
Print Sets	212	[1] - [999] (Default: [1]): Specifies the number of print sets.
Image Enhance	213	[0] : Off [1] (Default) : On Sets whether to enable the enhanced image mode.
Hex Dump	214	[0] (Default) : Off [1] : On Sets whether to enable a hex dump.
Draft Mode	215	[0] (Default) : Off [1] : On Sets whether to enable the draft mode.
Binding	217	[0] (Default) : LEF [1] : SEF Specifies which edge of paper is to be bound.
Line Termination	218	[0] (Default) : Off [1] : Add-LF (Appends an LF to CR) [2] : Add-CR (Appends a CR to LF and FF) [3] : CR-XX (Appends a CR to LF and FF, and LF to CR)
Default Custom Paper Size	219 (Short edge)	[0] - [9999] : 0 to 9999 [2100] (Default short-edge value): 210.0 mm [2970] (Default long-edge value): 297.0 mm
	220 (Long edge)	
		Specifies the default custom paper size.

## HP-GL2 Emulation

This section explains how to operate the HP-GL mode menu and the settings that can be made with it.

### HP-GL Settings List

Items that can be set using the HP-GL mode menu are explained in two groups: basic settings and advanced settings.

#### ■Basic Settings

Document Size	101	<p>[99] (Default) : Auto            [100]: Paper            [0] : A0            [1] : A1            [2] : A2            [3] : A3            [4] : A4            [5] : A5            [10] : B0            [11] : B1            [12] : B2            [13] : B3            [14] : B4            [15] : B5</p> <p>Sets the document size created by a PC client. When Auto ([99]) is specified, the document size is determined based on the Scaling Mode setting (the item number 160).</p>
Paper Size	102	<p>[99] : Auto            [101] (Default) : A Size            [3] : A3            [4] : A4            [5] : A5            [14] : B4            [15] : B5</p> <p>Sets the paper size to be printed. This can be set if the paper tray setting is either "Auto" or "Tray 5 (Manual Feed)". In addition, settings can only be made for cut paper. When Auto (99) is specified, the paper size is determined based on the Scaling Mode setting (the item number 160).</p>
Paper Tray	103	<p>[0] (Default) : Auto            [1] : Tray 1            [2] : Tray 2            [3] : Tray 3            [4] : Tray 4            [5] : Manual Feed</p> <p>Sets the paper tray to be used for printing.</p>
Coordinate Rotation	104	<p>[0] (Default) : 0 degree            [1] : 90 degree</p> <p>Sets the paper orientation for printing.</p>

### ■Advanced Settings

Auto Layout	106	[0] (Default) : ON [1] : OFF  Selects whether aligning the position of the document and the paper is to be done automatically or not.
Active Palette	107	[0] (Default) : Command [1] : Panel  Selects whether to use a pen specified by command or set on the panel.
No. of Prints	108	[1] -[250] (Default): [1]: 1 - 250  Sets the number of prints to be made.
Output Tray	109	[0] (Default) : Center Output Tray [1] : Side Output Tray [2] : Center Output Tray - Lower [80] : Finisher Tray  Sets the output tray.
Two-Sided Printing	110	[0] (Default) : None [1] : Head to head [2] : Head to toe  Sets the two-sided printing. [None]...Prints one side. [Head to Head]...Place the paper as in the [Paper Orientation], and it prints both sides so that the orientation of the up-sides are aligned for each page when the left side is closed. [Head to Toe]...Place the paper as in the [Paper Orientation], and it prints both sides so that the orientation of the up-sides are aligned for each page when the top side is closed.
Chinese Fonts	111	[0] : Stroke  Specifies 2-byte character fonts, including Chinese characters. The setting cannot be changed for this model.
Alphanumeric Fonts	112	[0] : Stroke  Specifies 1 byte character fonts. The setting cannot be changed for this model.
Vertical Position Adjustment	113	[0] (Default) : Does not move the hard clip area. [1] to [500] : -250 to +250 mm  Moves the hard clip area vertically. -1 to -250 mm for setting numbers 1 - 250 +1 to +250 mm for setting numbers 251 - 500
Horizontal Position Adjustment	114	[0] (Default) : Does not move the hard clip area. [1] to [500] : -250 to +250mm  Moves the hard clip area horizontally. -1 to -250 mm for setting numbers 1 - 250 +1 to +250 mm for setting numbers 251 - 500

Print Quantity Setup	115	[0] (Default) : Protocol [1] : Panel [2] : Command  Sets the method for specifying the print quantity.
HP-GL Mode	150	[0] (Default) : HP-GL [1] : HP-GL/2  A graphics language can be selected.
Hard Clip	151	[0] : Standard [2] (Default) : Paper  Sets the size for the area where drawings can be made (hard clip area). [Standard]...Hard clip area for A4, A3, letter, and ledger are the same as for the Hewlett Packard HP7550A. Hard clip area for other paper sizes is the same as this M/C printable area. [Paper]...Make the hard clip area the same area as the paper.
Eject Command	152 (SP) 153 (SPO) 154 (NR) 155 (FR) 156 (PG) 157 (AF) 158 (AH)	[0] (Default) : OFF [1] : ON  Sets the command that indicates a drawing is finished. When the command specified here is received, drawing is terminated and the paper is ejected. [Off]...Does not process as an eject command. [On]...Processes as an eject command. ON is set as the default for SPO only.
Scaling	159	[0] : OFF [1] (Default) : ON  Determines the setting to either enlarge or reduce the document size so that the document size fits the paper size. [OFF]...Prints in the same size without enlargement/reduction, even if the document size and paper size are different. [ON]...Prints while enlarging/reducing the data on document size so that it fits the paper size.
Scaling Mode	160	[0] (Default) : Paper Size [1] : Active Coordinate Area  Determines how the document size and the paper size are determined when Document Size (the item number 101) and/or Paper Size (102) is set to Auto (99). [Paper Size]...Make the document size the minimum size that combines the active coordinate area from the active coordinate determining method and the active coordinate obtained by the settings of Origin Position and Paper Margin. [Active Coordinate Area]...Make the document size the area from which the paper margin is subtracted from the active coordinate area obtained by the active coordinate determining method.

Active Area Determining Command	161	<p>[0] (Default) : Auto  [1] : PS  [2] : IW  [3] : IP  [4] : Adapted</p> <p>When auto-scaling is in use, this sets the method for obtaining the active coordinate area.  [Auto]...Determines any of the methods listed below: PS, IW, IP, or Adapted.  [PS]...Area specified by the first PS command is to be a rectangular area.  [IW]...Area specified by the very last IW command is to be a rectangular area.  [IP]...Area which combines all the IP Commands is to be a rectangular area.  [Adapted]...The maximum/minimum coordinates within the areas and coordinates plotted using the drawing command, and the maximum size of characters and line width specified in the page, are used to calculate the rectangular area.</p>
Paper Margin	162	<p>[0] to [99] (Default: [0]): 0 - 99 mm</p> <p>Sets the paper margin when auto scaling is being used.</p>
Image Enhancement	163	<p>[0] : OFF  [1] (Default) : ON</p> <p>Sets whether to artificially increase the resolution of an image and smooth its edges.</p>
Stapling	164	<p>[0] (Default) : None  [1] : Top Left  [2] : Top Double  [3] : Top Right  [4] : Left Double  [5] : Right Double  [6] : Bottom Left  [7] : Bottom Double  [8] : Bottom Right  [9] : Center</p> <p>Sets the stapling position.</p>
Manual Feed Tray Check Indicator	165	<p>[0] : None  [1] (Default) : Yes</p>
Emulation Target Printer	169	<p>[0] (Default) : HP750C  [1] : FX4036</p>
Pen Width (No. 0-No.15)	800-815	<p>[0] to [255] (Default: [3]): 0 to 25.5 mm</p> <p>Sets the width of the pen (thickness of the line).  Width units are 0.1 mm. Can be set in steps of 0.1 mm.</p>
Line End Shape (No. 0-No.15)	850-865	<p>[0] (Default) : Cut  [1] : Round  [2] : Rectangular</p> <p>Sets the line end shape.</p>

Pen Intersects (No. 0-No.15)	900-915	[0] (Default) : None [1] : Intersect [2] : Round [3] : Cut  Sets the process for when pens' lines intersect.
Pen Density (No. 0~No.15)	950-965	[0] - [100] (Monochrome)  Sets the density.

## Hard Clip Area

In the HP-GL mode, the plottable area is determined in line with the paper size, apart from the printable area. This area is called a "hard clip area", and determines the maximum range of pen movement. Accordingly, images cannot be drawn outside the boundary of the hard clip area. This machine allows you to select a hard clip area from the following.

### ■Standard

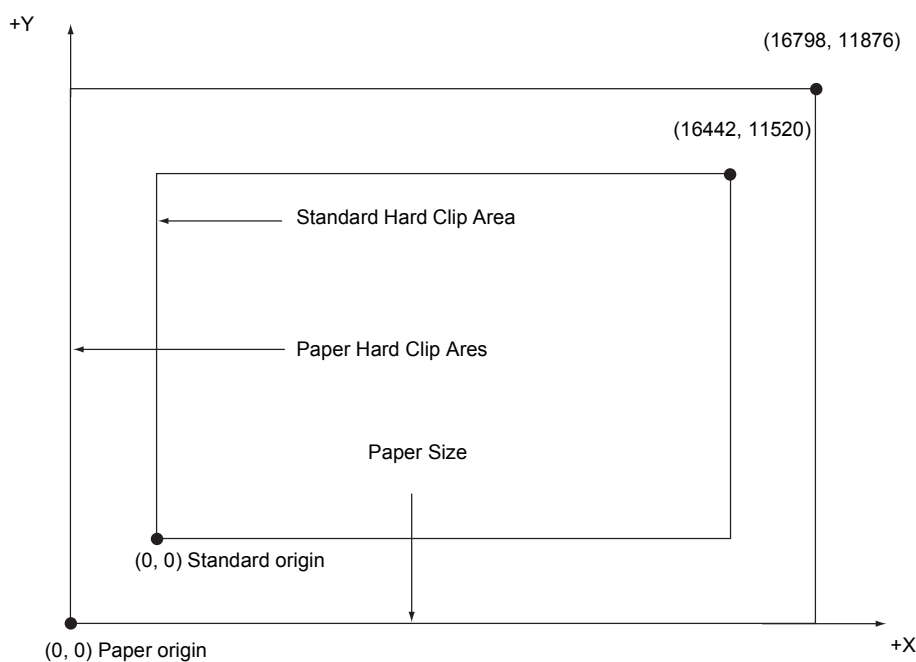
Defines the printable area of this machine as the hard clip area.

### ■Paper

Defines a size that is the same as the paper as the hard clip area. However, the area that allows actual printing is within the printable area.

The hard clip area can be set either via HP-GL emulation mode settings or by the specified hard clip command "& 1".

The following coordinate values present an example of when the origin is set at the lower left (Auto Layout in HP-GL/2) of A3 sheet.



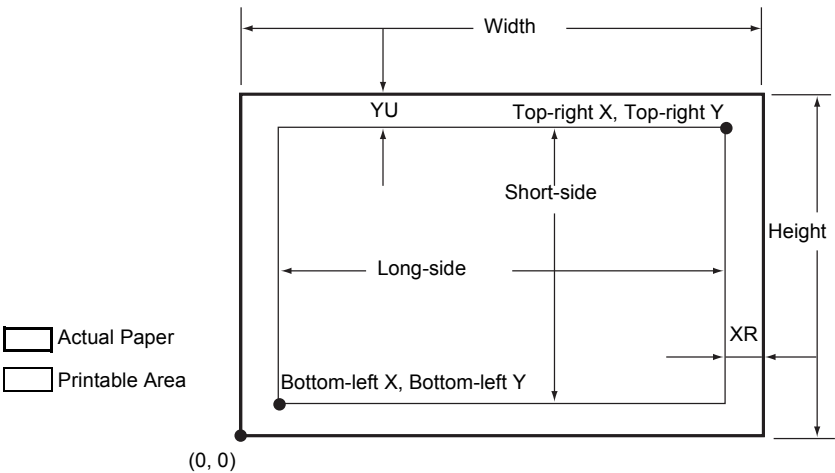
Printable Area

The printable area in the HP-GL mode is as follows.

■Paper Size and Printable Area

Paper size	Paper Length (1/7200 inch)		Coordinate Value (1/7200 inch)							
	X Axis	Y Axis	Margin		Printable Area		Top-right Edge		Margin	
	Width	Height	Bottom-left X	Bottom Left Y	Long Side	Short Side	Top-right X	Top-right Y	XR	YU
A3	119052	84168	1260	1260	116532	81648	117792	82908	1260	1260
A4	84168	59508	1260	1260	81648	56988	82908	58248	1260	1260
A5	59508	41940	1260	1260	56988	39420	58248	40680	1260	1260
B4	103176	72828	1260	1260	100656	70308	101916	71568	1260	1260
B5	72828	51588	1260	1260	70308	49068	71568	71568	1260	1260

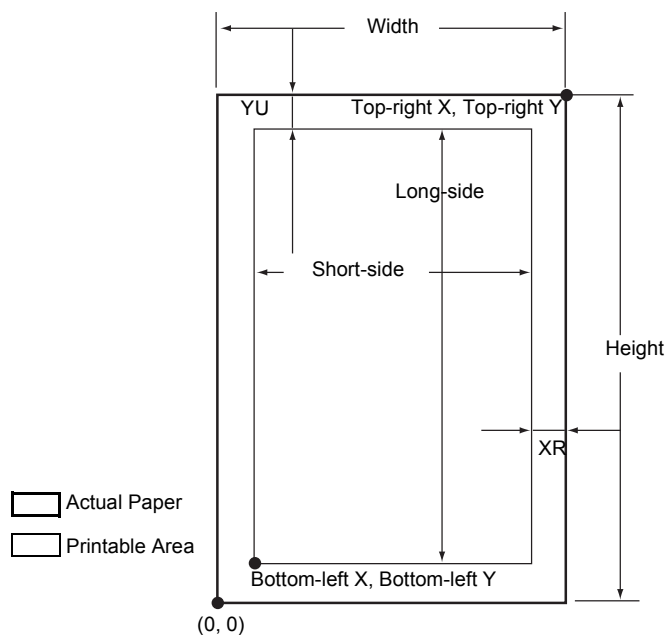
Note • The HP-GL emulation supports 5 paper sizes: A3,A5,A4, B4 and B5.



Paper size	Paper Length (1/7200 inch)		Coordinate Value (1/7200 inch)							
	X Axis	Y Axis	Margin		Printable Area		Top-right Edge		Margin	
	Width	Height	Bottom-left X	Bottom Left Y	Long Side	Short Side	Top-right X	Top-right Y	XR	YU
A3	84168	119052	1260	1260	81648	116532	82908	117792	1260	1260
A4	59508	84168	1260	1260	56988	81648	58248	82908	1260	1260
A5	41940	59508	1260	1260	39420	56988	40680	58248	1260	1260
B4	72828	103176	1260	1260	70308	100656	71568	101916	1260	1260
B5	51588	72828	1260	1260	49068	70308	50328	71568	1260	1260

Note • The HP-GL emulation supports 5 paper sizes: A3,A5,A4, B4 and B5.





## Auto Layout

This section explains Auto Layout.

### 1. What is Auto Layout?

Auto Layout is a function that evaluates document size based on the HP-GL data entered from the host system and enlarges/reduces it in line with the paper size to be plotted so that the plotted data is laid out in the center of the paper. Using the Auto Scale and Auto Layout functions enable you to print a document in the HP-GL mode without regard for the document size and origin position.

All specification in Auto Layout can be made via the operation panel. The settings cannot be made with advanced commands.

### 2. Activating the Auto Layout Function

Set the following items with the operation panel to activate the Auto Layout function.

- Set the document size to AUTO. The default value is AUTO.
- Set the Auto Layout to ON for setting the origin position. The default value is ON.
- Set Scaling to ON. The default value is ON.
- Select a method for obtaining the active coordinate area using the area determining mode. The default value is AUTO.
- Set the paper margin using Paper Margin. The default value is 0 mm.
- Set the Scaling Mode. The default value is Paper Size.

### 3. Details on Setting Items

Details on each item are as follows.

#### ■ Document Size

Press the mode button and select AUTO under document size and it will be possible to set Auto Layout to ON.

**■Auto Layout**

After pressing the mode button, press the menu button and set Auto Layout to ON. Once you set it to ON, the settings for scaling, area determination mode, paper margins and scaling mode all become active.

**■Scaling**

Determines the setting to either enlarge or reduce (scaling) the document size so that the document size fits the paper size.

**■Area Determination Mode**

Based on HP-GL data, the methods for obtaining the active coordinates area are as follows:

**Auto**

The method for determining the active coordinate area is automatically selected from among PS, IW, IP and Adapted.

In this mode the order of priority is PS, IW, IP, Adapted.

**IW**

The area specified by the very last IW command in the data becomes the active coordinate area.

If there are no IW commands in the data, the active coordinate area is determined by Adapted.

**IP**

The area that encompasses all the areas specified by IP commands in the data becomes the active coordinate area.

If there are no IP commands in the data, the active coordinate area is determined by Adapted.

**Adapted**

The ACA is determined by the following conditions.

Min/Max position coordinates plotted by drawing commands

Max font size specified within the page

Max line width

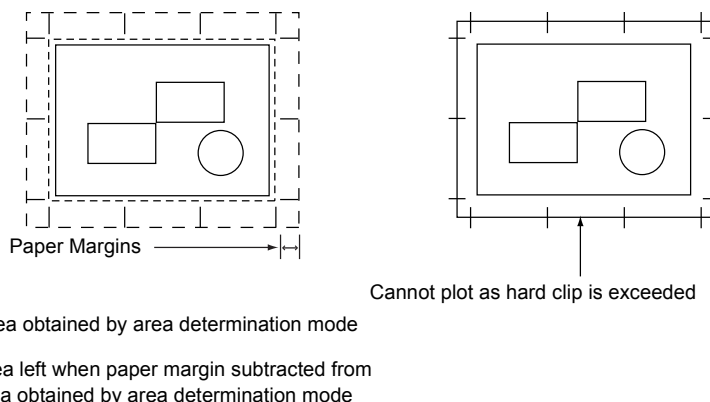
**PS**

The area that encompasses all the areas specified by PS commands in the data becomes the active coordinate area.

If there are no PS commands in the data, the active coordinate area is determined by Adapted.

**■Paper Margin**

Set the range from 0 to 99 mm. The default value is 0 mm. To get the active coordinate area, subtract the area set in paper margins from the ACA obtained in the area determination mode.



### ■Scaling Mode

Select the mode for determining the document size from the obtained ACA. Also, judge whether it will be portrait or landscape according to the ACA.

#### If it is an ACA

To get the document size, subtract the area set in paper margins from the area obtained in the area determination mode.

#### If it is a Paper Size

Set the document size from the obtained ACA and the origin point setting. The document size can be selected from A-size papers (6 sizes: A0, A1, A2, A3, A4 or A5).

## 4. How to Determine Document Size

The document size is determined by comparing the hard clip area for each paper size, based on the ACA obtained in the scaling mode, paper margins, and area determination mode.

### ■If the Scaling Mode is a Paper Size

- 1) Obtain the coordinate area to be active from the HP-GL data entered, in accord with the area determination mode.
- 2) As a margin, add the larger value of either the font size specified in the page, the default size or one half the specified pen width, to the ACA obtained in **1**.
- 3) Subtract the value set in paper margins from the ACA obtained in **2**.
- 4) The minimum size that includes the ACA obtained in **3** will be the document size.

### ■If the Scaling Mode is the ACA

- 1) Obtain the coordinate area to be active from the HP-GL data entered, in accord with the area determination mode.
- 2) As a margin, add the larger value of either the font size specified in the page, the default size or one half the specified pen width, to the ACA obtained in **1**.
- 3) Subtract the value set in paper margins from the ACA obtained in **2**.
- 4) The ACA obtained in the process up to **3** will be the document size.

### ■Ex.

If the following data is entered when the scaling mode = paper size, origin position = Auto, paper margin is 10mm, area determination mode = IP:

All pen width settings are 0.1 mm

The following data does not contain a character size specification command and the physical size of the area specified by IP/IW is A3.

```
IN;
IP-8399,-5938, 8399, 5938;
IW-8399,-5938, 8399, 5938;
PU;
SP1;
:
:
SP0;
```

- 1) As the area determination mode is IP, the ACA is specified as the area -8399,-5938,8399,5938 by an IP command.

YYY

- 2) In the example above, as there are no font size specification commands and all the pen widths are 0.1 mm, add the height/2 of the default font size for A3 size paper (75 plotter units) to the ACA obtained in **1**.  
The ACA obtained in **2** is -8474,-6013,8474,6013.
- 3) The value set in paper margins (10 mm = 400 plotter units) is subtracted from the ACA obtained in **2**.  
The ACA obtained in **3** is -8074,-5613,8074,5613.
- 4) As the ACA obtained in **3** exceeds the A4 size and is A3 size, the document size is determined to be A3.

In addition, as the ACA area when the paper margin setting is 0 mm is 8474,-6013,8474,6013, and this exceeds A3, but is A2 or smaller, the document size is determined to be A2.

## 5. How to Determine Paper Size

If the operation panel settings are as follows, the paper size is determined as below.

Document size: Auto

Paper Tray: Auto

The method for determining the paper size differs according to the paper size and scaling mode settings on the operation panel.

### ■If the Paper Size Setting is A Sizes

The possible paper sizes are those that are actually loaded in the trays, from among the three sizes, A3, A4 and A5.

If A-sized papers (A3, A4, A5) are not loaded in the trays, all of the sizes, A3, A4 and A5 become possible sizes; a message is displayed on the operation panel prompting the user to load A-sized paper.

### ■If the Paper Size Setting is Auto

The possible paper sizes are those that are actually loaded in the trays, from among the 5 sizes, A3, B4, A4, B5 and A5.

If A3, B4, A4, B5 or A5 paper is not loaded in the trays, all of the sizes become possible sizes; a message is displayed on the operation panel prompting the user to load paper.

### ■If the Scaling Mode Setting is Paper Size

If the paper size and the document size are the same, select paper that is the same size as the document.

If the document size is larger than any possible paper sizes, select the largest paper.  
 If the document size is smaller than any possible paper sizes, select the closest paper.

#### ■If the Scaling Mode Setting is ACA

Select the smallest paper size that can contain the ACA.  
 If the ACA is larger than any possible paper sizes, select the largest paper.  
 If the ACA is smaller than any possible paper sizes, select the closest paper.

#### Supplementary Notes

If the document size is set to anything other than Auto, the paper size is the one set on the operation panel.

If the paper tray is set to Auto, the paper size is the one loaded in each tray. However, If paper whose size is not supported is loaded, an error message will be displayed prompting the user to load a supported paper.

## 6. How to Determine the Scaling Factor

When auto-scaling is being used, although the scaling factor is determined by document size and paper size, it differs according to the scale mode setting.

#### Supplementary Notes

To activate scaling, turn the scaling setting to ON on the operation panel. If it is OFF, it is plotted at the same scale (100%).

#### ■If the Document Size is Auto and the Scaling Mode is Paper Size

The hard clip setting is inactive. The hard clip area is always the paper's hard clip area.  
 If the document size = paper size, it plots at the same scale (100%).  
 If the document size > paper size, it plots at a reduced scale.  
 If the document size < paper size, it plots at the same scale (100%).

	A3	A4	A5	B4	B5
A0	35	25	100	31	100
A1	50	35	25	43	31
A2	71	50	35	61	43
A3	100	71	50	87	61
A4	100	100	71	100	87
A5	100	100	100	100	100

If the origin position for the plotting position is Layout, the document is laid out and drawn in the center. If the origin position is bottom left or center, the origin of the document and the paper are aligned and drawn.

#### ■If the Document Size is Auto and the Scaling Mode is ACA

The hard clip setting is inactive. The hard clip area is always the advanced hard clip area.

The scaling factor is determined according to the ACA and the paper size. The range for the ACA for each paper size is as follows:

Paper Size	0 Degrees				90 Degrees			
	Min Value		Max Value		Min Value		Max Value	
	P2x - P1x	P2y - P1y	P2x - P1x	P2y - P1y	P2x - P1x	P2y - P1y	P2x - P1x	P2y - P1y
A3	7829	5485	73075	51200	5485	7829	51200	73075
A4	5485	3828	51200	35733	3828	5485	35733	51200
A5	3828	2648	35733	24720	2648	3828	44088	35733
B4	6762	4723	63120	44088	4723	6762	44088	63120
B5	4723	3297	44088	30773	3297	4723	30773	44088

Unit: Plotter Unit

The maximum scaling factor is 210% of the advanced hard clip area for each paper size and the minimum scaling factor is 22.5%.

## 7. Restrictions When Plotting under Auto Layout

### ■If the Printer is Equipped with Hard Disk(s)

When Auto Layout is used, print data is stored on the hard disk.

### ■If the Printer is Not Equipped with hard disk(s)

When Auto Layout is used, print data is stored in layout memory.

The default layout memory is set at 100kbyte. Consequently, when print data exceeding 100kbyte is received, a printer error occurs.

If this happens, change the Auto Layout memory capacity on the operation panel.

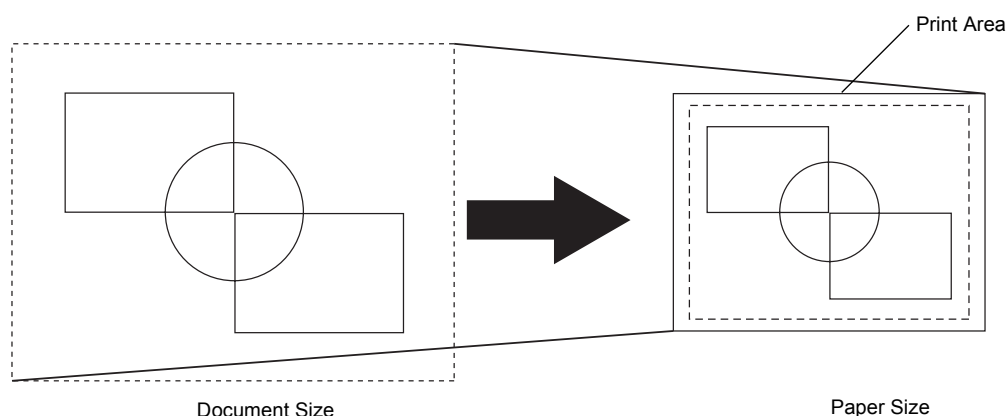
However, the maximum memory capacity for Auto Layout is 5120kbyte. So, print data larger than 5120kbyte cannot be received.

When using the Auto Layout function, we recommend the printer be equipped with a hard disk.

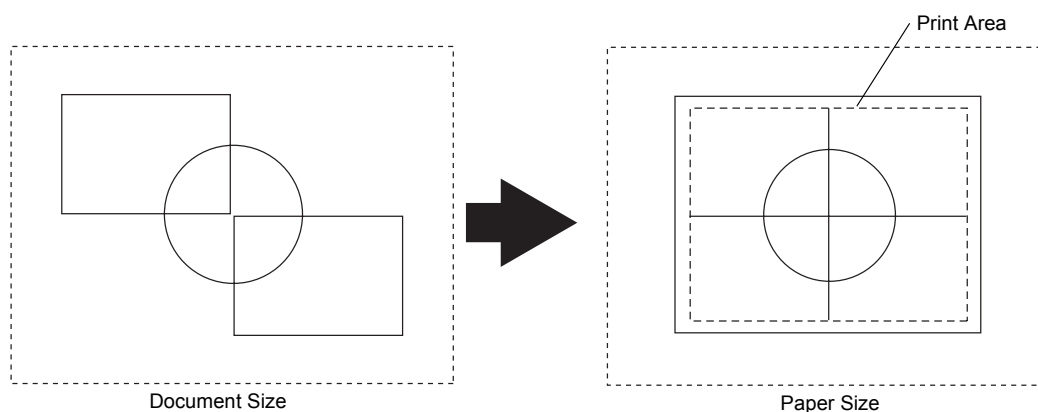
## 8. Examples of Combinations of Each Function

The following are examples showing the print results that can be achieved by combining various functions.

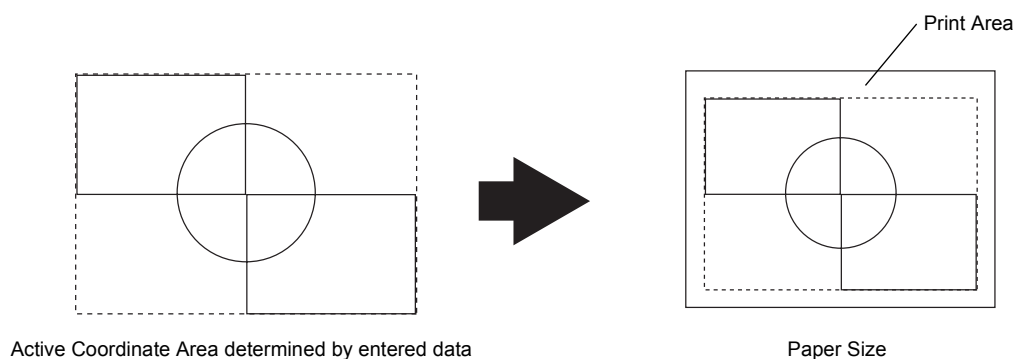
### ■Document: Auto, Coordinate Origin: 0 Degrees, Scaling Mode: Paper Size, Scaling: ON



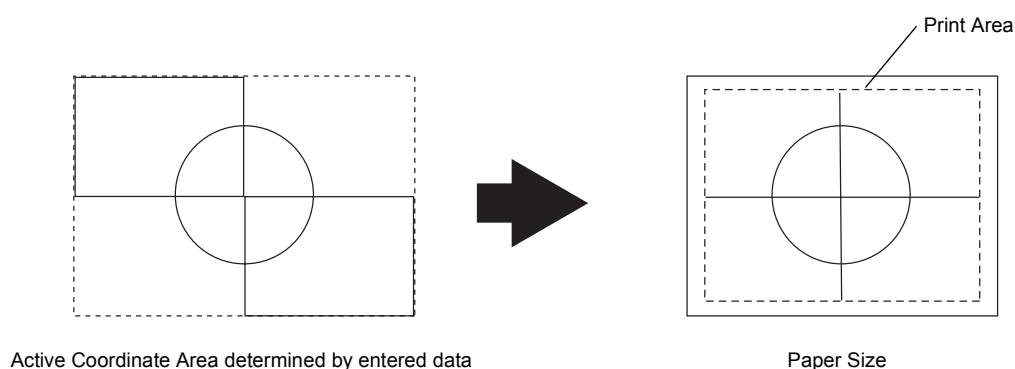
■ **Document: Auto, Coordinate Origin: 0 Degrees, Scaling Mode: Paper Size, Scaling: OFF**



■ **Document: Auto, Coordinate Origin: 0 Degrees, Scaling Mode: Active Coordinate Area, Scaling: ON**



■ **Document: Auto, Coordinate Origin: 0 Degrees, Scaling Mode: Active Coordinate Area, Scaling: OFF**



## 9. HP-GL/2 Emulation Mode Restriction

Using HP DJ750C, which is the emulation target for the HP-GL/2 emulation mode, sets lines to a round joint if the lines are 0.35mm width or under. A miter joint is not set.

However, using the HP-GL/2 emulation mode of the machine always sets lines to a miter joint as a default regardless of the line width.

To cancel the default, use a command.

## Using the Telephone

This section describes how to use an external telephone connected to the machine with the fax feature.

### Placing a Call

The following describes how to place a call using the external telephone.

To place a call, there are the following two methods.

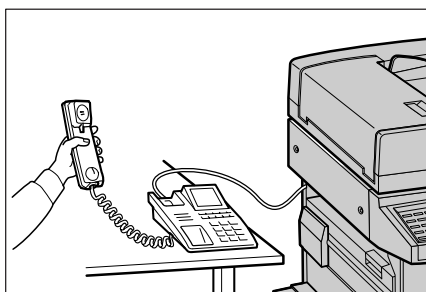
- Dialing with the receiver lifted (off-hook dialing)
- Dialing with the receiver resting in the cradle (on-hook dialing)

#### Off-hook Dialing

The following describes how to place a call with the receiver off-hook.

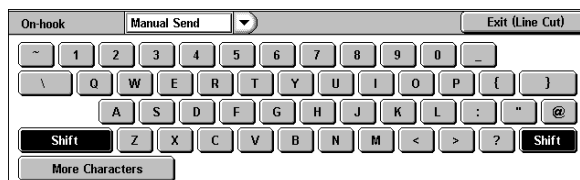
- 1 Pick up the receiver of the external telephone.

- Note**
- While the machine is in the Energy Saver mode, you cannot place a call using the external telephone. To place a call, press the <Energy Saver> button to switch out of the Energy Saver mode.



- 2 Specify the call destination.

- The call destination can be specified using the numeric keypad, address numbers, or one-touch buttons. The address book cannot be used.
- The call destination can be specified also with the keyboard displayed on the screen. Selecting [More Characters] on the screen displays symbols.



- Note**
- To cut the line, select [Exit (Line Cut)].
  - If your telephone line is set to touch-tone, [Tone (:)] does not appear.
  - If you want to send tones (or to use the touch-tone services) while using a pulse line, select [Tone (:)].
  - Some touch-tone services may not be available even if you set your telephone to send tones.

- 3 When the call is connected, start speaking.

- 4 When the call is finished, place the receiver back in the cradle.

**Important** • Make sure that the receiver is placed properly in the cradle. Otherwise, the line will remain "busy".

- 5 Select [Close].

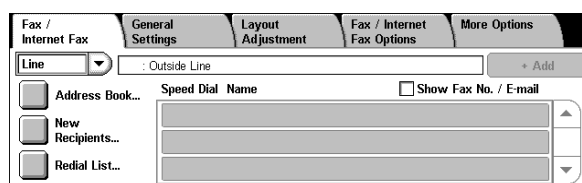


## On-hook Dialing

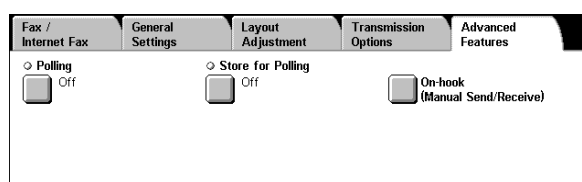
The following describes how to place a call with the receiver on-hook. When placing a call on-hook, we recommend turning the line monitor volume to "Loud".

The volume of the line monitor can be changed in the System Administration mode. For information on how to change the volume, refer to "Line Monitor Volume" (P.92). By factory default, the volume is set to [Normal].

- 1 On the [All Services] screen, select [Fax/Internet Fax].

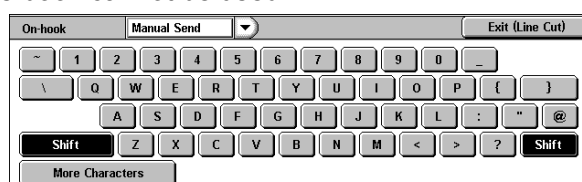


- 2 Select [On-hook (Manual Send/Receive)] on the [Advanced Features] screen.



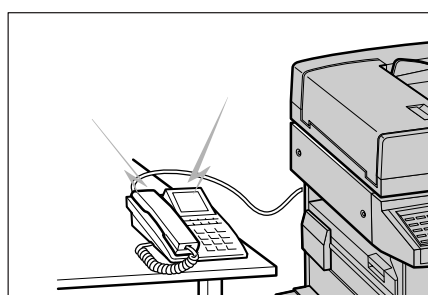
- 3 Specify the call destination.

- The call destination can be specified using the numeric keypad, address numbers, or one-touch buttons. The address book cannot be used.
- The call destination can be specified also with the keyboard displayed on the screen. Selecting [More Characters] on the screen displays symbols.



- Note**
- To cut the line, select [Exit (Line Cut)].
  - If your telephone line is set to touch-tone, [Tone (:)] does not appear.
  - If you want to send tones (or to use the touch-tone services) while using a pulse line, select [Tone (:)].
  - Some touch-tone services may not be available even if you set your telephone to send tones.

- 4 When the call is connected, lift the receiver and start speaking.



- 5 After the call is finished, place the receiver back in the cradle.

**Important** • Make sure that the receiver is placed properly in the cradle. Otherwise, the line will remain "busy".

## Activity Report

You can use activity reports to check whether a transmission is successfully completed or not. In the report, a remote terminal name and a result or a status of each operation are recorded by outgoing and incoming transmission.

For information about the activity report, refer to "Print Reports" (P.59).

Item	Description
No.	The serial numbers for transmissions is shown.
Doc.	Job numbers that the machine automatically assigned to documents when the documents were received.
Remote Station	<p>Information on recipient to which transmission is made is recorded in the following order of priority.</p> <p>■Transmitting (speed dialing)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>①Recipient</li> <li>②Remote terminal name</li> <li>③G3 ID (including spaces)</li> <li>④Tel. No.</li> <li>⑤Communication mode EC (or G3, SG3)</li> </ol> <p>■Transmitting (when all digits are dialed)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>①Remote terminal name</li> <li>②G3 ID (including spaces)</li> <li>③Tel. No.</li> <li>④Communication mode EC (or G3, SG3)</li> </ol> <p>■Receiving</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>①Remote terminal name</li> <li>②G3 ID (including spaces)</li> <li>③Communication mode EC (or G3, SG3)</li> </ol> <p><b>Note</b> • You can set the number of character digits displayed for the recipient. For details on setting up, see "Recipient on Activity Report" (P.97). The factory set default displays the first 40 digits.</p>
Start Time	The date and time that the communication began are shown. In Batch Send, the start time of the transmission for each document is recorded.
Duration	The communication length is indicated. In Batch Send, the length of time taken for a transmission for each document is recorded.
Pages	<p>"-" is indicated when the number of pages is 0.</p> <p>■Transmitting</p> <p>The number printed on the left side of the slash "/" indicates the number of pages that were successfully transmitted. The number printed on the right side of the slash "/" indicates the number of total pages. In Batch Send, the number of total pages is not shown.</p> <p>■Receiving/Polling</p> <p>The number of pages that the machine successfully received is shown.</p>
Mode	The mode used for the communication is shown here. There are three modes; G3, EC, and SG3 (Super G3). (This field is blank if a mode other than these was used.)

Item	Description
Contents	<p>The information about the communication is indicated here. See the Note field at the bottom of the report for a list of abbreviations and their definitions.</p> <p>■Transmitting ①Remote service ②Redial ③Mailbox XXX ④Broadcast/ Multi-Poll ⑤Polling ⑥Relay Broadcast ⑦Relay Broadcast Assignment ⑧Fax forwarding box XXX</p> <p>■Receiving ①Mailbox XXX ②Polling ③Relay broadcast request ④Receiving line box XXX ⑤Transmitting telephone number</p> <p><b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XXX indicates the Mailbox number.</li> <li>• Relay Broadcast is printed when Relay Broadcast and Relay Broadcast Assignment are both specified at transmission.</li> </ul>
Status	<p>The result of the operation is indicated here.</p> <p>Normal .....The operation ended normally. Busy .....The recipient is busy or did not answer. Auto resend....The document is being resent and the set resend times has not been exceeded. Terminated.....The communication was terminated. Recipient check required .... An error caused by the recipient or the line dur- ing communication. Retransmission required ..... Document must be retransmitted. Re-reception required .... Document must be received again. Cable check required ..... Check that the line is properly connected. XXX-XXX .....Error code</p> <p>For details on lines, see "2 Product Overview" &gt; "Machine Components" &gt; "Telephone Line Connectors" in the User Guide and for details on XXX-XXX (error code), see "Error Code" (P.338).</p>
Total	All received pages are recorded.

## Notes and Restrictions

---

This section describes the notes and restrictions to observe when using the machine.

### Notes and Restrictions on the Use of the Machine

---

#### ■When the Print Results Differ from the Settings

As in the following cases, insufficient memory for the print page buffer may cause print results to be different from what was expected from the settings. If this happens, we recommend you to increase the memory.

- Printed only on one side when 2-sided printing was specified.
- A job was terminated (If data on a page cannot be written to the print page buffer, the job including that page will be terminated).

#### ■Fax Immediate Reception

- If the machine's memory capacity becomes insufficient to receive fax data, the machine automatically switches into immediate reception mode. In this mode, the machine outputs received documents on a page-by-page basis; each document page is output immediately after the machine finishes receiving it. However, if the machine receives large data, such as an A3 size photo with many halftone levels, the machine may not print it even after the machine finishes receiving it. In that case, press the <Stop> button, or turn the machine off and then on again, to have the machine print the document.

#### ■S/MIME Untrusted E-mail Reception Settings

If [Receive Untrusted E-mail] or [Receive Untrusted Internet Fax] of [Security Settings] > [S/MIME Settings] is set to [No] when in machine administrator mode, a confirmation cannot be received even if [Read Receipts] is set to [On for All Users].

#### ■Options

- To use the Print to Mailbox feature, optional Scanner Kit needs to be installed.

#### ■Installing and Moving the Machine

- When moving the machine to another location, contact our Customer Support Center.
- When the machine is in operation, do not subject it to shock.
- When closing the document cover, be careful not to trap your fingers.
- Do not place any objects near the ventilation opening of the machine's extractor fan.

#### ■Meter Counts for 2-Sided Printing

- When printing 2 sided, depending on the application the machine uses, blank sheets can be inserted automatically to adjust pages. Such blank sheets inserted by the application are also counted by the meter.

#### ■Job Counter Report

When you have specified two or more different [Multiple-up] settings using the Build Job feature, the numbers of pages for [2-up] and [Other than 2-up] displayed on Job Counter Reports are calculated according to the latest N-up setting you specified.

**Example 1)**

When you select [2 sheets → 1 sheet (2-up)] for Document 1 (4 pages) and [No] for Document 2 (2 pages), both Documents 1 and 2 are set to [No] and the number of printed pages is calculated as follows:

- Total pages: 4
- 2 up: 0

**Example 2)**

When you select [No] for Document 1 (4 pages) and [2 sheets → 1 sheet (2-up)] for Document 2 (2 pages), both Documents 1 and 2 are set to [2 sheets → 1 sheet (2-up)] and the number of printed pages is calculated as follows:

- Total pages: 5
- 2 up: 5

The numbers of pages for 2in1, 4in1, and 8in1 are also calculated in the same way as above on ApeosWare Accounting Service.

The meter on the [Billing Information] screen calculates the number of printed pages correctly regardless of the [Multiple-up] setting.

**■Addresses Registered on Job Flows**

When an abbreviated number or address registered on Address Book has been used for a job flow creation on the machine, any number of address change on Address Book will not be reflected to the job flow. To send to the changed address, the address registered on the job flow must be directly changed.

**■Print Job Speed at Control Panel Operation**

If your DocuCentre has an optional full size color UI, the process or output speed of print jobs may be reduced if you operate the control panel or check print job status on the [Job Status] screen while performing a print job.

## Notes and Restrictions in the Interrupt Mode

---

If you press the <Interrupt> button while running a print job, the machine temporarily stops printing and goes into the interrupt mode.

**Note** • However, if a scan job is running at the same time, the print job cannot be interrupted.

The jobs that can be/cannot be interrupted are as follows.

Job		Job Instruction from the Control Panel *1	Job Execution
Copy		Required	O
Print	Printing of a document *2 instructed from a client computer	Required*4	O
	Printing of a document*3 instructed from [Job Status] > [Stored Documents]	Required	O
Fax	Fax transmission, Broadcast Send	Required	O
	Store for Poling	Required	O
	Incoming Fax Print	Required*4	O
	Printing of a document in the Public Mailbox ([Job Status] > [Stored Document] on the control panel)	Required	O
Direct Fax	Direct Fax transmission	Not required	△
Internet Fax	Internet Fax Transmission	Required	O
	Internet Fax reception/printing	Required*4	O
	Internet Fax reception/Internet Fax reception to mailbox	Not required	△
	Forwarding an incoming Internet Fax to a regular fax machine	Not required	△
	Forwarding an incoming fax to an Internet Fax	Not required	X
Scan	Scan to Mailbox, Scan to PC, E-mail, Network Scanning	Required	O
Report/List	Automatic printing of a report/list other than a job history report	Not required	X
	Automatic printing of a job history report	Not required	O
	Printing of a report/list instructed from [Machine Information] > [Print Reports]	Required	O
Mailbox	Automatic forwarding of a stored document, automatic fax/Internet Fax transmission	Not required	X
	Printing of a stored document (Fax Private Polling/Fax to Mailbox) instructed from the control panel	Required	O
	Printing of a stored document (scanned document/print document) instructed from the control panel	Required	X
	Automatic printing of a stored document	Required*4	O
Job Flow Sheet	Execution of a job flow sheet instructed in [Mailbox] or [Job Flow Sheets] on the touch screen	Required	O

O The job can be executed during the interrupt mode.

X The job cannot be executed during the interrupt mode.

\*1 The job instruction from the control panel is required/not required to execute the job.

\*2 Regular Print, the first set of Sample Set, Delayed Print (auto print)

\*3 Secure Print, Private Charge Print, Sample Set, Delayed Print, Charge Print

\*4 During interruption, any document displayed as a pending job on the [Job Status] screen can be printed by selecting

[Promote Job]. When priority printing is instructed during interruption, the next priority printing is disabled until the instructed print job is completed.

- Note**
- The followings jobs are executed regardless of the interrupt mode.
    - Automatic fax transmission (to mailbox/relay broadcast)
    - Fax reception

## Notes and Restrictions on the Use of the Internet Fax Feature

### ■Notes on E-mail Transmissions

"Doc. Sent" that appears on the communications confirmation screen, activity report, or transmission report indicates that an e-mail has been delivered to the SMTP server, which was configured on the machine for transmitting e-mail. The e-mail, however, may not reach its destination for some problem over the Internet. In such case, the machine will not be notified of such transmission error. After sending an important e-mail, we suggest you to confirm it is received, such as by calling the recipient.

### ■Feature Combinations when Transmitting an Internet Fax

- [Resolution] on the [General Settings] screen  
 When [TIFF-S] is selected for [Internet Fax Profile] on the [Fax/Internet Fax Options] screen, [Superfine (400 dpi)] or [Superfine (600 dpi)] cannot be selected.  
 For information on Internet Fax profiles, refer to "4 Fax" > "Fax/Internet Fax Options" > "Internet Fax Profile (Specifying Internet Fax Profiles)" in the User Guide.
- [Starting Rate] on the [Fax/Internet Fax Options] screen  
 The communication mode can be specified only when sending e-mail using the fax gateway feature. For other cases, e-mail is sent via G3 Auto.  
 For more information on the fax gateway feature, refer to "4 Fax" > "About Internet Fax" > "Internet Fax Overview" > "Sending an Internet Fax to normal fax machines via a relay station" in the User Guide.
- [Original Size] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen  
 When [TIFF-S] is selected for [Internet Fax Profile] on the [Fax/Internet Fax Options] screen, Internet Fax is sent in A4 even if a size larger than A4 is specified.  
 For information on Internet Fax profiles, refer to "4 Fax" > "Fax/Internet Fax Options" > "Internet Fax Profile (Specifying Internet Fax Profiles)" in the User Guide.

### ■Internet Fax Profiles

- When specifying an Internet Fax profile  
 The Internet Fax profile that can be processed varies depending on the machine that the recipient uses. When specifying an Internet Fax profile, confirm if it can be processed by the recipient's machine.
- When an Internet Fax profile not supported by the recipient's machine is specified  
 If the Internet Fax profile you specified is not supported by the recipient's machine, the image you sent cannot be displayed or printed on the recipient's machine. Before using an Internet Fax profile, confirm if it can be processed by both your machine and the recipient's machine.
- TIFF files and Internet Fax profiles that can be processed upon Internet Fax reception
  - TIFF file format: TIFF-FX (RFC2301)
  - Internet Fax profile: TIFF-S, TIFF-F, TIFF-J, TIFF-C
 If receiving an unsupported Internet Fax profile, the machine may not be able to print the file. If receiving a TIFF-C profile, the machine prints in black-and-white.

- Transmission conditions for broadcast transmission
  - When sending a document via a broadcast transmission, it can be sent to both Internet Fax and regular fax addresses at the same time. To Internet Fax addresses, the document will be sent by e-mail, and to regular fax addresses, the document will be sent by fax.
  - When the transmission conditions are different for each address, set all addresses to the following settings.
    - Transmission mode: G3 Auto
    - Internet Fax profile : TIFF-S
    - Read/send status: None

### ■E-mail Forwarding

If the fax you received is a JBIG-compressed image, and if the Internet Fax profile of the forwarding destination is set to TIFF-F, you can convert the image into MH format when forwarding. When the Internet Fax profile is TIFF-S, the data is forwarded with its size and resolution unchanged.

### ■Fax Gateway Feature

This feature can only be used when the e-mail receiving protocol is SMTP on the Internet Fax-compatible machine that faxes are sent to.

If an e-mail was sent by converting it into fax, and if it was not delivered successfully to the recipient, the e-mail that was received originally will be deleted.

For more information on the fax gateway feature, refer to "4 Fax" > "About Internet Fax" > "Internet Fax Overview" > "Sending an Internet Fax to normal fax machines via a relay station" in the User Guide.

### ■Restrictions on Paper Selections upon Internet Fax Reception

The machine determines whether a TIFF file attached to an e-mail complies with the content type defined in RFC2301 and RFC3250. If the content type is compliant with RFC2301 and RFC3250, the machine selects appropriate paper to render the file image as a fax-received image.

Even if the file was received via Internet Fax, if its content type is not compliant with RFC2301 or RFC3250, the machine will not properly select paper for it. For example, an incoming fax that is A4 size may be printed on B4 paper instead.

Such problems may improve depending on the usage. Contact our Customer Support Center for further information.

### ■Restrictions on the E-mail Server

Depending on the system environment (such as the restrictions on your e-mail server), large e-mail may not be delivered successfully. If sending a large e-mail by splitting data size, check your system environment as well as that of the recipient to ensure it is split small enough to be sent.

If the data size is still too large to send, reduce their size by lowering their image or transmission resolution.

### ■Network Security

We do not guarantee the security of any information disclosed over the network.

### ■Setting the System Environment for E-mail Service

To send or receive e-mail, the machine must have its system environment set up for the e-mail service. Set up the system environment such as SMTP, POP3, and DNS servers, as required.



**■Notes on Security**

E-mail uses the Internet, which is a network connecting computers worldwide, as its transmission path. Attention must be paid to security in order to avoid your e-mail being read or tampered by third parties as other signals sent over the Internet.

Therefore, for important information, it is recommended to use other transmission methods that guarantee security. In addition, to avoid the receipt of unwanted e-mail, it is recommended not to disclose your e-mail address to third parties unless necessary.

**■Preventing Receipt of Unwanted E-mail**

The machine provides a feature that blocks unwanted e-mail sent from third parties.

This feature rejects e-mail sent from certain addresses by specifying the domains from which e-mail can be received.

For information on restricting domains from which e-mail can be received, refer to "Domain Filtering" (P.121).

**■Notes on E-mail Receptions**

A large volume of e-mail may not be printed if the memory capacity is insufficient. In such a case, increase the memory size or ask the sender to lower the resolution.

**■Note on Receiving Mail with [Split by Data Size]**

When the mail splitting system is set to [Split by Data Size], split mail received by a device cannot be cloned or printed.

**■Note on the Mail Sending Destination with [Split by Data Size]**

When [Split by Data Size] is specified, mail can be received by mail software that supports the message/partial content type.

---

**Notes and Restrictions when Connecting with Internet Service Provider**


---

This section describes notes and restrictions on features relating e-mail that accesses with a Internet service provider (ISP).

The following shows the features relating e-mail.

- Mail scanning
- E-mail Notification Service
- E-mail Printing

**■Notes and Restrictions on accessing ISP**

The following are the notes and restrictions on connecting the machine to ISP.

- Dial-up connection is not supported. Continuous connection is required.
- Connect the machine under circumstances using IP masquerade. Assigning a global IP address to the machine is not supported.
- Make sure to assign an exclusive e-mail account to the machine for POP receiving. Sharing an e-mail account with other users may cause troubles.
- Make sure to set size limitation for sending e-mail. The applicable e-mail size may vary depending on the ISP used, however, it is recommended you set a small value.
- Continuous connection other than ADSL or cable connection is also supported; however, it burdens the machine when image data is sent or received.
- SMTP receiving is not supported. This machine supports only POP receiving.

- When installing the machine in a circumstance using a mail transfer agent (MTA) in a private segment, set the machine to fit the operation system.
- For information about supported ISPs, contact our Customer Support Center.
- When received via POP, the fax cannot be sent using the Fax Gateway feature. This is because POP receiving does not forward an Internet Fax document received by e-mail to the fax machine.

### ■Feature Specifications

The following shows the features relating to e-mail.

- Transmission specifications

Supported protocol : SMTP

Port number : 25

Authentication for transmission

SMTP authentication : supported

POP before SMTP : Plain and APOP

Waiting time for POP authentication : cannot change

Encryption communication (SSL) : not supported

- Receiving specifications

Supported protocol : POP3

POP3 port number : 110

Authentication method for POP3 : Plain only (APOP is not supported)

E-mail processing after receiving POP3: delete received e-mail from a server after receiving. Settings to store e-mail on the server is not supported.

Encryption communication (SSL) : not supported

**Note** • IMAP4 is not supported.

### ■IP address settings

The machine does not support a global IP address. Make sure to use the machine under circumstances using IP masquerade.

- Operating with fixed address

Register the machine's IP address to a router or a server managing IP addresses for control servers.

- Operating with DHCP

No settings are needed. Depending on settings of a router and a DHCP server, registration may be needed. Confirm operation rules for the router and DHCP server you use. When access is restricted by MAC address, registration to the DHCP server may be required.

### ■Settings from the control panel

Before using mail scanning, set the maximum data size for sending e-mail on the control panel. Refer to the ISP guidelines for the maximum limit. Recommended value is 1 to 2 MB.

In the System Administration mode, select [Tools] > [System Settings] > [E-Mail/Internet Fax Service Settings] > [E-Mail Control] > [Maximum Total Data Size] to perform the setting.

For more information, refer to "Maximum Total Data Size" (P.151).

The following shows adequate image sizes:

- A4 full-color 200dpi with standard compression : around 700 KB
- A4 black-white 200dpi (text document) : around 25 KB
- A4 black-white 200dpi (text & photo document): around 200 KB

**Note** • The sizes described above are those for sending e-mail. The actual size may be different.

### ■Settings from CentreWare Internet Services

For settings to be performed on CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "Setting Items Using CentreWare Internet Services" (P.197).

**Important** • Set [POP3 Server Check Interval] to 10 minutes or longer when connecting ISP.

## Notes and Restrictions for Using SMB

The following are the notes and restrictions for using SMB.

### Configuration on the Machine

- IP addresses are managed throughout the system as a whole. The configuration should be performed only after consulting with your network administrator.
- Subnet Mask and Gateway addresses may be necessary depending on the network environment. Confirm with the network administrator and set up the necessary items.
- When the port status is set to [Enable], it sometimes automatically switches to [Disable] if the machine has insufficient memory. If this happens, either set an unused port to [Disable], or adjust the assigned memory size.
- Adjust the receiving buffer [SMB] size according to usage. When the receiving buffer [SMB] size is smaller than the transmitted data, the machine may not be able to receive the data.

### Configuration on a Computer

- IP addresses are managed throughout the system as a whole. The configuration should be performed only after consulting with your network administrator.

### Switching Off the Power

Check the following points when switching off the machine.

- When [Receiving Buffer - SMB] is set to [Spool to Memory].

All print data spooled within the machine memory, including the data which is being printed is erased. The print data will not be found when the machine is powered on again.

However, if the power was switched off immediately after a computer instructed a print job, the job may remain on the computer. In this case, the stored data on the computer will be printed out in order before any later instructions when the machine is powered back on.

- When [Receiving Buffer - SMB] is set to [Spool to Hard Disk].

All print data spooled in the machine hard disk, including the data which is being printed is preserved. In this case, the stored data on the machine hard disk will be printed out in order before any later instructions when the machine is powered back on.

- When [Receiving Buffer - SMB] is set to [No Spooling].

All print data spooled in the machine receiving buffer, including the data which is being printed is erased. The print data will not be found when the machine is powered on again.

However, if the power was switched off immediately after a computer instructed a print job, the job may remain on the computer. In this case, the stored data on the computer will be printed out in order before any later instructions when the machine is powered back on.

## While Printing

- When [Receiving Buffer - SMB] is set to either [Spool to Hard Disk] or [Spool to Memory].

If the transmitted print data size exceeded the available amount of either hard disk or memory, the print data will not be received.

**Note** • When the print data has exceeded the receivable size, some computers may immediately re-transmit the print data. When this occurs, the computer appears to be halted. Deal with this problem by canceling the print data transmission from the computer.

- When [Receiving Buffer - SMB] is set to [No Spooling].

While the machine is receiving a print request from a computer, the machine cannot accept any print requests from other computers.

- When a computer's IP address or a computer name is changed.

When a computer's IP address or a computer name is changed, query and cancel processing from the machine will not be performed correctly. Switch the machine off and on when there is no print data in the receiving buffer.

**Note** • Canceling print jobs or forcing the machine to print the remaining jobs in the receiving buffer can be operated from the control panel on the machine. For information on the operation, refer to "9 Job Status" in the User Guide.

- When the machine is off-line.

If a computer instructs a print job while the machine is off-line, the machine will not receive the data and a write error dialog will be displayed on the computer.

## Environment for Printing through SMB

- When using Windows 2000, Windows XP Windows Server 2003, or Windows Vista if [Unicode Support] is enabled, no printing is available on the SMB environment.
- When printing through the SMB port on Windows XP, the user name may not be displayed correctly.

## SMB Authentication

When an IP address or a host name is used to designate the authentication server for SMB authentication, even if the domain name is not correct, if a correct user name and passcode are entered, the authentication succeeds.

## Notes and Restrictions for Using TCP/IP

The following are the notes and restrictions for using TCP/IP (LPD).

## Configuration on the Machine

- IP addresses are managed throughout the system as a whole. The configuration should be performed only after consulting with your network administrator.

- Subnet Mask and Gateway addresses may be necessary depending on the network environment. Confirm with the network administrator and set up the necessary items.
- When the port status is set to [Enable], it sometimes automatically switches to [Disable] if the machine has insufficient memory. If this happens, either set an unused port to [Disable], or adjust the assigned memory size.
- Adjust the receiving buffer [lpd (Spool)] size according to usage. When the receiving buffer [lpd (Spool)] size is smaller than the transmitted data, the machine may not be able to receive the data.

## Configuration on the Computer

- IP addresses are managed throughout the system as a whole. The configuration should be performed only after consulting with your network administrator.
- When performing network settings (IP address, etc.) on a host under the NIS (Network Information Service) management, consult with the NIS administrator.

## Switching Off the Power

Check the following points when switching off the machine.

- When [Receiving Buffer - LPD] is set to [Spool to Memory]  
All print data spooled within the machine memory, including the data which is being printed is erased. The print data will not be found when the machine is powered on again.  
However, if the power was switched off immediately after a computer instructed a print job, the job may remain on the computer. In this case, the stored data on the computer will be printed out in order before any later instructions when the machine is powered back on.
- When [Receiving Buffer - LPD] is set to [Spool to Hard Disk]  
All print data spooled in the machine hard disk, including the data which is being printed is preserved. In this case, the stored data on the machine hard disk will be printed out in order before any later instructions when the machine is powered back on.
- When [Receiving Buffer - LPD] is set to [No Spooling]  
All print data spooled in the machine receiving buffer, including the data which is being printed is erased. The print data will not be found when the machine is powered on again.  
However, if the power was switched off immediately after a computer instructed a print job, the job may remain on the computer. In this case, the stored data on the computer will be printed out in order before any later instructions when the machine is powered back on.

## While Printing

- When [Receiving Buffer - LPD] is set to either [Spool to Hard Disk] or [Spool to Memory]  
If the transmitted print data size exceeded the available amount of either hard disk or memory, the print data will not be received.

**Note** • When the print data has exceeded the receivable size, some computers may immediately re-transmit the print data. When this occurs, the computer appears to be halted. Deal with this problem by canceling the print data transmission from the computer.

- When [Receiving Buffer - LPD] is set to [Off]  
While the machine is receiving a print request from a computer, the machine cannot accept any print requests from other computers.
  - When a computer's IP address or a computer name is changed  
When a computer's IP address or a computer name is changed, queries and cancel processes from the machine will not be performed correctly. Switch the machine off and on when there is no print data in the receiving buffer.
- Note**
- Canceling print jobs or forcing the machine to print the remaining jobs in the receiving buffer can be operated from the control panel on the machine. For information on the operation, refer to "9 Job Status" in the User Guide.

## Notes and Restrictions for Using EtherTalk

The following are the notes and restrictions for using EtherTalk.

### Printer Name

Printer names used to be identified by clients are set not to duplicate each other. When assigning a new printer name, if the same printer name has already existed on the network, the system automatically change the printer name on startup.

<Rules for changing printer name>

Printer names are changed according to the following rules:

- Names of 31 characters or less  
Add a number to the end of the printer name. If the same printer name with the number added has still existed on the network, increase the added number by 1.
- Names of 32 characters  
Change the last character of the printer name to a number. If the same printer name with the last character changed has still existed on the network, increase the changed number by 1.  
If the printer name has been changed, when browsing [Protocols] on the [Properties] tab of CentreWare Internet Services, the previous printer name set before the change is displayed. However, the changed printer name is registered on the network, clients can browse the printer using the changed printer name. If the printer is turned off and then on while the printer name has been changed, the printer is activated with the changed printer name. If the same printer name has already existed on the network, the printer name will be changed according to the rules described above on startup.  
Assign a printer name not to duplicate to other printer names on the network.

### Zone Name

Zone names can be set in [Protocols] on the [Properties] tab of CentreWare Internet Services. However, if the zone name set does not exist on the network to which the printer is connected, the zone name is automatically set as default. To set a zone name, use the zone name that has already existed on the network.

## Notes and Restrictions for Using Bonjour

The following are the notes and restrictions for using Bonjour.

### Supported Environment for Bonjour

Bonjour is available on Printer Setup Tool (Print Center, Printer Setup Utility) of Mac OS X v10.3.9, 10.4.10 or later, or Macintosh computers that use Safari. The discovery feature of Bonjour is available only in the same subnet.

### Printer Name

- If a printer name or a host name that is already assigned is changed, documents may be printed by a printer that is not selected.
- If a printer name or a host name is duplicated on the same network, one of the duplicated names is automatically changed by adding a number to avoid confliction.
- When changing a printer name or a host name, because of the limitation on the number or type of characters used, a name differing from the designated name may be assigned in some cases. We recommend not to change printer names or host names.

## Notes and Restrictions for Using Scanner Features

The following are the notes and restrictions for using the scanner features.

Refer to the Readme contained in the CentreWare Utilities CD-ROM for the notes and restrictions on Network Scan Driver and Mailbox Viewer3.

### Retrieving Documents from Mailbox

- When [Delete Documents After Retrieval] is set to [No], the same document can be accessed by multiple clients.  
When [Delete Documents After Retrieval] is set to [Yes], only one client can access any given document. The document which is being imported by a client cannot be seen by other clients.  
In both cases, documents can be added to a mailbox while it is accessed.
- When documents are retrieved from CentreWare Internet Services, the documents will not be deleted regardless of the setting of [Delete Documents After Retrieval].

### Using Network Scan Driver and Mailbox Viewer3 Simultaneously

You cannot use both the network scan driver and Mailbox Viewer3 on a single computer to make a connection to the machine.

A maximum of three computers using either the Network Scan Driver or Mailbox Viewer3 may retrieve documents simultaneously from one machine.

### Using TIFF Files

The TIFF files created by Mailbox Viewer3 are compressed into the MMR, MH, or JPEG format. When opening the TIFF files, use the appropriate application software which supports the format.

**Note** • Mailbox Viewer3 cannot create a TIFF file compressed into JBIG format.

### Restriction on Scanning Capacity

The maximum scanning capacity for one page is 297 x 432 mm. For standard sizes, A3 or 11 x 17 inches.

### Number of Sheets for Scanning (for Mailbox)

A maximum of 999 pages can be scanned in at once for mailboxes. The number of pages may differ depending on the document size and resolution.

### Network Reference on SMB Environment

- On Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Vista, if more than 256 shared resources other than shared folders (such as shared printers) are configured, shared resources other than shared folders may be displayed in the shared folder list.
- Workgroup names, server names, shared names and the like on the network may not be displayed alphabetically on the list.

### Notes and Restrictions when Connecting to Internet or Intranet

---

The following are the notes and restrictions when connecting to the Internet or intranet.

#### Internet/Intranet Connection

Depending on the web server, server application, proxy server and firewall, connection to the Internet or intranet may not be able to be established.

To connect to the Internet or intranet using a third-party server application, proxy, or firewall, the following requirements must be satisfied:

- Supporting Windows2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Vista
- Being compliant with the following:
  - RFC2616: Hypertext Transfer Protocol HTTP/1.1  
(Standard connection/SSL connection/Proxy authentication)
  - RFC2617: HTTP Authentication: Basic and Digest Access Authentication  
(only Basic authentication is supported, the other authentications are not supported)
  - RFC2817: Upgrading to TLS Within HTTP/1.1
  - RFC2818: HTTP Over TLS
- Supporting the HTTP/HTTPS schemes
- Supporting the GET/CONNECT/POST methods

### Notes and Restrictions for IPv6 Connection

---

The following are notes and restrictions for IPv6 connection.

- In a multi-prefix environment (where multiple IPv6 global addresses are used), data transmission from the machine to a device installed on another network may fail.
- In a multi-prefix environment (where multiple IPv6 global addresses are used), an address that is not assigned to the machine may be used for connection.
- The machine may be assigned an unavailable address, such as site local addresses (fec0::) and the documentation prefix (2001:db8::/32), as an autoconfigured IPv6 address or as an IPv6 DNS server address.
- If the machine is under all of the following conditions, the machine may use the DNS information for IPv4, rather than that for IPv6: (1) the machine is in Dual Stack mode, (2) the DNS information for both IPv4 and IPv6 are configured, (3) the machine is to

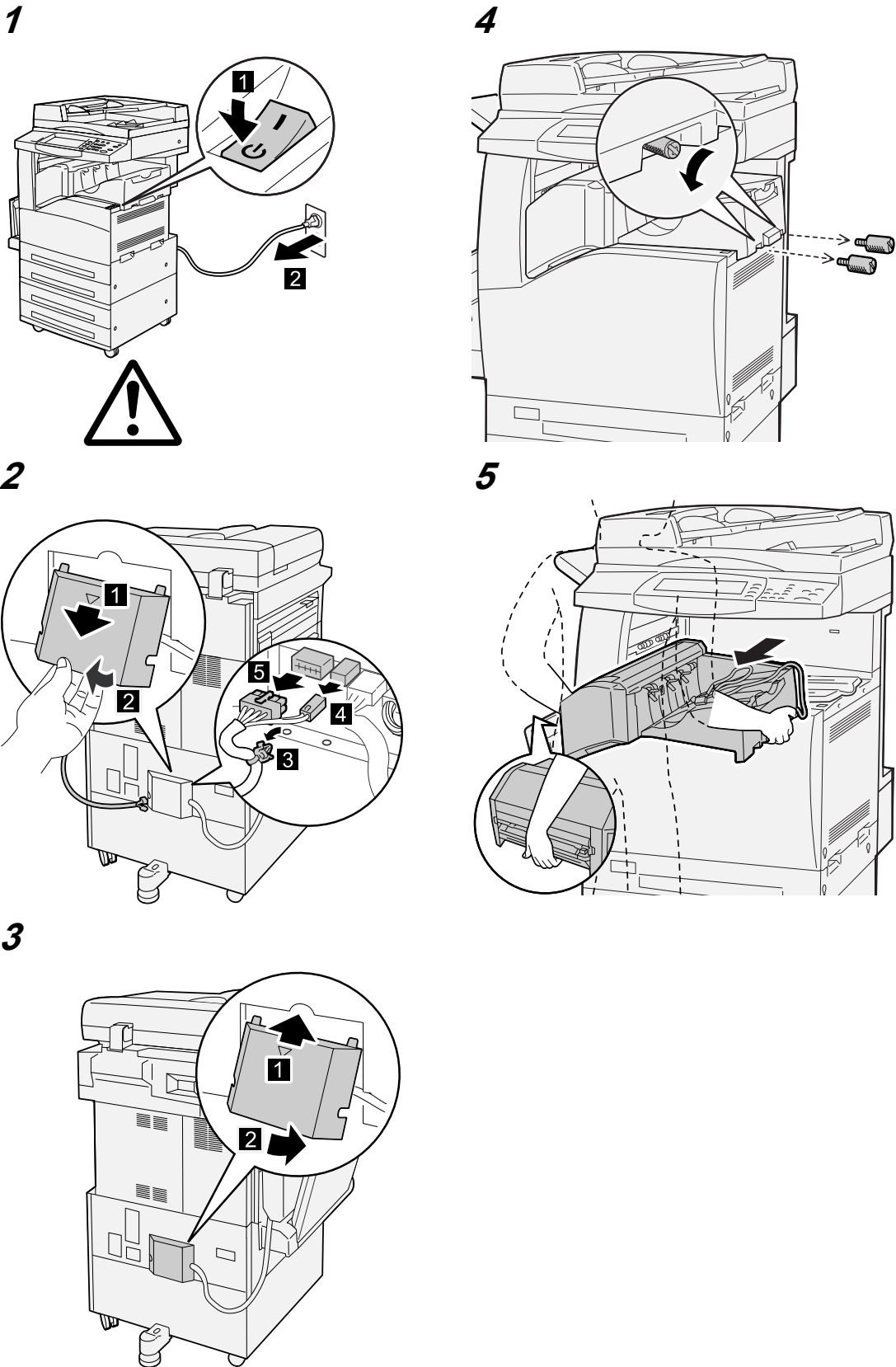


be communicate with a device that is specified using the domain name, and (4) the machine has just been turned on.

- The machine may display an incorrect machine address.  
Example:  
(1) Either the IPv4 or IPv6 address is not displayed in Dual Stack mode.  
(2) A different IPv6 address is displayed.
- When a document is printed via an IPv6 network, the Secure Watermark feature is not available.
- A time synchronization server cannot be specified in IPv6 format. Use the IPv4 format to specify a time synchronization server.
- The following operating systems support IPv6 printing.
  - Windows Vista
  - Linux distributions with CUPS (Common Unix Printing System) that supports IPv6
- WINS does not support IPv6 communication.
- NetWare does not support IPv6 communication. Use IPv4 for Netware.
- When a self-signed certificate is used for SSL communication, note the following restrictions.
  - (1) When the machine is specified using the domain name (for IPv4 or IPv6):  
Set the host name and domain name for the machine before creating a self-signed certificate.  
Example:  
When the domain name is "csw.ipv6.domain.local":  
Host name: csw  
Domain name: ipv6.domain.local
  - (2) When the machine is specified using the IPv4 address:  
The self-signed certificate that is created in IPv4 or Dual-Stack mode needs to be imported.
  - (3) When the machine is specified using the IPv6 address:  
Secure IPP (IPP-S) communication is not available.
- Bonjour does not support IPv6 communication. Use IPv4 for Bonjour.
- When IPv6 is enabled and IPv4 is disabled on the machine, the Browse function of the Scan to PC (SMB) service is not available.
- When the Scan to PC (FTP) service is used, file names must be ASCII characters.
- In the following cases, the lpq command (for status check) and the lprm command (for canceling) may not be available for LPD print jobs.
  - When IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are configured in the Dual-Stack mode.
  - When the IPv6 address is a temporary address.
- IPv6 addresses may not be correctly recorded on job logs. Use an IPv4 network for correct logging.
- When searching a device outside the router via SMB, directly specify the address. Multicasting is supported only within a local link (FF02::1).
- In IPv6 environment without a DNS server, if a computer name is specified in the SMB server settings for SMB authentication, the authentication fails. Specify IPv6 address directly for a computer name of the authentication server.

# Removing the Finisher-A1

Use the following procedure to remove the Finisher-A1 from the machine.  
To attach the Finisher-A1 to the machine, reverse the procedure.



## Glossary

Term	Description
Border Limit (Page split threshold value)	One more sheet is used when the length of the transmitted document exceeds the length of paper installed on the receiving terminal. A margin at the bottom of a received document can be eliminated so that the data can be printed on one page. The amount of space that can be removed from the bottom of a document is the border limit. When the border limit value is small, the data is printed on the next page. But when it is large, a larger space can be cut so that data can be printed on one page.
Communication(s)	A communications network that can offer voice data (telephone), image data (fax), video data (videotex) and PC data (PC communication service) over the same channel. In this guide, it is mostly referred to as transmitting/receiving images as well as speaking with a remote user.
Dial	In this guide, it refers to entering a recipient's fax number. The method of dialing provided by the machine include: manual dialing using the numeric keypad, speed dialing, one touch dialing, and using the address book, etc.
Dial Tone	A tone generated from the telephone line. It indicates that you are connected to the line.
ECM	Error Correction Mode. A type of G3 transmission. ECM transmission sends the document image data in segments and retransmits segments that the remote machine receives incorrectly. "ECM" described on the [Activity Report] shows that the communication was processed using ECM.
Fax Gateway	Connects the Internet network to regular telephone lines, enabling e-mail documents to be sent as fax documents to regular fax machines.
Fax Server	A feature that transfers image data received by the machine to a Server Fax server and transfers image data received by a Server Fax server to the machine via a network based on the settings you made. Using this feature enables you to manage multiple machines.
F Code	A transmission method defined by Communications and Information Network Association of Japan (CIAJ) for use of T.30* sub-addresses standardized by ITU-T. Between the machines with the F code feature, including those manufactured by other companies, various features making use of F Code can be used. (*: Communication standard) With the Internet Fax (Internet Fax) feature of the machine, you can use F Code to forward fax documents received in mailboxes by e-mail.
Forced 4800 bps	This refers to communicating with a remote terminal outside the country. It is also one of the Transmission Mode selections that reduces transmission speed to enable reliable communications even under poor line conditions.

Term	Description
G3	A facsimile communication system standardized by the advisory committee for International Telecommunications (CCITT, now the ITU-T).
Header	A record of the sender. It is printed on the top edge of a received document.
Internet Fax	Unlike a regular fax machine, Internet Fax uses corporate networks or the Internet to send or receive e-mail (TIFF attachments).
Line Monitor	Allows you to audibly monitor a transmission through the speaker after dialing and until you are connected.
Local Device	This term refers to this machine. This is a general term for terminals such as telephones, facsimile machines, personal and computers.
Off-hook Dialing	Dialing with the handset off the hook.
On-hook Dialing	Dialing with the handset on the cradle.
Polling	A feature that allows you to retrieve a document from a remote machine.
Profile	A protocol controlling image resolution, paper size, and other attributes when sending or receiving faxes using Internet Fax (Internet Fax). The profiles that can be used vary with the Internet Fax of the remote terminal. When specifying a profile, check that it can be handled by the other party's Internet Fax-compatible machine.
Recipient	The person or terminal you send a document to. "Dialing" indicates the operation of entering a recipient's telephone number. For Internet Fax (Internet Fax), this refers to the recipient's e-mail address.
Remote Terminal	A terminal with which you want to communicate. This is a general term for terminals such as telephones, facsimile machines and personal computers.
Receiving Paper Size	A feature that specifies the output paper size for received fax documents. The specified paper size will be declared to recipients from the sender.
Send Password	This feature requires to enter an "S" and the ID of a remote terminal after entering its fax number. This prevents transmission errors.
Super G3 (SG3)	A G3 communication system conforming to ITU V.34. This system offers higher transmission speed (33.6 kbps) than the normal G3 mode.
Transmission Interval	The period between transmissions.

# Index

## Numerics

100BASE-TX .....	203
10BASE-T .....	203
2 Pages Up On Receipt (System Settings) .....	144
2 Sided Copying (default value) .....	107
2 Sided Printing (System Settings) .....	144
2 Sided Report .....	97

## A

According to Print Auditron .....	188
Account Limit .....	174, 183
Accounting .....	173
Accounting Type .....	177
Activity Report .....	59, 472
Activity Report (System Settings) .....	96
Add Me to "CC" Field .....	152
Add Me to "To" Field .....	152
Address Book .....	62, 63
Address Book Entry (Address Number) .....	165
Address Book Speed Dial Default (System Settings) .....	140
Address Type (System Settings) .....	166
Addresses to Bypass Proxy Server .....	119
administrator shared job flow sheet .....	281
administrator shared mailbox .....	282
Adobe PostScript 3 Kit .....	217
Alert Tone .....	92
All Services .....	93
Allocate Memory .....	129
Allow Casual Users to Edit From Field .....	151
Allow Guest Users to Edit From Field .....	151
Allow to edit From if Search found .....	152
Allow User to Disable Active Settings .....	189
Allows to edit From if Search failed .....	152
Alternative Name for Account Name ID .....	178
Alternative Name for User ID .....	178, 186
Annotations - Comment Density .....	111
Annotations - Comment on Side 2 .....	111
Annotations (System Settings) .....	108
Annotations Create Comments .....	111
applicable lines .....	429

applicable paper size .....	430, 432
audio tones .....	91
Auditron Mode .....	177
Auditron Report (Copy Jobs) .....	65
Auditron Report (Fax Jobs) .....	65
Auditron Report (Print Jobs) .....	65
Auditron Report (Scan Jobs) .....	66
Auditron Reports .....	64
authenticated user .....	274
Authentication .....	181
Authentication System Setup .....	121
Authentication/Security Settings .....	180
Auto Clear .....	90
Auto Clear Alert Tone .....	92
Auto Configured IPv6 Address .....	117
Auto Display of Login Screen .....	93
Auto Job Promotion .....	100
Auto Job Release .....	90
Auto Paper Off .....	110
Auto Print .....	90
Auto Receive .....	70
Auto Reduce On Receipt (System Settings) .....	144
Auto Tray Switching Control .....	95
Automatic tray selection .....	29
automatically printed reports/lists .....	66
Available Mailbox Operations .....	285

## B

Background Pattern .....	99
Background Suppression (Black Copy) (System Settings) .....	96
Background Suppression (default value) ...	107, 136
Background Suppression Level .....	139
Banner Sheet .....	133
Banner Sheet Tray .....	133
Base Tone .....	92
Batch Send (System Settings) .....	143
Bates Stamp - Position on Side 2 .....	111
Billing - Day Time (System Settings) .....	169
Billing - Midnight (System Settings) .....	169
Billing - Night Time (System Settings) .....	169
Billing Data List .....	63

Billing Information .....	73
book finishing .....	431
Booklet Offset .....	100
Border Limit (System Settings) .....	143
Broadcast Internet Fax Profile (System Settings) .....	148
Broadcast Report .....	66
Broadcast Starting Rate (System Settings) .....	148
Broadcast/Multi-Poll Report (System Settings) .....	96

## C

capacity .....	430
CentreWare Internet Services .....	194
certificate .....	256
Certificate Revocation Retrieval Settings .....	127
change the paper type .....	34
changing the paper size .....	32
Charge Rate Per Unit .....	179
Charge/Private Print Settings .....	187
Check M'box Passcode .....	156
checking paper tray status .....	58
cleaning the machine .....	50
coding method .....	429
Color Space .....	139
Color Space (System Settings) .....	136
Comments (System Settings) .....	172
Common Service Settings .....	89
Company Logo (System Settings) .....	147
Configuration Report .....	60, 62, 63
configuring the SNMP port .....	235, 237
Confirmation Options (System Settings) .....	141
Connection Interval .....	90
connectivity .....	427, 428
Connectivity & Network Setup .....	112
consumables .....	38
Consumables Status Notice .....	220
continuous copy speed .....	425
continuous print speed .....	426
Contrast (System Settings) .....	136
Control Panel Alert Tone .....	91
Control Panel Select Tone .....	91
Copy Control .....	110
Copy Defaults .....	107
Copy Output - Separators Tray (default value) .....	108

Copy Output (default value) .....	108
Copy Reports .....	60
Copy Service Settings .....	106
Copy Tab .....	106
Copy Tab - Features Allocation .....	106
copying a job flow sheet .....	164
Cover Page (System Settings) .....	167
Cover Tray (default value) .....	109
Create Authorization Groups .....	185
Create Job Flow Sheet .....	158
Create Job Flow Sheet Keyword .....	165
Create Mailbox .....	156
Create/View User Accounts .....	173, 182
creating a new job flow .....	160
Creating Fax Group recipients (System Settings) .....	171
Custom Buttons 1 to 3 .....	93
Custom Paper Name/Color .....	94
Custom Watermark 1 to 3 (Watermark) .....	99
Customize User Prompts .....	177

## D

Date .....	89
Date Format .....	98
Date Stamp - Position on Side 2 .....	111
Daylight Savings .....	90
Default Language .....	93
Default Print Paper Size .....	101
Default Programming .....	69
Default Watermark (Watermark) .....	99
Default Watermark Effect .....	98
Delayed Start (System Settings) .....	168
Delete All Certificates/Initialize Settings .....	98
Delete All Data .....	98
Delete Documents After Retrieval .....	157
Delete Encryption .....	104
Delete Expired Documents .....	157
Delete Form .....	131
Delete Mailbox .....	158
deleting a job flow sheet .....	164
Delivery Confirmation Method (System Settings) .....	148
Delivery Receipts/Read Receipts (System Settings) .....	141
Density (Watermark) .....	99

Device Access .....	181
dial type .....	147
dialing type .....	147
Digital Signature .....	263
dimensions .....	426
dimensions/weight .....	430, 431, 432
Display Consumables Screens .....	103
Document Expiry Date .....	153
Document Feeder Scanning Position .....	98
Document for Polling - Auto Delete (System Settings) .....	142
document jams .....	417
document size .....	429, 430
Documents Retrieved By Client .....	153
DocuWorks signature .....	267
Domain Filter .....	245
Domain Filter List .....	62, 63
Domain Filtering .....	121
Domain Name .....	118
drum cartridge (long life) .....	38
drum cartridge (standard) .....	38

## E

Edge Erase - Left & Right Edges (System Settings) .....	144
Edge Erase - Top & Bottom Edges (System Settings) .....	144
Edge Erase (default value) .....	136, 137
Edit E-mail Recipients .....	152
editing a job flow sheet .....	164
E-mail .....	220, 228
E-mail Address .....	243
e-mail address .....	224
E-mail Address (System Settings) .....	166
E-mail Control .....	150
E-mail Encryption .....	263
E-mail notification .....	220
E-mail Printing .....	220
E-mail Receive Protocol .....	128
E-mail Subject (default value) .....	137
E-mail/Internet Fax Settings .....	150
emulation .....	427, 438
emulation mode .....	438
encryption .....	256
Encryption Key for Confidential Data .....	105

Energy Saver mode .....	18
entering text .....	24
error code .....	338
Error History Report .....	60, 71
error messages .....	338
ESC/P Form Memory .....	129
ESC/P Logical Printers List .....	61
ESC/P Settings List .....	61
Ethernet II .....	203
Ethernet Settings .....	115
EtherTalk .....	217
extension flap .....	30

## F

F Code (System Settings) .....	168
Failed Access Log .....	186
Fault Tone .....	91
Faults .....	71
Fax Billing Data (System Settings) .....	179
Fax Comments List .....	63
Fax Number (System Settings) .....	166
Fax Received Options (System Settings) .....	145
Fax Receiving Mode .....	70
Fax Receiving Mode (System Settings) .....	143
Fax Reports .....	62
Fax Screen Default (System Settings) .....	140
Fax Service Settings (System Settings) .....	140
Fax Transfer from Address Book (System Settings) .....	149
Fax Transfer Maximum Data Size (System Settings) .....	149
Feature Access .....	174, 183
features shown on the Copy screen .....	106
feeding speed .....	430
File Format (default value) .....	136
File Transfer Report - Fax Server .....	67, 97
Fine-tune 100% .....	110
first copy output time .....	424
First Tab - Scan .....	135
Font List .....	61
Font Size (Watermark) .....	99
fonts .....	427
Force Watermark - Client Print .....	99
Force Watermark - Copy Job .....	99
Force Watermark - Mailbox Print .....	99

FTP .....	231
FTP Client .....	235
FTP client port .....	232

## G

G3 Line - Dial Type (System Settings) .....	147
G3 Line - Fax ID (System Settings) .....	147
G3 Line - Line Type (System Settings) .....	147
General Settings - 2nd Column .....	140
general shared mailbox .....	282
Given Name .....	170

## H

halftone/printable colors .....	424
HDD .....	424
hole punch waste container .....	47
hole punching .....	431
Host Name .....	118, 243
HP-GL/2 Auto Layout Memory .....	130
HP-GL/2 Logical Printers List .....	61
HP-GL/2 Settings List .....	61
HP-GL2 emulation .....	457
HTTP .....	194
HTTP Proxy Server Name .....	119
HTTPS .....	258, 260
HTTPS Proxy Server Name .....	119

## I

IEEE 802.1x Settings .....	127
IEEE802.3 .....	203
Image Enhancement .....	96
Image Quality .....	95
image quality problems .....	305
image quality trouble .....	305
Image Rotation (default value) .....	108
Image Rotation Direction (default value) .....	108
Image Shift (default value) .....	108
Image Transfer Screen .....	139
Incoming E-mail Print Options .....	150
Incoming Internet Fax Print Options (System Settings) .....	148
Index (System Settings) .....	167
Initialize Hard Disk .....	98

Internet Fax Control (System Settings) .....	147
Internet Fax Kit .....	240
Internet Fax Output Destination (System Settings) .....	148
Internet Fax Profile (System Settings) .....	141, 169
Internet Printing Protocol .....	215
Internet service .....	236
IP Address .....	57
IPP port .....	215
IPSec Settings .....	126
IPv4 - IP Address Resolution .....	116
IPv4 Address .....	116
IPv4 Gateway Address .....	117
IPv4 IP Filter .....	117
IPv4 Subnet Mask .....	117
IPv6 Address Manual Configuration .....	117
IPv6 IP Filter .....	118

## J

Job Complete Tone .....	91
Job Completion Notice .....	220
Job Counter Report .....	64
Job Flow Error Report .....	67, 98
Job Flow Scanning .....	228
Job Flow Service Settings .....	155
job flow sheet shared by general users .....	281
job flow sheet types .....	281
job flow sheets created on the Create Mailbox screen .....	283
job flows created on the Create Job Flow Sheet screen .....	283
job flows created on the Send from Mailbox screen .....	283
Job History Report .....	59, 96
Job Status Default .....	189
Job Status/Activity Report .....	59
Job Template Scanning .....	228
Job Ticket Memory .....	130
Job Type on Job Status Screen .....	93
jobs manageable by Account Administration .....	289

## K

Kerberos Server Settings .....	121
Keyboard Input Restriction .....	103



**L**

label paper .....	28
Language .....	93
Language To Identify .....	137
LDAP Server/Directory Service .....	122
Lighten/Darken (default value) .....	107, 136
Lighten/Darken (System Settings) .....	141
Line Monitor Volume (System Settings) .....	92
line type .....	147
Link Job Flow Sheet to Mailbox .....	157
loading paper .....	29
loading paper in the tandem tray module .....	30
loading paper in the Tray 5 (Bypass) .....	30
local access .....	181
Local Accounting .....	276
local machine authentication .....	275
Local Name (System Settings) .....	147
Local Terminal Information (System Settings) ..	146
Login Type .....	181
Low Power Mode .....	18
Low Toner Alert Tone .....	92
LPD .....	207
LPD port .....	207, 211

**M**

machine clock/timers .....	89
machine configuration .....	58
machine information .....	57
Machine Password (System Settings) .....	147
Machine Ready Tone .....	91
Machine Status .....	56
machine trouble .....	301
machine's E-mail address .....	118
Macintosh .....	204
Mailbox creation .....	156
mailbox job flow sheet .....	281
Mailbox List .....	64
Mailbox Name .....	156
Mailbox Receive Display Priority (System Settings) .....	145
Mailbox Report .....	66
Mailbox Report (System Settings) .....	96
Mailbox Selector - Line Setup (System Settings) .....	145

Mailbox Selector - Service Setup (System Settings) .....	145
Mailbox Selector List .....	63
Manual Receive .....	70
Manual Receive (System Settings) .....	143
Manual Send (System Settings) .....	143
Manual Send/Receive Default (System Settings) .....	143
Manually Configured IPv6 Address .....	117
Manually Configured IPv6 Gateway .....	117
Manually Configured IPv6 Prefix .....	117
Mask Account ID (***) .....	178
Mask User ID (***) .....	178, 186
Maximum Address Entries .....	150
maximum continuous copy run .....	425
maximum fill line .....	30
Maximum Image Size (System Settings) .....	167
maximum number of pages .....	183
Maximum Number of Sets .....	111
maximum power consumption .....	426
Maximum Stored Pages .....	110, 139
Maximum Stored Pages (System Settings) .....	145
memory .....	424
Memory Full Procedure .....	110, 138
Memory Full Procedure (System Settings) .....	145
Microsoft Networks .....	213
Millimeters/Inches .....	103
Min. Passcode Length for Stored Job .....	154
Mixed Sized Originals - Copy to Side 2 .....	110
Mixed Sized Originals (default value) .....	107, 136
Mixed Sized Originals (System Settings) .....	141
moving the position of the paper guides .....	32
Multiple-Up (default value) .....	108
Multi-poll Report .....	66

**N**

Name (System Settings) .....	167
NetWare port .....	210
Network Accounting .....	177, 276
Network Scanning .....	228
Network Scanning feature .....	234
No. of fax lines .....	429
notes and restrictions .....	474
NTP Time Synchronization .....	90

## O

Odd Page 2 Sided .....	101
off-hook dialing .....	470
Offset (Center Tray) .....	100
Offset (Right Middle Tray) .....	100
on-hook dialing .....	471
operating system .....	427, 429
Operation of Up/Down Buttons .....	103
Optimize PDF For Web View .....	136
Original Orientation (default value) .....	136
original paper size .....	424, 428, 430
Original Size Defaults .....	111, 137
Original Size Defaults (System Settings) .....	146
Original Type .....	136
Original Type - See-Through Paper .....	110
Original Type (default value) .....	107, 136
Original Type (System Settings) .....	141
Out of Paper Warning Tone .....	92
outgoing/incoming E-mail settings .....	119
outline fonts .....	434
Output Destination (default value) .....	108
Output Destination for E-mail .....	128
output format .....	430
output paper size .....	424
output paper weight .....	424
Output Size Defaults .....	138
output tray capacity .....	426
Overwrite Hard Disk .....	67, 190
Overwrite Hard Disk (System Settings) .....	190

## P

Page Numbers - Position on Side 2 .....	111
paper color .....	94
paper jams .....	406
paper size .....	94
Paper Size Settings .....	101
paper size/paper weight .....	430, 431
Paper Supply (default value) .....	107
Paper Tray Attributes .....	94
Paper Tray Attributes During Loading .....	94
Paper Tray Attributes on Setup .....	94
Paper Tray Priority .....	94
paper tray settings .....	94
paper tray/capacity .....	425
paper type .....	94
Paper Type Mismatch .....	132
Paper Type Priority .....	94
paper types .....	26
paper weight .....	430
Passcode Entry from Control Panel .....	187
PCL Font List .....	61
PCL Macro List .....	61
PCL Settings List .....	60
PDF Direct Print .....	452
PDF Settings List .....	61
PDF signature .....	267
PDF/DocuWorks/XPS Signature Settings .....	126
PDL (paper description language) .....	426
periodical replacement parts .....	38
personal job flow sheet .....	281
personal mailbox .....	282
Photo & Text Recognition (System Settings) .....	95
PJL Output Command Control .....	187
PJL Receive Command Control .....	187
plain paper (printable paper) .....	26
poor image quality .....	305
POP3 .....	224, 244
POP3 server .....	244
POP3 Server Settings .....	119
Port 9100 port .....	207
Port Number .....	171
Port Settings .....	112
Port Status - Bonjour .....	114
Port Status - E-mail Notification Service .....	114
Port Status - EtherTalk .....	114
Port Status - FTP Client .....	114
Port Status - Internet Services .....	115
Port Status - IPP .....	113
Port Status - LPD .....	113
Port Status - NetWare .....	113
Port Status - Port9100 .....	114
Port Status - Receive E-mail .....	114
Port Status - Send E-mail .....	114
Port Status - SNMP .....	114
Port Status - SOAP .....	115
Port Status - UPnP Discovery .....	114
Port Status - USB .....	112
Port Status - WebDAV .....	115
Port Status- SMB .....	113
Port9100 .....	207

PostScript Font Absence .....	133	receiving protocol .....	224, 243
PostScript Font List .....	62	Recipient on Activity Report (System Settings) ...	97
PostScript Font Substitution .....	133	Reconfirm E-mail Recipient .....	93
PostScript Logical Printers List .....	61	Reconfirm Fax/Internet Fax Recipient .....	93
PostScript Memory .....	129	recording paper size .....	429
PostScript Paper Supply .....	133	Reduce 8.5 x 11" Original to A4 (System	
Power Off Report .....	67	Settings) .....	144
Power Saver/Energy Saver Timers .....	91	Reduce/Enlarge (default value) .....	107
power supply .....	426	Reduce/Enlarge Presets .....	111, 138
Print & Delete Confirmation Screen .....	153	reduction/enlargement .....	424
Print Area .....	131	Relay Broadcast (System Settings) .....	168
Print Delivery Confirmation E-mail .....	151	Relay Broadcast Report .....	67
Print Error Notification E-mail .....	150	Relay Broadcast Report (System Settings) .....	97
Print Job Confirmation Screen .....	154	Relay Station Setup (System Settings) .....	167
Print Mode .....	68	remote authentication .....	275
print resolution .....	426	Remote Mailbox (System Settings) .....	168
Print Service Settings .....	129	replacing the drum cartridge .....	41
Print User ID .....	132	replacing the staple cartridge .....	44, 45
printable area .....	462	replacing the toner cartridge .....	39
Printer Lockout Duration .....	90	Reports .....	96
Printer Report .....	60	Reset Account .....	175, 184
printing a report/list .....	53, 59	Reset Total Impressions .....	175, 184
printing resolution .....	424	Reset User Accounts .....	176, 184
problem solving .....	299	Resolution (default value) .....	136
profile .....	430	Resolution (System Settings) .....	141, 167
protocol .....	426	Response to Read Receipts .....	150
Protocol Settings .....	115	Restrict Recipient Selection Method .....	105
protocols .....	430	Retrieve Programming .....	68
proxy server settings .....	118	Ringing Volume (System Settings) .....	92
Proxy Server Setup .....	119	Rotate 90 degrees (System Settings) .....	143
Pseudo-Photo Gradation Mode (System			
Settings) .....	110, 144		

## R

Read Receipts .....	151
Receive Control .....	187
Receive E-Mail .....	242
Receiving Buffer - EtherTalk .....	131
Receiving Buffer - IPP Spool .....	131
Receiving Buffer - LPD Spool .....	130
Receiving Buffer - NetWare .....	130
Receiving Buffer - Port 9100 .....	131
Receiving Buffer - SMB Spool .....	130
Receiving Buffer - USB .....	130
Receiving Paper Size (System Settings) .....	144

## S

S/MIME .....	225, 245
S/MIME certificate .....	170
S/MIME Settings .....	125
Saturation .....	139
Save Deleted Faxes (System Settings) .....	143
Save in .....	171
Save in Charge Print .....	189
Save in Private Charge Print .....	188
Save Undelivered Faxes (System Settings) .....	143
Saved Faxes - Auto Delete (System Settings) ..	143
Scan Defaults .....	135
Scan File Transfer Report .....	66, 97
Scan Reports .....	62



toner cartridge (25K) .....	38
toner cartridge (9K) .....	38
Tools menu list .....	79
Transfer Protocol .....	170
Transfer Protocol (default value) .....	137
Transmission Header Text - Fax Transfer (System Settings) .....	149
Transmission Header Text - Polling (System Settings) .....	142
Transmission Header Text (System Settings) ..	141
Transmission Interval (System Settings) .....	143
transmission mode .....	429
Transmission Report - Job Deleted (System Settings) .....	96
Transmission Report - Job Undelivered .....	66
Transmission Report - Job Undelivered (System Settings) .....	96
transmission resolution .....	429
Transmission Screen (System Settings) .....	140
transmission speed .....	429
transmission time .....	429
Tray 5 - Paper Size Defaults .....	95
tray capacity .....	432
trouble during copying .....	310
trouble during printing .....	313
trouble during scanning .....	319
troubleshooting .....	300
type .....	424, 428, 430, 431
types of authentication .....	275

## U

unable to copy .....	310
unable to print .....	313
unable to receive a fax .....	316
unable to send a fax .....	315
unauthenticated user .....	274
UNIX .....	204
Unregistered Forms .....	132
USB .....	205
USB port .....	205
User Account Billing Information .....	73
User Details Setup .....	186
User Role .....	184
using a proxy server .....	118
using ESC/P-K emulation .....	438

using the Ethernet interface .....	17
using the USB interface .....	17

## V

Verify User Details .....	177
---------------------------	-----

## W

warm-up time .....	424
Watermark .....	98
Watermark/Background Contrast .....	99
web browser .....	194
weight .....	426
whether to permit users to add and edit recipients .....	105
whether to place restrictions on e-mail transmissions .....	105
Windows 2000 .....	204
Windows Server 2003 .....	204
Windows Server 2008 .....	204
Windows Vista .....	204
Windows XP .....	204

## X

Xerox Standard Accounting .....	177
XPS signature .....	267



**DocuCentre-III 3007/2007  
Administrator Guide**

ME4298E2-1 (Edition 2)

October 2008

Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

Copyright © 2008 by Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.